# unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

## John

### Version 27

# Copyrights & Licensing

**unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**
**Date:** 2020-03-25
**Version:** 27
**Published by:** unfoldingWord

**unfoldingWord® Literal Text**
**Date:** 2020-03-25
**Version:** 10
**Published by:** unfoldingWord

**unfoldingWord® Simplified Text**
**Date:** 2020-03-25
**Version:** 10
**Published by:** unfoldingWord

**unfoldingWord® Translation Academy**
**Date:** 2020-03-25
**Version:** 12
**Published by:** unfoldingWord®

**unfoldingWord® Translation Words**
**Date:** 2020-03-25
**Version:** 14
**Published by:** unfoldingWord

**unfoldingWord® Greek New Testament**
**Date:** 2020-02-20
**Version:** 0.12
**Published by:** unfoldingWord

**unfoldingWord® Hebrew Bible**
**Date:** 2020-02-20
**Version:** 2.1.11
**Published by:** unfoldingWord

If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at unfoldingword.org/contact/.

# Table of Contents

**Contributors** ...................................................................................... **1399**

# unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

## John

## Introduction to the Gospel of John

# Part 1: General Introduction

### Outline of the Gospel of John

1. Introduction about who Jesus is (1:1-18)
2. Jesus is baptized, and he chooses twelve disciples (1:19-51)
3. Jesus preaches, teaches, and heals people (2-11)
4. The seven days before Jesus' death (12-19)
5. Mary anoints the feet of Jesus (12:1-11)
6. Jesus rides a donkey into Jerusalem (12:12-19)
7. Some Greek men want to see Jesus (12:20-36)
8. The Jewish leaders reject Jesus (12:37-50)
9. Jesus teaches his disciples (13-17)
10. Jesus is arrested and undergoes trial (18:1-19:15)
11. Jesus is crucified and buried (19:16-42)
12. Jesus rises from the dead (20:1-29)
13. John says why he wrote his gospel (20:30-31)
14. Jesus meets with the disciples (21)

### What is the Gospel of John about?

The Gospel of John is one of four books in the New Testament that describe some of the life of Jesus Christ. The authors of the gospels wrote about different aspects of who Jesus was and what he did. John said that he wrote his gospel "so that people might believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of the living God" (20:31).

John's Gospel is very different from the other three Gospels. John does not include some of the teachings and events that the other writers included in their gospels. Also, John wrote about some teachings and events that are not in the other gospels.

John wrote much about the signs Jesus did to prove that what Jesus said about himself was true. (See: sign, proof, reminder)

### How should the title of this book be translated?

Translators may choose to call this book by its traditional title, "The Gospel of John" or "The Gospel According to John." Or they may choose a title that may be clearer, such as, "The Good News About Jesus That John Wrote." (See: How to Translate Names)

### Who wrote the Gospel of John?

This book does not give the name of the author. However, since early Christian times, most Christians have thought that the Apostle John was the author.

# Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

### Why does John write so much about the final week of Jesus' life?

John wrote much about Jesus' final week. He wanted his readers to think deeply about Jesus' final week and his death on the cross. He wanted people to understand that Jesus willingly died on the cross so that God could forgive them for sinning against him. (See: sin, sinful, sinner, sinning)

## Part 3: Important Translation Issues

### What do the words "remain," "reside," and "abide" mean in the Gospel of John?

John often used the words "remain," "reside", and "abide" as metaphors. John spoke of a believer becoming more faithful to Jesus and knowing Jesus better as if Jesus' word "remained" in the believer. Also, John spoke of someone being spiritually joined to someone else as if the person "remained" in the other person. Christians are said to "remain" in Christ and in God. The Father is said to "remain" in the Son, and the Son is said to "remain" in the Father. The Son is said to "remain" in believers. The Holy Spirit is also said to "remain" in the believers.

Many translators will find it impossible to represent these ideas in their languages in exactly the same way. For example, Jesus intended to express the idea of the Christian being spiritually together with him when he said, "He who eats my flesh and drinks my blood remains in me, and I in him" (John 6:56). The UST uses the idea of "will be joined to me, and I will be joined to him." But translators may have to find other ways of expressing the idea.

In the passage, "If my words remain in you" (John 15:7), the UST expresses this idea as, "If you live by my message." Translators may find it possible to use this translation as a model.

### What are the major issues in the text of the Gospel of John?

The following verses found in older versions of the Bible but are not included in most modern versions. Translators are advised not to translate these verses. However, if in the translators' region, there are older versions of the Bible that include these verses, the translators can include them. If they are translated, they should be put inside square brackets ([]) to indicate that they were probably not original to John's Gospel.

- "waiting for the moving of the water. For an angel of the Lord occasionally went down into the pool and stirred the water and whoever went first after the stirring of the water, was made well from the disease they had." (5:3-4)
- "going through the midst of them, and so passed by" (8:59)

The following passage is included in most older and modern versions of the Bible. But it is not in the earliest copies of the Bible. Translators are advised to translate this passage. It should be put inside of square brackets ([]) to indicate that it may not have been original to John's Gospel.

- The story of the adulterous woman (7:53–8:11)

(See: Textual Variants)

# John 1

## John 1 General Notes

# Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 1:23, which are words from the Old Testament.

# Special concepts in this chapter

### "The Word"

John uses the phrase "the Word" to refer to Jesus (John 1:1, 14). John is saying that God's most important message to all people is actually Jesus, a person with a physical body. (See: word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture)

### Light and darkness

The Bible often speaks of unrighteous people, people who do not do what pleases God, as if they were walking around in darkness. It speaks of light as if it were what enables those sinful people to become righteous, to understand what they are doing wrong and begin to obey God. (See: righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness)

### "Children of God"

When people believes in Jesus, they go from being "children of wrath" to "children of God." They are adopted into the "family of God." They are adopted into the "family of God." This is an important image that will be unfolded in the New Testament. (See: believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief and adoption, adopt, adopted)

# Important figures of speech in this chapter

### Metaphors

John uses the metaphors of light and darkness and of the Word to tell the reader that he will be writing more about good and evil and about what God wants to tell people through Jesus. (See: Metaphor)

# Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

### "In the beginning"

Some languages and cultures speak of the world as if it has always existed, as if it had no beginning. But "very long ago" is different from "in the beginning," and you need to be sure that your translation communicates correctly.

### "Son of Man"

Jesus refers to himself as the "Son of Man" in this chapter (John 1:51). Your language may not allow people to speak of themselves as if they were speaking about someone else. (See: Son of Man, son of man and First, Second or Third Person)

## John 1:1

**In the beginning (ULT)**
**In the beginning (UST)**

This refers to the very earliest time before God created the heavens and the earth.

**the Word (ULT)**
**the Word (UST)**

This refers to Jesus. Translate as "the Word" if possible. If "Word" is feminine in your language, it could be translated as "the one who is called the Word."

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- Word
- Word (2)
- Word (3)

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- God
- Word
- Word (2)
- Word (3)

**ULT**

**1** In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.

**UST**

**1** In the beginning was the Word. The Word was with God, and the Word was God.

## John 1:2

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- God

### Translation Words - UST

- God

---

**ULT**
**2** This one was in the beginning with God.

**UST**
**2** He was with God before he began to create anything.

## John 1:3

**All things were made through him (ULT)**
**He is the one who carried out God's command to create everything (UST)**

This can be translated with an active verb. Alternate translation: "God made all things through him" (See: Active or Passive)

**without him there was not one thing made that has been made (ULT)**
**absolutely everything that was made (UST)**

This can be translated with an active verb. If your language does not permit double negatives, these words should communicate that the opposite of "all things were made through him" is false. Alternate translation: "God did not make anything without him" or "with him there was every thing made that has been made" or "God made with him every thing that God has made" (See: Active or Passive and Double Negatives)

> **ULT**
> **3** All things were made through him, and without him there was not one thing made that has been made.
>
> **UST**
> **3** He is the one who carried out God's command to create everything—yes, absolutely everything that was made!

# John 1:4

**In him was life, and the life was the light of men (ULT)**
**All life is in the Word, so he could give life to everything and everyone. The Word was God's light that shone on everyone, everywhere (UST)**

"In him was life" is a metonym for causing everything to live. And, "light" here is a metaphor for "truth." Alternate translation: "He is the one who caused everything to live. And he revealed to people what is true about God" (See: Metonymy and Metaphor)

**In him (ULT)**
**in the Word...he...The Word (UST)**

Here "him" refers to the one who is called the Word.

**life (ULT)**
**All life (UST)**

Here use a general term for "life." If you must be more specific, translate as "spiritual life."

**Translation Words - ULT**

- life
- life (2)
- light

**Translation Words - UST**

- All life
- life (2)
- God's light

**ULT**

**4** In him was life, and the life was the light of men.

**UST**

**4** All life is in the Word, so he could give life to everything and everyone. The Word was God's light that shone on everyone, everywhere.

# John 1:5

**The...light shines in the darkness, and the darkness did not overcome it (ULT)**
**This light shone in the darkness, and the darkness tried to put it out, but it could not (UST)**

Here "light" is a metaphor for what is true and good. Here "darkness" is a metaphor what is false and evil. Alternate translation: "The truth is like a light shining into a dark place, and no one in the dark place could put out the light" (See: Metaphor)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- darkness
- darkness
- light

**Translation Words - UST**

- darkness
- darkness
- light

**ULT**

**5** The light shines in the darkness, and the darkness did not overcome it.

**UST**

**5** This light shone in the darkness, and the darkness tried to put it out, but it could not.

## John 1:6

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- name
- was John
- who was sent

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- named
- John who was known as John the Baptizer
- sent

# John 1:7

**testify about the light (ULT)**
**about the light...and he proclaimed that message (UST)**

Here "light" is a metaphor for the revelation of God in Jesus. Alternate translation: "show how Jesus is like the true light of God" (See: Metaphor)

## Translation Words - ULT

- a witness
- testify
- might believe
- light

## Translation Words - UST

- to testify to the people...What...said was true
- and he proclaimed that message
- might believe
- light

**ULT**

**7** He came as a witness in order to testify about the light, that all might believe through him.

**UST**

**7** He came to testify to the people about the light. What he said was true, and he proclaimed that message so that everyone might believe in the one who was like a light.

# John 1:8

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

## Translation Words - ULT

- he might testify
- light
- light

## Translation Words - UST

- he came to tell people
- light
- light

**ULT**

**8** John was not the light, but came that he might testify about the light.

**UST**

**8** John himself was not the light, but he came to tell people about the light.

# John 1:9

### The true light (ULT)
### the true light (UST)

Here light is a metaphor that represents Jesus as the one who both reveals the truth about God and is himself that truth. (See: Metaphor)

### Translation Words - ULT

- true
- world
- light

### Translation Words - UST

- true
- world
- light

---

**ULT**

[9] The true light, which gives light to all men, was coming into the world.

**UST**

[9] This was the true light that shines upon everyone, and that light was coming into the world.

---

## John 1:10

**He was in the world, and the world was made through him, and the world did not know him**

"Even though he was in this world, and God created everything through him, people still did not recognize him"

**the world did not know him (ULT)**
**none of its people knew who he was (UST)**

The "world" is a metonym that stands for all the people who live in the world. Alternate translation: "the people did not know who he really was" (See: Metonymy)

### Translation Words - ULT

- world
- world
- world (2)
- know

### Translation Words - UST

- world
- world
- of its people (2)
- knew who...was

**ULT**

**10** He was in the world, and the world was made through him, and the world did not know him.

**UST**

**10** The Word was in the world and, although he had made the world, none of its people knew who he was.

## John 1:11

**He came to his own, and his own did not receive him (ULT)**
**Although he came to the world he owned, and even to his own people, the Jews, they rejected him (UST)**

"He came to his own fellow countrymen, and his own fellow countrymen did not accept him either"

**him…receive (ULT)**
**him…rejected (UST)**

"accept him." To receive someone is to welcome him and treat him with honor in hopes of building a relationship with him.

### Translation Words - ULT

  • receive

### Translation Words - UST

  • rejected

> **ULT**
> **11** He came to his own, and his own did not receive him.
>
> **UST**
> **11** Although he came to the world he owned, and even to his own people, the Jews, they rejected him.

# John 1:12

**who believed…in his name (ULT)**
**and trusted in him (UST)**

The word "name" is a metonym that stands for Jesus' identity and everything about him. Alternate translation: "believed in him" (See: Metonymy)

**he gave…the right (ULT)**
**he gave…the right (UST)**

"he gave them the authority" or "he made it possible for them"

**children of God (ULT)**
**God's children (UST)**

The word "children" is a metaphor that represents our relationship to God, which is like children to a father. (See: Metaphor)

**ULT**

**12** But to as many as received him, who believed in his name, he gave them the right to become children of God.

**UST**

**12** But all who took him into their lives and trusted in him, to them he gave the right to become God's children.

## Translation Words - ULT

- of God
- the right
- who believed
- name
- children
- received

## Translation Words - UST

- God's
- the right
- and trusted
- him
- children
- who took…into their lives

## John 1:13

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- of the flesh
- blood
- were...born

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- a human
- a normal human birth
- born...They were...born

**ULT**

**13** These were not born of blood, nor of the will of the flesh, nor of the will of man, but of God.

**UST**

**13** These are children born from God. They were not born by means of a normal human birth nor out of a human desire or choice nor because of a husband's desire to become a father.

## John 1:14

### The…Word (ULT)
### the Word (UST)

This refers to Jesus. Translate as "the Word" if possible. If "Word" is feminine in your language, it could be translated as "the one who is called the Word." See how you translated this in John 1:1.

### became flesh (ULT)
### became a real human being (UST)

Here "flesh" represents "a person" or "a human being." Alternate translation: "became human" or "became a human being" (See: Synecdoche)

### the only begotten who came from the Father (ULT)
### the one and only Son of the Father (UST)

> **ULT**
>
> **14** The Word became flesh and lived among us. We have seen his glory, glory as of the only begotten who came from the Father, full of grace and truth.
>
> **UST**
>
> **14** Now the Word became a real human being and lived here where we live for a while. We have seen him display his splendid and amazing nature, the nature of the one and only Son of the Father, who shows us that God loves us faithfully and teaches us about his truth.

The phrase "the one an only" means that he is unique, that no one else is like him. The phrase "who came from the Father" means that he is the Father's child. Alternate translation: "the unique Son of the Father" or "the only Son of the Father"

### the Father (ULT)
### Father (UST)

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

### full of grace (ULT)
### who shows us that God loves us faithfully (UST)

"full of kind acts towards us, acts we do not deserve"

### Translation Words - ULT

- of grace
- flesh
- Word
- truth
- glory
- glory (2)
- the Father
- as of

### Translation Words - UST

- God loves us faithfully
- a real human being
- Word
- teaches us about his truth
- him display his splendid and amazing nature
- the nature (2)
- Father

• of

## John 1:15

**He who comes after me (ULT)**
**someone would come after me, someone...He (UST)**

John is speaking about Jesus. The phrase "comes after me" means that John's ministry has already started and Jesus' ministry will start later.

**me is greater...am (ULT)**
**me...who is much more important...existed (UST)**

"is more important than I am" or "has more authority than I have"

**was...me...for...before (ULT)**

Be careful not to translate this in a way that suggests that Jesus is more important because he is older than John in human years. Jesus is greater and more important than John because he is God the Son, who has always been alive.

### Translation Words - ULT

- testified
- John
- cried out

### Translation Words - UST

- One day...was telling people
- John the Baptizer...John
- shouted to the crowd around him

---

**ULT**

**15** John testified about him and cried out, saying, "This was the one of whom I said, 'He who comes after me is greater than I am, for he was before me.'"

**UST**

**15** One day John the Baptizer was telling people about the Word, and Jesus came to him. John shouted to the crowd around him, "I told you someone would come after me, someone who is much more important than I am. He existed long before me, eternal ages before I was born. This man here! This is that man I was talking about!"

## John 1:16

**fullness (ULT)**
**what...has done. Again and again...has acted (UST)**

This word refers to God's grace that has no end.

**grace after grace (ULT)**
**very much...very kindly toward us (UST)**

"blessing after blessing"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- grace
- grace
- have...received

**Translation Words - UST**

- very much...very kindly toward us
- very much...very kindly toward us
- have...benefited

**ULT**

**16** For from his fullness we have all received even grace after grace.

**UST**

**16** We have all benefited very much from what he has done. Again and again, he has acted very kindly toward us.

## John 1:17

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Grace
- Jesus Christ
- law
- truth
- Christ
- Moses

### Translation Words - UST

- was kind to us far beyond what we deserved
- Jesus the Messiah
- God's laws
- he taught us true things about God
- the Messiah
- Moses

**ULT**

**17** For the law was given through Moses. Grace and truth came through Jesus Christ.

**UST**

**17** Moses proclaimed God's laws to the Jewish people. Jesus the Messiah was kind to us far beyond what we deserved and he taught us true things about God.

## John 1:18

**Father (ULT)**
**Father (UST)**

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- Father

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- God
- Father

**ULT**

**18** No one has seen God at any time. The only begotten God, who is at the side of the Father, he has made him known.

**UST**

**18** No one has ever seen God. But, Jesus the Messiah, who himself is God, is always close to the Father, and he has made us know him.

# John 1:19

**the Jews sent...to him from Jerusalem (ULT)**
**The Jews sent...from Jerusalem city; they came (UST)**

The word "Jews" here represents the "Jewish leaders." Alternate translation: "the Jewish leaders sent...to him from Jerusalem" (See: Synecdoche)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jews
- testimony
- priests
- of John
- Levites
- Jerusalem
- sent...to him

## Translation Words - UST

- Jews
- what...gave as...testimony
- priests
- John...his
- the Levites
- Jerusalem city
- sent...they came

**ULT**

**19** This is the testimony of John when the Jews sent priests and Levites to him from Jerusalem to ask him, "Who are you?"

**UST**

**19** This is what John gave as his testimony: The Jews sent priests and the Levites from Jerusalem city; they came to ask John, "Who are you?"

# John 1:20

## He confessed—he did not deny, but confessed

The phrase "he did not deny" says in negative terms the same thing that "He confessed" says in positive terms. This emphasizes that John was telling the truth and was strongly stating that he was not the Christ. Your language may have a different way of doing this.

## Translation Words - ULT

- He confessed
- confessed (2)
- Christ

## Translation Words - UST

- John testified to them and said
- John testified to them and said (2)
- Messiah

**ULT**
**20** He confessed—and he did not deny, but confessed—"I am not the Christ."

**UST**
**20** So John testified to them and said, "I am not the Messiah!"

## John 1:21

**What are you then (ULT)**
**What do you say about yourself (UST)**

"What then is the case, if you are not the Messiah?" or "What then is going on?" or "What then are you doing?"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- prophet
- Elijah

**Translation Words - UST**

- Prophet whom the prophets say will come
- Elijah

---

**ULT**

**21** So they asked him, "What are you then? Are you Elijah?" He said, "I am not." They said, "Are you the prophet?" He answered, "No."

**UST**

**21** Then they asked him, "What do you say about yourself? Are you Elijah?" He said, "No." They asked again, "Are you the Prophet whom the prophets say will come?" John answered, "No."

---

## John 1:22

**Connecting Statement:**

John continues to speak with the priests and Levites.

**they said...to him (ULT)**
**they asked...him (UST)**

"the priests and Levites said to John"

**we may give...us (ULT)**
**we can go back and report...us (UST)**

the priests and Levites, not John (See: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We')

**Translation Words - ULT**

> • to those who sent

**Translation Words - UST**

> • to those who sent

**ULT**
**22** Then they said to him, "Who are you, so that we may give an answer to those who sent us? What do you say about yourself?"

**UST**
**22** So they asked him once more, "Then who do you claim to be? Tell us so that we can go back and report to those who sent us. What do you say about yourself?"

## John 1:23

**He said (ULT)**
**He answered (UST)**

"John said"

**I am a voice, crying in the wilderness (ULT)**
**I am the one shouting in the desolate area (UST)**

John is saying that Isaiah's prophecy is about himself. The word "voice" here refers to the person who is crying out in the wilderness. Alternate translation: "I am the one calling out in the wilderness" (See: Metonymy)

**Make the way of the Lord straight (ULT)**
**Prepare yourselves to receive the Lord when he comes, just like people prepare a road for an important official (UST)**

Here the word "way" is used as a metaphor. Alternate translation: "Prepare yourselves for the Lord's arrival the same way that people prepare the road for an important person to use" (See: Metaphor)

> **ULT**
>
> **23** He said, "I am a voice, crying in the wilderness: 'Make the way of the Lord straight,' just as Isaiah the prophet said."
>
> **UST**
>
> **23** He answered as Isaiah the prophet had written, "I am the one shouting in the desolate area, 'Prepare yourselves to receive the Lord when he comes, just like people prepare a road for an important official.'"

### Translation Words - ULT

- of the Lord
- prophet
- Isaiah
- wilderness
- a voice
- crying
- just as

### Translation Words - UST

- the Lord when he comes...for an important official
- prophet
- Isaiah
- desolate area
- am the one shouting
- am the one shouting
- as

## John 1:24

**Now some who were sent were from the Pharisees (ULT)**
**Some of these people came to John from the Pharisees (UST)**

This is background information about the people who questioned John. (See: Background Information)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Pharisees
- some who were sent

### Translation Words - UST

- Pharisees
- Some of these people came to John

**ULT**
**24** Now some who were sent were from the Pharisees,

**UST**
**24** Some of these people came to John from the Pharisees.

## John 1:25

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- do you baptize
- prophet
- Christ
- Elijah

### Translation Words - UST

- are you baptizing
- Prophet
- Messiah
- Elijah

**ULT**

**25** and they asked him and said to him, "Why do you baptize then if you are not the Christ nor Elijah nor the prophet?"

**UST**

**25** They asked him, "Since you say you are not the Messiah nor Elijah nor the Prophet, then why are you baptizing?"

## John 1:26

### General Information:

Verse 28 tells us background information about the setting of the story. (See: Background Information)

### Translation Words - ULT

- baptize
- John
- water
- know

### Translation Words - UST

- am baptizing people
- John
- water
- do...know

**ULT**

**26** John answered them, saying, "I baptize with water. But among you stands someone you do not know.

**UST**

**26** John replied, "I am baptizing people with water, but there is now someone standing among you whom you do not know.

## John 1:27

**who comes after me (ULT)**
**He follows...after...me (UST)**

You may need to make explicit what he will do when he has come.
Alternate translation: "who will preach to you after I am gone" (See:
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**me...of whom the strap of his sandal I am not worthy**
**to untie (ULT)**

Untying sandals was the work of a slave or servant. These words are
a metaphor for the most unpleasant work of a servant. Alternate
translation: "me, whom I am not worthy to serve in even the most unpleasant way" or "me. I am not even worthy to
untie the strap of his sandal" (See: Metaphor)

**ULT**

**27** He is the one who comes after me, of
whom the strap of his sandal I am not
worthy to untie."

**UST**

**27** He follows after me, but I am not
important enough even to untie his
sandals."

### Translation Words - ULT

- worthy
- sandal

### Translation Words - UST

- important enough
- sandals

## John 1:28

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- baptizing
- Jordan
- John
- Bethany

### Translation Words - UST

- baptizing
- Jordan River
- John
- the village of Bethany

**ULT**

**28** These things were done in Bethany on the other side of the Jordan, where John was baptizing.

**UST**

**28** These things happened at the village of Bethany over on the east side of the Jordan River. That is the place where John was baptizing.

# John 1:29

**Lamb of God (ULT)**
**Lamb of God...will give his life as a sacrifice (UST)**

This is a metaphor that represents God's perfect sacrifice. Jesus is called the "Lamb of God" because he was sacrificed to pay for people's sins. (See: Metaphor)

**world (ULT)**
**world (UST)**

The word "world" is a metonym and refers to all the people in the world. (See: Metonymy)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Lamb
- sin
- of God
- world

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Lamb...will give his life as a sacrifice
- sins
- of God
- world

**ULT**

**29** The next day John saw Jesus coming to him and said, "Look, there is the Lamb of God, who takes away the sin of the world!

**UST**

**29** The next day John saw Jesus coming toward him. He said to the people, "Look! The Lamb of God, who will give his life as a sacrifice to take away the sins of the world.

## John 1:30

### The one who comes after me is more than me, for he was before me

See how you translated this in John 1:15.

**ULT**

**30** This is the one of whom I said, 'After me comes a man who is greater than me, for he was before me.'

**UST**

**30** He is the one of whom I said, 'Someone will come after me who is more important than I am, because he existed long before me, eternal ages before I was born.'

# John 1:31

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

## Translation Words - ULT

- he could be revealed
- baptizing
- to Israel
- water
- know

## Translation Words - UST

- to know who he is
- baptize...those who were sorry and turned from their sins
- the people of Israel
- water
- did...know...know

**ULT**

**31** I did not <u>know</u> him, but it was so that <u>he could be revealed</u> <u>to Israel</u> that I came <u>baptizing</u> with <u>water</u>."

**UST**

**31** I did not <u>know</u> him at first, but now I <u>know</u> who he is. My work was to come and <u>baptize</u> with <u>water</u> <u>those who were sorry and turned from their sins</u>. I want <u>the people of Israel</u> <u>to know who he is</u>."

# John 1:32

**descending (ULT)**
**as he was descending...came down (UST)**

coming down from above

**like a dove (ULT)**
**in the form of a dove (UST)**

This phrase is a simile. The "Spirit" comes down just like a dove lands on a person. (See: Simile)

**heaven (ULT)**
**heaven (UST)**

The word "heaven" refers to the "sky."

## Translation Words - ULT

- heaven
- testified
- Spirit
- John
- a dove
- like

## Translation Words - UST

- heaven
- It was...work to tell us
- God's Spirit...The Spirit
- John's
- a dove
- in the form of

**ULT**

**32** John testified, saying, "I saw the Spirit descending like a dove from heaven, and it stayed upon him.

**UST**

**32** It was John's work to tell us what he saw. He spoke like this: "I saw God's Spirit as he was descending from heaven in the form of a dove. The Spirit came down and remained on Jesus.

# John 1:33

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

## Translation Words - ULT

- to baptize
- the one baptizing
- Holy
- Spirit
- the Holy Spirit
- water
- he who sent
- recognize

## Translation Words - UST

- to baptize people…people who said they wanted to turn from their sinful ways
- the one who will baptize all of you
- Holy
- my Spirit
- the Holy Spirit
- water
- sent
- did…know

**ULT**

**33** I did not recognize him, but he who sent me to baptize in water, he said to me, 'Upon whomever you shall see the Spirit descending and remaining on him, he is the one baptizing in the Holy Spirit.'

**UST**

**33** At first, I myself did not know him, but God sent me to baptize people with water, people who said they wanted to turn from their sinful ways. God told me, 'The man on whom you will see my Spirit descend and remain is the one who will baptize all of you with the Holy Spirit.'

# John 1:34

**the Son of God (ULT)**
**the Son of God (UST)**

Some copies of this text say "Son of God"; others say "chosen one of God." (See: Textual Variants)

**Son of God (ULT)**
**Son of God (UST)**

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

**Translation Words - ULT**

  • of God
  • Son of God
  • testified

**Translation Words - UST**

  • of God
  • Son of God
  • I bear witness to you

**ULT**

**34** I have both seen and testified that this is the Son of God."

**UST**

**34** I have seen and I bear witness to you that he is the Son of God."

# John 1:35

**Again, the next day (ULT)**
**again the next day (UST)**

This is another day. It is the second day that John sees Jesus.

### Translation Words - ULT

- disciples
- John

### Translation Words - UST

- apprentices
- John the Baptizer

---

**ULT**

**35** Again, the next day, as John was standing with two of his disciples,

**UST**

**35** John the Baptizer was at the same place again the next day with two of his apprentices.

## John 1:36

**Lamb of God (ULT)**
**Lamb of God, the man whom God appointed to give his life, like a lamb killed by the people of Israel as a payment for their sins (UST)**

This is a metaphor that represents God's perfect sacrifice. Jesus is called the "Lamb of God" because he was sacrificed to pay for people's sins. See how you translated this same phrase in John 1:29. (See: Metaphor)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Lamb
- of God
- walking by

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Lamb…the man whom God appointed to give his life, like a lamb killed by the people of Israel as a payment for their sins
- of God
- passing by

**ULT**

**36** and they saw Jesus walking by, and John said, "Look, the Lamb of God!"

**UST**

**36** When he saw Jesus passing by, he said, "Look! The Lamb of God, the man whom God appointed to give his life, like a lamb killed by the people of Israel as a payment for their sins!"

## John 1:37

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- disciples

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- apprentices...they

## John 1:38

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Rabbi
- translated means
- turned
- do you want
- teacher

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus...him
- Rabbi
- means
- turned around
- are you looking for
- teacher

---

**ULT**

**38** Then Jesus turned and saw them following him and said to them, "What do you want?" So they replied to him, "Rabbi (which translated means teacher), where are you staying?"

**UST**

**38** Jesus turned around and saw them following him, and he asked them, "What are you looking for?" They said to him, "Rabbi (which means 'teacher'), tell us where you are staying."

# John 1:39

**hour...the tenth (ULT)**
**because it was getting late (it was about 4 pm...**
**because it was getting late...it was about 4 pm (UST)**

"hour 10." This phrase indicates a time in the afternoon, before dark, at which it would be too late to start traveling to another town, possibly around 4 p.m.

## Translation Words - ULT

- hour
- day

## Translation Words - UST

- because it was getting late (it was about 4 pm
- day

**ULT**

**39** He said to them, "Come and see." Then they came and saw where he was staying. They stayed with him that day, for it was about the tenth hour.

**UST**

**39** He replied, "Come with me, and you will see!" So they came and saw where Jesus was staying. They stayed with him that day because it was getting late (it was about 4 pm.)

## John 1:40

### General Information:

These verses give us information about Andrew and how he brought his brother Peter to Jesus. This happened before they went and saw where Jesus was staying in John 1:39.

### Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Andrew
- John speak
- of Simon Peter

### Translation Words - UST

- was...brother
- Andrew; he
- John
- Simon Peter's

**ULT**
**40** One of the two who heard John speak and then followed Jesus was Andrew, the brother of Simon Peter.

**UST**
**40** One of those two apprentices who heard what John had said and followed Jesus was named Andrew; he was Simon Peter's brother.

## John 1:41

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Messiah
- Christ
- Simon
- translated

### Translation Words - UST

- brother
- Messiah
- Christ
- Simon
- or...in Greek

**ULT**

**41** He first found his own brother Simon and said to him, "We have found the Messiah" (which translated is: Christ).

**UST**

**41** Andrew first went off to find his brother Simon. When he came to him, he said, "We have found the Messiah (or 'Christ' in Greek)!"

# John 1:42

**son...of John (ULT)**
**Your father's name is...John (UST)**

This is not John the Baptist. "John" was a very common name.

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- and Jesus
- will be called
- son
- Simon
- Cephas
- Peter

## Translation Words - UST

- to Jesus
- Jesus
- will be given the name
- Your father's name is
- Simon
- Cephas." Cephas is an Aramaic name
- solid rock.' (Peter...in Greek

**ULT**

**42** He brought him to Jesus, and Jesus looked at him and said, "You are Simon son of John. You will be called Cephas" (which is translated Peter).

**UST**

**42** Andrew took Simon to Jesus. Jesus looked intently at Peter, and said, "You are Simon. Your father's name is John. You will be given the name Cephas." Cephas is an Aramaic name that means 'solid rock.' (Peter means the same thing in Greek.)

## John 1:43

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Galilee
- Philip

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- He went to the region around Galilee
- a man named Philip

**ULT**

**43** The next day, Jesus wanted to go away to Galilee, so he found Philip and said to him, "Follow me."

**UST**

**43** The next day Jesus decided to leave the Jordan River valley. He went to the region around Galilee and found a man named Philip. Jesus said to him, "Come with me."

## John 1:44

**Now Philip was from Bethsaida, from the city of Andrew and Peter (ULT)**

This is background information about Philip. (See: Background Information)

### Translation Words - ULT

- of Andrew
- Philip
- Peter

### Translation Words - UST

- Andrew
- Philip
- Peter

---

**ULT**

**44** Now Philip was from Bethsaida, from the city of Andrew and Peter.

**UST**

**44** Philip, Andrew, and Peter were all from the town of Bethsaida (in Galilee).

# John 1:45

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- son
- prophets
- law
- of Joseph
- Nazareth
- Moses
- Philip
- wrote

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- His father's name is
- prophets prophesied that he would come
- law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law
- Joseph
- the town of Nazareth
- Moses
- Philip...he
- wrote about

**ULT**

**45** Philip found Nathaniel and said to him, "He of whom Moses wrote in the law, and the prophets, we have found him: Jesus son of Joseph, from Nazareth."

**UST**

**45** Then Philip went to search for his friend Nathaniel. When he came to him, he said, "We have found the one Moses wrote about, the Messiah. The prophets prophesied that he would come. The Messiah is Jesus. He is from the town of Nazareth. His father's name is Joseph."

## John 1:46

### Nathaniel said to him (ULT)

"Nathaniel said to Philip"

### Can any good thing come out of Nazareth (ULT) From Nazareth? Can anything good come out of an unimportant place like Nazareth (UST)

This remark appears in the form of a question in order to add emphasis. Alternate translation: "No good thing can come out of Nazareth!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

### Translation Words - ULT

- good thing
- Nazareth
- Philip

### Translation Words - UST

- good
- Nazareth...an unimportant place like Nazareth
- Philip

**ULT**

**46** But Nathaniel said to him, "Can any good thing come out of Nazareth?" Philip said to him, "Come and see."

**UST**

**46** Nathaniel replied, "From Nazareth? Can anything good come out of an unimportant place like Nazareth?" Philip replied, "Come and you will see!"

## John 1:47

**in whom is no deceit (ULT)**
**honest and good...He never deceives anyone (UST)**

This can be stated in a positive way. Alternate translation: "a completely truthful man" (See: Litotes)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Jesus
- true
- a...Israelite
- deceit

**Translation Words - UST**

- Jesus
- true, truth
- an...Israelite
- honest and good...He never deceives anyone

**ULT**

**47** Jesus saw Nathaniel coming to him and said about him, "See, a true Israelite, in whom is no deceit!"

**UST**

**47** When Jesus saw Nathaniel approaching, he said this about him, "Look there! There is an honest and good Israelite! He never deceives anyone!"

## John 1:48

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Philip called you
- Philip called you
- fig tree
- do you know

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- called
- Philip
- fig tree
- do you know what kind of man

**ULT**

**48** Nathaniel said to him, "How do you know me?" Jesus answered and said to him, "Before Philip called you, when you were under the fig tree, I saw you."

**UST**

**48** Nathaniel asked him, "How do you know what kind of man I am? You do not know me." Jesus replied, "I saw you before Philip called you, when you were sitting by yourself under the fig tree."

# John 1:49

**Son of God (ULT)**
**Son of God (UST)**

This is an important title for Jesus. (See: Translating Son and Father)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Rabbi
- of God
- Son of God
- of Israel
- the King

## Translation Words - UST

- Teacher
- of God
- Son of God
- of Israel
- the King...we have been waiting for

**ULT**

**49** Nathaniel replied to him, "Rabbi, you are the Son of God! You are the King of Israel!"

**UST**

**49** Then Nathaniel declared, "Teacher, you must be the Son of God! You are the King of Israel we have been waiting for!"

## John 1:50

**Because I said to you, 'I saw you underneath the fig tree,' do you believe (ULT)**
**Do you trust in me just because I told you that I saw you under the fig tree (UST)**

This remark appears in the form of a question to provide emphasis. Alternate translation: "You believe because I said, 'I saw you underneath the fig tree'! (See: Rhetorical Question)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- do you believe
- fig tree

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Do you trust in me
- fig tree

**ULT**

**50** Jesus replied and said to him, "Because I said to you, 'I saw you underneath the fig tree,' do you believe? You will see greater things than this."

**UST**

**50** Jesus replied to him, "Do you trust in me just because I told you that I saw you under the fig tree? You will see me do things that are much greater than that!"

# John 1:51

### Truly, truly

Translate this the way your language emphasizes that what follows is important and true.

### Translation Words - ULT

- heavens
- angels
- of God
- Truly
- truly (2)
- Son of Man

### Translation Words - UST

- heaven
- angels
- God's
- the truth
- the truth (2)
- Son of Man

**ULT**

**51** Then he said to him, "Truly, truly, I say to you, you will see the heavens opened, and the angels of God ascending and descending upon the Son of Man."

**UST**

**51** Then Jesus said to him, "I am telling you the truth: Just like the vision your ancestor Jacob long ago saw, some day you will see heaven opened up, and you will see God's angels going up and coming down on me, the Son of Man."

# John 2

**John 2 General Notes**

## Special concepts in this chapter

### Wine

The Jews drank wine at many meals and especially when they were celebrating special events. They did not believe that it was a sin to drink wine.

### Driving out the money changers

Jesus drove the money changers out of the temple to show that he had authority over the temple and over all of Israel.

### "He knew what was in man"

Jesus knew what other people were thinking only because he was and is the Son of Man and the Son of God.

## Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

### "His disciples remembered"

John used this phrase to stop telling the main history and to tell about something that happened much later. It was right after he scolded the pigeon sellers (John 2:16) that the Jewish authorities spoke to him. It was after Jesus became alive again that his disciples remembered what the prophet had written long before and that Jesus was talking about the temple of his body (John 2:17 and John 2:22).

## John 2:1

### General Information:

Jesus and his disciples are invited to a wedding. These verse give background information about the setting of the story. (See: Background Information)

### Three days later

Most interpreters read this as on the third day after Jesus called Philip and Nathaniel to follow him. The first day occurs in John 1:35 and the second in John 1:43.

### Translation Words - ULT

- of Jesus
- of Galilee
- Cana
- days later

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- in Galilee
- Cana, a city
- days

**ULT**

**1** Three days later, there was a wedding in Cana of Galilee, and the mother of Jesus was there.

**UST**

**1** Three days later, there was a wedding in Cana, a city in Galilee, and Jesus' mother was there.

## John 2:2

**were invited...Jesus and his disciples...to the wedding (ULT)**
**They...invited...Jesus and his apprentices to the wedding (UST)**

This can be stated in an active form. Alternate translation: "Someone invited Jesus and his disciples to the wedding" (See: Active or Passive)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- disciples

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- apprentices

**ULT**
**2** Jesus and his disciples also were invited to the wedding.

**UST**
**2** They also invited Jesus and his apprentices to the wedding.

# John 2:3

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

## Translation Words - ULT

- of Jesus
- the wine
- wine

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- wine…the wine
- wine

**ULT**

**3** When the wine ran out, the mother of Jesus said to him, "They have no wine."

**UST**

**3** They served wine to those attending the wedding and they drank all the wine they had. Jesus' mother said to him, "They are out of wine."

# John 2:4

### Woman (ULT)
### Madam (UST)

This refers to Mary. If it is impolite for a son to call his mother "woman" in your language, use another word that is polite, or leave it out.

### what is that to me and to you (ULT)

This question is asked to provide emphasis. Alternate translation: "this has nothing to do with me." or "you should not tell me what to do." (See: Rhetorical Question)

### My time has not yet come (ULT)
### The chosen time to begin my most important work has not come yet (UST)

The word "time" is a metonym that represents the right occasion for Jesus to show that he is the Messiah by working miracles. Alternate translation: "It is not yet the right time for me to perform a mighty act" (See: Metonymy)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- time

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- chosen time

---

**ULT**

**4** But Jesus said to her, "Woman, what is that to me and to you? My time has not yet come."

**UST**

**4** Jesus said to her, "Madam, what does that have to do with me? The chosen time to begin my most important work has not come yet."

## John 2:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

**Translation Words - ULT**

> • servants

**Translation Words - UST**

> • to the servants

---

**ULT**

**5** His mother said to the servants, "Whatever he says to you, do it."

**UST**

**5** Jesus' mother turned and said to the servants, "Do whatever he tells you."

---

## John 2:6

**two to three metretes (ULT)**
**75 to 115 liters (UST)**

You may convert this to a modern measure. Alternate translation:
"75 to 115 liters" (See: Biblical Volume)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jewish
- ceremonial washing

### Translation Words - UST

- so that the guests and servants could wash their hands and
  feet, and so that other Jewish rites of cleansing could be done
- so that the guests and servants could wash their hands and
  feet, and so that other Jewish rites of cleansing could be done

**ULT**

**6** Now there were six stone water pots used for the Jewish ceremonial washing standing there, each containing two to three metretes.

**UST**

**6** There were six empty stone jars there. They held water so that the guests and servants could wash their hands and feet, and so that other Jewish rites of cleansing could be done. Each jar could hold 75 to 115 liters.

## John 2:7

**up to the brim (ULT)**
**to the brim (UST)**

This means "to the very top" or "completely full."

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Jesus
- with water

**Translation Words - UST**

- Jesus
- with water

**ULT**

**7** Jesus said to them, "Fill the water pots with water." So they filled them up to the brim.

**UST**

**7** Jesus said to the servants, "Fill the jars with water!" So they filled the jars to the brim.

# John 2:8

**to the head waiter (ULT)**
**to the director of the wedding feast (UST)**

This refers to the person in charge of the food and drink.

**ULT**

**8** Then he told the servants, "Take some out now and take it to the head waiter." So they did.

**UST**

**8** Then he told them, "Now, ladle some water out of a jar and take it to the director of the wedding feast." So the servants did that.

# John 2:9

**but the servants who had drawn the water knew (ULT)**

This is background information. (See: Background Information)

## Translation Words - ULT

- called
- servants
- water
- water (2)
- wine
- bridegroom
- he...know
- knew

## Translation Words - UST

- So...called...to himself
- servants
- water
- water (2)
- wine
- bridegroom
- He did...know
- knew

**ULT**

**9** Then when the head waiter tasted the water that had become wine (now he did not know where it was from, but the servants who had drawn the water knew), the head waiter called the bridegroom

**UST**

**9** The director of the feast tasted the water, which had now become wine. He did not know where the wine had come from, although the servants knew. So he called the bridegroom to himself.

## John 2:10

**they are drunk (ULT)**
**the guests have drunk a lot and the best is gone (UST)**

unable to tell the difference between cheap wine and expensive wine because of drinking too much alcohol

### Translation Words - ULT

- good
- good (2)
- they are drunk
- wine
- wine (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- best
- best (2)
- the guests have drunk a lot and the best is gone
- wine
- wine (2)

**ULT**

**10** and said to him, "Every man serves the good wine first and then the cheaper wine when they are drunk. But you have kept the good wine until now."

**UST**

**10** "Everyone serves the best wine first, and later when the guests have drunk a lot and the best is gone, then they serve the cheap wine. But you have kept the best wine until now."

# John 2:11

## Connecting Statement:

This verse is not part of the main story line, but rather it gives a comment about the story. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

## Cana (ULT)
## the village of Cana…There (UST)

This is a place name. (See: How to Translate Names)

## he revealed his glory (ULT)
## he showed that he could do amazing things (UST)

Here "his glory" refers to the mighty power of Jesus. Alternate translation: "showed his power"

## Translation Words - ULT

- he revealed
- Jesus
- sign
- glory
- believed
- disciples
- in him
- of Galilee
- Cana

## Translation Words - UST

- he showed that
- Jesus…Jesus. He
- miracle…one that signified truth about
- he could do amazing things
- trusted
- apprentices
- in him
- in the region…Galilee
- the village of Cana…There

**ULT**

**11** This first sign Jesus did in Cana of Galilee, and he revealed his glory, and his disciples believed in him.

**UST**

**11** That was the first miracle Jesus did, one that signified truth about Jesus. He did it in the village of Cana, in the region of Galilee. There he showed that he could do amazing things. So his apprentices trusted in him.

## John 2:12

**went down (ULT)**
**went down (UST)**

This indicates that they went from a higher place to a lower place. Capernaum is northeast of Cana and is at a lower elevation.

**his brothers (ULT)**
**brothers (UST)**

The word "brothers" includes both brothers and sisters. All Jesus' brothers and sisters were younger than he was.

### Translation Words - ULT

- his brothers
- disciples
- Capernaum
- days

### Translation Words - UST

- brothers
- apprentices
- the city of Capernaum
- days

**ULT**

**12** After this Jesus, and his mother, and his brothers, and his disciples went down to Capernaum and they stayed there for a few days.

**UST**

**12** After this Jesus and his mother and brothers, along with his apprentices, went down to the city of Capernaum, and they stayed there a few days.

# John 2:13

## General Information:

Jesus and his disciples go up to Jerusalem to the temple.

## went up to Jerusalem (ULT)
## went up to Jerusalem (UST)

This indicates that he went from a lower place to a higher place. Jerusalem is built on a hill.

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Jews
- Passover
- Jerusalem

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus and his apprentices
- Jewish
- Passover Celebration
- Jerusalem

**ULT**

**13** Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and Jesus went up to Jerusalem.

**UST**

**13** Now it was almost time for the Jewish Passover Celebration. Jesus and his apprentices went up to Jerusalem.

# John 2:14

**were sitting there (ULT)**
**sitting at tables (UST)**

The next verse makes it clear that these people are in the temple courtyard. That area was intended for worship and not for commerce.

**sellers of oxen and sheep and pigeons**

People are buying animals in the temple courtyard to sacrifice them to God.

**money changers (ULT)**
**men...selling temple money (UST)**

> **ULT**
> **14** He found in the temple sellers of oxen and sheep and pigeons, and the money changers were sitting there.
>
> **UST**
> **14** There in the temple courtyard he saw men selling cattle, sheep, and pigeons. The animals were sold to those who were making their sacrifices at the temple. He also saw men sitting at tables selling temple money.

Jewish authorities required people who wanted to buy animals for sacrifices to exchange their money for special money from the "money changers."

## Translation Words - ULT

- temple
- of oxen
- pigeons
- sheep

## Translation Words - UST

- temple courtyard
- cattle, sheep, and pigeons. The animals were sold to those who were making their sacrifices at the temple
- cattle, sheep, and pigeons. The animals were sold to those who were making their sacrifices at the temple
- cattle, sheep, and pigeons. The animals were sold to those who were making their sacrifices at the temple

## John 2:15

**So (ULT)**
**So (UST)**

This word marks an event that happens because of something else that has happened first. In this case, Jesus has seen the money changers sitting in the temple.

### Translation Words - ULT

- temple
- oxen
- and drove...out
- sheep

### Translation Words - UST

- temple
- cattle
- and he used...to drive out
- sheep

**ULT**

**15** So he made a whip of cords <u>and drove</u> all of them <u>out</u> from the <u>temple</u>, including both the <u>sheep</u> and the <u>oxen</u>. He scattered the coins of the money changers and overthrew their tables.

**UST**

**15** So Jesus made a whip from some braided leather strips <u>and he used</u> it <u>to drive out</u> the <u>sheep</u> and the <u>cattle</u> from the <u>temple</u>. He overturned the tables of the moneychangers and scattered their coins on the ground.

## John 2:16

### Stop making the house of my Father a marketplace

"Stop buying and selling things in my Father's house"

### the house of my Father (ULT)
### my Father's house (UST)

This is a phrase Jesus uses to refer to the temple.

### of my Father (ULT)
### my Father's (UST)

This is an important title that Jesus uses for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

### Translation Words - ULT

- of...Father
- pigeon
- house
- a marketplace (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- Father's
- pigeons
- house
- a marketplace (2)

**ULT**

**16** To the pigeon sellers, he said, "Take these things away from here. Stop making the house of my Father a marketplace."

**UST**

**16** He commanded those who were selling pigeons, "Take these pigeons out of here! Do not turn my Father's house into a marketplace!"

## John 2:17

**it was written (ULT)**

This can be stated in an active form. Alternate translation: "someone had written" (See: Active or Passive)

**for your house (ULT)**
**your house…O God (UST)**

This term refers to the temple, God's house.

**will consume (ULT)**
**that…will die for it (UST)**

The word "consume" points to the metaphor of "fire." Jesus' love for the temple is like a fire that burns within him. (See: Metaphor)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Zeal
- disciples
- written
- will consume
- for…house

### Translation Words - UST

- I love…so much
- apprentices
- someone had written in the scriptures long before
- that…will die for it
- house

**ULT**

**17** His disciples remembered that it was written, "Zeal for your house will consume me."

**UST**

**17** This reminded his apprentices about what someone had written in the scriptures long before, "I love your house so much, O God, that I will die for it."

## John 2:18

**sign (ULT)**
**miracle (UST)**

This refers to an event that proves something is true.

**these things (ULT)**
**what you are doing (UST)**

This refers to Jesus' actions against the money changers in the temple.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- sign
- Jewish authorities

**Translation Words - UST**

- miracle
- Jewish leaders

**ULT**

**18** Then the Jewish authorities responded and said to him, "What sign will you show us, since you are doing these things?"

**UST**

**18** One of the Jewish leaders asked him, "What miracle can you do for us to prove you have permission from God to do what you are doing?"

## John 2:19

**Destroy this temple, and in three days I will raise it up (ULT)**
**Destroy this temple, and in three days I will rebuild it again (UST)**

Jesus is stating a hypothetical situation in which something would certainly happen if something else that is not true were true. In this case, he would certainly raise the temple up if the Jewish authorities were to destroy it. He is not commanding the Jewish authorities to tear down the actual temple building. You can translate the words "destroy" and "raise" using the usual words for tearing down and rebuilding a building. Alternate translation: "If you destroy this temple, I will certainly raise it up" or "You can be certain that if you were to destroy this temple, I would raise it up" (See: Hypothetical Situations and Metaphor)

**ULT**

**19** Jesus replied and said to them, "Destroy this temple, and in three days I will raise it up."

**UST**

**19** Jesus replied to them, "Destroy this temple, and in three days I will rebuild it again."

**I will raise it up (ULT)**
**I will rebuild it again (UST)**

"cause it to stand"

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- temple
- I will raise...up
- days

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- temple
- I will rebuild...again
- days

# John 2:20

## General Information:

Verses 21 and 22 are not part of the main story line, but instead they comment on the story and tell about something that happens later. (See: End of Story)

## in forty...six...years...three days (ULT)
## forty...six years...just three days (UST)

"46 years...3 days" (See: Numbers)

## you will raise it up in three days (ULT)
## you are going to rebuild this entire temple in just three days (UST)

This remark appears in the form of a question to show that the Jewish authorities understand that Jesus wants to tear down the temple and build it again in three days. "Raise" is an idiom for "establish." Alternate translation: "you will establish it in three days?" or "you cannot possibly rebuild it in three days!" (See: Rhetorical Question and Idiom)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jewish authorities
- temple
- years
- will raise...up
- days

## Translation Words - UST

- they
- this
- years
- are going to rebuild
- days

## John 2:21

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- of...body
- temple

### Translation Words - UST

- body, not the temple building
- temple

# John 2:22

**they believed (ULT)**
**They believed both (UST)**

Here "believe" means to accept something or trust that it is true.

**this statement (ULT)**
**what...had said (UST)**

This refers back to Jesus' statement in John 2:19.

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- scripture
- statement
- they believed
- disciples
- the dead
- he was raised

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus himself
- what the scriptures said
- what...had said
- They believed both
- disciples
- the dead
- God had raised him

**ULT**

**22** Therefore, after he was raised from the dead, his disciples remembered that he said this, and they believed the scripture and this statement that Jesus had spoken.

**UST**

**22** Later, after Jesus had died and God had raised him from the dead, his disciples remembered what he had said about the temple. They believed both what the scriptures said and what Jesus himself had said.

## John 2:23

### Now when he was in Jerusalem (ULT)

The word "now" introduces us to a new event in the story.

### believed in his name (ULT)
### trusted in him (UST)

Here "name" is a metonym that represents the person of Jesus.
Alternate translation: "believed in him" or "trusted in him" (See:
Metonymy)

### the signs that he did (ULT)
### the miracles that signified truth (UST)

Miracles can also be called "signs" because they are used as evidence
that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.

**ULT**

**23** Now when he was in Jerusalem at the
Passover at the festival, many believed
in his name when they saw the signs
that he did.

**UST**

**23** When Jesus was in Jerusalem during
the Passover Festival, many people
trusted in him because they saw the
miracles that signified truth about
Jesus.

### Translation Words - ULT

- signs
- Passover
- believed
- name
- Jerusalem
- festival

### Translation Words - UST

- miracles
- Passover
- trusted
- him
- Jerusalem
- Festival

## John 2:24

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- trust
- knew

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- did...trust
- knew what people were like, and...knew them so well

**ULT**

**24** But Jesus himself did not trust himself to them because he knew them all,

**UST**

**24** Nevertheless, Jesus knew what people were like, and because he knew them so well, he did not trust them.

# John 2:25

### about man...for he knew what was in man (ULT)

Here the word "man" represents people in general. Alternate translation: "about people, for he knew what was in people" (See: When Masculine Words Include Women)

### Translation Words - ULT

- to testify
- he knew

### Translation Words - UST

- to tell him
- knew

**ULT**

**25** and because he did not need for anyone to testify to him about man, for he knew what was in man.

**UST**

**25** He did not need anyone to tell him how evil people were. He knew everything about what they were thinking and wanting.

# John 3

**John 3 General Notes**

## Special concepts in this chapter

### Light and darkness

The Bible often speaks of unrighteous people, people who do not do what pleases God, as if they were walking around in darkness. It speaks of light as if it were what enables those sinful people to become righteous, to understand what they are doing wrong and begin to obey God. (See: righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness)

## Possible translation difficulties in this chapter

### "Son of Man"

Jesus refers to himself as the "Son of Man" in this chapter (John 3:13). Your language may not allow people to speak of themselves as if they were speaking about someone else. (See: Son of Man, son of man and First, Second or Third Person)

# John 3:1

## General Information:

Nicodemus comes to see Jesus.

## Now (ULT)

This word is used here to mark a new part of the story and to introduce Nicodemus. (See: Introduction of New and Old Participants)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jewish
- whose name was
- Pharisees
- a...leader

## Translation Words - UST

- Jewish
- named
- Pharisees, a very strict group within the Jewish faith of that day
- He was an important man, a member of the highest...governing council

**ULT**

**1** Now there was a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader.

**UST**

**1** There was a man named Nicodemus. He was a member of the Pharisees, a very strict group within the Jewish faith of that day. He was an important man, a member of the highest Jewish governing council.

# John 3:2

**we know (ULT)**
**we know...We know (UST)**

Here "we" is exclusive, referring only to Nicodemus and the other members of the Jewish council.

## Translation Words - ULT

- signs
- Rabbi
- God
- God
- can
- you are a teacher
- we know

## Translation Words - UST

- miracles
- Teacher
- God
- God
- could perform
- are a teacher
- we know...We know

**ULT**

**2** This man came to Jesus at night and said to him, "Rabbi, we know that you are a teacher who came from God, for no one can do these signs that you do unless God is with him."

**UST**

**2** He went by night to see Jesus. He said to Jesus, "Teacher, we know that you are a teacher who has come from God. We know this because no one could perform the miracles you are doing unless God helped him."

# John 3:3

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus and Nicodemus continue talking.

### Truly, truly

See how you translated this in John 1:51.

### is born again (ULT)
### he is born again (UST)

"born from above" or "born of God"

### kingdom of God (ULT)
### God's...kingdom (UST)

The word "kingdom" is a metaphor for the rule of God. Alternate translation: "place where God rules" (See: Metaphor)

**ULT**

**3** Jesus replied and said to him, "Truly, truly I say to you, unless someone is born again, he cannot see the kingdom of God."

**UST**

**3** Jesus replied to what Nicodemus said, "I am telling you the truth, no one can enter God's kingdom unless he is born again."

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- of God
- Truly
- truly (2)
- kingdom of God
- is born
- kingdom

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- God's
- the truth
- the truth (2)
- God's...kingdom
- he is born again
- kingdom

## John 3:4

**How can a man be born when he is old (ULT)**
**How can a person be born again when he is old (UST)**

Nicodemus uses this question to emphasize that this cannot happen. Alternate translation: "A man certainly cannot be born again when he is old!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

**He cannot enter a second time into his mother's womb and be born, can he (ULT)**

Nicodemus also uses this question to emphasize his belief that a second birth is impossible. "Certainly, he cannot enter a second time into his mother's womb! (See: Rhetorical Question)

**a second time (ULT)**
**a second time (UST)**

"again" or "twice"

**womb (ULT)**
**womb (UST)**

the part of a woman's body where a baby grows

**Translation Words - ULT**

- womb

**Translation Words - UST**

- womb

---

**ULT**

[4] Nicodemus said to him, "How can a man be born when he is old? He cannot enter a second time into his mother's womb and be born, can he?"

**UST**

[4] Then Nicodemus said to him, "How can a person be born again when he is old? No one can enter his mother's womb and be born a second time!"

# John 3:5

### Truly, truly

You can translate this in the same way you did in John 3:3.

### is born of water and the Spirit (ULT)
### he is born both…by water and the Spirit (UST)

There are two possible meanings: 1) "baptized in water and in the Spirit" or 2) "born physically and spiritually" (See: Metaphor)

### enter into the kingdom of God (ULT)
### enter God's kingdom (UST)

The word "kingdom" is a metaphor for the rule of God in one's life.
Alternate translation: "experience the rule of God in his life" (See: Metaphor)

**ULT**

**5** Jesus replied, "Truly, truly I say to you, unless someone is born of water and the Spirit, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God.

**UST**

**5** Jesus answered, "I guarantee that this also is true, no one can enter God's kingdom unless he is born both by water and the Spirit.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- of God
- the Spirit
- Truly
- truly (2)
- kingdom of God
- is born
- water
- kingdom

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- God's
- the Spirit
- this also is true
- this also is true (2)
- God's…kingdom
- he is born both
- water
- kingdom

# John 3:6

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

## Translation Words - ULT

- flesh
- flesh
- Spirit
- spirit
- that which is born (2)

## Translation Words - UST

- human
- a human being
- work of God's Spirit
- have a new spiritual nature that God makes within them
- are born again (2)

**ULT**

**6** That which is born of the flesh is flesh, and that which is born of the Spirit is spirit.

**UST**

**6** If someone is born from a human, that person is a human being. But those who are born again by the work of God's Spirit have a new spiritual nature that God makes within them.

## John 3:7

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues speaking to Nicodemus.

### You must be born again (ULT)
### you must be born again and have a new life from God (UST)

"You must be born from above"

### Translation Words - ULT

- be born
- be amazed

### Translation Words - UST

- be born
- Do…be amazed

**ULT**

**7** Do not be amazed that I said to you, 'You must be born again.'

**UST**

**7** Do not be amazed when I tell you that you must be born again and have a new life from God.

## John 3:8

**The wind blows wherever it wishes (ULT)**
**The wind blows wherever it wants (UST)**

In the source language, wind and Spirit are the same word. The speaker here refers to the wind as if it were a person. Alternate translation: "The Holy Spirit is like a wind that blows wherever it wants" (See: Personification)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Spirit
- who is born
- sound
- you…know

### Translation Words - UST

- Spirit…Spirit…he
- who is made alive…gives a new birth
- sound
- you do…know

**ULT**

**8** The wind blows wherever it wishes, and you hear its sound, but you do not know where it comes from or where it is going. So is everyone who is born of the Spirit."

**UST**

**8** It is like this: The wind blows wherever it wants. You hear the sound of the wind, but you do not know where it comes from or where it goes. It is just like that with everyone who is made alive by the Spirit: The Spirit gives a new birth to whomever he desires.

## John 3:9

**How can these things be (ULT)**
**How can this be true (UST)**

This question adds emphasis to the statement. Alternate translation: "This cannot be!" or "This is not able to happen!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

**ULT**

[9] Nicodemus replied and said to him, "How can these things be?"

**UST**

[9] Nicodemus replied to him, "How can this be true?"

## John 3:10

**Are you a teacher of Israel, and yet you do not understand these things (ULT)**
**You are an important teacher in Israel, and yet you do not understand what I am saying (UST)**

Jesus knows that Nicodemus is a teacher. He is not looking for information. Alternate translation: "You are a teacher of Israel, so I am surprised you do not understand these things!" or "You are a teacher of Israel, so you should understand these things!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

**and...Are you a teacher of Israel...you do not understand (ULT)**

The word "you" is singular and refers to Nicodemus. (See: Forms of You)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- of Israel
- you...understand
- a teacher

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- in Israel
- you do...understand
- an important teacher

---

**ULT**

**10** Jesus answered and said to him, "Are you a teacher of Israel, and yet you do not understand these things?

**UST**

**10** Jesus replied to him, "You are an important teacher in Israel, and yet you do not understand what I am saying?

# John 3:11

**you do not accept (ULT)**
**none of you to whom we speak these things trusts (UST)**

The word "you" is plural and refers to Jews in general. (See: Forms of You)

**Truly, truly**

Translate this the way your language emphasizes that what follows is important and true. See how you translated this in John 1:51.

**we speak (ULT)**
**we say (UST)**

When Jesus said "we," he was not including Nicodemus. (See: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We')

## Translation Words - ULT

- we testify about
- testimony
- Truly
- truly (2)
- you...accept
- what we know

## Translation Words - UST

- we are telling you
- what...are saying
- the truth
- the truth (2)
- none of you to whom we speak these things trusts
- the things that my apprentices and I know to be true

**ULT**

**11** Truly, truly, I say to you, we speak what we know, and we testify about what we have seen. Yet you do not accept our testimony.

**UST**

**11** I am telling you the truth, we say the things that my apprentices and I know to be true, and we are telling you what we have seen, yet none of you to whom we speak these things trusts what we are saying.

## John 3:12

**Connecting Statement:**

Jesus continues responding to Nicodemus.

**I told you...you do not believe, how...if I tell you...will you believe (ULT)**
**what I say when I tell you...you do not trust...how...what I say when I tell you...will you trust (UST)**

In all three places "you" is plural and refers to Jews in general. (See: Forms of You)

**how will you believe if I tell you about heavenly things (ULT)**
**how will you trust what I say when I tell you about things of heaven (UST)**

This question emphasizes the disbelief of Nicodemus and the Jews. Alternate translation: "you certainly will not believe if I tell you about heavenly things!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

**I told you...you do not believe, how...if I tell you...will you believe (ULT)**
**what I say when I tell you...you do not trust...how...what I say when I tell you...will you trust (UST)**

spiritual things

### ULT

**12** If I told you about earthly things and you do not believe, how will you believe if I tell you about heavenly things?

### UST

**12** If you do not trust what I say when I tell you about things of this earth, how will you trust what I say when I tell you about things of heaven?

**Translation Words - ULT**

- about heavenly things
- you...believe
- will you believe
- earthly

**Translation Words - UST**

- about things of heaven
- you do...trust
- will you trust
- of this earth

# John 3:13

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

## Translation Words - ULT

- heaven
- heaven
- Son of Man

## Translation Words - UST

- heaven
- here to the earth
- Son of Man

---

**ULT**

**13** No one has ascended into heaven except he who descended from heaven —the Son of Man.

**UST**

**13** I, the Son of Man, am the only one who has gone up to heaven, and I am the only one who has come down here to the earth.

# John 3:14

## Just as...Moses lifted up the serpent in the wilderness, so must the Son of Man be lifted up (ULT)

This figure of speech is called a simile. Some people will "lift up" Jesus just as Moses "lifted up" the bronze serpent in the wilderness. (See: Simile)

## in the wilderness (ULT)
## when he was in the desolate area during the Exodus (UST)

The wilderness is a dry, desert place, but here it refers specifically to the place where Moses and the Israelites walked around for forty years.

## Translation Words - ULT

- Son of Man
- Moses
- wilderness
- Just as
- serpent

## Translation Words - UST

- Son of Man
- Long ago Moses
- when he was in the desolate area during the Exodus
- In the same way
- a model of a poisonous snake...and all who looked up at it were saved

**ULT**

**14** Just as Moses lifted up the serpent in the wilderness, so must the Son of Man be lifted up,

**UST**

**14** Long ago Moses, when he was in the desolate area during the Exodus, lifted up a model of a poisonous snake on a pole and all who looked up at it were saved. In the same way, the Son of Man must allow himself to be lifted up on a cross

# John 3:15

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

## Translation Words - ULT

- life
- eternal
- who believe

## Translation Words - UST

- life
- eternal
- whoever looks up and trusts

**ULT**
**15** so that all who believe in him may have eternal life.

**UST**
**15** so that whoever looks up and trusts in him will have eternal life.

# John 3:16

### so...God...loved the world (ULT)
### in this way...God loved the world (UST)

Here "world" is a metonym that refers to everyone in the world. (See: Metonymy)

### loved (ULT)
### loved (UST)

This is the kind of love that comes from God and is focused on the good of others, even when it does not benefit oneself. God himself is love and is the source of true love.

## Translation Words - ULT

- life
- eternal
- will...perish
- loved
- God
- Son
- world
- believes
- in him

## Translation Words - UST

- life
- that never ends
- would...die
- loved
- God
- his...Son
- world
- anyone who trusts
- in him

**ULT**

**16** For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whoever believes in him will not perish but have eternal life.

**UST**

**16** God loved the world in this way: He gave his only Son, so that anyone who trusts in him would not die, but would have life that never ends.

## John 3:17

**For God did not send the Son into the world in order to condemn the world, but in order to save the world through him (ULT)**

These two clauses mean nearly the same thing, said twice for emphasis, first in the negative and then in the positive. Some languages may indicate emphasis in a different way. Alternate translation: God's real reason for sending his Son into the world was to save it" (See: Parallelism and Double Negatives)

**in order to condemn (ULT)**
**to pronounce sentence on (UST)**

> **ULT**
>
> **17** For God did not send the Son into the world in order to condemn the world, but in order to save the world through him.
>
> **UST**
>
> **17** God did not send his Son into the world to pronounce sentence on it, but to save it.

"to punish." Usually "punish" implies that the person who has been punished is then accepted by God. When a person is condemned, he is punished but never accepted by God.

### Translation Words - ULT

- save
- condemn
- God
- Son
- world
- world (2)
- world
- send

### Translation Words - UST

- save
- pronounce sentence on
- God
- his Son
- world
- it (2)
- it
- did...send

# John 3:18

**Son of God (ULT)**
**Son of God (UST)**

This is an important title for Jesus. (See: Translating Son and Father)

## Translation Words - ULT

- is...condemned
- is...condemned
- of God
- Son of God
- He who believes
- who...believe (2)
- he has...believed
- name
- in him

## Translation Words - UST

- God will...condemn
- God has...put under his condemnation
- of God
- Son of God
- Everyone who trusts
- does...trust in him (2)
- they did...put their trust
- name
- in the Son

---

**ULT**

**18** He who believes in him is not condemned, but he who does not believe is already condemned because he has not believed in the name of the only begotten Son of God.

**UST**

**18** Everyone who trusts in the Son, God will never condemn. But everyone who does not trust in him, God has already put under his condemnation, because they did not put their trust in the name of the only Son of God.

# John 3:19

**Connecting Statement:**

Jesus finishes responding to Nicodemus.

**The light has come into the world (ULT)**
**His light has come into the world (UST)**

The word "light" is a metaphor for God's truth that is revealed in Jesus. Jesus speaks of himself in the third person. If your language does not allow people to speak of themselves in the third person, you may need to specify who the light is. The "world" is a metonym for all of the people who live in the world. Alternate translation: "The one who is like a light has revealed God's truth to all people" or "I, who am like a light, have come into the world" (See: Metaphor and Metonymy and First, Second or Third Person)

**men loved...the darkness (ULT)**
**the people of this world have loved...They loved...their darkness...the darkness (UST)**

Here "darkness" is a metaphor for evil. (See: Metaphor)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- loved
- deeds
- world
- judgment
- evil
- darkness
- light
- light (2)

**Translation Words - UST**

- have loved...loved
- what...were doing
- world
- God has made his justice for sinful people plain for all to see
- ugly and evil
- darkness...darkness
- light
- light (2)

**ULT**
**19** But this is the reason for the judgment: The light has come into the world, and men loved the darkness rather than the light because their deeds were evil.

**UST**
**19** God has made his justice for sinful people plain for all to see: His light has come into the world, but the people of this world have loved their darkness and they hide from the light. They loved the darkness because what they were doing was ugly and evil.

## John 3:20

### so that his deeds will not be exposed (ULT)

This can be stated in an active form. Alternate translation: "so that the light will not show the things he does" or "so that the light does not make clear his deeds" (See: Active or Passive)

### Translation Words - ULT

- deeds
- evil
- light
- light (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- what…do
- who does wicked deeds
- light
- it (2)

**ULT**

**20** For everyone who does evil hates the light, and does not come to the light, so that his deeds will not be exposed.

**UST**

**20** Everyone who does wicked deeds hates the light, and they never will come to it because the light exposes what they do and reveals how wicked they are.

# John 3:21

**it may be plainly seen that his deeds (ULT)**
**what they do may be seen by all and so that all might**
**know that (UST)**

This can be stated in an active form. Alternate translation: "people may clearly see his deeds" or "everyone may clearly see the things he does" (See: Active or Passive)

## Translation Words - ULT

- it may be plainly seen
- God
- truth
- deeds
- light
- done

## Translation Words - UST

- may be seen by all
- they were obeying God when
- what is good and true
- what…do
- light
- they did these things

**ULT**

**21** However, he who practices the truth comes to the light so that it may be plainly seen that his deeds have been done in God."

**UST**

**21** But those who do what is good and true come to the light so that what they do may be seen by all and so that all might know that they were obeying God when they did these things.

## John 3:22

**After this (ULT)**
**After those things happened (UST)**

This refers to after Jesus had spoken with Nicodemus. See how you translated this in John 2:12.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- baptized
- disciples
- of Judea

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- he baptized many people
- apprentices
- of Judea

## John 3:23

**Aenon (ULT)**
**the village of Aenon (UST)**

This word means "springs," as of water. (See: How to Translate Names)

**to Salim (ULT)**
**Salim in the region of Samaria (UST)**

a village or town next to the Jordan River (See: How to Translate Names)

**was...because much water...there (ULT)**

"because there were many springs in that place"

**were being baptized (ULT)**
**to John (UST)**

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "John was baptizing them" or "he was baptizing them" (See: Active or Passive)

**ULT**

**23** Now John was also baptizing in Aenon near to Salim because much water was there. People were coming to him and were being baptized,

**UST**

**23** John the Baptizer was also baptizing people near the village of Aenon near Salim in the region of Samaria. There was much water in that place, and so many people kept coming to John.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- baptizing
- were being baptized
- John
- water

**Translation Words - UST**

- was...baptizing people
- to John
- John the Baptizer
- water

# John 3:24

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

## Translation Words - ULT

- John
- prison

## Translation Words - UST

- him
- prison

# John 3:25

## Then there arose a dispute between some of John's disciples and a Jew (ULT)

This can be stated in an active form for clarity. Alternate translation: "Then John's disciples and a Jew began to argue" (See: Active or Passive)

## a dispute (ULT)
## An argument (UST)

a fight using words

## Translation Words - ULT

- a Jew
- ceremonial washing
- some of...disciples
- John's
- there arose

## Translation Words - UST

- one particular Jewish man
- washing to make oneself acceptable to God
- apprentices
- John's
- arose

**ULT**

**25** Then there arose a dispute between some of John's disciples and a Jew about ceremonial washing.

**UST**

**25** An argument arose between some of John's apprentices and one particular Jewish man about washing to make oneself acceptable to God.

## John 3:26

**you have testified, look, he is baptizing (ULT)**
**You pointed him out to us and told us who he was.**
**Well, now he is baptizing across the way in Judea (UST)**

In this phrase, "look" is a command meaning "pay attention!"
Alternate translation: "you have testified, 'Look! He is baptizing,'" or
"you have testified. 'Look at that! He is baptizing,'" (See: Assumed
Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### Translation Words - ULT

- is baptizing
- Rabbi
- have testified
- Jordan River
- John

### Translation Words - UST

- is baptizing across the way in Judea
- Teacher
- pointed him out to us and told us who he was
- of the Jordan River
- John

**ULT**

**26** So they went to John and said to him,
"Rabbi, the one who was with you on
the other side of the Jordan River, about
whom you have testified, look, he is
baptizing, and they are all going to
him."

**UST**

**26** Those who were arguing came to
John and said, "Teacher, there was a
man who was with you when you were
baptizing people on the other side of
the Jordan River. You pointed him out to
us and told us who he was. Well, now he
is baptizing across the way in Judea and
many people are going out to him."

# John 3:27

**A man cannot receive anything unless (ULT)**
**A person cannot receive even one thing unless (UST)**

"Nobody has any power unless"

**it has been given to him from heaven (ULT)**
**God gives it to him (UST)**

Here "heaven" is used as a metonym to refer to God. This can be stated in an active form. Alternate translation: "God has given it to him" (See: Metonymy and Active or Passive)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- heaven
- John
- receive

**Translation Words - UST**

- God
- John
- receive

## John 3:28

**You yourselves (ULT)**
**You (UST)**

This "You" is plural and refers to all the people John is talking to. Alternate translation: "You all" or "All of you" (See: Forms of You and Reflexive Pronouns)

**I have been sent before him (ULT)**
**I was sent before him to make the road good for when he came (UST)**

This can be stated in an active form. Alternate translation: "God sent me to arrive before him" (See: Active or Passive)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- can testify
- Christ
- sent

**Translation Words - UST**

- know...was telling the truth
- Messiah
- sent...to make the road good for when he came

**ULT**

**28** You yourselves can testify to me that I said, 'I am not the Christ,' but instead, 'I have been sent before him.'

**UST**

**28** You know I was telling the truth when I told you, 'I am not the Messiah, but I was sent before him to make the road good for when he came.'

# John 3:29

### Connecting Statement:

John the Baptist continues speaking.

### The one who has the bride is the bridegroom (ULT)

Here the "bride" and "bridegroom" are metaphors. Jesus is like the "bridegroom" and John is like the friend of the "bridegroom." (See: Metaphor)

### This, then, is my joy made complete (ULT)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "So then I rejoice greatly" or "So I rejoice much" (See: Active or Passive)

### my joy

The word "my" refers to John the Baptist, the one who is speaking.

### Translation Words - ULT

- is...made complete
- voice
- rejoices greatly
- rejoices greatly
- joy
- bride
- the bridegroom
- bridegroom
- bridegroom (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- is overflowing
- voice
- is very happy
- is very happy
- joy
- bride, bridal
- bridegroom
- of the bridegroom...of the bridegroom
- bridegroom's (2)

---

**ULT**

**29** The one who has the bride is the bridegroom. Now the friend of the bridegroom, who stands and hears him, rejoices greatly because of the voice of the bridegroom. This, then, is my joy made complete.

**UST**

**29** I am like the friend of the bridegroom. I am standing there waiting for the groom to come. The friend of the bridegroom is very happy when he hears the bridegroom's voice when he finally arrives. Therefore, because all this has happened, my joy is overflowing because he has come.

---

## John 3:30

**He must increase (ULT)**
**Over time he will grow in status and importance (UST)**

"He" refers to the bridegroom, Jesus, who will continue to grow in importance.

**ULT**

**30** He must increase, but I must decrease.

**UST**

**30** Over time he will grow in status and importance, and I will become less and less important.

## John 3:31

**He who comes from above is above all (ULT)**
**Jesus comes from heaven, and he is higher in position than anyone else (UST)**

"He who comes from heaven is more important than anyone else"

**He who is from the earth is from the earth and speaks about the earth (ULT)**
**We have our home on earth, and we can speak only of things that belong to the earth (UST)**

John means that Jesus is greater than he is since Jesus is from heaven, and John was born on the earth. Alternate translation: "He who is born in this world is like everyone else who lives in the world and he speaks about what happens in this world" (See: Metonymy)

> **ULT**
>
> **31** He who comes from above is above all. He who is from the <u>earth</u> is from the <u>earth</u> and speaks about the <u>earth</u>. He who comes from <u>heaven</u> is above all.
>
> **UST**
>
> **31** Jesus comes from heaven, and he is higher in position than anyone else. <u>We have our home on earth</u>, and we can speak <u>only of things that belong to the earth</u>. The one who comes from <u>heaven</u> is above everyone on the earth and everything there is.

**He who comes...is above all...from...heaven (ULT)**
**Jesus comes...and he is higher in position than anyone else...We have our home on earth... heaven (UST)**

This means the same thing as the first sentence. John repeats this for emphasis.

### Translation Words - ULT

- heaven
- earth
- earth (2)
- earth (3)

### Translation Words - UST

- heaven
- We have our home on earth
- We have our home on earth (2)
- only of things that belong to the earth (3)

## John 3:32

### He testifies about what he has seen and heard

John is speaking about Jesus. Alternate translation: "The one from heaven tells about what he has seen and heard in heaven"

### no one accepts his testimony (ULT)
### no one accepts what he says or trusts it to be true (UST)

Here John exaggerates to emphasize that only a few people believe Jesus. Alternate translation: "very few people believe him" (See: Hyperbole)

### Translation Words - ULT

- testifies about...he
- testimony
- accepts

### Translation Words - UST

- Now there is one here who gives his testimony to
- what he says or trusts it to be true
- accepts

**ULT**
**32** He testifies about what he has seen and heard, but no one accepts his testimony.

**UST**
**32** Now there is one here who gives his testimony to what he has seen and heard, but no one accepts what he says or trusts it to be true.

# John 3:33

**He who has received his testimony (ULT)**
**However, those who have trusted in what he said (UST)**

"Anyone who believes what Jesus says"

**has confirmed (ULT)**
**they verify (UST)**

"proves" or "agrees"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- God
- testimony
- true
- He who has received
- has confirmed

**Translation Words - UST**

- God...he alone
- what...said
- the source of all truth...the measure and standard of everything that is true
- However, those who have trusted in
- they verify

**ULT**

**33** He who has received his testimony has confirmed that God is true.

**UST**

**33** However, those who have trusted in what he said, they verify that God is the source of all truth, and that he alone is the measure and standard of everything that is true.

# John 3:34

## Connecting Statement:

John the Baptist finishes speaking.

## For the one whom God has sent (ULT)

"This Jesus, whom God has sent to represent him"

## For...he does not give the Spirit by measure (ULT)

"For he is the one to whom God gave all the power of his Spirit"

## Translation Words - ULT

- God
- of God
- God...the words of God
- Spirit
- has sent

## Translation Words - UST

- God
- God's
- God...God's words
- Spirit
- has sent

---

**ULT**

**34** For the one whom God has sent speaks the words of God. For he does not give the Spirit by measure.

**UST**

**34** God has sent his spokesman, and what he has said is true, for he speaks God's words. And he gives his Spirit with no concern for how much he gives.

# John 3:35

**Father…Son (ULT)**
**Father…Son (UST)**

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. (See: Translating Son and Father)

**has given…into his hand (ULT)**
**he puts…under his power (UST)**

This means to be put in his power or control. (See: Idiom)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- loves
- Son
- Father
- hand

**Translation Words - UST**

- loves
- Son
- Father
- under his power

---

**ULT**

**35** The Father loves the Son and has given all things into his hand.

**UST**

**35** The Father loves the Son and he puts everything under his power.

# John 3:36

**He who believes (ULT)**
**Whoever trusts (UST)**

"A person who believes" or "Anyone who believes"

**the wrath of God stays on him (ULT)**
**the righteous fury of God for every sin which that**
**person has done will remain upon him forever (UST)**

The abstract noun "wrath" can be translated with the verb "punish."
Alternate translation: "God will continue to punish him" (See:
Abstract Nouns)

## Translation Words - ULT

- life
- life
- eternal
- of God
- Son
- Son
- He who believes
- wrath
- in the Son
- who disobeys

## Translation Words - UST

- life
- everlasting life
- everlasting
- of God
- God's Son
- Son of God
- Whoever trusts
- righteous fury...for every sin which that person has done
- in God's Son
- Whoever does not obey

**ULT**

**36** He who believes in the Son has
eternal life, but the one who disobeys
the Son will not see life, but the wrath of
God stays on him."

**UST**

**36** Whoever trusts in God's Son has
everlasting life. Whoever does not obey
the Son of God can never have
everlasting life, and the righteous fury
of God for every sin which that person
has done will remain upon him forever."

# John 4

## John 4 General Notes

# Structure and formatting

John 4:4-38 forms one story centered on the teaching of Jesus as the "living water" who gives eternal life to all who believe in him. (See: believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief)

# Special concepts in this chapter

### "It was necessary for him to pass through Samaria"

Jews avoided traveling through the region of Samaria because the Samaritans were descendants of ungodly people. So Jesus had to do what most Jews did not want to do. (See: godly, godliness, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness and kingdom of Israel)

### "The hour is coming"

Jesus used these words to begin prophecies about times that could be shorter or longer than sixty minutes. "The hour" in which true worshipers will worship in spirit and truth is longer than sixty minutes.

### The proper place of worship

Long before Jesus lived, the Samaritan people had broken the law of Moses by setting up a false temple in their land (John 4:20). Jesus explained to the woman that it was no longer important where people worshiped (John 4:21-24).

### Harvest

Harvest is when people go out to get the food they have planted so they can bring it to their houses and eat it. Jesus used this as a metaphor to teach his followers that they need to go and tell other people about Jesus so those people can be part of God's kingdom. (See: faith)

### "The Samaritan woman"

John probably told this story to show the difference between the Samaritan woman, who believed, and the Jews, who did not believe and later killed Jesus. (See: believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief)

# Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

### "In spirit and truth"

The people who truly know who God is and enjoy worshiping him and love him for who he is are the ones who truly please him. Where they worship is not important.

# John 4:1

## General Information:

John 4:1-6 gives the background to the next event, Jesus' conversation with a Samaritan woman. (See: Background Information)

## Connecting Statement:

A long sentence begins here.

## Now when Jesus knew that the Pharisees had heard that he was making and baptizing more disciples than John

"Now Jesus was making and baptizing more disciples than John. When he knew that the Pharisees had heard that he was doing this."

## Now when Jesus knew (ULT)

The word "now" is used here to mark a break in the main events. Here John starts to tell a new part of the narrative.

**ULT**

**1** Now when Jesus knew that the Pharisees had heard that he was making and baptizing more disciples than John

**UST**

**1** The Pharisee religious group heard that Jesus was gaining more followers than John the Baptizer and that he was baptizing more people than John was. Jesus also found out what the Pharisees had heard.

## Translation Words - ULT

- he (2)
- baptizing
- Jesus
- disciples
- Pharisees
- John
- knew

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus (2)
- he was baptizing
- Jesus
- followers
- Pharisee religious group...Pharisees
- than John the Baptizer...than John was
- also found out

# John 4:2

**Jesus himself was not baptizing (ULT)**
**Jesus himself was not personally doing the work of baptizing…were doing that (UST)**

The reflexive pronoun "himself" adds emphasis that it was not Jesus who was baptizing, but his disciples. (See: Reflexive Pronouns)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- was…baptizing
- disciples were

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- was…doing the work of baptizing…were doing that
- apprentices

**ULT**
**2** (although Jesus himself was not baptizing, but his disciples were),

**UST**
**2** Actually for the record, Jesus himself was not personally doing the work of baptizing; his apprentices were doing that.

## John 4:3

### he left Judea and went back again to Galilee

You may need to rearrange the entire sentence that begins with the words "Now when Jesus" in verse 1. "Now Jesus was making and baptizing more disciples than John (although Jesus himself was not baptizing, but his disciples were). The Pharisees heard that Jesus was doing this. When Jesus knew that the Pharisees learned what he was doing, he left Judea and went back again to Galilee"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Judea
- Galilee

### Translation Words - UST

- the region of Judea
- Galilee district

**ULT**

3 he left Judea and went back again to Galilee.

**UST**

3 Anyway, Jesus and his apprentices left the region of Judea and returned once more to Galilee district.

# John 4:4

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Samaria

**Translation Words - UST**

- the region of Samaria

**ULT**
**4** But it was necessary for him to go through Samaria.

**UST**
**4** Now they had to go through the region of Samaria.

# John 4:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

## Translation Words - ULT

- called
- son
- to...Joseph
- of Samaria
- Jacob

## Translation Words - UST

- named
- son
- Joseph
- in the region of Samaria
- Jacob

**ULT**

**5** So he came to a town of Samaria, called Sychar, near the piece of land that Jacob had given to his son Joseph.

**UST**

**5** So they arrived at a town named Sychar in the region of Samaria. Sychar was near the plot of ground that Jacob had given to his son Joseph long ago.

## John 4:6

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Since Jesus
- of Jacob
- hour
- the well
- well

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Jacob's
- It was about noon
- well
- well

**ULT**

**6** Now the well of Jacob was there. Since Jesus was tired from his journey, he was sitting right beside the well. It was about the sixth hour.

**UST**

**6** Just outside the town of Sychar was Jacob's well. Jesus was very tired from his long journey, and he sat down to rest beside the well. It was about noon.

## John 4:7

**Give me some water to drink (ULT)**
**Give me a drink (UST)**

This is a polite request, not a command.

### Translation Words - ULT

- and Jesus
- Samaritan
- water

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Samaria
- some water

## John 4:8

### For his disciples had gone away (ULT)

He did not ask his disciples to draw water for him because they had gone.

### Translation Words - ULT

• For...disciples

### Translation Words - UST

• apprentices

# John 4:9

### Then the Samaritan woman said to him

The word "him" refers to Jesus.

### How is it that you, being a Jew, are asking from me… something to drink (ULT)

This remark appears in the form of a question to express the Samaritan woman's surprise that Jesus asked her for a drink. Alternate translation: "I cannot believe that you, being a Jew, are asking a Samaritan for a drink!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

### no…have…dealings with (ULT)

"do not associate with"

### Translation Words - ULT

- a Jew
- Jews
- Samaritan
- Samaritan
- Samaritans

### Translation Words - UST

- a Jew
- Jews
- Samaria, Samaritan
- from Samaria
- Samaritans

**ULT**

**9** Then the Samaritan woman said to him, "How is it that you, being a Jew, are asking from me, being a Samaritan woman, something to drink?" For Jews have no dealings with Samaritans.

**UST**

**9** Because Samaritans know that Jews generally despise them,, the woman said to him, "I am surprised that you, a Jew, are asking me, a woman from Samaria, for a drink."

# John 4:10

**living water (ULT)**
**living water (UST)**

Jesus uses the metaphor "living water" to refer to the Holy Spirit who works in a person to transform and bring new life. (See: Metaphor)

## Translation Words - ULT

- living
- Jesus
- gift
- of God
- water
- you had known

## Translation Words - UST

- living
- Jesus
- gift that…wants to give you
- God
- water
- you had known…you had known

**ULT**

**10** Jesus answered and said to her, "If you had known the gift of God, and who it is who is saying to you, 'Give me a drink,' you would have asked him, and he would have given you living water."

**UST**

**10** Jesus replied to her, "If you had known the gift that God wants to give you and if you had known who is asking you for a drink, you would have asked me for a drink, and I would have given you living water."

## John 4:11

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- living
- Sir
- water
- well

### Translation Words - UST

- living
- Sir
- water
- well

**ULT**

**11** The woman said to him, "Sir, you do not have a bucket and the well is deep. Where then do you have the living water?

**UST**

**11** "Sir, you do not have a bucket or a rope with which to draw the water up out of the well, and this well is deep. Where would you get this living water?

# John 4:12

**You are not greater, are you, than our father Jacob, who gave us the well and drank from it himself, as did his sons and his cattle (ULT)**

This remark occurs in the form of a question to add emphasis. Alternate translation: "You are not greater than our father Jacob… cattle!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

**our father Jacob (ULT)**

"our ancestor Jacob"

**drank from it (ULT)**
**he drank from it (UST)**

"drank water that came from it"

## Translation Words - ULT

- sons
- Jacob
- father
- cattle
- well

## Translation Words - UST

- children
- Jacob
- father
- animals
- well that we use today

**ULT**

**12** You are not greater, are you, than our father Jacob, who gave us the well and drank from it himself, as did his sons and his cattle?"

**UST**

**12** You cannot be greater than our father Jacob. He dug this well that we use today, and he drank from it himself, as did his children and his animals."

## John 4:13

**will be thirsty again (ULT)**
**will be thirsty again (UST)**

"will need to drink water again"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- water

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- water

## John 4:14

**the water that I will give him will become a fountain of water in him (ULT)**

Here the word "fountain" is a metaphor for life-giving water. Alternate translation: "the water that I will give him will become like a spring of water in him" (See: Metaphor)

**eternal life (ULT)**
**everlasting life (UST)**

Here "life" refers to the "spiritual life" that only God can give.

### Translation Words - ULT

- life
- eternal
- water
- water
- of water (2)
- again
- a fountain

### Translation Words - UST

- life
- everlasting
- water
- water
- of water (2)
- again
- a spring

**ULT**

**14** but whoever drinks from the water that I will give him will never be thirsty again. Instead, the water that I will give him will become a fountain of water in him, springing up to eternal life."

**UST**

**14** but those who drink the water I will give them will never be thirsty again. The water I give will become a spring of water that fills them up and brings them everlasting life."

## John 4:15

**Sir (ULT)**
**Sir (UST)**

In this context, the Samaritan woman is addressing Jesus as "Sir," which is a term of respect or politeness.

**to draw water (ULT)**
**to draw water again (UST)**

"get water" or "pull water up from the well" using a container and rope

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Sir
- water

**Translation Words - UST**

- Sir
- water

**ULT**

**15** The woman said to him, "Sir, give me this water so that I may not become thirsty and not have to come here to draw water."

**UST**

**15** The woman said to him, "Sir, give me this water, so that I will never be thirsty or have to come here to draw water again."

## John 4:16

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

• call

### Translation Words - UST

• and call

**ULT**

**16** Jesus said to her, "Go, <u>call</u> your husband, and come back here."

**UST**

**16** Jesus knew she did not understand what he was saying, so he said to her, "Madam, go <u>and call</u> your husband and bring him here."

## John 4:17

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus

## John 4:18

**What you have said is true (ULT)**
**What you have said about not having a husband is true (UST)**

Jesus says these words to emphasize his words to emphasize the words "You are right in saying, 'I have no husband'" in verse 17. He wants the woman to know that he knows she is telling the truth.

### Translation Words - ULT

- is true

### Translation Words - UST

- is true

**ULT**

**18** for you have had five husbands, and the one you now have is not your husband. What you have said is true."

**UST**

**18** because you have had not one, but five, husbands, and the man you are living with now is not your husband. What you have said about not having a husband is true."

## John 4:19

**Sir (ULT)**
**Sir (UST)**

In this context the Samaritan woman is addressesing Jesus as "sir," which is a term of respect or politeness.

### I see that you are a prophet (ULT)

"I can understand that you are a prophet"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Sir
- a prophet

### Translation Words - UST

- Sir
- a prophet

**ULT**

**19** The woman said to him, "Sir, I see that you are a prophet.

**UST**

**19** The woman said to him, "Sir, I see you are a prophet.

# John 4:20

## Our fathers (ULT)

"Our forefathers" or "Our ancestors"

## Translation Words - ULT

- worshiped
- worship
- Jerusalem
- fathers

## Translation Words - UST

- worshiped God
- we…worship God
- Jerusalem
- ancestors

**ULT**

**20** Our fathers worshiped on this mountain, but you say that Jerusalem is the place where people must worship."

**UST**

**20** Our ancestors worshiped God right here on this mountain, but you Jews say that Jerusalem is the place we must worship God. Who is right?"

# John 4:21

### Believe me (ULT)
### believe me (UST)

To believe someone is to acknowledge what the person has said is true.

### you will worship...Father...mountain (ULT)
### mountain...will people worship...Father (UST)

Eternal salvation from sin comes from God the Father, who is Yahweh, the God of the Jews.

### Father (ULT)
### Father (UST)

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Believe
- Father
- you will worship
- Jerusalem
- an hour

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- believe
- Father
- will people worship
- Jerusalem
- a time

**ULT**

**21** Jesus said to her, "Believe me, woman, that an hour is coming when you will worship the Father neither on this mountain nor in Jerusalem.

**UST**

**21** Jesus said to her, "Madam, believe me when I say that a time is coming when neither here on this mountain, nor in Jerusalem, will people worship the Father.

## John 4:22

### You worship what you do not know. We worship what we know

Jesus means that God revealed himself and his commands to the Jewish people, not to the Samaritans. Through the Scriptures the Jewish people know who God is better than the Samaritans.

### for salvation is from the Jews (ULT)
### because salvation comes from the Jews (UST)

This means that God has chosen the Jews as his special people who will tell all other people about his salvation. It does not mean the Jewish people will save others from their sins. Alternate translation: "for all people will know about God's salvation because of the Jews"

### salvation is from the Jews (ULT)
### salvation comes from the Jews (UST)

Eternal salvation from sin comes from God the Father, who is Yahweh, the God of the Jews.

**ULT**

**22** You worship what you do not know. We worship what we know, for salvation is from the Jews.

**UST**

**22** You people here in Samaria worship what you do not know. We Jewish worshipers know whom we worship because salvation comes from the Jews.

### Translation Words - ULT

- salvation
- Jews
- worship
- worship
- you...know
- we know

### Translation Words - UST

- salvation
- Jews
- worship
- worship
- you do...know
- We Jewish worshipers know

## John 4:23

**Connecting Statement:**

Jesus continues speaking to the Samaritan woman.

**However, the hour is coming, and is now here, when true worshipers will worship (ULT)**

"However, it is now the right time for true worshipers to"

**the Father (ULT)**
**the Father (UST)**

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

**and…in spirit…truth (ULT)**
**and…spiritually…in truth (UST)**

Possible meanings are the "spirit" here is 1) the inner person, the mind and heart, what a person thinks and what he loves, different from where he goes to worship and what ceremonies he performs, or 2) the Holy Spirit. Alternate translation: "in the Spirit and in truth" or "with the Spirit's help and in truth"

**in…truth (ULT)**
**spiritually…in truth (UST)**

thinking correctly of what is true about God

**Translation Words - ULT**

- true
- truth
- spirit
- Father
- Father
- worshipers
- will worship
- who are worshiping
- is seeking
- the hour

**Translation Words - UST**

- truly
- in truth
- spiritually
- Father
- Father
- worship God
- will worship
- that they may worship…in this way
- searches…so
- The time

**ULT**

**23** However, the hour is coming, and is now here, when true worshipers will worship the Father in spirit and truth, for the Father also is seeking such people who are worshiping him.

**UST**

**23** The time is coming and has now arrived when those who truly worship God will worship the Father spiritually and in truth. The Father searches for such people so that they may worship him in this way.

## John 4:24

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- God is
- Spirit
- truth
- spirit
- the people who worship
- worship

### Translation Words - UST

- God is
- Spirit
- the truth must lead them in worship
- spiritually
- those who worship
- worship him

**ULT**

**24** God is Spirit, and the people who worship him must worship in spirit and truth."

**UST**

**24** God is Spirit, and those who worship him must worship him spiritually, and the truth must lead them in worship."

## John 4:25

**I know that the Messiah is coming (the one called Christ (ULT)**
**I know that the Messiah is coming (the one also called "Christ" in Greek (UST)**

Both of these words mean "God's promised king."

**he will explain everything to us (ULT)**

The words "explain everything" imply all that the people need to know. Alternate translation: "he will tell us everything we need to know" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### Translation Words - ULT

- the one called
- the Messiah
- Christ
- will explain
- I know

### Translation Words - UST

- the one also called
- the Messiah
- Christ" in Greek
- he will tell
- I know

**ULT**

**25** The woman said to him, "I know that the Messiah is coming (the one called Christ). When he comes, he will explain everything to us."

**UST**

**25** The woman said to him, "I know that the Messiah is coming (the one also called "Christ" in Greek). When he comes, he will tell us everything we need to hear."

## John 4:26

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus

---

**ULT**

**26** Jesus said to her, "I am he, the one speaking to you."

**UST**

**26** Jesus said to her, "I, who am speaking to you now, I am he!"

---

## John 4:27

**At that moment…his disciples returned (ULT)**
**Just then…his apprentices came back from town (UST)**

"Just as Jesus was saying this, his disciples returned from town"

**At that moment…they were amazed that he was speaking with a woman (ULT)**
**Just then…They were amazed that Jesus was talking with a woman who was not a member of his family. (That was against the Jewish custom (UST)**

It was very unusual for a Jew to speak with a woman he did not know, especially if that woman was a Samaritan.

**no one said, "What…want?" or "Why…her?"**

Possible meanings are 1) the disciples asked both questions to Jesus or 2) "no one asked the woman, 'What…want?' or asked Jesus, 'Why…her?'"

### Translation Words - ULT

- disciples
- they were amazed
- do you want

### Translation Words - UST

- apprentices
- They were amazed
- were you doing talking to a woman by yourself

---

**ULT**

**27** At that moment his <u>disciples</u> returned. Now <u>they were amazed</u> that he was speaking with a woman, but no one said, "What <u>do you want</u>?" or "Why are you speaking with her?"

**UST**

**27** Just then, his <u>apprentices</u> came back from town. <u>They were amazed</u> that Jesus was talking with a woman who was not a member of his family. (That was against the Jewish custom.) Nevertheless, no one was brave enough to ask him, "What <u>were you doing talking to a woman by yourself</u>?" or "Why are you talking with her at all?"

## John 4:28

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

**ULT**

**28** So the woman left her water pot, and went back to the town, and said to the people,

**UST**

**28** The woman left her water jar there and went back into town. She said to the people of the town,

## John 4:29

### Come, see a man who told me everything that I have ever done (ULT)

The Samaritan woman exaggerates to show that she is impressed by how much Jesus knows about her. Alternate translation: "Come see a man who knows very much about me, even though I have never met him before" (See: Hyperbole)

### This could not be the Christ, could it (ULT)
### He could not be the Messiah, could he (UST)

The woman is not sure that Jesus is the Christ, so she asks a question that expects "no" for an answer, but she also asks a question instead of making a statement because she wants the people to decide for themselves.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Christ

### Translation Words - UST

- Messiah

## John 4:30

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

**ULT**

**30** They left the town and came to him.

**UST**

**30** Many people started heading out of town, going where Jesus was.

# John 4:31

**In the meantime (ULT)**
**had just returned with the food (UST)**

"While the woman was going into town"

**the disciples were urging him (ULT)**
**His apprentices, who...urged him (UST)**

"the disciples were telling Jesus" or "the disciples were encouraging Jesus"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Rabbi
- disciples

**Translation Words - UST**

- Teacher
- His apprentices, who

**ULT**

**31** In the meantime, the disciples were urging him, saying, "Rabbi, eat."

**UST**

**31** His apprentices, who had just returned with the food, urged him, " Teacher, eat something."

## John 4:32

**I have food to eat that you do not know about (ULT)**
**I have food to eat that you know nothing about (UST)**

Here Jesus is not talking about literal "food," but is preparing his disciples for a spiritual lesson in John 4:34.

### Translation Words - ULT

- know about

### Translation Words - UST

- know...about

**ULT**

**32** But he said to them, "I have food to eat that you do not know about."

**UST**

**32** Jesus said to them, "I have food to eat that you know nothing about!"

## John 4:33

**No one has brought him anything to eat, have they (ULT)**
**No one else could have brought him something to eat, could they (UST)**

The disciples think Jesus is talking about literal "food." They begin asking each other this question, expecting a "no" response. Alternate translation: "Surely no one brought him any food while we were in town!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

### Translation Words - ULT

- disciples

### Translation Words - UST

- they

**ULT**

**33** So the disciples said to each other, "No one has brought him anything to eat, have they?"

**UST**

**33** So they were saying to one another, "No one else could have brought him something to eat, could they?"

## John 4:34

**My food is that I do the will of him who sent me and complete his work (ULT)**
**I will tell what I am most hungry for: It is to do what my Father who sent me wants and to complete all his work (UST)**

Here "food" is a metaphor that represents "obeying God's will." Alternate translation: "Just as food satisfies a hungry person, obeying God's will is what satisfies me" (See: Metaphor)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- work
- will of him who sent me
- of him who sent
- complete

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- work
- what...my Father who sent me...wants
- my Father who sent
- to complete all

> **ULT**
> **34** Jesus said to them, "My food is that I do the will of him who sent me and complete his work.
>
> **UST**
> **34** Jesus said, "I will tell what I am most hungry for: It is to do what my Father who sent me wants and to complete all his work.

## John 4:35

**Do you not say (ULT)**

"Is this not one of your popular sayings"

**lift up your eyes and see the fields, for they are already white for harvest (ULT)**

The words "fields" and "ripe for harvest" are metaphors. The "fields" represent people. The words "ripe for harvest" mean that people are ready to receive the message of Jesus, like fields that are ready to be harvested. Alternate translation: "look up and see the the people! They are ready to believe my message, like crops in the fields that are ready for people to harvest them" (See: Metaphor)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- harvest
- harvest

**Translation Words - UST**

- we will harvest the crops
- harvest

**ULT**

**35** Do you not say, 'There are four more months and then the harvest comes'? Look, I am saying to you, lift up your eyes and see the fields, for they are already white for harvest!

**UST**

**35** At this time of the year you usually say, 'There are four months left, and then we will harvest the crops.' Yet look all around you! The fields are ready for harvest at this moment. The non-Jews are now wanting God to rule over them; they are like the fields that are now ready to be harvested.

# John 4:36

**and gathers fruit for everlasting life (ULT)**
**and is gathering much fruit for eternal life (UST)**

Here "fruit for everlasting life" is a metaphor that represents people who believe Christ's message and receive eternal life. Alternate translation: "and the people who believe the message and receive eternal life are like the fruit that a harvester gathers" (See: Metaphor)

## Translation Words - ULT

- life
- everlasting
- receives
- he who sows
- fruit
- may rejoice
- He who is harvesting
- he who harvests (2)
- wages

## Translation Words - UST

- life
- eternal
- is already receiving
- Those who sow the seed
- much fruit
- will be glad
- believes this and is ready to work in this kind of harvest
- those who reap the harvest (2)
- his payment

**ULT**

**36** He who is harvesting receives wages and gathers fruit for everlasting life, so that he who sows and he who harvests may rejoice together.

**UST**

**36** The one who believes this and is ready to work in this kind of harvest is already receiving his payment and is gathering much fruit for eternal life. Those who sow the seed and those who reap the harvest will be glad together.

## John 4:37

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues speaking to his disciples.

### One…is sowing, and another is harvesting (ULT)

The words "sows" and "harvests" are metaphors. The one who "sows" shares the message of Jesus. The one who "harvests" helps the people to receive the message of Jesus. Alternate translation: "One person plants the seeds, and another person harvests the crops" (See: Metaphor)

### Translation Words - ULT

- true
- sowing
- is harvesting

### Translation Words - UST

- true
- plants the seeds
- harvests the crops

**ULT**

**37** For in this the saying is true, 'One is sowing, and another is harvesting.'

**UST**

**37** This statement is true: One person plants the seeds, and another person harvests the crops.

# John 4:38

**you…have entered into their labor (ULT)**
**you…are now joining in their work (UST)**

"you are now joining in their work"

## Translation Words - ULT

- have…worked for
- have worked
- labor
- sent
- to harvest

## Translation Words - UST

- from a crop…did…plant
- have worked very hard
- work
- sent
- to gather the harvest

---

**ULT**

**38** I sent you to harvest what you have not worked for. Others have worked, and you have entered into their labor."

**UST**

**38** I sent you to gather the harvest from a crop you did not plant. Others have worked very hard, but you are now joining in their work."

## John 4:39

**believed in him (ULT)**
**put their trust in Jesus (UST)**

To "believe in" someone means to "trust in" that person. Here this also means that they believed he was the Son of God.

**He told…me everything that I have done (ULT)**
**He told me everything I have ever done (UST)**

This is an exaggeration. The woman was impressed by how much Jesus knew about her. Alternate translation: "He told me many things about my life" (See: Hyperbole)

### Translation Words - ULT

- who was testifying
- believed
- in him
- Samaritans

### Translation Words - UST

- what they heard about him from all…told them…said
- put their trust
- in Jesus
- Samaritans

**ULT**

**39** Many of the Samaritans in that city believed in him because of the report of the woman who was testifying, "He told me everything that I have done."

**UST**

**39** Many Samaritans who lived in the town of Sychar put their trust in Jesus because of what they heard about him from all the woman told them. She said, "He told me everything I have ever done."

## John 4:40

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Samaritans
- days

### Translation Words - UST

- Samaritans
- days

---

**ULT**

**40** So when the Samaritans came to him, they asked him to stay with them, and he stayed there two days.

**UST**

**40** When the Samaritans came to Jesus, they urged him to stay a longer time with them. So he stayed there two more days.

# John 4:41

**his word (ULT)**
**what he proclaimed to them (UST)**

Here "word" is a metonym that stands for the message that Jesus proclaimed. Alternate translation: "his message" (See: Metonymy)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- believed

**Translation Words - UST**

- trusted in Jesus

---

**ULT**

**41** Many more believed because of his word.

**UST**

**41** Many more of them trusted in Jesus because of what he proclaimed to them.

---

# John 4:42

**world (ULT)**
**of the world (UST)**

The "world" is a metonym for all the believers throughout the world. Alternate translation: "all the believers in the world" (See: Metonymy)

## Translation Words - ULT

- indeed
- world
- We...believe
- Savior
- we know

## Translation Words - UST

- truly
- of the world
- We believe in Jesus
- Savior
- we know

---

**ULT**

**42** They said to the woman, "We no longer believe because of what you said, for we ourselves have heard, and we know that this one is indeed the Savior of the world."

**UST**

**42** They told the woman, "We believe in Jesus now, not just because of what you told us about him but also because we have heard his message for ourselves. Now we know that this man truly is the Savior of the world."

---

## John 4:43

### General Information:

Jesus goes down to Galilee and heals a boy. Verse 44 gives us background information about something Jesus had said previously. (See: Background Information)

### from there (ULT)
### in Samaria (UST)

from Judea

### Translation Words - ULT

- Galilee
- days

### Translation Words - UST

- the region of Galilee
- days

## John 4:44

### For Jesus himself declared (ULT)

The reflexive pronoun "himself" is added to emphasize that Jesus had "declared" or said this.. You can translate this in your language in a way that will give emphasis to a person. (See: Reflexive Pronouns)

### a prophet has no honor in his own country (ULT)
### a prophet receives honor in many places but never in the place where he grew up (UST)

"people do not show respect or honor to a prophet of their own country" or "a prophet is not respected by the people in his own community"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- a prophet
- honor
- declared

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- a prophet
- honor
- confirmed

**ULT**
**44** For Jesus himself declared that a prophet has no honor in his own country.

**UST**
**44** (Jesus himself confirmed that a prophet receives honor in many places but never in the place where he grew up.)

## John 4:45

**in…the festival (ULT)**
**in…the recent Passover celebration…there (UST)**

Here the festival is the Passover.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Galilee
- Galileans
- Jerusalem
- welcomed
- festival
- festival

### Translation Words - UST

- Galilee
- many of the people there
- Jerusalem
- welcomed
- recent Passover celebration…there
- festival

**ULT**

**45** When therefore he came into Galilee, the Galileans welcomed him. They had seen all the things that he had done in Jerusalem at the festival, for they had also gone to the festival.

**UST**

**45** However, when he arrived in Galilee, many of the people there welcomed him. They knew who he was because they themselves had been in Jerusalem during the recent Passover celebration and had seen all the amazing things he did there.

# John 4:46

### Now (ULT)

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line and to move to a new part of the story. If you have a way of doing this in your language, you may consider using it.

### a...royal (ULT)
### official of the king (UST)

someone who is in the service of the king

### Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Capernaum
- in Galilee
- Cana
- a...royal
- water
- wine

### Translation Words - UST

- son
- Capernaum just twenty-seven kilometers away
- in Galilee
- Cana...That
- official of the king
- water
- into wine

---

**ULT**

**46** Now he came again to Cana in Galilee, where he had made the water wine. There was a certain royal official whose son in Capernaum was ill.

**UST**

**46** Jesus went back again to Cana in Galilee. (That was where he had turned the water into wine.) There was an official of the king who lived in Capernaum just twenty-seven kilometers away, and his son was very sick.

## John 4:47

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus had
- son
- Judea
- Galilee
- heal
- to die

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- son
- Judea
- Galilee
- heal
- to die

**ULT**

**47** When he heard that Jesus had come from Judea to Galilee, he went to Jesus and asked that he come down and heal his son, for he was about to die.

**UST**

**47** When that man heard that Jesus had come back to Galilee from Judea, he went to Jesus in Cana and begged him, "Come down to Capernaum and heal my son. He is about to die!"

# John 4:48

**Unless you see signs and wonders, you will not believe (ULT)**
**Unless you see me do things that prove who I am and watch me do miracles, you will not trust in me (UST)**

"Unless...not believe" here is a double negative. In some languages it is more natural to translate this statement in a positive form. Alternate translation: "Only if you see a miracle will you believe" (See: Double Negatives)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- signs
- you will...believe
- wonders

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- me do things that prove who I am
- you will...trust in me
- watch me do miracles

**ULT**

**48** Jesus then said to him, "Unless you see signs and wonders, you will not believe."

**UST**

**48** Jesus said to him, "Unless you see me do things that prove who I am and watch me do miracles, you will not trust in me!"

## John 4:49

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Sir
- child
- official
- dies

### Translation Words - UST

- Sir
- son
- official
- dies

**ULT**

**49** The official said to him, "Sir, come down before my child dies."

**UST**

**49** Yet the official said to him, "Sir, please come down to my home before my son dies!"

# John 4:50

**believed...the word (ULT)**
**trusted...what...said (UST)**

Here "word" is a metonym that refers to the message that Jesus spoke. Alternate translation: "believed the message" (See: Metonymy)

## Translation Words - ULT

- lives
- Jesus
- Jesus (2)
- son
- believed

## Translation Words - UST

- will live
- Jesus
- Jesus (2)
- son
- trusted

**ULT**

**50** Jesus said to him, "Go. Your son lives." The man believed the word that Jesus spoke to him, and he went away.

**UST**

**50** Jesus said to him, "Go on home. Your son will live." The man trusted what Jesus said and he started on his way back home.

## John 4:51

**while (ULT)**
**As (UST)**

This word is used to mark two events that are happening at the same time. As the official was going home, his servants were coming to meet him on the road.

### Translation Words - ULT

- was living
- son
- reported to him
- servants

### Translation Words - UST

- is going to live
- child
- They told him
- servants

**ULT**

**51** But while he was going down, his servants met him and reported to him, saying that his son was living.

**UST**

**51** As he was traveling down to his home in Capernaum, his servants met him along the road. They told him, "Your child is going to live."

# John 4:52

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

## Translation Words - ULT

- hour
- at the...hour (2)

## Translation Words - UST

- time
- afternoon at one o'clock (2)

**ULT**

**52** So he asked from them the hour in which he began to improve. Therefore they replied to him, "Yesterday at the seventh hour the fever left him."

**UST**

**52** He asked them, "At what time did my son begin to improve?" They said to him, "His fever ceased yesterday afternoon at one o'clock."

# John 4:53

## So he himself and his whole household believed

The reflexive pronoun "himself" is used here to emphasize the word "he." If you have a way of doing this in your language, you may consider using it.

## Translation Words - ULT

- lives
- Jesus
- son
- he...believed
- father
- household
- hour
- realized

## Translation Words - UST

- lives
- Jesus
- son
- trusted in Jesus
- boy's father
- who lived in...house
- time
- realized

**ULT**

**53** Then the father realized that it was at that hour in which Jesus had said to him, "Your son lives." So he himself and his whole household believed.

**UST**

**53** Then the boy's father realized that this was the time Jesus told him, "Your son lives." So he trusted in Jesus, along with everyone who lived in his house.

# John 4:54

**sign (ULT)**
**something to prove to people who he was (UST)**

Miracles can also be called "signs" because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- sign
- Judea
- Galilee

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus...He
- something to prove to people who he was
- Judea
- the region of Galilee

**ULT**

**54** Jesus did this as a second sign after he came out of Judea to Galilee.

**UST**

**54** That was the second time Jesus did something to prove to people who he was. He did it during the time that he came to the region of Galilee, having traveled there from Judea.

# John 5

## John 5 General Notes

# Special concepts in this chapter

### Healing water

Many of the Jews believed that God would heal people who got into some of the pools in Jerusalem when the waters were "stirred up."

### Testimony

Testimony is what one person says about another person. What a person says about himself is not as important as what other people say about that person. Jesus told the Jews that God had told them who Jesus was, so he did not need to tell them who he was. This was because God had told the writers of the Old Testament what his Messiah would do, and Jesus had done everything they had written that he would do.

### The resurrection of life and the resurrection of judgment

God will make some people alive again and because he gives them his grace, they will live with him forever. But he will make some people alive again and because he will treat them justly, they will live apart from him forever.

# Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

### The Son, the Son of God, and the Son of Man

Jesus refers to himself in this chapter as the "Son" (John 5:19), the "Son of God" (John 5:25), and the "Son of Man" (John 5:27). Your language may not allow people to speak of themselves as if they were speaking about someone else. (See: Son of Man, son of man and First, Second or Third Person)

# John 5:1

## General Information:

This is the next event in the story, in which Jesus goes up to Jerusalem and heals a man. These verses give background information about the setting of the story. (See: Background Information)

## After this (ULT)
## Then the time came for another (UST)

This refers to after Jesus healed the official's son. See how you translated this in John 3:22.

## there was a Jewish festival (ULT)
## Then the time came for another…Jewish festival (UST)

"the Jews were celebrating a festival"

## went up…to Jerusalem (ULT)
## walked up…for it…to Jerusalem (UST)

Jerusalem is located on the top of a hill. Roads to Jerusalem went up and down smaller hills. If your language has a different word for going up a hill than for walking on level ground, you may use it here.

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Jewish
- Jerusalem
- a…festival

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Jewish
- Jerusalem
- festival

**ULT**

**1** After this there was a Jewish festival, and Jesus went up to Jerusalem.

**UST**

**1** Then the time came for another Jewish festival, and Jesus walked up to Jerusalem for it.

# John 5:2

**a pool (ULT)**
**a pool (UST)**

This was a hole in the ground that people filled with water. Sometimes they lined the pools with tiles or other stonework.

**Bethesda (ULT)**
**Bethesda (UST)**

a place name (See: How to Translate Names)

**roofed porches (ULT)**
**roofed porches or colonnades (UST)**

roofed structures with at least one wall missing and attached to buildings

**Translation Words - ULT**

- is called
- Jerusalem
- sheep gate

**Translation Words - UST**

- called
- Jerusalem
- one of the gates going into the city, a place called the Sheep Gate. At that gate

**ULT**

**2** Now in Jerusalem by the sheep gate, there is a pool, which in Hebrew is called Bethesda, and it has five roofed porches.

**UST**

**2** There is in Jerusalem beside one of the gates going into the city, a place called the Sheep Gate. At that gate there is a pool called Bethesda in the language used by the Jews. Next to the pool are five roofed porches or colonnades.

## John 5:3

**A large number of people who were sick (ULT)**
**Many people…They were people who had uncurable illnesses (UST)**

"Many people"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- lame

**Translation Words - UST**

- lame

---

**ULT**

[3] A large number of people who were sick, blind, lame, or paralyzed were lying there. [1]

**UST**

[3] Many people were lying there. They were people who had uncurable illnesses or were blind, lame, or paralyzed.

## John 5:4

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

<div style="border:1px dashed">

**ULT**

**4**[2] [For an angel of the Lord went down and stirred up the water at certain times and whoever stepped in while the water was stirring was healed from whatever disease he suffered from.]

**UST**

**4**[1] [For an angel of the Lord went down and stirred up the water at certain times and whoever stepped in while the water was stirring was healed from whatever disease he suffered from.]

</div>

# John 5:5

**General Information:**

Verse 5 introduces the man lying beside the pool to the story. (See: Introduction of New and Old Participants)

**was...there (ULT)**
**had been...for...there (UST)**

"was at the Bethesda pool" (John 5:1)

**for thirty-eight years (ULT)**
**thirty-eight years (UST)**

"38 years" (See: Numbers)

**Translation Words - ULT**

  • years

**Translation Words - UST**

  • years

**ULT**
**5** Now a certain man was there who had been in his illness for thirty-eight years.

**UST**
**5** One man who could not walk had been there for thirty-eight years.

# John 5:6

**after he realized (ULT)**
**realized (UST)**

"he understood" or "he found out"

**he said to him (ULT)**
**He said to the man (UST)**

"Jesus said to the paralyzed man"

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- already…a long time
- after he realized

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- in this condition for a long time
- realized

**ULT**

**6** When Jesus saw him lying there, and after he realized that he had already been there a long time, he said to him, "Do you want to be healthy?"

**UST**

**6** Jesus saw him lying there and realized that he had been in this condition for a long time. He said to the man, "Do you want to become healthy and strong?"

# John 5:7

**Sir…I do not have (ULT)**
**Sir…I have…no one…here (UST)**

Here the word "sir" is a polite form of address.

**when the water is stirred up (ULT)**
**when the water stirs (UST)**

This can be translated in an active form. Alternate translation: "when the angel moves the water" (See: Active or Passive)

**into the pool (ULT)**
**into the pool (UST)**

This was a hole in the ground that people filled with water. Sometimes they lined the pools with tiles or other stonework. See how you translated "pool" in John 5:2.

**another steps down before me (ULT)**
**someone else always steps down in front of me (UST)**

"someone else always goes down the steps into the water before me"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Sir
- water

**Translation Words - UST**

- Sir
- water

## John 5:8

**Get up (ULT)**
**Get up (UST)**

"Stand up!"

**take up your bed, and walk (ULT)**
**Take up your bed and walk (UST)**

"Pick up your sleeping mat, and walk!"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Jesus
- Get up
- walk

**Translation Words - UST**

- Jesus
- Get up
- walk

---

**ULT**

**8** Jesus said to him, "Get up, take up your bed, and walk."

**UST**

**8** Jesus said to him, "Get up! Take up your bed and walk!"

# John 5:9

**the man was healed (ULT)**
**the man was healed (UST)**

"the man became healthy again"

**Now...that...day (ULT)**
**Now...that...day (UST)**

The writer uses the word "now" to show that the words that follow are background information. (See: Background Information)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- a Sabbath
- walked
- day

**Translation Words - UST**

- the Jewish day of rest known as the Sabbath
- walked
- day

**ULT**

**9** Immediately the man was healed, and he took up his bed and walked. Now that day was a Sabbath.

**UST**

**9** At once the man was healed, and he picked up his bed and walked. Now that day was the Jewish day of rest known as the Sabbath.

# John 5:10

**So the Jews said to him who was healed (ULT)**
**So the Jewish leaders said to the man who had been healed (UST)**

The Jews (especially the leaders of the Jews) became angry when they saw the man carrying his mat on the Sabbath.

**It is the Sabbath (ULT)**
**It is the day of rest (UST)**

"It is God's Day of Rest"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Jews
- the Sabbath
- to him who was healed
- are...permitted

**Translation Words - UST**

- Jewish leaders
- the day of rest
- to the man who had been healed
- know it is against our law

---

**ULT**

**10** So the Jews said to him who was healed, "It is the Sabbath and you are not permitted to carry your mat."

**UST**

**10** So the Jewish leaders said to the man who had been healed, "It is the day of rest, and you know it is against our law for you to carry your mat on this holy day."

# John 5:11

**he...The one who made...me healthy (ULT)**
**The man who had been healed...But...who healed me (UST)**

"The man who made me well"

**Translation Words - ULT**

   • walk

**Translation Words - UST**

   • walk

## John 5:12

**They asked him (ULT)**
**They asked him (UST)**

"The Jewish leaders asked the man who was healed"

### Translation Words - ULT

• walk

### Translation Words - UST

• walk, walked

**ULT**
**12** They asked him, "Who is the man that said to you, 'Pick it up and walk'?"

**UST**
**12** They asked him, "Who was that man?"

## John 5:13

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- because Jesus
- who was healed
- know

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Jesus had healed
- did...know

**ULT**

**13** However, the one who was healed did not know who it was because Jesus had gone away secretly, for there was a crowd in the place.

**UST**

**13** Now although Jesus had healed the man, the man did not know his name. After healing him, Jesus had left the man and disappeared into the crowd.

## John 5:14

**Jesus found him (ULT)**
**Jesus found the man (UST)**

"Jesus found the man he had healed"

**See (ULT)**
**See (UST)**

The word "See" is used here to draw attention to the words that follow.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Jesus
- sin
- temple

**Translation Words - UST**

- Jesus
- Do...sin
- temple

## John 5:15

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Jews
- reported

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Jewish leaders
- told

**ULT**

**15** The man went away and reported to the Jews that it was Jesus who had made him healthy.

**UST**

**15** The man went away and told the Jewish leaders that the man who had healed him was Jesus.

## John 5:16

**Now (ULT)**
**So (UST)**

The writer uses the word "now" to show that the words that follow are background information. (See: Background Information)

**the Jews (ULT)**
**the Jews (UST)**

Here "the Jews" is a synecdoche which represent the "Jewish leaders." Alternate translation: "the Jewish leaders" (See: Synecdoche)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Jews
- the Sabbath
- persecuted

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Jews
- the Jewish rest day
- began efforts to stop

**ULT**

**16** Now because of these things the Jews persecuted Jesus, because he did these things on the Sabbath.

**UST**

**16** So the Jews began efforts to stop Jesus because he was doing marvelous things and was showing his power and because he often did those works on the Jewish rest day.

# John 5:17

**is working (ULT)**
**is working (UST)**

This refers to doing labor, including anything that is done to serve other people.

**My Father (ULT)**
**My Father (UST)**

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Father
- is working
- am working

**Translation Words - UST**

- Father
- is working
- am...working

**ULT**

**17** But Jesus replied to them, "My Father is working even now, and I, too, am working."

**UST**

**17** Jesus gave this answer to them, "My Father is working even now, and I am also working."

# John 5:18

**making himself equal to God (ULT)**
**claiming that he was equal to God (UST)**

"saying that he was like God" or "saying that he had as much authority as God"

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jews
- God
- to God
- Father
- Sabbath
- sought

## Translation Words - UST

- Jews
- God
- God
- Father
- rest day
- were trying

**ULT**

**18** Because of this, therefore, the Jews sought even more to kill him because he not only broke the Sabbath, but also called God his own Father, making himself equal to God.

**UST**

**18** This is why the Jews were trying more and more to put Jesus to death, not only because he was breaking the rest day regulations, but also because he even called God his own Father, claiming that he was equal to God.

# John 5:19

## Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues speaking to the Jewish leaders.

## Truly, truly

Translate this the way your language emphasizes that what follows is important and true. See how you translated this in John 1:51.

## for whatever the Father does, these things also the Son...does (ULT)

Jesus, as the Son of God, followed and obeyed his Father's leadership on earth, because Jesus knew the Father loved him. (See: Translating Son and Father)

## Son...Father (ULT)
## I, the Son of Man...Father (UST)

These are important titles that describe the relationship between Jesus and God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Son
- Son (2)
- Truly
- truly (2)
- Father
- as well

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- I, the Son of Man
- I, the Son (2)
- the truth
- the truth (2)
- Father
- like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if

**ULT**

**19** So Jesus answered and said to them, "Truly, truly I say to you, the Son can do nothing of himself, except only what he sees the Father doing, for whatever the Father does, these things also the Son does as well.

**UST**

**19** Jesus replied to them, "I am telling you the truth: I, the Son of Man, can do nothing on my own authority. I can do only what I see the Father doing. Whatever the Father does, that is what I, the Son, do.

# John 5:20

**you will be amazed (ULT)**
**you may see what I can do and be amazed (UST)**

"you will be surprised" or "you will be shocked"

### For the Father loves the Son (ULT)

Jesus, as the Son of God, followed and obeyed his Father's leadership on earth, because Jesus knew the Father loved him. (See: Translating Son and Father)

### loves (ULT)
### loves (UST)

The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others, even when it does not benefit oneself. God himself is love and is the source of true love.

### Translation Words - ULT

- loves
- Son
- things
- Father
- will be amazed

### Translation Words - UST

- loves
- me, the Son
- works
- Father
- may see what I can do and be amazed

**ULT**

**20** For the Father loves the Son and he shows him everything that he himself does, and he will show him greater things than these so that you will be amazed.

**UST**

**20** The Father loves me, the Son, and shows me everything he is doing. Even greater works than these the Father will show me, so that you may see what I can do and be amazed.

# John 5:21

**Father…Son (ULT)**
**Father…I, the Son (UST)**

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. (See: Translating Son and Father)

**gives…life (ULT)**
**gives…life again (UST)**

This refers to "spiritual life."

## Translation Words - ULT

- gives…life
- gives life (2)
- Son
- Father
- dead
- raises
- as

## Translation Words - UST

- gives…life again
- give life (2)
- I, the Son
- Father
- those who have died…them
- raises up
- As

**ULT**

**21** For as the Father raises the dead and gives them life, so also the Son gives life to whomever he wishes.

**UST**

**21** As the Father raises up those who have died and gives them life again, so I, the Son, give life to anyone I want.

# John 5:22

**For not even the Father judges anyone, but he has given all judgment to the Son (ULT)**

The word "for" marks a comparison. The Son of God carries out judgment for God the Father. (See: Translating Son and Father)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Son
- Father
- judges
- judgment

**Translation Words - UST**

- to me
- Father
- judges
- judgment

**ULT**

**22** For not even the Father judges anyone, but he has given all judgment to the Son

**UST**

**22** The Father judges no one, but has given over all judgment to me,

# John 5:23

## honor the Son just as…the Father. The one who does not honor the Son does not honor the Father

God the Son must be honored and worshiped just like God the Father. If we fail to honor God the Son, then we also fail to honor God the Father. (See: Translating Son and Father)

## Translation Words - ULT

- will honor
- they honor (2)
- who…honor
- honor
- Son
- Son (2)
- Father
- Father (2)
- who sent
- just as

## Translation Words - UST

- may honor
- they honor (2)
- honor
- honor
- me, the Son
- me (2)
- Father
- Father (2)
- sent
- in the same way that

**ULT**

**23** so that everyone will honor the Son just as they honor the Father. The one who does not honor the Son does not honor the Father who sent him.

**UST**

**23** so that all people may honor me, the Son, in the same way that they honor the Father. Whoever does not honor me cannot honor the Father who sent me.

## John 5:24

**Truly, truly**

See how you translated this in John 1:51.

**he...who hears my word (ULT)**
**Anyone who hears my message (UST)**

Here "word" is a metonym that represents the message of Jesus. Alternate translation: "anyone who hears my message" (See: Metonymy)

**will not come into judgment (ULT)**
**will not come into God's judgment (UST)**

This can be stated positively. Alternate translation: "will be judged to be innocent" (See: Double Negatives)

**ULT**

**24** Truly, truly I say to you, he who hears my word and believes him who sent me has eternal life and will not come into judgment, but he has passed from death to life.

**UST**

**24** I am telling you the truth: Anyone who hears my message and trusts that God sent me has eternal life and will not come into God's judgment. Instead, he has gone from being dead to being alive.

### Translation Words - ULT

- life
- life
- judgment
- eternal
- word
- Truly
- truly (2)
- believes
- death
- him who sent

### Translation Words - UST

- life
- being alive
- God's judgment
- eternal
- message
- the truth
- the truth (2)
- trusts
- being dead
- that God sent

# John 5:25

**Truly, truly**

Translate this the way your language emphasizes that what follows is important and true. See how you translated this in John 1:51.

**the dead will hear the voice of the Son of God, and those who hear will live (ULT)**
**those who have died will hear my voice, that of me, the Son of God, and those who hear me will live (UST)**

The voice of Jesus, the Son of God, will raise dead people from the grave. (See: Translating Son and Father)

**Son of God (ULT)**
**Son of God (UST)**

This is an important title for Jesus. (See: Translating Son and Father)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- will live
- of God
- Son of God
- Truly
- truly (2)
- voice
- dead
- the time

**Translation Words - UST**

- will live
- of God
- Son of God
- the truth
- the truth (2)
- my voice, that of me
- those who have died
- A time

**ULT**

**25** Truly, truly, I say to you, the time is coming, and is now, when the dead will hear the voice of the Son of God, and those who hear will live.

**UST**

**25** I am telling you the truth: A time is coming and in fact is here already, when those who have died will hear my voice, that of me, the Son of God, and those who hear me will live.

## John 5:26

**For just as the Father has life in himself, so also he gave to the Son to have life in himself (ULT)**
**For as the Father is able to cause people to live, in the same way he has given power to me, the Son, to cause them to live (UST)**

The word "For" marks a comparison. The Son of God has the power to give life, just as the Father does. (See: Translating Son and Father)

**Father...Son (ULT)**
**Father...to me, the Son (UST)**

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. (See: Translating Son and Father)

**life (ULT)**
**is able to cause people to live (UST)**

This means spiritual life.

### Translation Words - ULT

- life
- life (2)
- Son
- Father
- just as

### Translation Words - UST

- is able to cause people to live
- power...to cause them to live (2)
- to me, the Son
- Father
- as

---

**ULT**

**26** For just as the Father has life in himself, so also he gave to the Son to have life in himself,

**UST**

**26** For as the Father is able to cause people to live, in the same way he has given power to me, the Son, to cause them to live.

---

# John 5:27

**the Son of Man (ULT)**
**the Son of Man (UST)**

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. (See: Translating Son and Father)

**he has given the Son authority to carry out judgment (ULT)**
**The Father has given me authority to do whatever he knows is just (UST)**

The Son of God has the authority of God the Father to judge.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- authority
- the Son of Man
- judgment

**Translation Words - UST**

- authority
- the Son of Man
- whatever he knows is just

**ULT**

**27** and he has given the Son authority to carry out judgment because he is the Son of Man.

**UST**

**27** The Father has given me authority to do whatever he knows is just, because I am the Son of Man.

## John 5:28

**Do not be amazed at this (ULT)**
**Do not be surprised at this (UST)**

"This" refers to the fact that Jesus, as the Son of Man, has the power to give eternal life and to carry out judgment.

**will hear his voice (ULT)**
**will hear me call (UST)**

"hear my voice"

### Translation Words - ULT

- voice
- be amazed at
- tombs
- a time

### Translation Words - UST

- me call
- Do...be surprised
- who have died
- a time

**ULT**

**28** Do not be amazed at this, for a time is coming in which everyone who is in the tombs will hear his voice

**UST**

**28** Do not be surprised at this because there will be a time when all people who have died will hear me call,

## John 5:29

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- of life
- the
- the resurrection (2)
- of judgment
- good
- evil
- who have done
- who have done

### Translation Words - UST

- everlasting life
- God will raise to
- God will raise them up, but only to condemn them and punish them forever (2)
- God will raise them up, but only to condemn them and punish them forever
- those who have done good
- But those who have done evil
- those who have done good
- But those who have done evil

**ULT**

**29** and will come out. Those who have done good to the resurrection of life, and those who have done evil to the resurrection of judgment.

**UST**

**29** and they will come out of their graves. God will raise to everlasting life those who have done good. But those who have done evil—God will raise them up, but only to condemn them and punish them forever.

# John 5:30

**will…of him who sent me (ULT)**
**what…want…the Father…he who sent me here (UST)**

The word "him" refers to God the Father.

## Translation Words - ULT

- righteous
- can
- will of him who sent me
- I judge
- judgment
- of him who sent
- I am…seeking
- As

## Translation Words - UST

- in a just manner…justly
- can
- what…the Father…wants…he who sent me here
- I judge
- judge…judge
- the Father…he who sent…here
- I do…try to do
- Whatever…that is how

**ULT**

**30** I can do nothing from myself. As I hear, I judge, and my judgment is righteous because I am not seeking my own will but the will of him who sent me.

**UST**

**30** I can do nothing on my own. Whatever I hear from the Father, that is how I judge, and I judge in a just manner. I judge justly because I do not try to do what I want, but what the Father wants, he who sent me here.

# John 5:31

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

## Translation Words - ULT

- should testify
- testimony
- true

## Translation Words - UST

- to be a witness
- witness
- true or reliable

**ULT**
**31** If I should testify about myself, my testimony would not be true.

**UST**
**31** If I alone were the only one to be a witness about myself, no one would believe my witness to be true or reliable.

# John 5:32

**There is another who testifies about me (ULT)**
**Nevertheless, there is someone else who bears witness about me (UST)**

"There is someone else who tells people about me"

**another (ULT)**
**Nevertheless (UST)**

This refers to God.

**about me...the testimony that he gives...is true (ULT)**
**about me...his testimony...is true (UST)**

"what he tells people about me is true"

## Translation Words - ULT

- who testifies
- testimony
- he gives
- true
- I know

## Translation Words - UST

- someone else who bears witness
- his testimony
- his testimony
- true
- I know

---

**ULT**

**32** There is another who testifies about me, and I know that the testimony that he gives about me is true.

**UST**

**32** Nevertheless, there is someone else who bears witness about me, and I know that his testimony about me is true.

# John 5:33

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

## Translation Words - ULT

- he has testified
- truth
- John
- have sent

## Translation Words - UST

- he told
- you the truth about me
- John the Baptizer
- sent messengers

**ULT**

**33** You have sent to John, and he has testified to the truth.

**UST**

**33** You sent messengers to John the Baptizer, and he told you the truth about me.

# John 5:34

**I...the testimony that...receive is not from man (ULT)**
**I...do not...need for him or anyone else to be a witness about me (UST)**

"I do not need people's testimony"

**that you might be saved (ULT)**
**so that God can save you (UST)**

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "so God can save you" (See: Active or Passive)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- might be saved
- testimony that
- receive

**Translation Words - UST**

- God can save
- need...to be a witness about me
- need...to be a witness about me

# John 5:35

**John was a lamp that was burning and shining, and you were willing to rejoice in his light for a while (ULT) John the Baptizer was like a burning and shining lamp, and you were glad to rejoice for a while in the light of his message (UST)**

Here "lamp" and "light" are metaphors. John taught the people about God and this was like a lamp shining its light into the dark. Alternate translation: "John taught you about God and this was like a lamp shining its light. And for a while what John said made you happy" (See: Metaphor)

**ULT**

**35** John was a lamp that was burning and shining, and you were willing to rejoice in his light for a while.

**UST**

**35** John the Baptizer was like a burning and shining lamp, and you were glad to rejoice for a while in the light of his message.

## Translation Words - ULT

- lamp
- light
- a while
- to rejoice

## Translation Words - UST

- a...lamp
- the light of
- a while
- to rejoice

# John 5:36

**the works that the Father has given me to accomplish...that the Father has sent me**

God the Father has sent God the Son, Jesus, to earth. Jesus completes what the Father gives him to do.

**Father (ULT)**
**Father (UST)**

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

**the very works that I do, testify about me (ULT)**

Here Jesus says that the miracles "testify" or "tell the people" about him. Alternate translation: "What I do shows the people that God has sent me" (See: Personification)

## Translation Words - ULT

- testimony that
- testify
- works
- works (2)
- Father
- Father
- that of John
- has sent
- I should accomplish

## Translation Words - UST

- witness...give about myself
- tell much...explain my purpose for coming here...are proof
- All the things...those things
- they...They (2)
- Father
- Father
- the witness John gave about me
- has sent
- every day, and you see me doing

**ULT**

**36** Yet the testimony that I have is greater than that of John, for the works that the Father has given me that I should accomplish them, the very works that I do, testify about me that the Father has sent me.

**UST**

**36** However, the witness I give about myself is even greater than the witness John gave about me. All the things that the Father has allowed me to do—I do those things every day, and you see me doing them—those things tell much about who I am; they explain my purpose for coming here. They are proof that the Father has sent me.

## John 5:37

**The...Father who sent me has himself testified (ULT)**
**The Father who sent me, he is the one who has given testimony (UST)**

The reflexive pronoun "himself" emphasizes that it is the Father, not someone less important, who has testified. (See: Reflexive Pronouns)

### Translation Words - ULT

- has...testified
- Father
- at any time
- voice
- who sent

### Translation Words - UST

- has given testimony
- Father
- You have
- voice
- who sent

---

**ULT**

**37** The Father who sent me has himself testified about me. You have neither heard his voice nor seen his form at any time.

**UST**

**37** The Father who sent me, he is the one who has given testimony about me. You have never heard his voice and you have never seen him physically.

## John 5:38

**You do not have his...word...remaining in you, for the one whom he has sent, him you do not believe (ULT)**
**The proof that you do not have his word living in you is that you do not trust me, the one he sent (UST)**

"You do not believe in the one he has sent. That is how I know that you do not have his word remaining in you"

**You do not have his...word...remaining in you (ULT)**
**you do not have his word living in you (UST)**

Jesus speaks of people living according to God's word as if they were houses and God's word were a person that lived in houses. Alternate translation: "You do not live according to his word" or "You do not obey his word" (See: Metaphor)

**his...word (ULT)**
**his word (UST)**

"the message he spoke to you"

### Translation Words - ULT

- word
- believe
- whom...has sent

### Translation Words - UST

- word
- do...trust
- the one...sent

---

**ULT**

**38** You do not have his word remaining in you, for the one whom he has sent, him you do not believe.

**UST**

**38** The proof that you do not have his word living in you is that you do not trust me, the one he sent.

## John 5:39

**in them you have eternal life (ULT)**
**that by studying them you will find eternal life (UST)**

"you will find eternal life if you read them" or "the scriptures will tell you how you can have eternal life"

### Translation Words - ULT

- life
- eternal
- scriptures
- testify

### Translation Words - UST

- life
- eternal
- scriptures
- tell

---

**ULT**

**39** You search the scriptures because you think that in them you have eternal life, and these same scriptures testify about me,

**UST**

**39** You carefully study the scriptures because you think that by studying them you will find eternal life, and those scriptures tell about me.

## John 5:40

**you are not willing to come to me (ULT)**
**still you refuse to come to me (UST)**

"you refuse to believe my message"

### Translation Words - ULT

- life

### Translation Words - UST

- everlasting life

---

**ULT**

**40** and you are not willing to come to me so that you may have life.

**UST**

**40** Yet still you refuse to come to me in order that you might receive everlasting life from me.

# John 5:41

**I...receive (ULT)**
**I ignore them (UST)**

accept

## Translation Words - ULT

- praise
- I...receive

## Translation Words - UST

- If people praise me or congratulate me
- I ignore them

**ULT**
**41** I do not receive praise from men,

**UST**
**41** If people praise me or congratulate me, I ignore them.

# John 5:42

## you do not have the love of God in yourselves (ULT)

This can mean 1) "you really do not love God" or 2) "you have really not received God's love."

## Translation Words - ULT

- love
- of God
- I know

## Translation Words - UST

- love
- God
- I know this about

**ULT**
**42** but I know you, that you do not have the love of God in yourselves.

**UST**
**42** I know this about you, you do not love God.

# John 5:43

**in my Father's name (ULT)**
**with my Father's authority (UST)**

Here the word "name" is a metonym that symbolizes God's power and authority. Alternate translation: "I have come with my Father's authority" (See: Metonymy)

**Father's (ULT)**
**Father's (UST)**

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

**you...receive (ULT)**
**you do...welcome...or trust (UST)**

welcome as a friend

**If another should come in his own name (ULT)**
**If someone else came with his own authority (UST)**

The word "name" is a metonym that represents authority. Alternate translation: "If another should come in his own authority" (See: Metonymy)

**ULT**

**43** I have come in my Father's name, and you do not receive me. If another should come in his own name, you would receive him.

**UST**

**43** I have come with my Father's authority, but still you do not welcome me or trust me. If someone else came with his own authority, you would listen to him.

## Translation Words - ULT

- Father's
- name
- name (2)
- you...receive
- you would receive

## Translation Words - UST

- Father's
- with...authority
- with...authority (2)
- you do...welcome...or trust
- you would listen

## John 5:44

**How can you believe, you who accept praise from one another but...the praise that comes from the only God (ULT)**
**How can you trust in me when you work so hard for others among yourselves to honor you? Yet all the while...the true honor that comes from the one and only God (UST)**

This remark appears in the form of a question in order to add emphasis. Alternate translation: "There is no way you can believe because you accept praise...God!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

**believe (ULT)**
**trust in me (UST)**

This means to trust in Jesus.

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- praise
- praise (2)
- believe
- you who accept
- are...seeking

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- to honor you
- true honor (2)
- trust in me
- you work so hard
- you...to seek

---

**ULT**

**44** How can you believe, you who accept praise from one another but are not seeking the praise that comes from the only God?

**UST**

**44** How can you trust in me when you work so hard for others among yourselves to honor you? Yet all the while, you refuse to seek the true honor that comes from the one and only God.

## John 5:45

**The one who accuses you is Moses, in whom you have put your hope (ULT)**
**You thought Moses would defend you, so on him you have set your hopes. However, it is Moses who accuses you (UST)**

"Moses" here is a metonym here that stands for the law itself. Alternate translation: "Moses accuses you in the Law, the very Law in which you have put your hopes" (See: Metonymy)

**have put your hope (ULT)**
**thought...would defend...have set your hopes (UST)**

"your confidence" or "your trust"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Father
- have put your hope
- Moses
- will accuse
- The one who accuses

### Translation Words - UST

- my Father
- thought...would defend...have set your hopes
- Moses...him...Moses
- accuses
- accuses

**ULT**

**45** Do not think that I myself will accuse you before the Father. The one who accuses you is Moses, in whom you have put your hope.

**UST**

**45** Do not think that I am the one who accuses you before my Father. You thought Moses would defend you, so on him you have set your hopes. However, it is Moses who accuses you.

## John 5:46

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- you believed
- you would believe (2)
- Moses
- wrote

### Translation Words - UST

- you had accepted
- you would have received...as the truth (2)
- what Moses said
- was explaining

**ULT**

**46** For if you believed Moses, you would believe me, because he wrote about me.

**UST**

**46** If you had accepted what Moses said, you would have received what I said as the truth because he was explaining about me.

# John 5:47

**if...you do not believe his writings, how will you believe my words (ULT)**

This remark appears in the form of a question to provide emphasis. Alternate translation: "You do not believe his writings, so you will never believe my words!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

**his...my...words (ULT)**

"what I say"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- you...believe
- will you believe

**Translation Words - UST**

- you did...believe in
- could you...trust

**ULT**

**47** But if you do not believe his writings, how will you believe my words?"
5:3 [1] The best ancient copies do not have the phrase, *waiting for the moving of the water* .
5:4 [2] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 4.

**UST**

**47** Since you did not even believe in what Moses wrote, how could you possibly trust what I have said to you!"
5:4 [1] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 4.

## John 6

### John 6 General Notes

## Special concepts in this chapter

### King

The king of any nation was the richest and most powerful person in that nation. The people wanted Jesus to be their king because he gave them food and so they thought he would make the Jews into the richest and most powerful nation in the world. They did not understand that Jesus came to die so God could forgive his people's sins and that the world would persecute his people.

## Important metaphors in this chapter

### Bread

Bread was the most common and important food in Jesus' day, and so the word "bread" was their general word for "food." It is often difficult to translate the word "bread" into the languages of people who do not eat bread because the general word for food in some languages refers to food that did not exist in Jesus' culture. Jesus used the word "bread" to refer to himself. He wanted them to understand that they need him so they can have eternal life. (See: Metaphor and Synecdoche)

### Eating the flesh and drinking the blood

When Jesus said, "Unless you eat the flesh of the Son of Man and drink his blood, you will not have life in yourselves," he knew that before he died he would tell his followers to do this by eating bread and drinking wine. In the event this chapter describes, he expected that his hearers would understand that he was using a metaphor but would not understand what the metaphor referred to. (See: flesh and blood)

## Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

### Parenthetical Ideas

Several times in this passage, John explains something or gives the reader some context to better understand the story. These explanation are intended to give the reader some additional knowledge without interrupting the flow of the narrative. The information is placed inside parentheses.

### "Son of Man"

Jesus refers to himself as the "Son of Man" in this chapter (John 6;26). Your language may not allow people to speak of themselves as if they were speaking about someone else. (See: Son of Man, son of man and First, Second or Third Person)

# John 6:1

## General Information:

Jesus has traveled from Jerusalem to Galilee. A crowd has followed him up a mountainside. These verses tell the setting of this part of the story. (See: Background Information)

## After these things (ULT)

The phrase "these things" refers to the events in John 5:1-46 and introduces the event that follows.

## Jesus went away (ULT)
## Jesus and his apprentices went across the lake (UST)

**ULT**

**1** After these things, Jesus went away to the other side of the Sea of Galilee, also called the Sea of Tiberias.

**UST**

**1** Jesus and his apprentices went across the lake to the other side. The name of the lake was the "Sea of Galilee" to some people; other people called it the "Sea of Tiberias."

It is implied in the text that Jesus traveled by boat and took his disciples with him. Alternate translation: "Jesus traveled by boat with his disciples" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- of Galilee
- Sea of Galilee, also called the Sea of Tiberias

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus and his apprentices
- of Galilee
- The name of the lake was the…Sea…of Galilee…to some people…other people called it the "Sea of Tiberias

## John 6:2

**a great crowd (ULT)**
**A large crowd (UST)**

"A large number of people"

**signs (ULT)**
**wonders (UST)**

This refers to the miracles that are used as evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over everything.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- signs

**Translation Words - UST**

- wonders

## John 6:3

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- disciples

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- apprentices

---

**ULT**

**3** Jesus went up on the mountain and there he sat down with his disciples.

**UST**

**3** Jesus went up on a steep hillside and sat down with his apprentices.

---

# John 6:4

## General Information:

The action in the story begins in verse 5.

## Now the Passover, the Jewish festival, was near (ULT) Now it was the time of the year for the annual Passover Festival, a special celebration of the Jews (UST)

John briefly stops telling about the events in the story in order to give background information about when the events happened. (See: Background Information)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jewish
- Passover
- festival

## Translation Words - UST

- of the Jews
- annual Passover
- Festival, a special celebration

**ULT**

⁴ (Now the Passover, the Jewish festival, was near.)

**UST**

⁴ Now it was the time of the year for the annual Passover Festival, a special celebration of the Jews.

## John 6:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Philip
- bread

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Philip
- bread

---

**ULT**

**5** When Jesus lifted up his eyes and saw that a great crowd was coming to him, he said to Philip, "Where are we going to buy bread so that these may eat?"

**UST**

**5** Jesus looked up and saw that there was a very large crowd of people making their way toward him. Jesus said to Philip, "Where will we buy bread so that all these people can have something to eat?"

## John 6:6

**But Jesus said this to test Philip, for he himself knew what he was going to do (ULT)**

John briefly stops telling about the events in the story in order to explain why Jesus asked Philip where to buy bread. (See: Background Information)

**for he himself knew (ULT)**
**However, Jesus already knew (UST)**

The reflexive pronoun "himself" makes it clear that the word "he" refers to Jesus. Jesus knew what he would do. (See: Reflexive Pronouns)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- to test
- he...knew

**Translation Words - UST**

- to test...to see what sort of answer...would give
- already knew

**ULT**

**6** (But Jesus said this to test Philip, for he himself knew what he was going to do.)

**UST**

**6** He asked Philip this question to test him, to see what sort of answer he would give. However, Jesus already knew what he was going to do about this problem.

## John 6:7

**Two hundred denarii worth of bread (ULT)**
**If we had the money that a man can earn in two**
**hundred days of work...bread (UST)**

The word "denarii" is the plural of "denarius. "Alternate translation:
"The amount of bread that cost two hundred days' wages" (See:
Biblical Money)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Philip
- might have
- worth of bread

### Translation Words - UST

- Philip
- give...to eat
- bread

**ULT**

**7** Philip answered him, "Two hundred
denarii worth of bread would not be
sufficient for them, that each one might
have a little."

**UST**

**7** Philip replied to him, "If we had the
money that a man can earn in two
hundred days of work, it would not be
enough money to buy bread to give
each person in this big crowd even a
little piece to eat."

# John 6:8

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

## Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- disciples
- Andrew
- of Simon Peter

## Translation Words - UST

- who was...brother
- apprentices
- Andrew
- Simon Peter's

**ULT**

**8** One of his disciples, Andrew, the brother of Simon Peter, said to Jesus,

**UST**

**8** Another one of his apprentices, Andrew, who was Simon Peter's brother, said to Jesus,

# John 6:9

**five bread loaves of barley (ULT)**
**five little barley loaves of bread (UST)**

"Five loaves of barley bread." Barley was a common grain.

**bread loaves (ULT)**
**little...loaves of bread (UST)**

A loaf of bread is a lump of dough that is shaped and baked. These were probably small dense, round loaves.

**what are these among so many (ULT)**
**how could so little food feed so many people (UST)**

This remark appears in the form of a question to emphasize that they do not have enough food to feed everyone. Alternate translation: "these few loaves and fishes are not enough to feed so many people!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- bread loaves
- of barley

**Translation Words - UST**

- little...loaves of bread
- barley

---

**ULT**

**9** "There is a boy here who has five <u>bread loaves</u> <u>of barley</u> and two fish, but what are these among so many?"

**UST**

**9** "There is a boy here who has five <u>little barley</u> <u>loaves of bread</u> and two small fish. Yet, how could so little food feed so many people?"

# John 6:10

**sit down (ULT)**
**to sit down (UST)**

"lie down"

**Now there was a lot of grass in the place (ULT)**

John briefly stops telling about the events in the story in order to give background information about the place where this event happens. (See: Background Information)

**So the men sat down, about five thousand in number (ULT)**
**So all of the people sat down, and after the apprentices counted the crowd, they found that there were about five thousand people (UST)**

**ULT**

**10** Jesus said, "Make the people sit down." (Now there was a lot of grass in the place.) So the men sat down, about five thousand in number.

**UST**

**10** The place where the people were all coming together had a lot of grass. So Jesus said, "Tell the people to sit down." So all of the people sat down, and after the apprentices counted the crowd, they found that there were about five thousand people.

While the crowd probably included women and children (John 6:4-5), here John is counting only the men.

**Translation Words - ULT**

  • Jesus

**Translation Words - UST**

  • Jesus

# John 6:11

**after giving thanks (ULT)**
**he thanked God for them (UST)**

Jesus prayed to God the Father and thanked him for the fish and the loaves.

**he gave it (ULT)**
**Then he passed the bread (UST)**

"he" here represents "Jesus and his disciples." Alternate translation: "Jesus and his disciples gave it" (See: Synecdoche)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- loaves
- He did the same

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- small loaves of bread...bread
- like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if

**ULT**

**11** Then Jesus took the loaves and after giving thanks, he gave it to those who were sitting. He did the same also with the fish, as much as they wanted.

**UST**

**11** Then Jesus took the small loaves of bread and the fish, and he thanked God for them. Then he passed the bread and the fish among all who were sitting on the ground. The people ate all the fish and bread they wanted.

## John 6:12

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- will be lost
- to...disciples

### Translation Words - UST

- Do not let anything go to waste
- to...apprentices

---

**ULT**

**12** When the people were filled, he said to his disciples, "Gather up the broken pieces which remain, so that nothing will be lost."

**UST**

**12** When everyone had finished eating, he said to his apprentices, "Gather up all the pieces of barley bread that the people did not eat. Do not let anything go to waste."

# John 6:13

## General Information:

Jesus withdraws from the crowd. This is the end of the part of the story about Jesus feeding the crowd on the mountain.

## they gathered them up (ULT)
## they gathered up (UST)

"the disciples gathered"

## left over (ULT)
## from what was left over (UST)

the food that no one had eaten

## Translation Words - ULT

- loaves
- baskets
- barley

## Translation Words - UST

- loaves
- large baskets full
- barley

**ULT**

**13** So they gathered them up and filled twelve baskets with broken pieces from the five barley loaves left over by those who had eaten.

**UST**

**13** So they gathered up the pieces from the five barley loaves, and they filled twelve large baskets full from what was left over.

## John 6:14

**this...that...sign (ULT)**
**the...that...miracle (UST)**

Jesus feeding the 5,000 people with five barley loaves and two fish

**the prophet (ULT)**
**the Prophet (UST)**

the special prophet who Moses said would come into the world

### Translation Words - ULT

- sign
- prophet
- truly
- world

### Translation Words - UST

- miracle
- Prophet
- Surely
- world

**ULT**

**14** Then, when the people saw this sign that he did, they said, "This truly is the prophet who is to come into the world."

**UST**

**14** After the people saw the miracle that Jesus had performed in front of them, they said, "Surely he is the Prophet that God has been going to send into the world!"

## John 6:15

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- king
- seize...by force
- realized

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- king
- force
- knew

**ULT**

**15** When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain by himself.

**UST**

**15** Jesus knew what the people were planning; they were about to come and force him to be their king. So he left them and went up the mountain to be by himself.

# John 6:16

## Connecting Statement:

This is the next event in the story. Jesus' disciples go out onto the lake in a boat.

## Translation Words - ULT

- disciples
- sea
- When

## Translation Words - UST

- apprentices
- Galilee lake
- When

**ULT**
**16** When it became evening, his disciples went down to the sea.

**UST**
**16** When it was evening, his apprentices went down to the Galilee lake,

# John 6:17

**It was…dark…by this time, but Jesus had not yet come to them (ULT)**
**It was now dark, and Jesus still had not joined them (UST)**

Use your language's way of showing that this is background information. (See: Background Information)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Capernaum
- sea
- by this time
- dark

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- the city of Capernaum
- lake
- now
- dark

**ULT**

**17** They got into a boat, and were going over the sea to Capernaum. It was dark by this time, but Jesus had not yet come to them.

**UST**

**17** got into a boat, and started to sail across the lake to the city of Capernaum. It was now dark, and Jesus still had not joined them.

## John 6:18

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

> • sea

### Translation Words - UST

> • and the waves on the lake

**ULT**

**18** A strong wind was blowing, and the sea was getting rough.

**UST**

**18** A strong wind started to blow, and the waves on the lake became very rough.

# John 6:19

**they had rowed (ULT)**
**After they had rowed (UST)**

Boats usually had two, four, or six people rowing with rowers on each side working together. Your culture may have different ways of making a boat go across a large body of water.

**about twenty-five or thirty stadia (ULT)**
**five or six kilometers (UST)**

A "stadium" is 185 meters. Alternate translation: "about five or six kilometers" (See: Biblical Distance)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- they were afraid
- sea
- walking

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- They were terrified
- water
- walking

**ULT**

**19** When they had rowed about twenty-five or thirty stadia, they saw Jesus walking on the sea and coming near the boat, and they were afraid.

**UST**

**19** After they had rowed five or six kilometers, the apprentices saw Jesus walking on the water and coming near the boat. They were terrified!

## John 6:20

**Do not be afraid (ULT)**
**Do not be afraid (UST)**

"Stop being afraid!"

### Translation Words - ULT

  • be afraid

### Translation Words - UST

  • Do…be afraid

# John 6:21

**they were willing...to receive him into the boat (ULT)**
**They were very glad...to take him into the boat (UST)**

It is implied that Jesus gets into the boat. Alternate translation: "they gladly received him into the boat" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- to receive

**Translation Words - UST**

- to take

**ULT**

**21** Then they were willing to receive him into the boat, and immediately the boat reached the land where they were going.

**UST**

**21** They were very glad to take him into the boat. As soon as he was with them, their boat arrived at the place where they were going.

## John 6:22

**of the sea (ULT)**
**of the lake (UST)**

"the Sea of Galilee"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- disciples
- disciples
- sea

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- apprentices
- disciple
- of the lake

---

**ULT**

**22** The next day, the crowd that had been standing on the other side of the sea saw that there was no other boat there except the one, and that Jesus had not entered into the boat with his disciples but that his disciples had gone away alone.

**UST**

**22** The next day the crowd of people that had stayed on the other side of the lake realized that there had been only one boat there the day before. They also knew that Jesus had not gone in the boat with his apprentices.

# John 6:23

**However, boats came from Tiberias close to the place where they had eaten the bread loaves after the Lord had given thanks (ULT)**

Use your language's way of showing that this is background information. (See: Background Information)

**boats came from Tiberias (ULT)**
**Some men came across the lake from the city of Tiberias in other boats they had (UST)**

Here, John provides more background information. The next day, after Jesus fed the people, some boats with people from Tiberius came to see Jesus. However, Jesus and his disciples had left the night before. (See: Background Information)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Lord
- bread loaves

**Translation Words - UST**

- Lord
- bread

**ULT**

**23** However, boats came from Tiberias close to the place where they had eaten the bread loaves after the Lord had given thanks.

**UST**

**23** Some men came across the lake from the city of Tiberias in other boats they had. They put their boats near the place where the people had eaten the bread, that bread for which the Lord had given thanks to God.

# John 6:24

## General Information:

The people go to Capernaum to find Jesus. When they see him, they start asking him questions.

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Jesus
- disciples
- Capernaum
- seeking

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Jesus
- apprentices
- Capernaum
- to look for

**ULT**

**24** When therefore the crowd discovered that neither Jesus nor his disciples were there, they themselves got into the boats and went to Capernaum seeking Jesus.

**UST**

**24** When the crowd realized that neither Jesus nor his apprentices were there, some of them got into those boats and sailed to Capernaum to look for Jesus.

# John 6:25

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

## Translation Words - ULT

- Rabbi
- sea

## Translation Words - UST

- Teacher
- of the Galilee lake

## John 6:26

### Truly, truly

See how you translated this in John 1:51.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- signs
- Truly
- truly (2)
- bread loaves
- you seek

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- me perform miracles that show who I am
- the truth
- the truth (2)
- loaves of bread
- You are…looking

**ULT**

**26** Jesus replied to them and said, "Truly, truly I say to you, you seek me, not because you saw signs, but because you ate some of the bread loaves and were filled.

**UST**

**26** Jesus replied to them, "I am telling you the truth: You are not looking for me because you saw me perform miracles that show who I am. No! You are looking for me only because you ate until you were full of the loaves of bread.

## John 6:27

**eternal life which the Son of Man will give you, for God the Father has set his seal on him**

God the Father has given his approval to Jesus, the Son of Man, to give eternal life to those who believe in him.

**Son of Man...the Father...God (ULT)**
**I, the Son of Man, God's chosen one...the Father...God (UST)**

These are important titles that describe the relationship between Jesus and God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

**on him...has set his seal (ULT)**

To "set a seal" on something means to place a mark on it to show to whom it belongs. This means that the Son belongs to the Father and that the Father approves of him in every way. (See: Metaphor)

### Translation Words - ULT

- life
- eternal
- that perishes
- God
- Father
- Son of Man
- work
- has set his seal

### Translation Words - UST

- life
- everlasting
- that will soon spoil
- God
- Father
- I, the Son of Man, God's chosen one
- Stop working
- approves of me in every way

**ULT**

**27** Do not work for the food that perishes, but for the food that endures to eternal life which the Son of Man will give you, for God the Father has set his seal on him."

**UST**

**27** Stop working for food that will soon spoil! Instead, work for the food that will bring you everlasting life! That is the bread that I, the Son of Man, God's chosen one, will give you. For God the Father approves of me in every way."

## John 6:28

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- of God
- works
- we may do

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- works and service...to please
- works and service...to please

**ULT**
**28** Then they said to him, "What must we do, so that we may do the works of God?"

**UST**
**28** Then the people asked him, "What works and service should we do to please God?"

## John 6:29

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- of God
- work
- you believe
- whom...has sent

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- God
- What...wants you to do
- Trust
- has sent

**ULT**

**29** Jesus replied and said to them, "This is the work of God: That you believe in the one whom he has sent."

**UST**

**29** Jesus replied, "What God wants you to do is this: Trust in me, the one he has sent."

## John 6:30

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- sign
- believe
- will you do

### Translation Words - UST

- another miracle to prove who you are
- believe that you came from God
- will you do

**ULT**

**30** So they said to him, "What sign then will you do, so that we may see and believe you? What will you do?

**UST**

**30** So they said to him, "Then perform another miracle to prove who you are so that we can see it and believe that you came from God. What will you do for us?

# John 6:31

**Our fathers (ULT)**
**Our ancestors (UST)**

"Our forefathers" or "Our ancestors"

**heaven (ULT)**
**of the heavens (UST)**

This refers to the place where God lives.

## Translation Words - ULT

- heaven
- manna
- fathers
- wilderness
- bread
- as
- written

## Translation Words - UST

- of the heavens
- manna
- ancestors
- desolate place
- bread
- just as
- the scriptures say

**ULT**

**31** Our <u>fathers</u> ate the <u>manna</u> in the <u>wilderness</u>, <u>as</u> it is <u>written</u>, 'He gave them <u>bread</u> from <u>heaven</u> to eat.'"

**UST**

**31** Our <u>ancestors</u> ate <u>manna</u> out in that <u>desolate place</u>, <u>just as</u> <u>the scriptures say</u>: 'God gave them <u>bread</u> out <u>of the heavens</u> to eat.'"

# John 6:32

**Truly, truly**

See how you translated this in John 1:51.

**it is my Father who is giving you the true bread from heaven**

The "true bread" is a metaphor for Jesus. Alternate translation: "The Father gives to you the Son as the true bread from heaven" (See: Metaphor and Translating Son and Father)

**my Father (ULT)**
**my Father, the same one (UST)**

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

**ULT**

**32** Then Jesus replied to them, "Truly, truly I say to you, Moses did not give you the bread out of heaven, but my Father is giving you the true bread from heaven.

**UST**

**32** Jesus said to them, "I am telling you the truth: It was not Moses who gave your ancestors that bread from heaven. No, it was my Father, the same one who is giving you the true bread from heaven.

## Translation Words - ULT

- heaven
- heaven (2)
- Jesus
- true
- Truly
- truly (2)
- Father
- Moses
- bread
- bread (2)

## Translation Words - UST

- heaven
- heaven (2)
- Jesus
- true
- the truth
- the truth (2)
- Father, the same one
- Moses
- bread
- bread (2)

# John 6:33

**gives life to the world (ULT)**
**make everyone in the world truly able to live (UST)**

"gives spiritual life to the world"

**to the world (ULT)**
**everyone in the world (UST)**

Here the "world" is a metonym for all of the people in the world who trust in Jesus. (See: Metonymy)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- life
- heaven
- of God
- world
- bread

**Translation Words - UST**

- make...truly able to live
- heaven
- of God
- everyone in the world
- true bread

## John 6:34

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Sir
- bread

### Translation Words - UST

- Sir
- bread

---

**ULT**

**34** So they said to him, "Sir, give us this bread always."

**UST**

**34** Not understanding what he meant, they said to him, "Sir, always give us this bread."

---

## John 6:35

### I am the bread of life (ULT)

Through metaphor, Jesus compares himself with bread. Just as bread is necessary for our physical life, Jesus is necessary for our spiritual life. Alternate translation: "Just as food keeps you alive physically, I can give you spiritual life" (See: Metaphor)

### Jesus...he who believes...in (ULT)
### Jesus...trust me to enable them to live spiritually (UST)

This means to believe that Jesus is the Son of God, to trust him as Savior, and to live in a way that honors him.

### Translation Words - ULT

- of life
- Jesus
- he who believes
- in me
- bread

### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- Jesus
- trust...to enable them to live spiritually
- me
- bread

**ULT**

**35** Jesus said to them, "I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty.

**UST**

**35** Jesus said to them, "Just as people need food to live, everyone needs me to live spiritually. Those who take ordinary food and water will become hungry and thirsty again. But for those who ask me and trust me to enable them to live spiritually, I will do this for them.

## John 6:36

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

• you...believe

### Translation Words - UST

• you...do...trust me

---

**ULT**

**36** But I told you that indeed you have seen me, and you do not <u>believe</u>.

**UST**

**36** Nevertheless, I have told you that, although you see me, you still do not <u>trust me</u>.

---

## John 6:37

**Everyone whom the Father gives me will come to me (ULT)**
**All the people my Father gives to me will come to me (UST)**

God the Father and God the Son will save forever those who believe in Jesus. (See: Translating Son and Father)

**Father (ULT)**
**Father (UST)**

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

**he who comes to me I will certainly not throw out (ULT)**
**I will never drive away anyone who comes to me (UST)**

This sentence states the opposite of what it means for emphasis. Alternate translation: "I will keep everyone who comes to me" (See: Litotes)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Father
- I will...throw

### Translation Words - UST

- Father
- I will...drive

**ULT**

**37** Everyone whom the Father gives me will come to me, and he who comes to me I will certainly not throw out.

**UST**

**37** All the people my Father gives to me will come to me, and I will never drive away anyone who comes to me.

## John 6:38

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues speaking to the crowd.

### heaven...of him who sent...me (ULT)
### heaven...of him who sent...me (UST)

"my Father, who sent me"

### Translation Words - ULT

- heaven
- will of him who sent me
- of him who sent

### Translation Words - UST

- heaven
- will of him who sent me
- of him who sent

---

**ULT**

**38** For I have come down from heaven, not in order to do my own will, but the will of him who sent me.

**UST**

**38** I came down from heaven not to do what I want, but to do the will of him who sent me.

---

## John 6:39

**of all those whom he has given...I would lose not one (ULT)**
**whom he has given...I lose none of those (UST)**

Here litotes is used to emphasize that Jesus will keep everyone that God gives to him. Alternate translation: "I should keep all of them" (See: Litotes)

**will raise him up (ULT)**
**I make all of them alive again (UST)**

Here to raise up is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. Alternate translation: "will cause them to live again" (See: Idiom)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- will of him who sent me
- last day
- of him who sent
- will raise...up
- day

**Translation Words - UST**

- what...the one who sent me...wants
- last day when will I judge everyone
- the one who sent
- I make...alive again
- day

**ULT**

**39** This is the will of him who sent me, that I would lose not one of all those whom he has given me, but will raise him up on the last day.

**UST**

**39** This is what the one who sent me wants, that I lose none of those whom he has given me, and that I make all of them alive again on the last day when will I judge everyone.

# John 6:40

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

## Translation Words - ULT

- life
- eternal
- Son
- believes
- of...Father
- will of my Father
- last day
- in him
- will raise...up
- day

## Translation Words - UST

- life
- everlasting
- Son
- who trust
- Father
- what...my Father...wants
- last day
- in me
- will make...alive again
- day

**ULT**

**40** For this is the will of my Father, that everyone who sees the Son and believes in him would have eternal life and I will raise him up on the last day."

**UST**

**40** For this is what my Father wants, that everyone who looks in faith on me, the Son, and who trust in me, will have everlasting life. I will make them alive again on that last day."

# John 6:41

**Connecting Statement:**

The Jewish leaders interrupt Jesus as he is speaking to the crowd.

**grumbled (ULT)**
**began to grumble (UST)**

talked unhappily

**I am the bread (ULT)**
**I am the one who is like true bread (UST)**

Just as bread is necessary for our physical life, Jesus is necessary for
our spiritual life. See how you translated this in John 6:35. Alternate translation: "I am the one who is like true
bread" (See: Metaphor)

### ULT

**41** Then the Jews grumbled about him because he had said, "I am the bread that has come down from heaven."

### UST

**41** The Jewish leaders began to grumble about Jesus because he said, "I am the one who is like true bread who came down from heaven."

**Translation Words - ULT**

- heaven
- Jews
- bread

**Translation Words - UST**

- heaven
- Jewish leaders
- one who is like true bread

# John 6:42

### Is not this Jesus son of Joseph, whose father and mother we know (ULT)

This remark appears in the form of a question to emphasize that the Jewish leaders believe that Jesus is no one special. Alternate translation: "This is just Jesus, the son of Joseph, whose father and mother we know! (See: Rhetorical Question)

### How then does he now say, 'I have come down from heaven (ULT)

This remark appears in the form of a question to emphasize that the Jewish leaders do not believe that Jesus came from heaven. Alternate translation: "He is lying when he says that he came from heaven!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

### Translation Words - ULT

- heaven
- Jesus
- son
- of Joseph
- father
- know

### Translation Words - UST

- heaven
- Jesus
- whose father is
- Joseph
- his father
- know who both...are

**ULT**

**42** So they said, "Is not this Jesus son of Joseph, whose father and mother we know? How then does he now say, 'I have come down from heaven'?"

**UST**

**42** They said, "Isn't this Jesus, whose father is Joseph? We know who both his father and his mother are. How can he say with any truth, 'I have come from heaven'?"

# John 6:43

## Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues speaking to the crowd and now also to the Jewish leaders.

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus

---

**ULT**

**43** Jesus replied and said to them, "Stop grumbling among yourselves.

**UST**

**43** Jesus answered them, "Stop grumbling among yourselves about what I just said.

# John 6:44

**will raise him up (ULT)**
**I will make those who come to me alive again (UST)**

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "cause him to live again" (See: Idiom)

**draws (ULT)**
**makes...want to come to me (UST)**

This can mean 1) "pulls" or 2) "attracts."

**Father (ULT)**
**Father (UST)**

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

## Translation Words - ULT

  • Father
  • last day
  • who sent
  • will raise...up
  • day

## Translation Words - UST

  • Father
  • last judgement day
  • who sent
  • I will make...alive again
  • day

---

**ULT**

**44** No one can come to me unless the Father who sent me draws him, and I will raise him up on the last day.

**UST**

**44** My Father, who sent me, makes people want to come to me. No others will come to me to receive eternal life. I will make those who come to me alive again on the last judgement day.

# John 6:45

### It is written in the prophets (ULT)
### It is written long ago by one of the Prophets (UST)

This is a passive statement that can be translated in an active form. Alternate translation: "The prophets wrote" (See: Active or Passive)

### And...Everyone who has heard...learned from the Father comes to me (ULT)

The Jews thought Jesus was the "son of Joseph" (John 6:42), but he is the Son of God because his Father is God, not Joseph. Those who truly learn from God the Father believe in Jesus, who is God the Son.

### Translation Words - ULT

- prophets
- by God
- Father
- written

### Translation Words - UST

- Prophets
- God
- Father
- written long ago

**ULT**

**45** It is written in the prophets, 'And everyone will be taught by God.' Everyone who has heard and learned from the Father comes to me.

**UST**

**45** It is written long ago by one of the Prophets, 'God will teach them all.' Everyone who hears and learns from my Father will come to believe in me.

## John 6:46

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus now continues speaking to the crowd and the Jewish leaders.

### Father (ULT)
### Father (UST)

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Father
- Father (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- Father
- him (2)

**ULT**
**46** Not that anyone has seen the Father, except he who is from God—he has seen the Father.

**UST**
**46** I came from God. I am the only one who has seen my Father. No one else has seen him.

# John 6:47

## Truly, truly

See how you translated this in John 1:51.

## he who believes has eternal life (ULT)
## Whoever trusts in me has everlasting life (UST)

God gives "eternal life" to those who trust in Jesus, the Son of God.

## Translation Words - ULT

- life
- eternal
- Truly
- truly (2)
- he who believes

## Translation Words - UST

- life
- everlasting
- the truth
- the truth (2)
- trusts in me

**ULT**

**47** Truly, truly I say to you, he who believes has eternal life.

**UST**

**47** I am telling you the truth: Whoever trusts in me has everlasting life.

# John 6:48

**I am the bread of life (ULT)**
**I am the bread that gives true life (UST)**

Just as bread is necessary for our physical life, Jesus is necessary for our spiritual life. See how you translated this in John 6:35. Alternate translation: "Just like food that keeps you alive physically, I can give you spiritual life that lasts forever" (See: Metaphor)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- of life
- bread

**Translation Words - UST**

- true life
- bread that gives

# John 6:49

**Your fathers (ULT)**
**Your ancestors (UST)**

"Your forefathers" or "Your ancestors"

**they died (ULT)**
**they still died (UST)**

This refers to physical death.

## Translation Words - ULT

- manna
- fathers
- wilderness
- they died

## Translation Words - UST

- manna
- ancestors
- desolate area
- they still died

---

**ULT**
**49** Your fathers ate the manna in the wilderness, and they died.

**UST**
**49** Your ancestors ate the manna in the desolate area, but they still died.

# John 6:50

### This is the bread (ULT)
### But the bread I am talking about is (UST)

Here "bread" is a metaphor that points to Jesus who is the one who gives spiritual life just as bread sustains physical life. Alternate translation: "I am like the true bread" (See: Metaphor)

### not die (ULT)
### their spirits will never die (UST)

"live forever." Here the word "die" refers to spiritual death.

### Translation Words - ULT

- heaven
- bread
- die

### Translation Words - UST

- heaven
- bread
- their spirits will...die

**ULT**

**50** This is the bread which comes down from heaven, so that a person may eat some of it and not die.

**UST**

**50** But the bread I am talking about is someone that came down from heaven. If people eat that bread, their spirits will never die.

# John 6:51

**the...living...bread (ULT)**
**the bread...that makes people truly live...the bread (UST)**

This means "the bread that causes people to live" (John 6:35).

**for the life of the world (ULT)**
**for the life of the world (UST)**

Here "the world" is a metonym that represents the lives of all the people in the world. Alternate translation: "that will give life to all the people in the world" (See: Metonymy)

## Translation Words - ULT

- living
- he will live
- life
- heaven
- flesh
- world
- bread
- bread
- bread (2)
- forever

## Translation Words - UST

- that makes people truly live
- he will live
- life
- heaven
- death of...physical body
- world
- bread...bread
- bread
- bread (2)
- forever

**ULT**

**51** I am the living bread that came down from heaven. If anyone eats some of this bread, he will live forever. The bread that I will give for the life of the world is my flesh."

**UST**

**51** I am the bread that makes people truly live, the bread that came down from heaven. If anyone eats this bread, he will live forever. The bread that I give for the life of the world is the death of my physical body."

# John 6:52

## Connecting Statement:

Some Jews who are present begin to argue among themselves and Jesus responds to their question.

## How can this man give us his flesh to eat (ULT)

This remark appears in the form of a question to emphasize that the Jewish leaders are reacting negatively to what Jesus has said about "his flesh." Alternate translation: "There is no way that this man can give us his flesh to eat!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jews
- flesh

## Translation Words - UST

- Jews who had listened to Jesus
- his own body

**ULT**

**52** Then the Jews began to argue among themselves, saying, "How can this man give us his flesh to eat?"

**UST**

**52** The Jews who had listened to Jesus were now angrily arguing among themselves. They could not understand how anyone could promise that others would eat his own body.

# John 6:53

### Truly, truly

See how you translated this in John 1:51.

### you eat the flesh of the Son of Man and drink his blood (ULT)
### you eat the flesh of me, the Son of Man, and drink my blood (UST)

Here the phrases "eat the flesh" and "drink his blood" are a metaphor that shows how trusting in Jesus, the Son of Man, is like receiving spiritual food and drink. However, the Jews did not understand this. Do not make the meaning of this metaphor more clear than Jesus did. (See: Metaphor)

### you will not have life in yourselves (ULT)
### you will never live forever (UST)

"you will not receive eternal life"

### Translation Words - ULT

- life
- Jesus
- flesh
- Truly
- truly (2)
- blood
- Son of Man

### Translation Words - UST

- you will...live forever
- Jesus
- flesh
- the truth
- the truth (2)
- blood
- of me, the Son...of Man

**ULT**

**53** Then Jesus said to them, "Truly, truly I say to you, unless you eat the flesh of the Son of Man and drink his blood, you will not have life in yourselves.

**UST**

**53** So Jesus confronted them with difficult words: "I am telling you the truth: Unless you eat the flesh of me, the Son of Man, and drink my blood, you will never live forever.

# John 6:54

## Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues speaking to all those listening to him.

The phrases "eats my flesh" and "drinks my blood" are a metaphor for trusting Jesus. Just as people need food and drink in order to live, people need to trust Jesus in order to have eternal life. However, the Jews did not understand this. Do not make the meaning of this metaphor more clear than Jesus did. (See: Metaphor)

**will raise him up (ULT)**
**will make them alive again (UST)**

Here to raise up is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. Alternate translation: "cause him to live again" (See: Idiom)

**at the last day (ULT)**
**at the last day (UST)**

"on the day when God judges everyone"

## Translation Words - ULT

- life
- everlasting
- flesh
- blood
- last day
- will raise...up
- day

## Translation Words - UST

- will live
- forever
- flesh
- blood
- at the last day
- will make...alive again
- at the last day

---

**ULT**

**54** The one who eats my flesh and drinks my blood has everlasting life, and I will raise him up at the last day.

**UST**

**54** Those who eat my flesh and drink my blood will live forever, and I will make them alive again at the last day

# John 6:55

### For...flesh...For...my...flesh...is true food, and my blood is true drink (ULT)

The phrases "true food" and "true drink" are a metaphor that means Jesus gives life to those who trust in him. However, the Jews did not understand this. Do not make the meaning of this metaphor more clear than Jesus did. (See: Metaphor)

### Translation Words - ULT

- For...flesh
- true
- true (2)
- blood

### Translation Words - UST

- flesh
- true
- true (2)
- blood

**ULT**

**55** For my flesh is true food, and my blood is true drink.

**UST**

**55** because my flesh is true spiritual food and my blood is true spiritual drink.

## John 6:56

### remains in me, and I in him

"has a close relationship with me"

### Translation Words - ULT

- flesh
- blood

### Translation Words - UST

- flesh
- blood

# John 6:57

### the...me...so...he who eats (ULT)

The phrase "eats me" is a metaphor for trusting Jesus. However, the Jews did not understand this. Do not make the meaning of this metaphor more clear than Jesus did. (See: Metaphor)

### living Father (ULT)
### My Father...who makes everyone alive (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) "the Father who gives life" or 2) "the Father who is alive."

### Father (ULT)
### My Father (UST)

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

### Translation Words - ULT

- living
- live
- will...live
- Father
- Father
- sent
- As

### Translation Words - UST

- who makes everyone alive
- live
- will live forever
- My Father
- my Father
- has sent
- In the same way

**ULT**

**57** As the living Father sent me, and as I live because of the Father, so he who eats me, he will also live because of me.

**UST**

**57** My Father, who makes everyone alive, has sent me, and I live because my Father has made me able to. In the same way, those who feed on me will live forever because of what I will do for them.

## John 6:58

**This is the bread that has come down from heaven (ULT)**
**I am the true bread that comes down from heaven (UST)**

Jesus was speaking about himself. Alternate translation: "I am the bread that has come down from heaven" (See: First, Second or Third Person)

**This is the bread that has come down from heaven (ULT)**
**I am the true bread that comes down from heaven (UST)**

The bread is a metaphor for what gives life. However, the Jews did not understand this. Do not make the meaning of this metaphor more clear than Jesus did. (See: Metaphor)

**the...He who eats...this bread (ULT)**
**the...Anyone who eats...me—this bread (UST)**

Jesus spoke about himself as "this bread." Alternate translation: "He who eats me, the bread" (See: First, Second or Third Person)

**the...He who eats...this bread (ULT)**
**the...Anyone who eats...me—this bread (UST)**

Here "eats this bread" is a metaphor for trusting Jesus. However, the Jews did not understand this. Do not make the meaning of this metaphor more clear than Jesus did. (See: Metaphor)

**the fathers (ULT)**
**what happened to your ancestors (UST)**

"the forefathers" or "the ancestors"

### Translation Words - ULT

- will live
- heaven
- fathers
- bread
- bread
- died
- as
- forever

### Translation Words - UST

- will never die, but will live
- that...from heaven
- what happened to your ancestors

---

**ULT**

**58** This is the <u>bread</u> that has come down from <u>heaven</u>, not <u>as</u> the <u>fathers</u> ate and <u>died</u>. He who eats this <u>bread</u> <u>will live forever</u>."

**UST**

**58** I am the <u>true bread</u> that comes down <u>from heaven</u>. Anyone who eats me—this <u>bread</u>—<u>will never die, but will live forever</u>! <u>What I do is</u> not <u>like</u> <u>what happened to your ancestors</u> because they ate the manna and then <u>died</u>."

- true bread
- bread
- died
- What I do is…like
- forever

# John 6:59

**Jesus said these things in the synagogue while he was teaching in Capernaum (ULT)**
**Jesus said these things while he was teaching in the Jewish preaching place in the city of Capernaum (UST)**

Here John gives background information about when this event happened. (See: Background Information)

## Translation Words - ULT

- the synagogue
- Capernaum
- while he was teaching

## Translation Words - UST

- the Jewish preaching place
- the city of Capernaum
- teaching

**ULT**

**59** Jesus said these things in the synagogue while he was teaching in Capernaum.

**UST**

**59** Jesus said these things while he was teaching in the Jewish preaching place in the city of Capernaum.

## John 6:60

### Connecting Statement:

Some of the disciples ask a question and Jesus responds, as he continues speaking to the crowd.

### who can accept it (ULT)
### How can anyone accept what he is saying (UST)

This remark appears in the form of a question to emphasize that the disciples have difficulty understanding what Jesus has said. Alternate translation: "no one can accept it!" or "it is too hard to understand!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

### Translation Words - ULT

- disciples

### Translation Words - UST

- apprentices

**ULT**
**60** Then many of his disciples who heard this said, "This is a difficult teaching; who can accept it?"

**UST**
**60** Many of his apprentices said, "What he is teaching is hard to understand. How can anyone accept what he is saying?"

# John 6:61

**Does this offend you (ULT)**
**Does what I teach offend you (UST)**

"Does this shock you?" or "Does this upset you?"

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- disciples
- he knew

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- some of...apprentices
- was aware

---

**ULT**

**61** Jesus, because he knew in himself that his disciples were grumbling at this, said to them, "Does this offend you?

**UST**

**61** Jesus was aware that some of his apprentices were complaining, so he said to them, "Does what I teach offend you?

---

## John 6:62

**Then what if you should see the Son of Man going up to where he was before (ULT)**
**Perhaps you will believe my message if you see me, the one who came from heaven, ascending there to where I was before (UST)**

Jesus offers this remark in the form of a question to emphasize that his disciples will see other things that are also hard to understand. Alternate translation: "Then you will not know what to think when you see me, the Son of Man, going up into heaven!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Son of Man

### Translation Words - UST

- me, the one who came from heaven

**ULT**

**62** Then what if you should see the Son of Man going up to where he was before?

**UST**

**62** Perhaps you will believe my message if you see me, the one who came from heaven, ascending there to where I was before!

# John 6:63

**profits (ULT)**
**is...help in this matter (UST)**

The word "profit" means to cause good things to happen.

**words (ULT)**
**words...they (UST)**

Possible meanings are 1) Jesus' words in John 6:32-58 or 2) everything Jesus teaches. (See: Metonymy)

**The words that I have spoken to you (ULT)**

"What I have told you"

**are spirit, and they are life**

> **ULT**
>
> **63** It is the Spirit who makes alive; the flesh profits nothing. The words that I have spoken to you are spirit, and they are life.
>
> **UST**
>
> **63** Only the Spirit gives life that can make anyone live forever. The human nature is no help in this matter. The words I have taught you tell you about the Spirit, and they tell you about eternal life.

Possible meanings are 1) "are about the Spirit and eternal life" or 2) "are from the Spirit and give eternal life" or 3) "are about spiritual things and life."

## Translation Words - ULT

- who makes alive
- life
- flesh
- Spirit
- spirit
- profits

## Translation Words - UST

- gives life that can make anyone live forever
- tell you about eternal life
- human nature
- Spirit
- tell you about the Spirit
- is...help in this matter

# John 6:64

**Connecting Statement:**

Jesus finishes speaking to the crowd.

**For Jesus knew from the beginning who were the ones that would not believe and who it was who would betray him (ULT)**
**Jesus said this because he knew from the start of his work who it was who would not trust in him, and he knew the person who would betray him (UST)**

Here John gives background information about what Jesus knew would happen. (See: Background Information)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- believe
- the ones that would not believe
- who would betray
- the beginning
- knew

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- do…trust what I am teaching you
- would…trust in him
- would betray
- from the start of his work
- he knew…he knew

**ULT**

**64** Yet there are some of you who do not believe." For Jesus knew from the beginning who were the ones that would not believe and who it was who would betray him.

**UST**

**64** Yet there are some of you who do not trust what I am teaching you." Jesus said this because he knew from the start of his work who it was who would not trust in him, and he knew the person who would betray him.

## John 6:65

**no one can come to me unless it is granted to him by the Father (ULT)**

Whoever wants to believe must come to God through the Son. Only God the Father allows people to come to Jesus.

**Father (ULT)**
**Father (UST)**

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

**come to me (ULT)**
**come to me and to live forever (UST)**

"follow me and receive eternal life"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Father

**Translation Words - UST**

- Father

**ULT**

**65** So he said, "Because of this, I said to you that no one can come to me unless it is granted to him by the Father."

**UST**

**65** Then he said, "That is why I told you that no one can come to me and to live forever unless the Father makes him able to come to me."

# John 6:66

**no longer walked with him (ULT)**
**no longer went with him (UST)**

Jesus went from one place to another by walking, so it is literally true that they did not walk where and when he walked, but the reader should also be able to understand that this metaphor indicates that they no longer wanted to hear what he had to say. (See: Metaphor)

**his disciples (ULT)**
**Jesus' apprentices (UST)**

Here "his disciples" refers to the general group of people who followed Jesus.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- disciples
- walked

**Translation Words - UST**

- apprentices
- went

**ULT**

**66** Because of this, many of his disciples stayed behind and no longer walked with him.

**UST**

**66** From that time, many of Jesus' apprentices left him and no longer went with him.

# John 6:67

**to the twelve (ULT)**
**to his twelve apprentices (UST)**

This is an ellipsis for "the twelve disciples," a specific group of twelve men who followed Jesus for his entire ministry. Alternate translation: "the twelve disciples" (See: Ellipsis)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- twelve

## Translation Words - UST

- he
- to his twelve apprentices

**ULT**

**67** Then Jesus said to the twelve, "You do not want to go away also, do you?"

**UST**

**67** So he said to his twelve apprentices, "You also do not want to leave me, do you?"

# John 6:68

**Lord, to whom shall we go (ULT)**
**Lord, we will not leave you, because there is no other person like you to whom we can go (UST)**

Simon Peter gives this remark in the form of a question to emphasize that he desires to follow only Jesus. Alternate translation: "Lord, we could never follow anyone but you!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

## Translation Words - ULT

- life
- of eternal
- Lord
- Simon Peter

## Translation Words - UST

- to live
- forever
- Lord
- Simon Peter

**ULT**
**68** Simon Peter answered him, "Lord, to whom shall we go? You have words of eternal life,

**UST**
**68** Simon Peter replied, "Lord, we will not leave you, because there is no other person like you to whom we can go! Only you have the message that allows us to live forever!

# John 6:69

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

## Translation Words - ULT

- Holy One
- of God
- have believed
- come to know

## Translation Words - UST

- Holy One
- whom God has sent
- trust in you
- we know for certain

**ULT**

**69** and we have believed and come to know that you are the Holy One of God." [1]

**UST**

**69** We trust in you, and we know for certain that you are the Holy One whom God has sent!"

# John 6:70

## General Information:

Verse 71 is not part of the main story line as John comments on what Jesus said. (See: Background Information)

## Did not I choose you, the twelve, and one of you is a devil (ULT)
## You are saying that as though all you twelve men whom I have chosen believe that. But one of you is under the control of Satan (UST)

Jesus gives this remark in the form of a question to draw attention to the fact that one of the disciples will betray him. Alternate translation: "I chose you all myself, yet one of you is a servant of Satan!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- twelve
- choose
- a devil

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- twelve men
- whom...have chosen believe that
- under the control of Satan

**ULT**

**70** Jesus said to them, "Did not I choose you, the twelve, and one of you is a devil?"

**UST**

**70** Jesus answered them, "You are saying that as though all you twelve men whom I have chosen believe that. But one of you is under the control of Satan!"

## John 6:71

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- twelve
- of Judas...son of Simon Iscariot
- betray

### Translation Words - UST

- twelve
- about Judas...the son of Simon Iscariot
- betray

---

**ULT**

**71** Now he spoke of Judas son of Simon Iscariot, for it was he, one of the twelve, who would betray Jesus.

6:69 [1] The phrase *the Holy One of God* is in the best ancient copies. Some later copies add an additional description and they read: *the Christ, the Holy One of God* .

**UST**

**71** He was talking about Judas, the son of Simon Iscariot. Even though Judas was one of the twelve, he was also the one who would later betray Jesus.

## John 7

### John 7 General Notes

# Structure and formatting

This whole chapter concerns the concept of believing Jesus to be the Messiah. Some people believed this to be true while others rejected it. Some were willing to recognize his power and even the possibility that he was a prophet, but most were unwilling to believe that he was the Messiah. (See: Christ, Messiah and prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess)

Translators may wish to include a note at verse 53 to explain to the reader why they have chosen or chosen not to translate verses 7:53-8:11.

# Special concepts in this chapter

### "My time has not yet come"

This phrase and "his hour had not yet come" are used in this chapter to indicate that Jesus is in control of the events unfolding in his life.

### "Living water"

This is an important image used in the New Testament. It is a metaphor. Because this metaphor is given in a desert environment, it probably emphasizes that Jesus is able to give life sustaining nourishment. (See: Metaphor)

# Important figures of speech in this chapter

### Prophecy

Jesus gives a prophecy about his life without an explicit statement in John John 7:33-34.

### Irony

Nicodemus explains to the other Pharisees that the Law requires him to hear directly from a person before making a judgment about them. The Pharisees in turn made a judgment about Jesus without speaking to Jesus.

# Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

### "Did not believe in him"

Jesus' brothers did not believe Jesus was the Messiah. (See: believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief)

### "The Jews"

This term is used in two different ways in this passage. It is used specifically in reference to the opposition of the Jewish leaders who were trying to kill him (John 7:1). It is also used in reference to the people of Judea in general who had a positive opinion of Jesus (John 7:13). The translator may wish to use the terms "Jewish leaders" and "Jewish people" or "Jews (leaders)" and "Jews (in general)."

# John 7:1

## General Information:

Jesus is in Galilee speaking to his brothers. These verses tell about when this event occurred. (See: Background Information)

## After...these things (ULT)
## After this (UST)

These words tell the reader that the writer will begin talking about a new event. "After he finished speaking with the disciples" (John 6:66-71) or "Some time later"

## traveled about (ULT)
## went to other areas (UST)

The reader should understand that Jesus probably walked rather than riding an animal or in a vehicle.

## the Jews were seeking to kill him (ULT)
## the Jewish authorities were searching for a way to charge him with a crime and to have him put to death (UST)

Here "the Jews" is a synecdoche for "the Jewish leaders." Alternate translation: "the Jewish leaders were making plans to kill him" (See: Synecdoche)

> ### ULT
> **1** After these things, Jesus traveled about in Galilee, for he did not want to go into Judea because the Jews were seeking to kill him.
>
> ### UST
> **1** After this, Jesus went to other areas in the region of Galilee. He avoided traveling to Judea because the Jewish authorities were searching for a way to charge him with a crime and to have him put to death.

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Jews
- Judea
- Galilee
- traveled about
- to go
- were seeking

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Jewish authorities
- Judea
- region of Galilee
- went to other areas
- traveling
- were searching for a way to charge...with a crime

# John 7:2

### Now the Jewish Festival of Shelters was near

"Now the time for the festival of the Jews was near" or "Now it was almost time for the Jewish festival of Shelters"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jewish
- Festival

### Translation Words - UST

- Jewish
- Festival

**ULT**

**2** Now the Jewish Festival of Shelters was near.

**UST**

**2** Now it was time for the Jewish Festival of Shelters. This was a time to remember when the Jewish people lived in tents during the Exodus long ago.

## John 7:3

**brothers (ULT)**
**brothers (UST)**

This refers to the actual younger brothers of Jesus, the sons of Mary and Joseph.

### the works that you do (ULT)

The word "works" refers to the miracles that Jesus had performed.

### Translation Words - ULT

- brothers
- works
- disciples
- Judea

### Translation Words - UST

- brothers
- powerful works
- other followers
- Judea

# John 7:4

### he himself wants (ULT)

The word "himself" is a reflexive pronoun that emphasizes the word "he." (See: Reflexive Pronouns)

### to the world (ULT)
### there (UST)

Here "the world" is a metonym for all of the people in the world. Alternate translation: "all people" or "everyone" (See: Metonymy)

### Translation Words - ULT

- show
- world
- he...wants

### Translation Words - UST

- so do some miracles...so that everyone can see them
- there
- who wants

**ULT**

**4** For no one does anything in secret if he himself wants to be known openly. If you do these things, show yourself to the world."

**UST**

**4** No one who wants to become famous does things secretly. You say you are doing these miracles, so do some miracles there so that everyone can see them!"

## John 7:5

**For even his brothers did not believe in him (ULT)**
**For not even his own younger brothers trusted in him or thought he was telling the truth (UST)**

This sentence is a break from the main story line as John tells us some background information about the brothers of Jesus. (See: Background Information)

**his brothers (ULT)**
**his own younger brothers (UST)**

"his younger brothers"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- brothers
- believe
- in him

**Translation Words - UST**

- younger brothers
- trusted...or thought he was telling the truth
- in him

---

**ULT**

**5** For even his brothers did not believe in him.

**UST**

**5** For not even his own younger brothers trusted in him or thought he was telling the truth.

## John 7:6

**My time has not yet come (ULT)**
**It is not yet time for me to bring my work to an end (UST)**

The word "time" is a metonym. Jesus is implying that it is not the right time for him to bring his ministry to a close. Alternate translation: "It is not the right time for me to end my work" (See: Metonymy and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**Jesus…Jesus…time…your…is always ready (ULT)**
**Jesus…Jesus…time…you can choose any…you want to accomplish whatever you wish (UST)**

"any time is good for you"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- time
- but…time (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- time
- time (2)

**ULT**

**6** Jesus therefore said to them, "My time has not yet come, but your time is always ready.

**UST**

**6** So Jesus said to them, "It is not yet time for me to bring my work to an end. However, you can choose any time you want to accomplish whatever you wish.

# John 7:7

**The world cannot hate you (ULT)**
**The people who live for themselves and love the things of this world cannot hate you (UST)**

Here the "world" is a metonym for the people who live in the world. Alternate translation: "All the people in the world cannot hate you" (See: Metonymy)

**I testify about it that its works are evil**

"I tell them that what they are doing is evil"

## Translation Words - ULT

- testify
- works
- world
- evil

## Translation Words - UST

- am the one who tells
- what they do with their lives
- The people who live for themselves and love the things of this world
- evil

**ULT**

**7** The world cannot hate you, but it hates me because I testify about it that its works are evil.

**UST**

**7** The people who live for themselves and love the things of this world cannot hate you, but they do hate me. I am the one who tells them that what they do with their lives is evil.

# John 7:8

## Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues speaking to his brothers.

## my time has not yet been fulfilled (ULT)

Here Jesus is implying that if he goes to Jerusalem, he will bring his work to an end. Alternate translation: "It is not the right time for me to go to Jerusalem" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

## Translation Words - ULT

- has…been fulfilled
- my time
- festival
- festival

## Translation Words - UST

- to go
- is…the right time
- festival
- festival

**ULT**

**8** You go up to the festival; I am not going to this festival because my time has not yet been fulfilled."

**UST**

**8** You go ahead to the festival. I am not going up to Jerusalem to the festival yet, because now is not the right time for me to go."

## John 7:9

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Galilee

### Translation Words - UST

- Galilee

**ULT**
**9** After he said these things to them, he stayed in Galilee.

**UST**
**9** After he said that, Jesus stayed a little longer in Galilee.

# John 7:10

## General Information:

The setting of the story has changed, Jesus and his brothers are now at the festival.

## when...his brothers had gone up to the festival (ULT)
## a few days after...his brothers left for the festival (UST)

These "brothers" were the younger brothers of Jesus.

## he also went up (ULT)
## he also went (UST)

Jerusalem is at a higher elevation than Galilee where Jesus and his brothers were previously.

## not publicly but in secret (ULT)

These two phrases mean the same thing. The idea is repeated for emphasis. Alternate translation: "very secretly" (See: Doublet)

**ULT**

**10** But when his brothers had gone up to the festival, then he also went up, not publicly but in secret.

**UST**

**10** However, a few days after his brothers left for the festival, he also went, but he did so secretly.

## Translation Words - ULT

- brothers
- in (2)
- festival

## Translation Words - UST

- brothers
- he did so (2)
- festival

# John 7:11

**the...Jews were looking for him (ULT)**
**The...Jewish opponents of Jesus were looking for him, hoping to find him (UST)**

Here the word "Jews"is a synecdoche for "the Jewish leaders." The word "him" refers to Jesus. Alternate translation: "The Jewish leaders were looking for Jesus" (See: Synecdoche)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jews
- were looking
- festival

## Translation Words - UST

- Jewish opponents of Jesus
- were looking...hoping to find
- festival

**ULT**

**11** Now, the Jews were looking for him at the festival and saying, "Where is he?"

**UST**

**11** The Jewish opponents of Jesus were looking for him, hoping to find him at the festival. They were asking people, "Where is Jesus? Is he here?"

## John 7:12

**he leads the crowds astray (ULT)**
**He is deceiving and misleading the crowds (UST)**

Here "leads...astray" is a metaphor for persuading someone to believe something that is not true. Alternate translation: "he deceives the people" (See: Metaphor)

### Translation Words - ULT

- a good man
- he leads...astray

### Translation Words - UST

- a good man
- He is deceiving and misleading

---

**ULT**

**12** There was much grumbling among the crowds about him. Some said, "He is a good man." But others said, "No, but he leads the crowds astray."

**UST**

**12** Among the crowds, many people were quietly speaking with each other about Jesus. Some were saying, "He is a good man!" Others were saying instead, "No! He is deceiving and misleading the crowds!"

## John 7:13

**fear (ULT)**
**they were afraid (UST)**

This refers to the unpleasant feeling a person has when there is a threat of harm to himself or others.

**of the Jews (ULT)**
**of the Jewish enemies of Jesus (UST)**

The word "Jews" is a synecdoche for the leaders of the Jews who opposed Jesus. Alternate translation: "the Jewish leaders" (See: Synecdoche)

### Translation Words - ULT

- fear
- Jews

### Translation Words - UST

- they were afraid
- of the Jewish enemies of Jesus

**ULT**

**13** Yet no one spoke openly about him for fear of the Jews.

**UST**

**13** Because they were afraid of the Jewish enemies of Jesus, no one spoke of him in a public place where other people could overhear what they were saying.

# John 7:14

## General Information:

Jesus is now teaching the Jews in the temple.

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- temple
- began to teach
- festival

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- temple courtyard…there
- started to teach
- Festival of Shelters

**ULT**

**14** When the festival was already half over, Jesus went up into the temple and began to teach.

**UST**

**14** When the Festival of Shelters was about half over, Jesus went to the temple courtyard and started to teach there.

# John 7:15

## How does this man know so much?

The remark appears in the form of a question to emphasize the Jewish leaders' surprise that Jesus has so much knowledge. Alternate translation: "He cannot possibly know so much about the scriptures!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jews
- the scriptures
- marveled
- does...know

## Translation Words - UST

- Jewish elders
- Scripture
- were amazed at what he was saying
- has learned so much about

**ULT**

**15** Then the Jews marveled, saying, "How does this man know the scriptures, for he is not educated?"

**UST**

**15** The Jewish elders were amazed at what he was saying. They said, "This man never studied our doctrines with an approved instructor; he never enrolled in our schools! it is difficult for us to believe that he has learned so much about Scripture!"

## John 7:16

**but is of him who sent me (ULT)**

"but comes from God, the one who sent me"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- My teaching
- is of him who sent

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- What...teach
- from God, the one who sent

**ULT**

**16** Then Jesus answered them and said, "
My teaching is not mine, but is of him
who sent me.

**UST**

**16** Jesus replied to them, "What I teach
does not come from myself. It comes
from God, the one who sent me.

# John 7:17

## Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues speaking to the Jews.

## Translation Words - ULT

- God
- his...will
- teaching
- he will know

## Translation Words - UST

- God
- what...God...wants
- I teach
- he will find out

---

**ULT**

**17** If anyone wishes to do his will, he will know about this teaching, whether it is from God, or whether I speak from myself.

**UST**

**17** If anyone chooses to do what God wants, he will find out if what I teach comes from God or if I speak only by my own authority.

---

# John 7:18

## Whoever...glory, but...seeks...of him who sent him, that person is true, and there is no unrighteousness in him (ULT)

"when a person only seeks to honor the one who sent him, that person is speaking the truth. He does not lie"

## Translation Words - ULT

- true
- unrighteousness
- glory
- glory (2)
- who sent him
- seeks
- seeks

## Translation Words - UST

- true, truth
- fault
- others will honor
- to honor...to give him a good reputation as a man of integrity (2)
- the person who sent
- so
- works hard

### ULT

**18** Whoever speaks from himself seeks his own glory, but whoever seeks the glory of him who sent him, that person is true, and there is no unrighteousness in him.

### UST

**18** Anyone who speaks on his own authority speaks so others will honor only him. However, if a servant works hard to honor the person who sent him, to give him a good reputation as a man of integrity, there is no fault in that kind of a servant.

# John 7:19

**Connecting Statement:**

Jesus continues speaking to the Jews.

**Did not Moses give you the law (ULT)**
**Think about the laws that Moses gave you (UST)**

This remark appears in the form of a question to add emphasis. Alternate translation: "It was Moses who gave you the law" (See: Rhetorical Question)

**the law...keeps (ULT)**
**the laws...completely obeys (UST)**

"obeys the law"

**Why do you seek to kill me (ULT)**
**So why are you trying to kill me, saying I do not obey the laws concerning the Jewish day of rest (UST)**

Jesus questions the motives of the Jewish leaders who want to kill him for breaking the law of Moses. He implies that the leaders themselves do not keep that same Law. Alternate translation: "You break the Law yourselves and yet you want to kill me!" (See: Rhetorical Question and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- law
- law (2)
- Moses
- do you seek

**Translation Words - UST**

- laws
- laws (2)
- Moses
- are you trying

**ULT**

**19** Did not Moses give you the law? Yet none of you keeps the law. Why do you seek to kill me?"

**UST**

**19** Think about the laws that Moses gave you. None of you completely obeys those laws. So why are you trying to kill me, saying I do not obey the laws concerning the Jewish day of rest?

## John 7:20

**You have a demon (ULT)**
**A demon is controlling you (UST)**

"This shows that you are crazy, or maybe a demon is controlling you!"

**Who seeks to kill you (ULT)**
**Name the person who wants to put you to death (UST)**

This remark appears in the form of a question to add emphasis. Alternate translation: "No one is trying to kill you!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- • a demon
- • seeks

**Translation Words - UST**

- • A demon
- • who wants

# John 7:21

**one work (ULT)**
**one miracle of healing on the day of rest (UST)**

"one miracle" or "one sign"

**you all marvel because of it (ULT)**
**you are all shocked (UST)**

"you all are shocked"

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- work
- you...marvel because of it

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- miracle of healing on the day of rest
- you are...shocked

**ULT**

**21** Jesus answered and said to them, "I did one work, and you all marvel because of it.

**UST**

**21** Jesus replied to the crowd, "Because I did one miracle of healing on the day of rest, you are all shocked.

# John 7:22

**not that it is from Moses, but from the ancestors (ULT)**

Here John provides additional information about circumcision. (See: Background Information)

**on the Sabbath you circumcise a man (ULT)**
**you...circumcise a baby on the rest day, and that is working, too (UST)**

Jesus implies that the act of circumcision also involves work. Alternate translation: "you circumcise a male baby on the Sabbath. That is working too" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**on the Sabbath (ULT)**
**on the rest day (UST)**

"on the Jewish Day of Rest"

**ULT**
**22** For this reason, Moses gave you circumcision (not that it is from Moses, but from the ancestors), and on the Sabbath you circumcise a man.

**UST**
**22** Moses gave you a law, and that law says you must circumcise your male children and that you must do that exactly seven days after the children are born. (To be accurate, this rite was from your forefathers, Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, and not from Moses, who wrote down the law about this practice.) Because of that requirement in the law, you sometimes have to circumcise a baby on the rest day, and that is working, too!

## Translation Words - ULT

- circumcision
- you circumcise
- the Sabbath
- Moses
- Moses
- ancestors

## Translation Words - UST

- a law, and that law says you must circumcise your male children and that you must do that exactly seven days after the children are born
- you...circumcise...and that is working, too
- the rest day
- Moses
- Moses, who wrote down the law about this practice
- forefathers, Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob

# John 7:23

**If a man receives circumcision on the Sabbath so that the law of Moses is not broken (ULT)**

"If you circumcise a male baby on the Sabbath so that you do not break the law of Moses"

**why are you angry with me because I made a man completely healthy on the Sabbath (ULT)**

This remark appears in the form of a question to add emphasis. Alternate translation: "you should not be angry with me because I made a man completely well on the Sabbath!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

**on the Sabbath (ULT)**
**on the rest day (UST)**

"on the Jewish Day of Rest?"

## Translation Words - ULT

- law of Moses
- circumcision
- the Sabbath
- the Sabbath (2)
- of Moses
- receives
- I made...healthy

## Translation Words - UST

- law of Moses
- You...circumcise
- the rest day
- the rest day (2)
- of Moses
- receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance
- I was healing

**ULT**

**23** If a man receives circumcision on the Sabbath so that the law of Moses is not broken, why are you angry with me because I made a man completely healthy on the Sabbath?

**UST**

**23** You sometimes circumcise boys on the rest day so that you will not violate the law of Moses. So you shouldn't be angry with me, saying I worked on the rest day when I was healing a man! Healing someone is more wonderful, and it is a greater work than circumcising a baby!

# John 7:24

**Do not judge according to appearance, but judge righteously (ULT)**
**Stop deciding whether healing this man was right or wrong according to a false application of God's law, and that without any thought! Instead, decide what a person should do and how he should be judged by the principle of what is right and what is just according to God, not man (UST)**

Jesus implies that the people should not decide what is right, based only on what they can see. Behind the action is a motive that cannot be seen. Alternate translation: "Stop judging people according to what you see! Be more concerned with what is right according to God" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

## Translation Words - ULT

- righteously
- judge
- righteously
- judge (2)

## Translation Words - UST

- according to God, not man
- deciding whether healing this man was right or wrong
- by the principle of what is right and what is just
- decide what a person should do and how he should be judged (2)

## John 7:25

### Is not this the one they seek to kill (ULT)

This remark appears in the form of a question to add emphasis. Alternate translation: "This is Jesus whom they are seeking to kill!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

### Translation Words - ULT

- from Jerusalem
- they seek

### Translation Words - UST

- the people from Jerusalem
- that they are trying

**ULT**

**25** Then some of them from Jerusalem said, "Is not this the one they seek to kill?

**UST**

**25** Some of the people from Jerusalem were saying, "This is the man that they are trying to kill!

# John 7:26

**they say nothing to him (ULT)**
**are not saying anything to oppose him (UST)**

This implies that the Jewish leaders are not opposing Jesus. Alternate translation: "they say nothing to oppose him" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**The rulers do not indeed know that this is the Christ, do they (ULT)**

This remark appears in the form of a question to add emphasis. Alternate translation: "Maybe they have decided that he is truly the Messiah!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- indeed
- Christ
- rulers
- know

**Translation Words - UST**

- Is that
- Messiah
- the authorities
- they know

**ULT**

**26** See, he speaks openly, and they say nothing to him. The rulers do not indeed know that this is the Christ, do they?

**UST**

**26** He is saying these things publicly, but the authorities are not saying anything to oppose him. Is that because they know he is the Messiah?

## John 7:27

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Christ
- we know
- will know

### Translation Words - UST

- but...the Messiah
- We know
- will know

## John 7:28

**cried out (ULT)**
**he called out (UST)**

"spoke in a loud voice"

**in the temple (ULT)**
**in the temple courtyard (UST)**

Jesus and the people were actually in the courtyard of the temple. Alternate translation: "in the temple courtyard" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**You both know me and know where I am from (ULT)**
**Yes, you say you know me, and you think you know where I am from (UST)**

John uses irony in this statement. The people believe that Jesus is from Nazareth. They do not know that God sent him from heaven and that he was born in Bethlehem. Alternate translation: "You all know me and you think you know where I come from" (See: Irony)

**of...myself (ULT)**
**because I appointed myself (UST)**

"on my own authority." See how you translated "of himself" in John 5:19.

**he who sent me is true (ULT)**
**the one who sent me bears the truth as his testimony (UST)**

"God is the one who sent me and he is true"

### ULT

**28** Then Jesus cried out in the temple, teaching and saying, "You both know me and know where I am from. I have not come of myself, but he who sent me is true, whom you do not know.

### UST

**28** So while Jesus was teaching in the temple courtyard, he called out as he taught, "Yes, you say you know me, and you think you know where I am from. But I have come here not because I appointed myself. Instead, the one who sent me bears the truth as his testimony, and you do not know him.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- true
- temple
- teaching
- he who sent
- cried out
- You both know
- know (2)
- know (3)

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- bears the truth as his testimony
- temple courtyard
- was teaching
- who sent
- he called out

- Yes, you say you know
- you think you know (2)
- do…know (3)

# John 7:29

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

## Translation Words - ULT

- sent
- know

## Translation Words - UST

- sent
- know

<div>

**ULT**

**29** I <u>know</u> him because I am from him and he <u>sent</u> me."

**UST**

**29** I <u>know</u> him because I have come from him. He is the one who <u>sent</u> me."

</div>

# John 7:30

**his hour had not yet come (ULT)
it was not yet the time for him to complete his work and for his life to end (UST)**

The word "hour" is a metonym that represents the right time for Jesus to be arrested, according to God's plan. Alternate translation: "it was not the right time to arrest him" (See: Metonymy)

## Translation Words - ULT

- a hand
- they were trying
- hour
- to arrest
- laid a hand on him

## Translation Words - UST

- could seize him
- they
- time...to complete his work and for his life to end
- wanted to arrest
- could seize him

**ULT**

**30** Therefore, they were trying to arrest him, but no one laid a hand on him because his hour had not yet come.

**UST**

**30** Then they wanted to arrest him, but no one could seize him because it was not yet the time for him to complete his work and for his life to end.

# John 7:31

## When the Christ comes, he will not do more signs than what this one has done, will he (ULT)

This remark appears in the form of a question to add emphasis. Alternate translation: "When the Christ comes, surely he will not be able to do more signs than this man has done!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

## signs (ULT)
## miraculous signs (UST)

This refers to the miracles that prove that Jesus is the Christ.

## Translation Words - ULT

- signs
- believed
- Christ
- in him

## Translation Words - UST

- miraculous signs
- put their trust
- Messiah
- in him

---

**ULT**

**31** But many in the crowd believed in him, and they said, "When the Christ comes, he will not do more signs than what this one has done, will he?"

**UST**

**31** Many in the crowd, after they heard him and saw his works, put their trust in him. They said, "These are just the kind of miraculous signs that we would expect the Messiah to be able to do when he comes!"

## John 7:32

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Pharisees
- Pharisees (2)
- chief priests
- sent
- arrest

### Translation Words - UST

- Pharisees
- Pharisees (2)
- chief priests
- they...together sent
- arrest

**ULT**

**32** The Pharisees heard the crowds whispering these things about Jesus, and the chief priests and the Pharisees sent officers to arrest him.

**UST**

**32** The Pharisees heard them quietly speaking these things about Jesus. So they, the chief priests and Pharisees together sent some officers to arrest him.

# John 7:33

## I am still with you for a short amount of time (ULT)

"I will remain with you for only a short period of time"

## and then I go to him who sent me (ULT)
## Then I am going back to the one who sent me (UST)

Here Jesus refers to God the Father, who sent him.

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- a...time
- him who sent

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- time
- one who sent

**ULT**

**33** Jesus then said, "I am still with you for a short amount of time, and then I go to him who sent me.

**UST**

**33** Then Jesus said, "I will be with you for only a short time. Then I am going back to the one who sent me.

## John 7:34

**where I am, you will not be able to come (ULT)**
**Where I am going, you cannot come (UST)**

"you will not be able to come to the place where I am"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- You will seek

**Translation Words - UST**

- You will search

**ULT**
**34** You will seek me but you will not find me, and where I am, you will not be able to come."

**UST**
**34** You will search for me, but you will not find me. Where I am going, you cannot come."

## John 7:35

**The Jews therefore said among themselves (ULT)
So the Jewish people who were his enemies said to themselves (UST)**

The "Jews" is a synecdoche that represents the leaders of the Jews who opposed Jesus. Alternate translation: "The Jewish leaders said among themselves" (See: Synecdoche)

**the dispersion (ULT)
where the Jews are spread (UST)**

This refers to the Jews that were spread all across the Greek world, outside of Palestine.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jews
- Greeks
- Greeks
- teach
- dispersion

### Translation Words - UST

- Jewish people who were his enemies
- all across the Greek world
- people there
- teach…these new things
- where the Jews are spread

**ULT**

**35** The Jews therefore said among themselves, "Where is this man about to go that we will not find him? He is not about to go to the dispersion among the Greeks and teach the Greeks, is he?

**UST**

**35** So the Jewish people who were his enemies said to themselves, "Where can this man go where we cannot find him? Does he intend to go where the Jews are spread all across the Greek world, and will he teach the people there these new things?

## John 7:36

**What is this word that he said (ULT)**
**What did he mean when he said...when he said (UST)**

This "word" is a metonym which stands for the meaning of the message that Jesus had shared, which the Jewish leaders had failed to understand. Alternate translation: "What is he talking about when he said" (See: Metonymy)

### Translation Words - ULT

• You will seek

### Translation Words - UST

• You will search

**ULT**

**36** What is this word that he said, 'You will seek me but will not find me, and where I am, you will not be able to come'?"

**UST**

**36** What did he mean when he said, 'You will search for me, but you will not be able to find me,' and when he said, 'Where I am going, you cannot come?'"

# John 7:37

## General Information:

Some time has passed. It is now the last day of the festival and Jesus speaks to the crowd.

## day...great (ULT)
## day...most important day (UST)

It is "great" because it is the last, or most important, day of the festival.

## If anyone is thirsty (ULT)
## Those who are thirsty (UST)

Here the word "thirsty" is a metaphor that means one's great desire for the things of God, just as one "thirsts" for water. Alternate translation: "Those who desire the things of God like a thirty man desires water" (See: Metaphor)

## let him come to me and drink (ULT)

The word "drink" is a metaphor that means to receive the spiritual life that Jesus provides. Alternate translation: "let him come to me and quench his spiritual thirst" (See: Metaphor)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- cried out
- day
- festival

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- with a loud voice
- day
- of the festival

# John 7:38

**He who believes in me, just as the scripture says (ULT)**
**Whoever trusts in me, as the scripture said (UST)**

"As the scripture says about anyone who believes in me"

**rivers...of living water will flow (ULT)**
**streams...will flow...of living water (UST)**

The "rivers of living water" is a metaphor that represents the life that Jesus provides for those who are spiritually "thirsty." Alternate translation: "spiritual life will flow like rivers of water" (See: Metaphor)

**of living water (ULT)**
**of living water (UST)**

Possible meanings are 1) "water that gives life" or 2) "water that causes people to live." (See: Metaphor)

**from his stomach (ULT)**
**Out of his heart (UST)**

Here the stomach represents the inside of a person, specifically the non-physical part of a person. Alternate translation: "from inside of him" or "from his heart" (See: Metonymy)

> **ULT**
> **38** He who believes in me, just as the scripture says, rivers of living water will flow from his stomach."
>
> **UST**
> **38** Whoever trusts in me, as the scripture said, 'Out of his heart will flow streams of living water.'"

## Translation Words - ULT

- living
- scripture
- He who believes
- in me
- of...water
- just as

## Translation Words - UST

- water
- scripture
- Whoever trusts
- in me
- of living
- as

## John 7:39

### General Information:

In this verse the author gives information to clarify what Jesus is talking about. (See: Background Information)

### But he said (ULT)

Here "he" refers to Jesus.

### had not yet been given...the Spirit (ULT)

John implies that the Spirit would later come to live in those who trusted Jesus. Alternate translation: "the Spirit had not yet come to live in the believers" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### because Jesus was not yet glorified (ULT)
### because Jesus had not yet finished his work, that work which would bring great honor to God by saving his people through his death (UST)

Here the word "glorified" refers to the time when God would honor the Son after his death and resurrection.

**ULT**

**39** But he said this about the Spirit, whom those who believed in him were about to receive; for the Spirit had not yet been given because Jesus was not yet glorified.

**UST**

**39** He said this about the Spirit, whom the Father was going to give to those who trusted in him. God had not yet sent the Spirit to live within those who trusted him because Jesus had not yet finished his work, that work which would bring great honor to God by saving his people through his death.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Spirit
- Spirit
- was...glorified
- those who believed
- in him
- to receive

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Spirit
- the Spirit
- finished his work, that work which would bring great honor to God by saving his people through his death
- to those who trusted
- in him
- to give

## John 7:40

**This is indeed the prophet (ULT)**
**This truly is the Prophet that we were expecting (UST)**

By saying this, the people are indicating that they believe Jesus is the prophet like Moses that God had promised to send. Alternate translation: "This is indeed the prophet who is like Moses that we have been waiting for" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### Translation Words - ULT

- prophet
- indeed

### Translation Words - UST

- Prophet that we were expecting
- truly

**ULT**

**40** Then some of the crowd, when they heard these words, said, "This is indeed the prophet."

**UST**

**40** When some of the crowd heard those words, they said, "This truly is the Prophet that we were expecting."

# John 7:41

**the Christ...come from Galilee (ULT)**
**the Messiah will...be coming from the province of Galilee (UST)**

This remark appears in the form of a question to add emphasis. Alternate translation: "The Christ cannot come from Galilee!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Christ
- Christ
- Galilee

## Translation Words - UST

- Messiah
- Messiah
- the province of Galilee

**ULT**

**41** Others said, "This is the Christ." But some said, "Indeed, the Christ does not come from Galilee, does he?

**UST**

**41** Others said, "He is the Messiah!" But others, thinking Jesus was born in Galilee, said, "But the Messiah will not be coming from the province of Galilee.

## John 7:42

**Have the scriptures not said that the Christ will come from the descendants of David and from Bethlehem, the village where David was (ULT)**

This remark appears in the form of a question to add emphasis. Alternate translation: "The scriptures teach that Christ will come from the line of David and from Bethlehem, the village where David was!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

**Have the scriptures not said (ULT)**

The scriptures are referred to as if they were actually speaking as a person speaks. Alternate translation: "The prophets wrote in the scriptures" (See: Personification)

**of David...where...was (ULT)**
**of King David...that was (UST)**

"where David lived"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- scriptures
- descendants
- Christ
- of David
- David (2)
- Bethlehem

**Translation Words - UST**

- scriptures
- descendants
- Messiah
- of King David
- David's home (2)
- Bethlehem

**ULT**

**42** Have the scriptures not said that the Christ will come from the descendants of David and from Bethlehem, the village where David was?"

**UST**

**42** It is written in the scriptures that Messiah must come through the descendants of King David and that he must be born in Bethlehem, the village that was David's home?"

# John 7:43

**So there arose a division in the crowds because of him (ULT)**

The crowds could not agree about who or what Jesus was.

**UST**

**43** So there was a division of opinion about Jesus.

# John 7:44

**but no one laid hands on him (ULT)**
**Yet no one seized him (UST)**

To lay hands on someone is an idiom which means to grab him or to hold onto him. Alternate translation: "but no one grabbed him to arrest him" (See: Idiom)

### Translation Words - ULT

- hands
- to arrest
- laid hands on him

### Translation Words - UST

- seized him
- to arrest
- seized him

**ULT**

**44** So some of them wanted to arrest him, but no one laid hands on him.

**UST**

**44** Some of the officers wanted to arrest him. Yet no one seized him.

## John 7:45

**the officers (ULT)**
**the officers...These were the officers that the rulers had sent to arrest Jesus (UST)**

"the temple guards"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Pharisees
- chief priests

**Translation Words - UST**

- the Pharisees...The Pharisees
- chief priests

**ULT**

**45** Then the officers came back to the chief priests and Pharisees, who then said to them, "Why did you not bring him?"

**UST**

**45** So the officers returned to the chief priests and the Pharisees. These were the officers that the rulers had sent to arrest Jesus. The Pharisees said to the officers, "Why did you not seize him and bring him here?"

# John 7:46

**Never has anyone spoken like this (ULT)**
**No one ever spoke such amazing things as this man does (UST)**

The officers exaggerate to show how impressed they are by what Jesus said. You may need to make explicit that the officer were not claiming to know everything that every person in all times and places had ever said. "We have never heard anyone say such amazing things as this man!" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and Hyperbole)

# John 7:47

**So...the Pharisees (ULT)**
**Then...the Pharisees (UST)**

"Because they said that, the Pharisees"

**answered...them (ULT)**

"answered the officers"

**You have...also been deceived (ULT)**
**Has he deceived you as well (UST)**

> **ULT**
> **47** So the Pharisees answered them, "You have not also been deceived, have you?
>
> **UST**
> **47** Then the Pharisees replied, "Has he deceived you as well?

The remark appears in the form of a question to add emphasis. The Pharisees are shocked at the response of the officers. Alternate translation: "You have been deceived too!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Pharisees
- have...been deceived

**Translation Words - UST**

- Pharisees
- Has he deceived

## John 7:48

**None...of the rulers have believed in him, or any of the Pharisees...have they (ULT)**

This remark appears in the form of a question to add emphasis. Alternate translation: "None of the rulers or Pharisees have believed in him!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

### Translation Words - ULT

- have believed
- Pharisees
- in him
- rulers

### Translation Words - UST

- have trusted
- Pharisees
- in Jesus
- our Jewish authorities

**ULT**

**48** None of the rulers have believed in him, or any of the Pharisees, have they?

**UST**

**48** None of the important people like our Jewish authorities or us Pharisees have trusted in Jesus.

## John 7:49

**the law (ULT)**
**the teachings of our laws (UST)**

This is a reference to the law of the Pharisees and not the law of Moses.

**But this crowd that does not know the law, they are cursed**

"As for this crowd that does not know the law, God will cause them to perish!"

### Translation Words - ULT

- law
- cursed
- know

### Translation Words - UST

- teachings of our laws
- cursed
- they do...understand

**ULT**

**49** But this crowd that does not know the law, they are cursed."

**UST**

**49** But this crowd who trust in him because they do not understand the teachings of our laws, let them be cursed!"

## John 7:50

### one of the Pharisees, who came to him earlier (ULT)

John provides this information to remind us of who Nicodemus is. Your language may have a special way to mark background information. (See: Background Information)

**ULT**

**50** Nicodemus (one of the Pharisees, who came to him earlier) said to them,

**UST**

**50** Then Nicodemus spoke. (He was the one who had gone to see Jesus at night to speak with him, and he was one of the Pharisees.) He said to them,

# John 7:51

**Our law does not judge a man before first hearing from him and knowing what he does, does it (ULT)**
**Our Jewish law does not permit us to condemn a man before we have listened to him. First, we give him a hearing, and we must learn about what he has done (UST)**

This remark appears in the form of a question to add emphasis. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Our Jewish law does not allow us to judge a man...what he does!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

## Does our law judge a man

Here Nicodemus speaks of the law as if it were a person. If this is not natural in your language, you may translate it with a personal subject. Alternate translation: "Do we judge a man" or "we do not judge a man" (See: Personification)

## Translation Words - ULT

- law
- judge
- knowing

## Translation Words - UST

- Jewish law
- does...permit us to condemn
- we must learn

**ULT**

**51** "Our law does not judge a man before first hearing from him and knowing what he does, does it?"

**UST**

**51** "Our Jewish law does not permit us to condemn a man before we have listened to him. First, we give him a hearing, and we must learn about what he has done."

# John 7:52

### You are...also from Galilee (ULT)
### Are you also from Galilee (UST)

The Jewish leaders know that Nicodemus is not from Galilee. They ask this question as a way of scoffing at him. Alternate translation: "You must also be one of those inferior persons from Galilee!" (See: Rhetorical Question and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### Search and see (ULT)
### Search carefully and read what is written in the scriptures (UST)

This is an ellipsis. You may wish to include the information that does not appear. Alternate translation: "Search carefully and read what is written in the Scriptures" (See: Ellipsis)

### from Galilee...no prophet comes (ULT)
### from Galilee...no prophet comes (UST)

This probably refers to the belief that Jesus was born in Galilee.

### Translation Words - ULT

- prophet
- Galilee
- Galilee (2)
- comes

### Translation Words - UST

- prophet
- Galilee
- Galilee (2)
- comes

**ULT**

**52** They answered and said to him, "You are not also from Galilee, are you? Search and see that no prophet comes from Galilee."

**UST**

**52** They replied to him insultingly, "Are you also from Galilee? Search carefully and read what is written in the scriptures! You will find that no prophet comes from Galilee."

## John 7:53

### General Information:

The best early texts do not have 7:53 - 8:11. The ULT has set them apart in square brackets ([ ]) to show that John probably did not include them in his original text. Translators are encouraged to translate them, to set them apart with square brackets, and to include a footnote like the one written on John 7:53. (See: Textual Variants)

**ULT**
**53***[1]* [Then everyone went to his own house.

**UST**
**53***[1]* [Then they all left and went to their own homes.

**John 8**

**John 8 General Notes**

## Structure and formatting

Translators may wish to include a note at verse 1 to explain to the reader why they have chosen to translate or to not translate verses 8:1-11.

## Special concepts in this chapter

### A light and darkness

The Bible often speaks of unrighteous people, people who do not do what pleases God, as if they were walking around in darkness. It speaks of light as if it were what enables those sinful people to become righteous, to understand what they are doing wrong and begin to obey God. Here it is all Gentiles (See: righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness)

### I AM

John records Jesus as saying these words four times in this book, three times in this chapter. They stand alone as a complete sentence, and they literally translate the Hebrew word for "I AM," by which Yahweh identified himself to Moses. For these reasons, many people believe that when Jesus said these words he was claiming to be Yahweh. (See: Yahweh).

### The Scribes and Pharisees' trap

The Scribes and Pharisees wanted to trick Jesus. They wanted him to say either that they should keep the law of Moses by killing a woman whom they had found committing adultery or that they should disobey the law of Moses and forgive her sin. Jesus knew that they were trying to trick him and that they did not really want to keep the law of Moses. He knew this because the law said that both the woman and the man should die, but they did not bring the man to Jesus. (See: adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress)

## Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

### "Son of Man"

Jesus refers to himself as the "Son of Man" in this chapter (John 8:28). Your language may not allow people to speak of themselves as if they were speaking about someone else. (See: Son of Man, son of man and First, Second or Third Person)

## John 8:1

### General Information:

While some texts have 7:53 - 8:11, the best and earliest texts do not include them.

**ULT**

**1**[1] Jesus went to the Mount of Olives.

**UST**

**1**[1] Jesus went with his apprentices to the Mount of Olives, and they stayed near there that night.

# John 8:2

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

**ULT**

**2** Early in the morning he came to the temple again, and all the people came; he sat down and taught them.

**UST**

**2** Early the next morning, Jesus returned to the temple courtyard. Many people gathered around him, and he sat down to teach them.

# John 8:3

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

**ULT**

**3** The scribes and the Pharisees brought a woman caught in the act of adultery. They placed her in the middle.

**UST**

**3** Then men who taught the Jewish laws and some who were Pharisees brought a woman to him. She had been caught in the act of adultery—she had been sleeping with a man who was not her husband. They made her stand up in the front of this group so they could question her.

## John 8:4

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

**ULT**

**4** Then they said to him, "Teacher, this woman has been caught in the act of adultery.

**UST**

**4** They said to Jesus, "Teacher, this woman was caught committing adultery with a man, someone not her husband.

# John 8:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

**ULT**

**5** Now in the law, Moses commanded us to stone such people; what do you say about her?"

**UST**

**5** Now Moses commanded us in the law that we must execute such a woman with stones. Nevertheless, what do you say we should do?"

# John 8:6

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

**ULT**

**6** They said this in order to trap him so that they might have something to accuse him about, but Jesus bent down and wrote on the ground with his finger.

**UST**

**6** They asked this question as a trap so that they could accuse him of saying something wrong. If he said that they should not kill her, they could say that he dishonored the law of Moses. However, if he said that they should kill her, he would be breaking the Roman law that reserved for the governor the power to execute people. However, Jesus bent down and wrote something on the ground with his finger.

## John 8:7

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

**ULT**

**7** When they continued asking him questions, he stood up and said to them, "The one among you who has no sin, let him be the first to throw a stone at her."

**UST**

**7** While they continued to question him, he stood up and said to them, "Whichever one of you has never sinned, you are one who should lead the rest to punish her. You throw the first stone!"

## John 8:8

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

**ULT**

**8** Again he stooped down, and wrote on the ground with his finger.

**UST**

**8** Then Jesus stooped down and wrote some more on the ground.

# John 8:9

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

**ULT**

**9** When they heard it, they left one by one, beginning with the oldest. Finally Jesus was left alone, with the woman who had been in the middle.

**UST**

**9** After they heard what he said, those who were questioning him started walking away, one by one, the older ones first and then the younger ones. They knew they were all sinners. Finally only Jesus was there with the woman.

## John 8:10

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

**ULT**

**10** Jesus stood up and said to her, "Woman, where are your accusers? Did no one condemn you?"

**UST**

**10** Jesus stood up and asked her, "Woman, where are those who accuse you? Has no one brought a charge against you that you must be punished?"

## John 8:11

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

**ULT**

**11** She said, "No one, Lord." Jesus said, "Neither do I condemn you. Go and sin no more."]

**UST**

**11** She said, "No, sir, no one." Then Jesus said, "I do not condemn you either. Go home now, and from now on, do not sin like this anymore!"]

# John 8:12

## General Information:

Jesus is speaking to a crowd near the treasury in the temple after either the events of John 7:1-52 or the events of John 7:53-8:11. The author neither gives background to this event nor marks the beginning of a new event. (See: Background Information and Introduction of a New Event)

**ULT**

**12** Then Jesus again spoke to them, saying, "I am the light of the world; he who follows me will not walk in the darkness but will have the light of life."

**UST**

**12** Jesus spoke to the people again. He said, "I am the light of the world. Anyone who follows me will have the light that gives eternal life, and he will never walk in darkness again.

## I am the light of the world (ULT)
## I am the light of the world (UST)

Here the "light" is a metaphor for the revelation that comes from God. Alternate translation: "I am the one who gives light to the world" (See: Metaphor)

## of the world (ULT)
## of the world (UST)

This is a metonym for the people. Alternate translation: "the people of the world" (See: Metonymy)

## he who follows me (ULT)
## Anyone who follows me (UST)

This is an idiom that means "everyone who does what I teach" or "everyone who obeys me" (See: Idiom)

## will not walk in the darkness (ULT)
## he will never walk in darkness again (UST)

To "walk in darkness" is a metaphor for living a sinful life. Alternate translation: "will not live as if he were in the darkness of sin" (See: Metaphor)

## light of life (ULT)
## light that gives eternal life (UST)

The "light of life" is a metaphor for the truth from God that gives spiritual life. Alternate translation: "truth that brings eternal life" (See: Metaphor)

## Translation Words - ULT

- of life
- Jesus
- world
- darkness
- light
- light (2)
- will...walk

## Translation Words - UST

- that gives eternal life
- Jesus

- of the world
- darkness
- light
- light (2)
- he will…walk

## John 8:13

**You bear witness about yourself (ULT)**
**It sounds as though you are trying to convince us to trust you by talking about yourself more and more (UST)**

"You are just saying these things about yourself"

**your witness is not true (ULT)**
**What you say about yourself is not valid evidence and does not prove anything (UST)**

The Pharisees are implying that the witness of only one person is not true because it cannot be verified. Alternate translation: "you cannot be your own witness" or "what you say about yourself may not be true" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### Translation Words - ULT

- bear witness
- witness
- true
- Pharisees

### Translation Words - UST

- It sounds as though...are trying to convince us to trust you by talking...more and more
- What you say
- is...valid evidence and does...prove anything
- Pharisees

**ULT**

**13** The Pharisees said to him, "You bear witness about yourself; your witness is not true."

**UST**

**13** So the Pharisees said to him, "It sounds as though you are trying to convince us to trust you by talking about yourself more and more! What you say about yourself is not valid evidence and does not prove anything!"

## John 8:14

**Even if I bear witness about myself (ULT)**
**Even if I were the only one to say these things about myself (UST)**

"Even if I say these things about myself"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- bear witness
- witness
- true
- I know
- know

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- were the only one to say these things
- what…say
- true
- I know…I know
- do…know…do…know

## John 8:15

**the flesh (ULT)**
**human standards and the laws of men (UST)**

"human standards and the laws of men"

**I do not judge anyone (ULT)**
**I have not come at this time to judge anyone (UST)**

Possible meanings are 1) "I do not judge anyone yet" or 2) "I am not judging anyone now."

### Translation Words - ULT

- flesh
- judge
- judge

### Translation Words - UST

- human standards and the laws of men
- judge people
- have...come at this time to judge

**ULT**

**15** You judge according to the flesh; I do not judge anyone.

**UST**

**15** You judge people according to human standards and the laws of men. I have not come at this time to judge anyone.

## John 8:16

**If...judge...I (ULT)**
**When...do judge...I (UST)**

Possible meanings are 1) "if I judge people" or 2) "whenever I judge people"

**my judgment is true**

Possible meanings are 1) "my judgment will be right" or 2) "my judgment is right."

**I am not alone, but I am with the Father who sent me (ULT)**

Jesus, the Son of God, has authority because of his special relationship with his Father. (See: Translating Son and Father)

**I am not alone (ULT)**
**I am not the only one who will bring justice (UST)**

The implied information is that Jesus is not alone in his judgment. Alternate translation: "I am not alone in how I judge" or "I do not judge alone" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**If...I am...the...who sent...Father (ULT)**
**When...I...the...Father (UST)**

The Father and the Son judge together. Alternate translation: "the Father also judges with me" or "the Father judges as I do"

**the...who sent...Father (ULT)**
**the...Father (UST)**

This is an important title for God. If your language must state whose Father this is, you could say "my Father" since Jesus switches to that in the following verses. (See: Translating Son and Father)

> **ULT**
>
> **16** If I judge, however, my judgment is true because I am not alone, but I am with the Father who sent me.
>
> **UST**
>
> **16** When I do judge, it will be right and just because I am not the only one who will bring justice. I and the Father who sent me, we will execute justice together.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- true
- Father
- judge
- judgment
- the...who sent

**Translation Words - UST**

- right and just
- Father
- do judge
- it
- who sent

# John 8:17

## Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues speaking to the Pharisees and other people about himself.

## Yes, and in your law

The word "Yes" shows that Jesus is adding to what he was saying before.

## it is…written (ULT)
## Moses when he wrote…said (UST)

This is a passive phrase. You may translate it in an active form with a personal subject. Alternate translation: "Moses wrote" (See: Active or Passive)

## the testimony of two men is true (ULT)
## a matter can be settled…at least two witnesses to give evidence in the case (UST)

The logic implied here is that one person can verify the words of another. Alternate translation: "if two men say the same thing, then people know it is true" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

## Translation Words - ULT

- law
- testimony
- true
- it is…written

## Translation Words - UST

- law
- to give evidence in the case
- a matter can be settled
- Moses when he wrote…said

**ULT**

**17** In your law it is indeed written that the testimony of two men is true.

**UST**

**17** Moses when he wrote your law said that a matter can be settled only when there are at least two witnesses to give evidence in the case.

## John 8:18

**I am he who bears witness about myself (ULT)**
**I am bringing evidence to you about myself (UST)**

Jesus bears witness about himself. Alternate translation: "I give evidence to you about myself"

**the Father who sent me bears witness about me (ULT)**
**my Father who sent me…brings evidence about me (UST)**

The Father also bears witness about Jesus. You could make it explicit that this means Jesus' testimony is true. Alternate translation: "my Father who sent me also brings evidence about me. So you should believe that what we tell you is true" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**he who bears witness…Father (ULT)**
**bringing evidence to you…my Father (UST)**

This is an important title for God. If your language must state whose Father this is, you could say "my Father" since Jesus switches to that in the following verses. (See: Translating Son and Father)

### Translation Words - ULT

- he who bears witness
- bears witness
- Father
- the…who sent

### Translation Words - UST

- bringing evidence to you
- brings evidence
- my Father
- who sent

---

**ULT**

**18** I am he who bears witness about myself, and the Father who sent me bears witness about me."

**UST**

**18** I am bringing evidence to you about myself, and my Father who sent me also brings evidence about me. So you should believe that what we tell you is true."

# John 8:19

## General Information:

In verse 20 there is a break in Jesus' speaking where the author give us background information regarding where Jesus had been teaching. Some languages may require the information about the setting to be placed at the beginning of this part of the story in John 8:12. (See: Background Information)

## You know neither me nor my Father; if you had known me, you would have known my Father also

Jesus indicates that to know him is to also know the Father. Both Father and Son are God. "Father" is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

## my Father (ULT)
## my Father (UST)

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Father
- Father (2)
- father
- You know
- you had known
- you would have known (2)

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Father
- Father (2)
- father
- You do...know...you do...know
- you knew
- you would...know (2)

**ULT**

**19** Therefore they said to him, "Where is your father?" Jesus answered, "You know neither me nor my Father; if you had known me, you would have known my Father also."

**UST**

**19** Then the Pharisees asked him, "Where is your father?" Jesus replied, " You do not know me, and you do not know my Father. If you knew me, you would also know my Father."

# John 8:20

**his hour had not yet come (ULT)**
**it was not yet time for him to die (UST)**

The word "hour" is a metonym for the time for Jesus to die. Alternate translation: "it was not yet the right time for Jesus to die" (See: Metonymy)

## Translation Words - ULT

- temple
- as he taught
- hour
- arrested

## Translation Words - UST

- temple courtyard
- teach, teaching, untaught
- time...to die
- arrested

**ULT**

**20** He said these words in the treasury as he taught in the temple, and no one arrested him because his hour had not yet come.

**UST**

**20** He said these things when he was near the treasury within the temple courtyard, the place where the people brought in their offerings. Yet no one arrested him because it was not yet time for him to die.

# John 8:21

**Connecting Statement:**

Jesus continues speaking to the crowd.

**will die in your sin (ULT)**
**you will die without God forgiving your sins (UST)**

Here the word "die" refers to spiritual death. Alternate translation: "die while you are still sinful" or "you will die while you are sinning"

**you cannot come (ULT)**
**you cannot come (UST)**

"you are not able to come"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- sin
- will die
- you will seek

**Translation Words - UST**

- without God forgiving...sins
- you will die
- you will seek

**ULT**

**21** So again he said to them, "I am going away, and you will seek me and will die in your sin. Where I am going, you cannot come."

**UST**

**21** Jesus also said to them, "I am going away, and you will seek me, but you will die without God forgiving your sins. Where I am going, you cannot come."

# John 8:22

**said...the Jews (ULT)**
**said among themselves...His Jewish opponents (UST)**

Here "Jews" is a synecdoche for "the Jewish leaders." Alternate translation: "The Jewish leaders said" or "The Jewish authorities said" (See: Synecdoche)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Jews

**Translation Words - UST**

- His Jewish opponents

**ULT**

**22** Then the Jews said, "He will not kill himself, will he? Is that why he says, 'Where I am going you cannot come'?"

**UST**

**22** His Jewish opponents said among themselves, "Perhaps he is thinking that he will kill himself, and that is what he means when he says, 'Where I am going you cannot come.'"

## John 8:23

**You are from below (ULT)**
**You are from this earth below (UST)**

"You were born in this world"

**from below; I am...above (ULT)**
**from this earth below, but I am...heaven above (UST)**

"I came from heaven"

**You are from...this world (ULT)**
**You are from...this world (UST)**

"You belong to this world"

**from...I...this world...am not (ULT)**
**from...but I...this world...do not (UST)**

"I do not belong to this world"

### Translation Words - ULT

- world
- world (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- world
- world (2)

**ULT**

**23** So Jesus said to them, "You are from below; I am from above. You are of this world; I am not of this world.

**UST**

**23** Jesus continued saying to them, "You are from this earth below, but I am from heaven above. You belong to this world. I do not belong to this world.

# John 8:24

**you will die in your sins (ULT)**
**you will die and that God will condemn you for your sins (UST)**

"you will die without God's forgiving your sins"

**that...I AM (ULT)**
**that...I am God, as I say I (UST)**

Possible meanings are 1) Jesus is identifying himself as Yahweh, who identified himself to Moses as "I AM," or 2) Jesus expects the people to understand that he is referring to what he already has already said about himself: "I am from above."

## Translation Words - ULT

- sins
- sins (2)
- you believe
- you will die
- you will die (2)

## Translation Words - UST

- sins
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning (2)
- you trust
- you will die and that God will condemn you
- die, dead, deadly, death, (2)

**ULT**

**24** Therefore, I said to you that you will die in your sins. For unless you believe that I AM, you will die in your sins."

**UST**

**24** I told you that you will die and that God will condemn you for your sins. This will certainly happen unless you trust that I am God, as I say I am."

## John 8:25

**They said (ULT)**
**they asked (UST)**

The word "They" refers to the Jewish leaders (John 8:22).

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus

---

**ULT**

**25** They said therefore to him, "Who are you?" Jesus said to them, "Even what I have been saying to you from the beginning.

**UST**

**25** "Who are you?" they asked him. Jesus said to them, "Ever since the beginning, I have been telling you!

## John 8:26

**these things I say to the world (ULT)**

Here the "world" is a metonym for the people who live in the world. Alternate translation: "these things I say to all the people" (See: Metonymy)

### Translation Words - ULT

- true
- world
- judge
- he who sent

### Translation Words - UST

- the truth
- people in the world
- judge
- one who sent

**ULT**

**26** I have many things to speak and to judge concerning you. However, he who sent me is true; and the things that I heard from him, these things I say to the world."

**UST**

**26** I could judge you and say that you are guilty of many things. Instead, I will say only this: The one who sent me tells the truth, and I tell the people in the world only what I have heard from him."

## John 8:27

**about the Father (ULT)**
**about his Father in heaven (UST)**

This is a special title for God. Some languages may require the use of a possessive before the noun. Alternate translation: "his Father" (See: Translating Son and Father)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Father
- They...understand

### Translation Words - UST

- about his Father in heaven
- They did...understand

---

**ULT**

**27** They did not understand that he was speaking to them about the Father.

**UST**

**27** They did not understand that he was talking about his Father in heaven.

# John 8:28

**When you have lifted up (ULT)**
**When you have lifted me up on a cross to kill me (UST)**

This refers to placing Jesus on the cross to kill him.

**Son of Man (ULT)**
**Son of Man (UST)**

Jesus used the title "Son of Man" to refer to himself.

**I AM (ULT)**
**I am God (UST)**

Possible meanings are 1) Jesus is identifying himself as Yahweh, who identified himself to Moses as "I AM," or 2) Jesus is saying, "I am the one I claim to be."

**as the Father taught me, I speak these things (ULT)**

"I am only saying what my Father taught me to say." The word "Father" is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Jesus
- Father
- Son of Man
- taught
- as
- will you know

**Translation Words - UST**

- Jesus
- my Father
- Son of Man
- has taught...to say
- only...what
- you will know...you will know

---

**ULT**

**28** Then Jesus said to them, "When you have lifted up the Son of Man, then will you know that I AM, and that I do nothing of myself. But as the Father taught me, I speak these things.

**UST**

**28** So Jesus said, "When you have lifted me up on a cross to kill me—me, the Son of Man,— you will know that I am God, and you will know that I do not do anything on my own authority. Instead, I only say what my Father has taught me to say.

# John 8:29

**He who sent...me (ULT)**
**He who sent me (UST)**

The word "He" refers to God.

## Translation Words - ULT

• He who sent

## Translation Words - UST

• He who sent

---

**ULT**

**29** He who sent me is with me, and he has not left me alone, because I always do what is pleasing to him."

**UST**

**29** He who sent me is with me, and he has not left me alone because I do only the things that delight him."

---

# John 8:30

**As Jesus was saying these things (ULT)**
**As Jesus was saying these things (UST)**

"As Jesus spoke these words"

**many believed in him (ULT)**
**many more people believed that he had been sent by God (UST)**

"many people trusted him"

## Translation Words - ULT

- believed
- in him

## Translation Words - UST

- believed
- that he had been sent by God

---

**ULT**

**30** As Jesus was saying these things, many believed in him.

**UST**

**30** As Jesus was saying these things, many more people believed that he had been sent by God.

# John 8:31

**remain in my word (ULT)**

This is an idiom that means "to obey Jesus." Alternate translation: "obey what I have said" (See: Idiom)

**my disciples (ULT)**
**my apprentices (UST)**

"my followers"

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Jews
- word
- truly
- those…who had believed
- disciples

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- the Jews who now were saying that
- all…teach you…it
- truly
- they trusted
- apprentices

---

**ULT**

**31** Then Jesus said to those Jews who had believed him, "If you remain in my word, then you are truly my disciples;

**UST**

**31** Then Jesus said to the Jews who now were saying that they trusted in him, "If you listen to all I teach you and live by it in everything you do, you are truly my apprentices.

## John 8:32

**the truth will set you free (ULT)**
**the truth will lead you to be free from everything that made you its slaves (UST)**

This is personification. Jesus speaks of "the truth" as if it were a person. Alternate translation: "if you obey the truth, God will set you free" (See: Personification)

**the truth (ULT)**
**the truth (UST)**

This refers to what Jesus reveals about God. Alternate translation: "what is true about God"

**ULT**

**32** and you will know the truth, and the truth will set you free."

**UST**

**32** You will know the truth, and the truth will lead you to be free from everything that made you its slaves."

### Translation Words - ULT

- truth
- truth
- will set…free
- you will know

### Translation Words - UST

- truth
- truth
- will lead…to be free from everything that made…its slaves
- You will know

# John 8:33

### how can you say, 'You will be set free (ULT)

This remark appears in the form of a question to express the Jewish leaders' shock at what Jesus has said. Alternate translation: "We do not need to be set free!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

### Translation Words - ULT

- of Abraham
- descendants
- have…been slaves
- set free

### Translation Words - UST

- of Abraham
- the descendants
- we have…been…slaves
- free

**ULT**

**33** They answered him, "We are descendants of Abraham and have never been slaves of anyone; how can you say, 'You will be set free'?"

**UST**

**33** They answered him, "We are the descendants of Abraham, and we have never been anyone's slaves. Why do you say we need to be free?

# John 8:34

**Truly, truly**

See how you translated this in John 1:51.

**is the slave of sin (ULT)**
**just as a slave is forced to obey his master (UST)**

Here the word "slave" is a metaphor. This implies that "sin" is like a
master for the one who sins. Alternate translation: "is like a slave to
sin" (See: Metaphor)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- sin
- of sin
- Truly
- truly (2)
- who commits
- the slave

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- sin
- just as a slave is forced to obey his master
- the truth
- the truth (2)
- who...obey their sinful desires
- just as a slave is forced to obey his master

**ULT**

**34** Jesus answered them, "Truly, truly, I
say to you, that everyone who commits
sin is the slave of sin.

**UST**

**34** Jesus replied, "I am telling you the
truth: All who sin obey their sinful
desires just as a slave is forced to obey
his master.

# John 8:35

**in the house (ULT)**
**as...members of a family (UST)**

Here "house" is a metonym for "family." Alternate translation: "as a permanent member of a family" (See: Metonymy)

**the son remains forever (ULT)**
**However, a son is a member of the family forever (UST)**

This is an ellipsis. You may translate it by including the implied words. Alternate translation: "the son is a member of the family forever" (See: Ellipsis)

## Translation Words - ULT

- son
- forever
- forever (2)
- slave
- house

## Translation Words - UST

- However, a son
- permanent
- forever (2)
- Slaves
- a family

**ULT**

**35** But the slave does not remain in the house forever; the son remains forever.

**UST**

**35** Slaves will not remain as permanent members of a family but may be set free to return home or sold. However, a son is a member of the family forever.

## John 8:36

**if...the Son sets you free, you will be truly free (ULT)**
**if...the Son sets you free, you will be absolutely free (UST)**

It is implied that Jesus is talking about freedom from sin, which is a metaphor for being able not to sin. Alternate translation: "if the Son msets you free, you will truly be able to refrain from sin" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and Metaphor)

**if...the Son sets you free (ULT)**
**if...the Son sets you free (UST)**

"Son" is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God. Jesus was speaking about himself. Alternate translation: "If I, the Son, set you free" (See: Translating Son and Father and First, Second or Third Person)

**ULT**

**36** Therefore, if the Son sets you free, you will be truly free.

**UST**

**36** So if the Son sets you free, you will be absolutely free.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Son
- sets...free
- free

### Translation Words - UST

- Son
- sets...free
- free

# John 8:37

## Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues speaking to the Jews.

## my word has no place in you (ULT)
## You will not trust anything I say (UST)

Here "word" is a metonym for the "teachings" or "message" of Jesus, which the Jewish leaders do not accept. Alternate translation: "you do not accept my teachings" or "you do not allow my message to change your life" (See: Metonymy)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Abraham's
- descendants
- you seek
- I know

## Translation Words - UST

- Abraham's...his
- in...family...descendants
- your people are trying
- I know

---

**ULT**

**37** I know that you are Abraham's descendants, but you seek to kill me because my word has no place in you.

**UST**

**37** I know that you are in Abraham's family; you are his descendants. Yet, your people are trying to put me to death. You will not trust anything I say.

## John 8:38

### I say what I have seen with my Father (ULT)

"I am telling you about the things I saw when I was with my Father"

### you also...what...with...do...you heard...your father (ULT)

The Jewish leaders do not understand that by "your father" Jesus is referring to the devil. Alternate translation: "you also continue doing what your father has told you to do"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Father
- father

### Translation Words - UST

- my Father
- your father

**ULT**
**38** I say what I have seen with my Father; therefore you also do what you heard from your father."

**UST**
**38** I tell you all about the wonders and wisdom my Father has shown me, but you are only doing what your father told you to do."

# John 8:39

**father (ULT)**
**ancestor (UST)**

forefather

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- works
- children
- Abraham
- Abraham's (2)
- of Abraham
- father

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- good things...did
- descendants
- Abraham
- Abraham's (2)
- he
- ancestor

**ULT**

**39** They answered and said to him, "Our father is Abraham." Jesus said to them, "If you were Abraham's children, you would do the works of Abraham.

**UST**

**39** They replied to him, "Abraham is our ancestor." Jesus said to them, "If you were Abraham's descendants, you would be doing the good things he did.

## John 8:40

**Abraham did not do this (ULT)**
**Abraham did not do things like that (UST)**

"Abraham never tried to kill anyone who told him the true revelation from God"

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- truth
- Abraham
- you seek

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- truth
- Abraham
- you are trying

**ULT**

**40** Yet, now you seek to kill me, a man who has told you the truth that I heard from God. Abraham did not do this.

**UST**

**40** I have been telling you the truth that I heard from God, but you are trying to put me to death. Abraham did not do things like that.

# John 8:41

### You do the works of your father (ULT)
### You are doing the things that your real father did (UST)

Jesus implies that their father is the devil. Alternate translation: "No! You are doing the things that your real father did" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### We were not born in sexual immorality (ULT)

Here the Jewish leaders imply that Jesus does not know who his real father is. Alternate translation: "We do not know about you, but we are not illegitimate children" or "We were all born from proper marriages" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### we have one Father: God (ULT)
### We have only one Father, and that is God (UST)

Here the Jewish leaders claim God as their spiritual Father. This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

**ULT**

**41** You do the works of your father." Then they said to him, "We were not born in sexual immorality; we have one Father: God."

**UST**

**41** No! You are doing the things that your real father did." They said to him, "We do not know about you, but we are not illegitimate children. We have only one Father, and that is God."

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- works
- Father
- of…father
- were…born
- sexual immorality

### Translation Words - UST

- and that is God
- things
- Father
- real father
- children
- illegitimate

## John 8:42

**you would love (ULT)**
**you would love (UST)**

This is the kind of love that comes from God and is focused on the good of others (including those who are our enemies), even when it does not benefit oneself.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- you would love
- God
- God
- Father
- sent

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- you would love
- God
- God
- Father
- sent

**ULT**

**42** Jesus said to them, "If God were your Father, you would love me, for I came from God and am here; for neither have I come of myself, but he sent me.

**UST**

**42** Jesus said to them, "If God were your Father, you would love me because I came from God and now I have come here to this world. I did not come because I myself decided to come but because he sent me.

## John 8:43

**Why do you not understand my words (ULT)**
**I will tell you why you do not understand what I say (UST)**

Jesus is using this question mainly to rebuke the Jewish leaders for not listening to him. Alternate translation: "I will tell you why you do not understand what I say!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

**It is because you cannot hear my words (ULT)**
**It is because you do not accept my message or my teachings (UST)**

Here "words" is a metonym for the "teachings" of Jesus. Alternate translation: "It is because you will not accept my teachings. (See: Metonymy)

### Translation Words - ULT

- do you...understand

### Translation Words - UST

- you do...understand

**ULT**

**43** Why do you not understand my words? It is because you cannot hear my words.

**UST**

**43** I will tell you why you do not understand what I say. It is because you do not accept my message or my teachings.

# John 8:44

### You are of your father, the devil

"You belong to your father, Satan"

### the father of lies (ULT)
### everyone who lies does what the devil wants him to do (UST)

Here "father" is a metaphor for the one who originates all lies. Alternate translation: "he is the one who created all lies in the beginning" (See: Metaphor)

### Translation Words - ULT

- truth
- truth
- devil
- father
- of...father (2)
- father
- desires

### Translation Words - UST

- truth
- it
- devil
- your father
- he (2)
- everyone who lies does what the devil wants him to do
- what...wants

**ULT**

**44** You are of your father, the devil, and you wish to do the desires of your father. He was a murderer from the beginning and does not stand in the truth because there is no truth in him. When he speaks a lie, he speaks from his own nature because he is a liar and the father of lies.

**UST**

**44** You belong to your father, the devil, and you desire to do what he wants. He was a murderer from the time people first sinned. He has abandoned God's truth; it is not in him. Whenever he lies, he is speaking according to his character because he is a liar; everyone who lies does what the devil wants him to do.

## John 8:45

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues speaking to the Jews.

### I...because...speak the truth (ULT)
### I...even though...tell you the truth (UST)

"because I tell you true things about God"

### Translation Words - ULT

- truth
- you...believe

### Translation Words - UST

- truth
- you do...believe

**ULT**
**45** Yet, because I speak the truth, you do not believe me.

**UST**
**45** Yet even though I tell you the truth, you do not believe me!

## John 8:46

**Which one of you convicts me of sin (ULT)**
**Since I have never sinned, none of you can accuse me of that (UST)**

Jesus uses this question to emphasize that he has never sinned. Alternate translation: "None of you can show that I have ever sinned!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

**If I speak the truth (ULT)**
**So, since I tell you the truth (UST)**

"If I say things that are true"

**why do you not believe me (ULT)**
**there is no good reason for your not believing me (UST)**

Jesus uses this question to scold the Jewish leaders for their unbelief. Alternate translation: "you have no reason for not believing in me!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

**ULT**

**46** Which one of you convicts me of sin? If I speak the truth, why do you not believe me?

**UST**

**46** Since I have never sinned, none of you can accuse me of that. So, since I tell you the truth, there is no good reason for your not believing me!

**Translation Words - ULT**

- sin
- the truth
- do…believe

**Translation Words - UST**

- that
- the truth
- believing

## John 8:47

**the words of God (ULT)**
**what he tells them (UST)**

Here "words" is a metonym for the "message" of God. Alternate translation: "the message of God" or "the truth that comes from God" (See: Metonymy)

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- of God (2)
- God (3)
- words of God

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- he (2)
- do...belong to God (3)
- what...he...tells them

**ULT**

[47] He who is of God hears the words of God; because of this you do not hear them, because you are not of God."

**UST**

[47] Those who belong to God hear and obey what he tells them. The reason that you do not hear and obey his message is that you do not belong to God."

## John 8:48

**The Jews (ULT)**
**His Jewish enemies (UST)**

The "Jews" is a synecdoche that represents the "Jewish leaders" who opposed Jesus. Alternate translation: "The Jewish leaders" (See: Synecdoche)

**Do we not truly say that you are a Samaritan and have a demon (ULT)**

The Jewish leaders use this question to accuse Jesus and to dishonor him. Alternate translation: "We are certainly right in saying that you are a Samaritan and that a demon lives in you!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jews
- have a demon
- a demon
- a Samaritan

### Translation Words - UST

- His Jewish enemies
- a demon lives in you
- a demon
- a Samaritan...not really a true Jew at all

**ULT**

**48** The Jews answered and said to him, "Do we not truly say that you are a Samaritan and have a demon?"

**UST**

**48** His Jewish enemies replied to him, "We are certainly right in stating that you are a Samaritan—you are not really a true Jew at all!—and that a demon lives in you!"

## John 8:49

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- I honor
- Father
- a demon

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- I honor
- Father in heaven
- A demon

**ULT**

**49** Jesus answered, "I do not have a demon, but I honor my Father, and you dishonor me.

**UST**

**49** Jesus replied, "A demon does not live in me! I honor my Father in heaven, but you dishonor me!

# John 8:50

**Connecting Statement:**

Jesus continues answering the Jews.

**there is one seeking and judging (ULT)**
**There is someone else who desires to give me what I deserve, and he is the one who will judge everything that I say and do (UST)**

This refers to God.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- glory
- judging
- seek
- one seeking

**Translation Words - UST**

- to praise
- he is the one who will judge everything that I say and do
- do...try to persuade people
- someone else who desires to give me what I deserve

**ULT**

**50** But I do not seek my glory; there is one seeking and judging.

**UST**

**50** I do not try to persuade people to praise me. There is someone else who desires to give me what I deserve, and he is the one who will judge everything that I say and do.

## John 8:51

### Truly, truly

See how you translated this in John 1:51.

### keeps my word (ULT)
### holds firm to my word and trusts in it as I gave it (UST)

Here "word" is a metonym for the "teachings" of Jesus. Alternate translation: "obeys my teachings" or "does what I say" (See: Metonymy)

### death...he will...see (ULT)

This is an idiom that means to experience death. Here Jesus is referring to spiritual death. Alternate translation: "die spiritually" (See: Idiom)

**ULT**

**51** Truly, truly, I say to you, if anyone keeps my word, he will certainly not ever see death."

**UST**

**51** I am telling you the truth: If anyone holds firm to my word and trusts in it as I gave it, that person will never die!"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Truly
- truly (2)
- keeps
- death
- ever

### Translation Words - UST

- the truth
- the truth (2)
- holds firm...and trusts
- that person will...die
- age, aged

## John 8:52

**Jews (ULT)**
**his Jewish enemies (UST)**

Here "Jews" is a metonym for the "Jewish leaders" who opposed Jesus. Alternate translation: "Jewish leaders" (See: Synecdoche)

**If anyone keeps my word (ULT)**
**that anyone who holds firm to what you teach (UST)**

"If anyone obeys my teaching"

**he will...taste death (ULT)**
**will...die (UST)**

This is an idiom that means to experience death. The Jewish leaders mistakenly assume that Jesus is speaking only about physical death. Alternate translation: "die" (See: Idiom)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jews
- prophets
- you have a demon
- a demon
- Abraham
- keeps
- died
- death
- ever
- we know

### Translation Words - UST

- his Jewish enemies
- prophets
- a demon lives within you
- a demon
- Abraham
- holds firm to
- died long ago
- will...die
- age, aged
- we are sure

---

**ULT**

**52** The Jews said to him, "Now we know that you have a demon. Abraham and the prophets died; but you say, 'If anyone keeps my word, he will certainly not ever taste death.'

**UST**

**52** Then his Jewish enemies said to him, "Now we are sure that a demon lives within you! Abraham and the prophets died long ago! Yet you say that anyone who holds firm to what you teach will never die!

## John 8:53

**You are not greater than our father Abraham who died, are you (ULT)**

The Jewish leaders use this question to emphasize that Jesus is not greater than Abraham. Alternate translation: "You are certainly not greater than our father Abraham who indeed died!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

**father (ULT)**
**than...ancestor (UST)**

forefather

**Who do you make yourself out to be (ULT)**
**So who do you think you are (UST)**

The Jews use this question to rebuke Jesus for thinking that he is more important than Abraham. Alternate translation: "You should not think that you are so important!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

**ULT**

**53** You are not greater than our father Abraham who died, are you? The prophets also died. Who do you make yourself out to be?"

**UST**

**53** You are not greater than our ancestor Abraham. He died and all the prophets also died. So who do you think you are?"

### Translation Words - ULT

- prophets
- Abraham
- father
- died
- died

### Translation Words - UST

- prophets
- Abraham
- ancestor
- He died
- also died

## John 8:54

**it is my Father who glorifies me—about whom you say that he is your God (ULT)**
**My Father is the one who you say is your God. He is the one who praises me, my character and goodness (UST)**

The word "Father" is an important title for God. No one knows God the Father like Jesus, the Son of God. Alternate translation: "it is my Father who honors me, and you say that he is your God" (See: Translating Son and Father)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- God
- glorify
- glory
- who glorifies
- Father

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- God
- tried to get people to praise
- tried to get people to praise
- praises
- Father

**ULT**

**54** Jesus answered, "If I glorify myself, my glory is nothing; it is my Father who glorifies me—about whom you say that he is your God.

**UST**

**54** Jesus replied, "If I tried to get people to praise me, that would be worthless. My Father is the one who you say is your God. He is the one who praises me, my character and goodness.

# John 8:55

**keep his word (ULT)**
**I always obey what he says (UST)**

Here "word" is a metonym for what God says. Alternate translation: "I obey what he says to do" (See: Metonymy)

## Translation Words - ULT

- word
- keep
- like
- You have...known
- know
- I...know (2)
- I know (3)

## Translation Words - UST

- what...says
- I always obey
- like
- you do...know
- do know
- I did...know (2)
- I know (3)

**ULT**

**55** You have not known him, but I know him. If I would say, 'I do not know him,' I would be like you, a liar. However, I know him and keep his word.

**UST**

**55** Although you do not know him, I do know him. If I said that I did not know him, I would be a liar like you. I know him and I always obey what he says.

# John 8:56

**my day (ULT)**
**what I could do (UST)**

This is a metonym for what Jesus would accomplish during his life. Alternate translation: "what I would do during my life" (See: Metonymy)

**and he saw it…was glad (ULT)**

"he foresaw my coming through God's revelation and he rejoiced"

## Translation Words - ULT

- Abraham
- father
- was glad
- day
- rejoiced

## Translation Words - UST

- Abraham
- ancestor
- joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing
- what I could do
- was happy

**ULT**

**56** Your father Abraham rejoiced at seeing my day, and he saw it and was glad."

**UST**

**56** Your ancestor Abraham was happy when, as a prophet, he looked forward and saw what I could do."

# John 8:57

## Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the part of the story about Jesus speaking with the Jews in the temple, which began in John 8:12.

## said...the Jews...to him (ULT)
## said...the Jewish leaders...to him (UST)

Here the "Jews" is a synecdoche for the "Jewish leaders" who opposed Jesus. Alternate translation: "The Jewish leaders said to him" (See: Synecdoche)

**ULT**

**57** Therefore the Jews said to him, "You are not yet fifty years old, and you have seen Abraham?"

**UST**

**57** Then the Jewish leaders said to him, "Abraham died long ago. You are not fifty years old yet! How can you claim to have seen Abraham?"

## You are not yet fifty years old, and you have seen Abraham (ULT)
## You are not fifty years old yet! How can you claim to have seen Abraham (UST)

The Jewish leaders use this question to express their shock that Jesus claims to have seen Abraham. Alternate translation: "You are less than fifty years old. You could not have seen Abraham!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jews
- Abraham
- years old

## Translation Words - UST

- Jewish leaders
- Abraham
- years old

## John 8:58

### Truly, truly

See how you translated this in John 1:51.

### I AM (ULT)
### I existed (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) Jesus is identifying himself as Yahweh, who identified himself to Moses as "I AM," or 2) Jesus is saying, "before Abraham existed, I existed."

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Truly
- truly (2)
- Abraham

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- The truth
- The truth (2)
- Abraham

**ULT**

**58** Jesus said to them, "Truly, truly, I say to you, before Abraham was, I AM."

**UST**

**58** Jesus said to them, "The truth is that I existed before Abraham was born!"

# John 8:59

## Then they picked up stones to throw at him (ULT)

The Jewish leaders are outraged at what Jesus has said. Here it is implied that they wanted to kill him because he had made himself equal to God. Alternate translation: "Then they picked up stones to kill him because he claimed to be equal with God" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- throw at him
- temple

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- to throw at him to kill him
- temple courtyard

**ULT**

**59** Then they picked up stones to throw at him, but Jesus hid himself and went out of the temple.

8:1 [1] See the note about John 7:53-8:11 on 7:53 above.

**UST**

**59** So they picked up stones to throw at him to kill him. But Jesus caused them not to be able to see him. He left the temple courtyard and went somewhere else.

8:1 [1] See the note about John 7:53-8:11 on 7:53 above.

## John 9

### John 9 General Notes

# Special concepts in this chapter

### "Who sinned?"

Many of the Jews of Jesus' time believed that if a person was blind or deaf or crippled, it was because he or his parents or someone in his family had sinned. This was not the teaching of the law of Moses. (See: sin, sinful, sinner, sinning and law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law)

### "He does not keep the Sabbath"

The Pharisees thought that Jesus was working, and so breaking the Sabbath, by making mud. (See: Sabbath)

# Important metaphors in this chapter

### Light and darkness

The Bible often speaks of unrighteous people, people who do not do what pleases God, as if they were walking around in darkness. It speaks of light as if it were what enables those sinful people to become righteous, to understand what they are doing wrong and begin to obey God. (See: righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness)

### Seeing and being blind

Jesus calls the Pharisees blind because they see that Jesus is able to heal blind people but they still do not believe that God sent him (John 9:39-40). (See: Metaphor)

# Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

### "Son of Man"

Jesus refers to himself as the "Son of Man" in this chapter (John 9:35). Your language may not allow people to speak of themselves as if they were speaking about someone else. (See: Son of Man, son of man and First, Second or Third Person)

## John 9:1

### General Information:

As Jesus and his disciples are walking along, they come across a blind man.

### Now (ULT)

This word shows that the author is about to describe a new event. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

### as Jesus passed by (ULT)
### As Jesus and his apprentices walked along (UST)

Here "Jesus" is a synecdoche for Jesus and the disciples. Alternate translation: "as Jesus and his disciples passed by" (See: Synecdoche)

**ULT**

**1** Now as Jesus passed by, he saw a man blind from birth.

**UST**

**1** As Jesus and his apprentices walked along, he saw a man who had been blind his whole life, since the day he was born.

## John 9:2

**who sinned, this man or his parents, so that he was born blind (ULT)**

This question reflects the ancient Jewish belief that sin caused all illnesses and other deformities. The rabbis also taught that it was possible for a baby to sin while still in the womb. Alternate translation: "Teacher, we know that sin causes a person to be blind. Whose sin caused this man to be born blind? did this man himself sin, or was it his parents who sinned?" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### Translation Words - ULT

- sinned
- Rabbi
- disciples

### Translation Words - UST

- sin...sinned
- Teacher
- apprentices

**ULT**

**2** Then his disciples asked him, saying, " Rabbi, who sinned, this man or his parents, so that he was born blind?"

**UST**

**2** His apprentices asked him, "Teacher, whose sin caused this man to be born blind? Was it this man himself who sinned, or was it his parents?"

# John 9:3

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

## Translation Words - ULT

- would be revealed
- Jesus
- did...sin
- of God
- works

## Translation Words - UST

- today people may see
- Jesus
- sinned
- God
- powerful work...would do

# John 9:4

**We (ULT)**
**I must (UST)**

This "We" includes both Jesus and the disciples he is talking to. (See: Inclusive and Exclusive "We")

**day…Night (ULT)**
**While there is still time…Just like day…night when people do not work (UST)**

Here "day" and "night" are metaphors. Jesus is comparing the time when people can do God's work to daytime, the time when people normally work, and nighttime to when they cannot do God's work. (See: Metaphor)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- works
- work
- to work (2)
- of him who sent
- day

**Translation Words - UST**

- work that…wants me to do
- do
- what God wants (2)
- the one who sent
- While there is still time…Just like day

**ULT**

**4** We must work the works of him who sent me while it is day. Night is coming when no one will be able to work.

**UST**

**4** While there is still time, I must do the work that the one who sent me wants me to do. Just like day is followed by night when people do not work, a time comes when it is too late for us to do what God wants.

# John 9:5

**in the world (ULT)**
**in this world (UST)**

Here the "world" is a metonym for the people who live in the world. Alternate translation: "living among the people of this world" (See: Metonymy)

**the light...of the world (ULT)**
**the one who gives light...to the world (UST)**

Here "light" is a metaphor for the true revelation of God. Alternate translation: "the one who shows what is true just as light allows people to see what is in the darkness" (See: Metaphor)

**ULT**

**5** While I am in the world, I am the light of the world."

**UST**

**5** While I am still living in this world, I am the one who gives light to the world."

## Translation Words - ULT

- world
- world
- the light

## Translation Words - UST

- world
- to the world
- the one who gives light

## John 9:6

**made mud with the saliva (ULT)**
**He made mud with his saliva (UST)**

Jesus used his fingers to mix the dirt and saliva. Alternate translation: "and used his fingers to mix the dirt and saliva to make mud" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**ULT**

**6** After Jesus said these things, he spit on the ground and made mud with the saliva, and smeared the mud on him, on his eyes.

**UST**

**6** When he said this, he spit on the ground. He made mud with his saliva, and applied it like a medicine to the man's eyes.

# John 9:7

**wash…washed (ULT)**
**and wash…washed in the pool (UST)**

You may need to make explicit that Jesus wanted him to wash the mud off of his eyes in the pool and that that is what the man did. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**which is translated "Sent (ULT)**
**The name of the pool means 'sent (UST)**

A brief break occurs here in the story line so John can explain to his readers what "Siloam" means. Alternate translation: "which means 'Sent'" (See: Background Information)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Sent

**Translation Words - UST**

- sent

# John 9:8

### Is not this the man that used to sit and beg (ULT)

This remark appears in the form of a question to express the surprise of the people. Alternate translation: "This man is the one who used to sit and beg!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

### Translation Words - ULT

- a beggar
- beg
- man's neighbors

### Translation Words - UST

- begging
- beg
- man's neighbors

**ULT**

**8** Then the man's neighbors and those who had seen him previously as a beggar were saying, "Is not this the man that used to sit and beg?"

**UST**

**8** The man's neighbors and others who had seen him when he was begging said, "Isn't this the man who used to sit here and beg?"

# John 9:9

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

## Translation Words - ULT

- like

## Translation Words - UST

- like

---

**ULT**

**9** Some said, "It is he." Others said, "No, but he is like him." But he said, "It is me."

**UST**

**9** Some said, "He is the one." Others said, "No, but he just looks like that man." However, the man himself said, "Yes, I am the man!"

## John 9:10

### Connecting Statement:

The neighbors of the man who had been blind continue to speak to him.

### How were your eyes opened (ULT)
### How is it that you are now able to see (UST)

"Then what caused you to be able to see?" or "How is it that you can see now?"

# John 9:11

**smeared it on my eyes (ULT)**
**used it like medicine and put it on my eyes (UST)**

"used his fingers to cover my eyes with mud." See how you translated a similar phrase in John 9:6.

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- who is called
- smeared it

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- called
- used it like medicine and put it

## John 9:12

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

• I...know

### Translation Words - UST

• I do...know

---

**ULT**
**12** They said to him, "Where is he?" He replied, "I do not <u>know</u>."

**UST**
**12** They said to him, "Where is that man?" He said, "<u>I do</u> not <u>know</u>."

## John 9:13

### General Information:

Verse 14 tells background information about when Jesus healed the man. (See: Background Information)

### They brought the man who used to be blind to the Pharisees (ULT)

The people insisted that the man go with them to the Pharisees. They did not physically force him to go.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Pharisees

### Translation Words - UST

- Pharisees

**ULT**

**13** They brought the man who used to be blind to the Pharisees.

**UST**

**13** Some of the people there took the man to a gathering of the Pharisees.

## John 9:14

**the Sabbath day (ULT)**
**Jewish day of rest when (UST)**

"Jewish Day of Rest"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- the Sabbath
- day

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Jewish day of rest
- when

**ULT**

**14** Now it was the Sabbath day when Jesus made the mud and opened his eyes.

**UST**

**14** Now it was on the Jewish day of rest when Jesus made the mud and healed his eyesight.

# John 9:15

**Then again...asked him...the Pharisees (ULT)**
**So...asked the man again...the Pharisees (UST)**

"So the Pharisees also asked him"

## Translation Words - ULT

- Pharisees

## Translation Words - UST

- Pharisees

**ULT**

**15** Then again the Pharisees also asked him how he had received his sight. He said to them, "He put mud on my eyes, and I washed, and I now can see."

**UST**

**15** So the Pharisees asked the man again about how he was now able to see. He said to them, "The man put mud on my eyes and I washed, and now I see."

# John 9:16

## General Information:

In verse 18 there is a break from the main story line as John provides background information about the Jews' disbelief. (See: Background Information)

## he does not keep the Sabbath (ULT)
## he does not honor our Jewish day of rest (UST)

This means Jesus does not obey the law about doing no work on the Jewish Day of Rest.

## How can a man who is a sinner do such signs (ULT)
## If he were a sinner, how could he do such works of power that everyone sees (UST)

This remark appears in the form of a question to emphasize that Jesus' signs prove he is not a sinner. Alternate translation: "A sinner can not do such signs!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

## signs (ULT)
## works of power that everyone sees (UST)

This is another word for miracles. "Signs" give evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.

## Translation Words - ULT

- signs
- who is a sinner
- God
- can
- Pharisees
- Sabbath
- he...keep

## Translation Words - UST

- works of power that everyone sees
- were a sinner
- God
- could
- Pharisees
- Jewish day of rest
- he does...honor

---

**ULT**

**16** Then some of the Pharisees said, "This man is not from God because he does not keep the Sabbath." Others said, "How can a man who is a sinner do such signs?" So there was a division among them.

**UST**

**16** Some of the Pharisees said, "We know this man Jesus is not from God because he does not honor our Jewish day of rest." Others from that group asked, "If he were a sinner, how could he do such works of power that everyone sees?" So there was a difference of opinion among the Pharisees.

## John 9:17

**He is...a prophet (ULT)**
**He must be a prophet (UST)**

"I think he is a prophet"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- a prophet

**Translation Words - UST**

- a prophet

**ULT**

**17** So they asked the blind man again, "What do you say about him, since he opened your eyes?" The blind man said, "He is a prophet."

**UST**

**17** They asked the blind man again, "What do you say about him, since he is the one who restored your sight?" The man said, "He must be a prophet."

# John 9:18

**Now the Jews still did not believe (ULT)**
**Now the Jews who were opposed to Jesus did not believe (UST)**

Here "Jews" is a synecdoche for the "Jewish leaders" who opposed Jesus. Alternate translation: Now the Jewish leaders still did not believe. (See: Synecdoche)

## Translation Words - ULT

- they called
- Jews
- still...believe

## Translation Words - UST

- they sent someone to bring in...so that they could be questioned also
- Jews who were opposed to Jesus
- did...believe

**ULT**

**18** Now the Jews still did not believe about him that he was blind and had received his sight until they called the parents of him who had received his sight.

**UST**

**18** Now the Jews who were opposed to Jesus did not believe the man had been blind and then became able to see. So they sent someone to bring in the man's parents so that they could be questioned also.

## John 9:19

**They asked...the parents (ULT)**
**They asked his parents (UST)**

"They" refers to the Jewish leaders.

### Translation Words - ULT

- son

### Translation Words - UST

- son

---

**ULT**

**19** They asked the parents, saying, "Is this your son, of whom you say that he was born blind? How then does he now see?"

**UST**

**19** They asked his parents, "Is this your son? Do you say that he was blind from the day he was born? How, then, is he now able to see?"

# John 9:20

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

## Translation Words - ULT

- son
- We know

## Translation Words - UST

- son
- We know...We know

# John 9:21

**he is an adult (ULT)**
**he is old enough (UST)**

"he is a man" or "he is no longer a child"

## Translation Words - ULT

  • we...know
  • know (2)

## Translation Words - UST

  • we do...know
  • also do...know (2)

---

**ULT**

**21** But how he now sees, we do not know, and who opened his eyes, we do not know. Ask him, he is an adult. He can speak for himself."

**UST**

**21** Nevertheless, we do not know how he is now able to see. We also do not know who healed his eyes. Ask him, he is old enough to speak for himself."

# John 9:22

### General Information:

In verse 22 there is a break from the main story line as John provides background information about the man's parents being afraid of the Jews. (See: Background Information)

### they were afraid of the Jews (ULT)
### The Jews who were against Jesus...were afraid of the Jewish leaders (UST)

Here "Jews" is a synecdoche for the "Jewish leaders" who opposed Jesus. Alternate translation: "they were afraid of what the Jewish leaders might do to them" (See: Synecdoche)

### they were afraid (ULT)
### were afraid (UST)

This refers to the unpleasant feeling a person has when there is a threat of harm to oneself or others.

### would confess him...the Christ...to be (ULT)

"would say that Jesus is the Christ"

### he would be thrown out of the synagogue (ULT)
### and ban him from the Jewish preaching place (UST)

Here "be thrown out of the synagogue" is a metaphor for no longer being allowed to go into the synagogue and no longer belonging to the group of people who attend services at the synagogue. Alternate translation: "he would not be allowed to go into the synagogue" or "he would no longer belong to the synagogue" (See: Metaphor)

### Translation Words - ULT

- they were afraid
- Jews
- Jews
- would confess
- the Christ

### Translation Words - UST

- were afraid
- Jews who were against Jesus...Jewish leaders
- Jew, Jewish
- declared that Jesus was
- the Messiah

**ULT**

**22** His parents said these things, because they were afraid of the Jews. For the Jews had already agreed that if anyone would confess him to be the Christ, he would be thrown out of the synagogue.

**UST**

**22** The Jews who were against Jesus had previously agreed with one another that they would take anyone who declared that Jesus was the Messiah and ban him from the Jewish preaching place. So his parents were afraid of the Jewish leaders.

## John 9:23

**He is…an adult (ULT)**
**he is old enough to speak for himself (UST)**

"he is a man" or "he is no longer a child." See how you translated this in John 9:21.

**ULT**

**23** Because of this, his parents said, "He is an adult, ask him."

**UST**

**23** That is why they said, "Ask him, he is old enough to speak for himself."

# John 9:24

**they called…the man (ULT)**
**the Jewish leaders called…and they asked…to come before them…the man…him (UST)**

Here, "they" refers to the Jews. (John 9:18)

**Give glory to God (ULT)**
**Swear to God that you will speak only the truth (UST)**

This is an idiom that people used when taking an oath. Alternate translation: "In the presence of God, tell the truth" or "Speak the truth before God" (See: Idiom)

**this man (ULT)**
**this man who healed you (UST)**

This refers to Jesus.

## Translation Words - ULT

- they called
- a sinner
- to God
- glory
- know

## Translation Words - UST

- the Jewish leaders called…and they asked…to come before them
- is a sinner and that he does not obey the law that Moses gave us
- to God
- Swear…that you will speak only the truth
- know

**ULT**

**24** So for a second time they called the man who had been blind and said to him, "Give glory to God. We know that this man is a sinner."

**UST**

**24** So the Jewish leaders called the man who had been blind, and they asked him to come before them a second time. When he got there, they said to him, "Swear to God that you will speak only the truth! We know that this man who healed you is a sinner and that he does not obey the law that Moses gave us."

## John 9:25

**that man (ULT)**
**he (UST)**

This refers to the man who had been blind.

### Translation Words - ULT

- a sinner
- I...know
- I do know (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- a sinner
- I do...know
- I do know (2)

**ULT**

**25** Then that man replied, "I do not know if he is a sinner. One thing I do know; that I was blind, and now I see."

**UST**

**25** He replied, "Whether he is a sinner or not, I do not know. One thing I do know is that I used to be blind, but now I can see."

# John 9:26

## Connecting Statement:

The Jews continue to speak to the man who had been blind.

**ULT**

**26** Then they said to him, "What did he do to you? How did he open your eyes?"

**UST**

**26** So they said to him, "What did he do to you? How did he heal you so that you now see?"

# John 9:27

**Why do you want to hear it again (ULT)**
**Why do you want me to tell you again (UST)**

This remark appears in the form of a question to express the man's amazement that the Jewish leaders have asked him to tell them again what happened. Alternate translation: "I am surprised that you want to hear again what happened to me!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

**You do not want to become his disciples too, do you (ULT)**

This remark appears in the form of a question to add irony to the man's statement. He knows that the Jewish leaders do not want to follow Jesus. Here he ridicules them. Alternate translation: "It sounds like you also want to become his disciples!" (See: Rhetorical Question and Irony)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- disciples

**Translation Words - UST**

- apprentices

**ULT**

**27** He answered them, "I have told you already, and you did not listen! Why do you want to hear it again? You do not want to become his disciples too, do you?

**UST**

**27** He answered them, "I have told you that already, but you did not believe me. Why do you want me to tell you again? Do you also really want to become his apprentices?"

## John 9:28

**You are his disciple (ULT)**
**You are that man's apprentice (UST)**

"You are following Jesus!"

**but we are disciples of Moses (ULT)**
**but we follow Moses (UST)**

The pronoun "we" is exclusive. The Jewish leaders are speaking only of themselves. Alternate translation: "but we are following Moses" (See: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We')

**Translation Words - ULT**

- disciple
- disciples
- of Moses

**Translation Words - UST**

- apprentice
- follow
- Moses

**ULT**

**28** Then they insulted him and said, "You are his disciple, but we are disciples of Moses.

**UST**

**28** Then they became angry and insulted him: "You are that man's apprentice, but we follow Moses!

# John 9:29

**We know that God has spoken to Moses (ULT)**
**We know that God spoke to Moses (UST)**

"We are sure that God has spoken to Moses"

**this one...we do not know where...is from (ULT)**
**about this man...we do not even know where he comes from (UST)**

Here the Jewish leaders are referring to Jesus. They imply that he has no authority to call disciples. Alternate translation: "we do not know where he comes from or where he gets his authority" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

## Translation Words - ULT

- God
- to Moses
- know
- we...know (2)

## Translation Words - UST

- God
- to Moses
- know
- we do...know (2)

**ULT**

**29** We know that God has spoken to Moses, but we do not know where this one is from."

**UST**

**29** We know that God spoke to Moses; but about this man, we do not even know where he comes from."

## John 9:30

### that you do not know where he is from (ULT)

The man is surprised that the Jewish leaders question Jesus' authority when they know he has the power to heal. Alternate translation: "that you do not know where he gets his authority" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### Translation Words - ULT

- a remarkable
- know

### Translation Words - UST

- very amazing
- do…know

**ULT**

**30** The man answered and said to them, "Now this is a remarkable thing, that you do not know where he is from, and yet he opened my eyes.

**UST**

**30** The man replied, "That is very amazing! You do not know where he gets his power from, but he is the one who healed my eyes so that I can see!

# John 9:31

### to sinners...does not listen...listen...him (ULT)

"does not answer the prayers of sinners...God answers his prayers"

### Translation Words - ULT

- to sinners
- God
- devout
- his...will
- We know

### Translation Words - UST

- of the prayers of sinners, those who ignore his law
- God
- worship him
- what...he...wants
- We know

**ULT**

**31** We know that God does not listen to sinners, but if someone is devout and does his will, he listens to him.

**UST**

**31** We know that God does not take any notice of the prayers of sinners, those who ignore his law, but he listens to people who worship him and who do what he wants.

## John 9:32

### Connecting Statement:

The man who had been blind continues speaking to the Jews.

### it has never been heard that anyone opened (ULT) Not...has it been heard anywhere that someone was able to heal (UST)

This is a passive statement. You can translate it in an active form. Alternate translation: "no one has ever heard of anyone who healed a man who was blind from birth" (See: Active or Passive)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Since the world began

### Translation Words - UST

- beginning of the world

**ULT**

**32** Since the world began it has never been heard that anyone opened the eyes of a man born blind.

**UST**

**32** Not since the beginning of the world has it been heard anywhere that someone was able to heal the eyes of a man who was blind from birth!

# John 9:33

### If this man were not from God, he could do nothing (ULT)

This sentence uses a double negative pattern. "Only a man from God could do something like that!" (See: Double Negatives)

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- he could

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- he could

**ULT**

**33** If this man were not from God, he could do nothing."

**UST**

**33** If this man had not come from God, he could do nothing like that!"

## John 9:34

**You were completely born in sins, and you are teaching us (ULT)**

This remark appears in the form of a question to add emphasis. It also implies that the man was born blind because of the sins of his parents. Alternate translation: "You were born as a result of your parents' sins. You are not qualified to teach us!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

**they threw him out (ULT)**
**they banned him from the Jewish preaching place (UST)**

"they threw him out of the synagogue"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- sins
- they threw
- are teaching

**Translation Words - UST**

- sin
- they banned
- are not qualified to challenge

**ULT**

**34** They answered and said to him, "You were completely born in sins, and you are teaching us?" Then they threw him out.

**UST**

**34** They replied to him, "You were born as a result of your parents' sin and have lived your whole life entirely in sin! You are not qualified to challenge us!" Then they banned him from the Jewish preaching place.

# John 9:35

### General Information:

Jesus finds the man whom he healed (John 9:1-7) and begins to speak to him and the crowd.

### Do...believe in (ULT)
### Do...believe in (UST)

This means to "believe in Jesus," to believe that he is the Son of God, to trust him as Savior, and live in a way that honors him.

### the Son of Man (ULT)
### me, the Son of Man (UST)

Here the reader needs to understand that Jesus was speaking as if "the Son of Man" were another person. The man who had been born blind did not realize that Jesus was speaking of himself when he spoke of "the Son of Man." You should translate so that the man does not learn that Jesus is the Son of Man until verse 37.

**ULT**

**35** Jesus heard that they had cast him out of the synagogue. Then Jesus found him and said, "Do you believe in the Son of Man?"

**UST**

**35** Jesus heard about what the Pharisees did to the man he healed, how they threw him out of the Jewish preaching place. So he went and searched for the man. When he found him, he said to him, "Do you believe in me, the Son of Man?"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Do...believe
- Son of Man
- they had cast

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Do...believe
- me...Son of Man
- what the Pharisees did...they threw...out

# John 9:36

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

## Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- I may believe
- in him

## Translation Words - UST

- Sir
- I may believe
- in him

## John 9:37

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus

**ULT**

**37** Jesus said to him, "You have indeed seen him, and he is the one who is speaking with you."

**UST**

**37** Jesus said to him, "You have seen him. He is the one who is speaking to you now."

# John 9:38

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

## Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- I believe
- he worshiped

## Translation Words - UST

- Lord
- I believe
- he went down on his knees and worshiped

---

**ULT**

**38** Then the man said, "Lord, I believe" and he worshiped him.

**UST**

**38** The man said, "Lord, I believe." Then he went down on his knees and worshiped him.

---

## John 9:39

**came into this world (ULT)**
**have come into this world (UST)**

The "world" is a metonym for "the people who live in the world."
Alternate translation: "came to live among the people of this world"
(See: Metonymy)

**so that those who do not see may see and so that those who see may become blind (ULT)**
**so that those who do not see may see and so that those who see may become blind (UST)**

Here "seeing" and "blindness" are metaphors. Jesus distinguishes between people who are spiritually blind and physically blind.
Alternate translation: "so that those who are blind spiritually, but who want to see God, can see him, and those who already falsely think they can see God will remain in their blindness" (See: Metaphor)

> **ULT**
>
> **39** Jesus said, "For judgment I came into this world so that those who do not see may see and so that those who see may become blind."

> **UST**
>
> **39** Jesus said, "I have come into this world to judge the world so that those who do not see may see and so that those who see may become blind."

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- world
- judgment

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- world
- judge the world

## John 9:40

### and...We are not...blind, are we (ULT)

"Do you think we are spiritually blind?"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Pharisees

### Translation Words - UST

- Pharisees

**ULT**
**40** Some of the Pharisees who were with him heard these things and asked him, "We are not also blind, are we?"

**UST**
**40** Some of the Pharisees who were with him heard him say this, and they asked Jesus, "Are we also blind?"

# John 9:41

### If you were blind, you would have no sin (ULT)

Here "blindness" is a metaphor for not knowing God's truth. Alternate translation: "If you wanted to know God's truth, you would be able to receive your sight. (See: Metaphor)

### but now you say, 'We see,' so your sin remains (ULT)

Here "seeing" is a metaphor for knowing God's truth. Alternate translation: "Since you falsely think that you already know God's truth, you will remain blind" (See: Metaphor)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- sin
- sin

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- guilt
- guilt

**ULT**

**41** Jesus said to them, "If you were blind, you would have no sin, but now you say, 'We see,' so your sin remains."

**UST**

**41** Jesus said to them, "If you were blind, you would have no guilt. However, because you now defend yourself and say, 'We see,' your guilt is staying with you.

# John 10

## John 10 General Notes

# Special concepts in this chapter

### Blasphemy

When a person claims that he is God or that God has told him to speak when God has not told him to speak, this is called blasphemy. The law of Moses commanded the Israelites to kill blasphemers by stoning them to death. When Jesus said, "I and the Father are one," the Jews thought he was blaspheming, so they took up stones to kill him. (See: blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous and law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law)

# Important metaphors in this chapter

### Sheep

Jesus spoke of people as sheep because sheep do not see well, they do not think well, they often walk away from those who care for them, and they cannot defend themselves when other animals attack them. God's people also rebel against him and do not know when they are doing wrong.

### Sheep pen

A sheep pen was a space with a stone wall around it in which shepherds would keep their sheep. Once they were inside the sheep pen, the sheep could not run away, and animals and thieves could not easily get inside to kill or steal them.

### Laying down and taking up life

Jesus speaks of his life as if it were a physical object that he could lay down on the ground, a metaphor for dying, or pick up again, a metaphor for becoming alive again.

# John 10:1

### General Information:

Jesus begins to speak in parables. (See: Parables)

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to speak to the Pharisees. This is the same part of the story which began in John 9:35.

### Truly, truly

See how you translated this in John 1:51.

### sheep pen (ULT)
### sheep pen (UST)

This is a fenced area where a shepherd keeps his sheep.

### a thief...and a robber (ULT)
### a thief...who steals the sheep...and a criminal (UST)

This is the use of two words with similar meanings to add emphasis. (See: Doublet)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Truly
- truly (2)
- a thief
- a robber
- gate
- sheep

### Translation Words - UST

- the truth
- the truth (2)
- a thief...who steals the sheep
- a criminal
- gate
- sheep

**ULT**

**1** "Truly, truly, I say to you, he who does not enter through the gate into the sheep pen, but climbs up some other way, that man is a thief and a robber.

**UST**

**1** "I am telling you the truth: The one who enters into the sheep pen, should always enter through the gate. If he climbs in any other way, he is not the one who cares for the sheep, but he is a thief and a criminal who steals the sheep.

# John 10:2

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

## Translation Words - ULT

- the shepherd
- gate
- sheep

## Translation Words - UST

- the true shepherd, for he takes care
- gate
- of the sheep

**ULT**

**2** But he who enters through the gate is the shepherd of the sheep.

**UST**

**2** The man who enters the pen through the gate is the true shepherd, for he takes care of the sheep.

## John 10:3

**The gatekeeper opens for him (ULT)**
**The hired man who guards the gate when the shepherd is away will open the gate for him when he comes (UST)**

"The gatekeeper opens the gate for the shepherd"

**The gatekeeper (ULT)**
**The hired man who guards the gate when the shepherd is away (UST)**

This is a hired man who watches the gate of the sheep pen at night while the shepherd is away.

**The...sheep hear his voice (ULT)**
**the sheep recognize only the shepherd's voice (UST)**

"The sheep hear the shepherd's voice"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- he calls
- name
- voice
- gatekeeper
- sheep
- sheep (2)

**Translation Words - UST**

- and only when he calls them
- name
- voice
- The hired man who guards the gate when the shepherd is away
- sheep
- ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins (2)

---

**ULT**

**3** The gatekeeper opens for him. The sheep hear his voice, and he calls his own sheep by name and leads them out.

**UST**

**3** The hired man who guards the gate when the shepherd is away will open the gate for him when he comes. However, the sheep recognize only the shepherd's voice and only when he calls them by name. Then he leads them outside of the pen to feed them and to give them water.

## John 10:4

**he goes ahead of them (ULT)**
**he goes in front of them (UST)**

"he walks in front of them"

**for they know his voice (ULT)**
**because they know his voice (UST)**

"because they recognize his voice"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- voice
- sheep
- they know

**Translation Words - UST**

- voice
- sheep
- they know

---

**ULT**

**4** When he has brought out all his own, he goes ahead of them, and the sheep follow him, for they know his voice.

**UST**

**4** After he has brought out all of his own sheep, he goes in front of them. His sheep are eager to follow him because they know his voice.

# John 10:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

## Translation Words - ULT

- voice
- they…know

## Translation Words - UST

- voice
- they do…recognize

**ULT**

**5** But they will certainly not follow a stranger, but they will flee from him, for they do not know the voice of strangers."

**UST**

**5** They will never follow a stranger who calls out to them. They will run away from him because they do not recognize the stranger's voice."

## John 10:6

**they...did not understand (ULT)**

Possible meanings: 1) "the disciples did not understand" or 2) "the crowd did not understand."

**this parable (ULT)**
**this illustration from the work of shepherds (UST)**

This is an illustration from the work of shepherds, using metaphors. The "shepherd" is a metaphor for Jesus. The "sheep" represent those who follow Jesus, and the "strangers" are the Jewish leaders, including the Pharisees, who try to deceive the people. (See: Metaphor)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Jesus
- parable
- understand

**Translation Words - UST**

- Jesus
- illustration from the work of shepherds
- his apprentices did...understand

**ULT**
**6** Jesus spoke this parable to them, but they did not understand what it was that he was saying to them.

**UST**
**6** Jesus used this illustration from the work of shepherds. Nevertheless, his apprentices did not understand what he was telling them.

# John 10:7

## Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to explain the meaning of the parables he had spoken.

## Truly, truly

See how you translated this in John 1:51.

## I...am the gate of the sheep (ULT)
## I am the gate through which all the sheep enter into the pen (UST)

Here "gate" is a metaphor that means Jesus provides access into the sheepfold where God's people dwell in his presence. Alternate translation: "I am like the gate that the sheep use to enter into the sheepfold" (See: Metaphor)

**ULT**

**7** Then Jesus said to them again, "Truly, truly, I say to you, I am the gate of the sheep.

**UST**

**7** So Jesus spoke to them again, "I am telling you the truth: I am the gate through which all the sheep enter into the pen.

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Truly
- truly (2)
- gate
- sheep

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- the truth
- the truth (2)
- gate through which...enter into the pen
- all the sheep

## John 10:8

**Everyone who came before me (ULT)**
**All who came before me (UST)**

This refers to other teachers who have taught the people, including the Pharisees and other Jewish leaders. Alternate translation: "All of the teachers who came without my authority" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**a thief...and a robber (ULT)**
**thieves...and bandits (UST)**

These words are metaphors. Jesus calls those teachers "a thief and a robber" because their teachings were false, and they were trying to lead God's people while not understanding the truth. As a result, they deceived the people. (See: Metaphor)

**ULT**

**8** Everyone who came before me is a thief and a robber, but the sheep did not listen to them.

**UST**

**8** All who came before me, they were thieves and bandits; but the sheep did not listen to them, and they would not follow them.

### Translation Words - ULT

- a thief
- a robber
- sheep

### Translation Words - UST

- thieves
- bandits
- sheep

## John 10:9

**I am the gate (ULT)**
**I myself am like that gate (UST)**

Here "gate" is a metaphor. By referring to himself as "the gate," Jesus is showing that he offers a true way to enter the kingdom of God. Alternate translation: "I myself am like that gate" (See: Metaphor)

**pasture (ULT)**
**pasture (UST)**

The word "pasture" means a grassy area where sheep eat.

### Translation Words - ULT

- he will be saved
- gate

### Translation Words - UST

- God will save
- gate

**ULT**

**9** I am the gate. If anyone enters in through me, he will be saved, and he will go in and out and will find pasture.

**UST**

**9** I myself am like that gate. God will save all those who come to him by trusting in me. Just like sheep go in and out through the gate safely to find pasture, I will protect and provide for them.

## John 10:10

### does not come except in order to steal (ULT)

This is a double negative. In some languages it is more natural to use a positive statement. Alternate translation: "comes only to steal" (See: Double Negatives)

### steal and kill and destroy (ULT)

Here the implied metaphor is "sheep," which represents God's people. Alternate translation: "steal and kill and destroy the sheep" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and Metaphor)

### in order to...they will have life (ULT)
### only...they may have eternal life (UST)

The word "they" refers to the sheep. "Life" refers to eternal life. Alternate translation: "so that they will really live, lacking nothing"

**ULT**

**10** The thief does not come except in order to steal and kill and destroy. I have come so that they will have life and have it abundantly.

**UST**

**10** The thief comes only to steal, kill, and destroy. I have come so that they may have eternal life and that life will be full to overflowing.

### Translation Words - ULT

- life
- thief

### Translation Words - UST

- eternal life
- thief

## John 10:11

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues his parable about the good shepherd.

### I am the good shepherd (ULT)
### I am like a good shepherd (UST)

Here "good shepherd" is a metaphor that represents Jesus. Alternate translation: "I am like a good shepherd" (See: Metaphor)

### lays down his life (ULT)
### is willing to die (UST)

To lay down something means to give up control of it. It is a mild way to refer to dying. Alternate translation: "dies" (See: Euphemism)

> **ULT**
> **11** I am the good shepherd. The good shepherd lays down his life for the sheep.
>
> **UST**
> **11** I am like a good shepherd. The good shepherd is willing to die in order to protect and to save his sheep.

### Translation Words - ULT

- life
- good
- good
- shepherd
- shepherd (2)
- sheep

### Translation Words - UST

- is willing to die
- good
- good
- shepherd
- shepherd (2)
- his sheep

# John 10:12

**the hired servant (ULT)**
**Someone pays the hired man money to watch over the sheep. He (UST)**

The "hired servant" is a metaphor that represents the Jewish leaders and teachers. Alternate translation: "The one who is like a hired servant" (See: Metaphor)

**abandons the sheep (ULT)**
**he does not risk his life. He leaves the sheep (UST)**

Here the word "sheep" is a metaphor that represents God's people. Like a hired servant who abandons the sheep, Jesus says that the Jewish leaders and teachers do not care for God's people. (See: Metaphor)

## Translation Words - ULT

- the shepherd
- sheep
- sheep (2)
- wolf
- wolf
- hired servant
- carries...off

## Translation Words - UST

- shepherd, chief shepherd
- sheep
- sheep (2)
- a wolf
- wolf
- Someone pays the hired man money to watch over the sheep. He
- to attack...seizing

**ULT**

**12** But the hired servant is not the shepherd and the sheep are not his own. He sees the wolf coming and abandons the sheep and escapes, and the wolf carries them off and scatters them.

**UST**

**12** Someone pays the hired man money to watch over the sheep. He does not treat the sheep like they belong to him; he is just an employee doing a job. So when he sees a wolf coming to kill the sheep, he does not risk his life. He leaves the sheep and runs away so then it is possible for the wolf to attack the sheep, seizing some of them and scattering others.

# John 10:13

**does not care...about the sheep (ULT)**
**He does not care...what happens to...about...the sheep (UST)**

Here the word "sheep" is a metaphor that represents God's people. Like a hired servant who abandons the sheep, Jesus says that the Jewish leaders and teachers do not care for God's people. (See: Metaphor)

## Translation Words - ULT

- sheep
- a hired servant

## Translation Words - UST

- sheep
- The hired worker...only working for the money

# John 10:14

**I am the good shepherd (ULT)**
**I am, myself, the good shepherd (UST)**

Here the "good shepherd" is a metaphor for Jesus. Alternate translation: "I am like a good shepherd" (See: Metaphor)

## Translation Words - ULT

- good
- shepherd
- I know
- know

## Translation Words - UST

- good
- shepherd
- I know
- know

**ULT**

**14** I am the good shepherd, and I know my own, and my own know me.

**UST**

**14** I am, myself, the good shepherd. I know those who belong to me, and they know me,

## John 10:15

**the Father knows me, and I know the Father (ULT)**
**I know my Father, and my Father knows me (UST)**

God the Father and God the Son know each other unlike anyone else knows them. "Father" is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

**I lay down my life for the sheep (ULT)**
**I am ready to sacrifice myself for those who belong to me (UST)**

This is a mild way for Jesus to say that he will die to protect his sheep. Alternate translation: "I die for the sheep" (See: Euphemism)

### Translation Words - ULT

- life
- Father
- Father
- sheep
- Likewise
- knows
- know

### Translation Words - UST

- I am ready to sacrifice myself
- my Father
- my Father
- those who belong to me
- just as
- knows
- know

**ULT**
**15** Likewise, the Father knows me, and I know the Father, and I lay down my life for the sheep.

**UST**
**15** just as I know my Father, and my Father knows me. Because of that, I am ready to sacrifice myself for those who belong to me..

## John 10:16

**I have…other…sheep (ULT)**
**I have other people…will some day belong to me…They will be like sheep (UST)**

Here "other sheep" is a metaphor for followers of Jesus who are not Jews. (See: Metaphor)

**one flock and one shepherd (ULT)**
**one flock, and I will be like their one shepherd (UST)**

Here "flock" and "shepherd" are metaphors. All of Jesus's followers, Jews and non-Jews, will be like one flock of sheep. He will be like a shepherd who cares for all of them. (See: Metaphor)

### Translation Words - ULT

- shepherd
- voice
- flock
- sheep

### Translation Words - UST

- shepherd
- They will pay attention to what I say
- flock
- people…They will be like sheep

**ULT**

**16** I have other sheep that are not of this sheep pen. I must bring them also, and they will hear my voice so that there will be one flock and one shepherd.

**UST**

**16** And I have other people who will some day belong to me but who are not Jews. They will be like sheep from another sheep pen. I must bring them to myself also. They will pay attention to what I say, and eventually all those who belong to me will be like one flock, and I will be like their one shepherd.

# John 10:17

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes speaking to the crowd.

### This is why the Father loves me: I lay down my life (ULT)
### The reason my Father loves me is that I will sacrifice my life. I will give up my life (UST)

God's eternal plan was for God the Son to give his life to pay for the sins of humanity. Jesus' death on the cross reveals the intense love of the Son for the Father and of the Father for the Son.

### Father (ULT)
### my Father (UST)

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

### loves (ULT)
### loves (UST)

This kind of love comes from God and is focused on the good of others, even when it does not benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do.

### I...lay down my life so that I may take it again (ULT)
### I will sacrifice my life. I will give up my life, and I will take it up to live again (UST)

This is a mild way for Jesus to say he will die and then will become alive again. Alternate translation: "I allow myself to die in order that I may bring myself back to life" (See: Euphemism)

### Translation Words - ULT

- life
- loves
- Father

### Translation Words - UST

- life...life
- loves
- my Father

---

**ULT**

**17** This is why the Father loves me: I lay down my life so that I may take it again.

**UST**

**17** The reason my Father loves me is that I will sacrifice my life. I will give up my life, and I will take it up to live again.

## John 10:18

### from…I lay it down…myself (ULT)

The reflexive pronoun "myself" is used here to emphasize that Jesus lays down his own life. No one takes it from him. Alternate translation: "I myself lay it down" (See: Reflexive Pronouns)

### I have received this command from my Father (ULT) This work is from my Father, and he has commanded me to do it (UST)

"This is what my Father has commanded me to do." The word "Father" is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

### Translation Words - ULT

- command
- authority
- authority (2)
- Father
- I have received

### Translation Words - UST

- and he has commanded
- authority
- authority (2)
- Father
- me to do it

**ULT**

**18** No one takes it away from me, but I lay it down of myself. I have authority to lay it down, and I have authority to take it up again. I have received this command from my Father."

**UST**

**18** No one is causing me to lay down my life. I have chosen to sacrifice myself. I have authority to lay down my life and I have authority to take it up and to live again. This work is from my Father, and he has commanded me to do it."

# John 10:19

## Connecting Statement:

These verses tell how the Jews responded to what Jesus had said.

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jews

## Translation Words - UST

- Jews

**ULT**
**19** A division again occurred among the Jews because of these words.

**UST**
**19** After hearing these words Jesus had been speaking, the Jews were again divided in their opinion of him.

# John 10:20

**Why do you listen to him (ULT)**
**Do not waste time listening to him (UST)**

This remark appears in the form of a question to emphasize the point that the people should not listen to Jesus. Alternate translation: "Do not listen to him!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- He has a demon
- a demon

**Translation Words - UST**

- A demon is controlling him
- A demon

**ULT**

**20** For many of them said, "He has a demon and is insane. Why do you listen to him?"

**UST**

**20** Many of them said, "A demon is controlling him and has caused him to become crazy. Do not waste time listening to him!"

# John 10:21

## A demon is...able to open the eyes of the blind (ULT) demon can heal the eyes of a blind man (UST)

This remark appears in the form of a question to add emphasis. Alternate translation: "Certainly a demon cannot cause a blind man to see!" or "Certainly a demon cannot give sight to blind people!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

### Translation Words - ULT

- is...able
- of a demon-possessed man
- A demon

### Translation Words - UST

- can
- a man oppressed by a demon
- demon

**ULT**

**21** Others said, "These are not the words of a demon-possessed man. A demon is not able to open the eyes of the blind, is he?"

**UST**

**21** Others said, "What he is saying is not something a man oppressed by a demon would ever say. No demon can heal the eyes of a blind man!"

# John 10:22

## General Information:

During the Festival of Dedication, some Jews begin to question Jesus. Verses 22 and 23 give background information about the setting of the story. (See: Background Information)

## Festival of the Dedication (ULT)
## the celebration called the Festival of Dedication…the time when the Jewish people remembered when their ancestors purified the temple…and gave it to God again (UST)

This is an eight-day, winter holiday Jews use to remember a miracle where God made a small amount of oil remain lit in a lampstand for eight days. They lit the lampstand to dedicate the Jewish temple to God. To dedicate something is to promise to use it for a special purpose.

**ULT**

**22** Then it was time for the Festival of the Dedication in Jerusalem. It was winter, [1]

**UST**

**22** The time for the celebration called the Festival of Dedication had now come, the time when the Jewish people remembered when their ancestors purified the temple in Jerusalem and gave it to God again. It was in the winter.

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jerusalem
- Then
- Festival of the Dedication

## Translation Words - UST

- Jerusalem
- The time for
- the celebration called the Festival of Dedication…the time when the Jewish people remembered when their ancestors purified the temple…and gave it to God again

# John 10:23

**Jesus was walking in the temple (ULT)**
**Jesus was walking in the temple courtyard (UST)**

The area where Jesus was walking was actually a courtyard that was outside the temple building. Alternate translation: "Jesus was walking in the temple courtyard" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**porch (ULT)**
**place called...porch (UST)**

**ULT**

**23**[2] and Jesus was walking in the temple in the porch of Solomon.

**UST**

**23** Jesus was walking in the temple courtyard in the place called Solomon's porch.

This is a structure attached to the entrance of a building; it has a roof and it may or may not have walls.

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- temple
- of Solomon
- was walking

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- temple courtyard
- Solomon's
- was walking

## John 10:24

### Then the Jews surrounded him (ULT)

Here "Jews" is a synecdoche for the Jewish leaders who opposed Jesus. Alternate translation: "Then the Jewish leaders surrounded him" (See: Synecdoche)

### will you keep us in suspense (ULT)
### will you keep us wondering about who you are (UST)

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "keep us wondering" or "keep us from knowing for sure?" (See: Idiom)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jews
- us
- Christ

### Translation Words - UST

- Jewish opponents of Jesus
- us
- Messiah

**ULT**

**24** Then the Jews surrounded him and said to him, "How long will you keep us in suspense? If you are the Christ, tell us openly."

**UST**

**24** The Jewish opponents of Jesus gathered around him and said, "How long will you keep us wondering about who you are? If you are the Messiah, tell us plainly so that we can know."

## John 10:25

**Connecting Statement:**

Jesus begins to respond to the Jews.

**in the name of my Father (ULT)**
**by my Father's name and his authority (UST)**

Here "name" is a metonym for the power of God. Here "Father" is an important title for God. Jesus performed miracles through his Father's power and authority. Alternate translation: "through my Father's power" or "with my Father's power" (See: Metonymy and Translating Son and Father)

**these testify concerning me (ULT)**
**You know who I am because of…Those things tell you all you need to know about me (UST)**

His miracles offer proof about him like a person who testifies would offer proof in a court of law. Alternate translation: "offer proof concerning me" (See: Personification)

**ULT**

**25** Jesus replied to them, "I told you, but you do not believe. The works that I do in the name of my Father, these testify concerning me.

**UST**

**25** Jesus answered them, "I have told you, but you would not believe me. You know who I am because of the miracles and other things I do by my Father's name and his authority. Those things tell you all you need to know about me.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Jesus
- testify
- works
- you…believe
- of…Father
- name

**Translation Words - UST**

- Jesus
- You know who I am because of…tell you all you need to know
- miracles and other things
- you would…believe me
- Father's…his
- name and…authority

# John 10:26

**not...my sheep (ULT)**
**not...do...belong to me...are like sheep who belong to another shepherd (UST)**

The word "sheep" is a metaphor for the followers of Jesus. Alternate translation: "not my followers" or "not my disciples" (See: Metaphor)

## Translation Words - ULT

- believe
- sheep

## Translation Words - UST

- do...believe in me
- sheep who belong to another shepherd

**ULT**

**26** Yet you do not believe because you are not my sheep.

**UST**

**26** You do not believe in me because you do not belong to me. You are like sheep who belong to another shepherd.

# John 10:27

**My sheep hear my voice (ULT)**
**Just like sheep hear and obey the voice of their true shepherd, my people pay attention to what I say (UST)**

The word "sheep" is a metaphor for the followers of Jesus. The metaphor of Jesus as the "shepherd" is also implied. Alternate translation: "Just as sheep obey the voice of their true shepherd, my followers heed my voice" (See: Metaphor)

## Translation Words - ULT

- voice
- sheep
- know

## Translation Words - UST

- the voice...what...say
- Just like sheep...people
- know

---

**ULT**

**27** My sheep hear my voice; I know them, and they follow me.

**UST**

**27** Just like sheep hear and obey the voice of their true shepherd, my people pay attention to what I say. I know them, and they have become my followers.

---

# John 10:28

**no one will snatch...of them out of my hand (ULT)**
**no...will...be able to steal...them away from me (UST)**

Here the word "hand" is a metonym that represents the protective care of Jesus. Alternate translation: "no one will steal them away from me" or "they will remain secure forever in my care" (See: Metonymy)

## Translation Words - ULT

- life
- eternal
- they will...die
- hand
- ever
- will snatch

## Translation Words - UST

- life
- eternal
- can...destroy them
- away from
- ever...ever
- will...be able to steal

**ULT**

**28** I give them eternal life, and they will certainly not ever die, and no one will snatch any of them out of my hand.

**UST**

**28** I give them eternal life. No one can ever destroy them, and no one will ever be able to steal them away from me.

# John 10:29

### My Father, who has given them to me (ULT)

The word "Father" is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

### the hand of the Father (ULT)
### him (UST)

The word "hand" is a metonym that refers to God's possession and protective care. Alternate translation: "No one can steal them from my Father" (See: Metonymy)

### Translation Words - ULT

- is able
- Father
- Father
- hand
- to snatch them

### Translation Words - UST

- is able
- Father
- him
- him
- to steal them

**ULT**

**29** My Father, who has given them to me, is greater than all others, and no one is able to snatch them out of the hand of the Father.

**UST**

**29** My Father gave them to me; he is greater than anyone, so no one is able to steal them away from him.

## John 10:30

**I and the Father are one (ULT)**
**My father and I are united (UST)**

Jesus, God the Son, and God the Father are one. The word "Father" is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

**Translation Words - ULT**

 • Father

**Translation Words - UST**

 • father

# John 10:31

**Then the Jews took up stones again (ULT)**
**The enemies of Jesus again picked up stones (UST)**

The word "Jews" is a synecdoche for the Jewish leaders who opposed Jesus. Alternate translation: "Then the Jewish leaders started picking up stones again" (See: Synecdoche)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jews
- stone

## Translation Words - UST

- enemies of Jesus
- throw at him and to put...to death

**ULT**

**31** Then the Jews took up stones again to stone him.

**UST**

**31** The enemies of Jesus again picked up stones to throw at him and to put him to death.

## John 10:32

**Jesus answered them, "I have shown you many good works from the Father (ULT)**
**Jesus said to them, "You have seen me do many miracles, things that my Father had told me to do (UST)**

Jesus performed the miracles by the power of God. The word "Father" is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

**For which of those works are you stoning me (ULT)**
**Which one of them are you going to stone me for (UST)**

This question uses irony. Jesus knows the Jewish leaders do not want to stone him because he has done good works. (See: Irony)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Jesus
- are you stoning
- works
- works
- Father
- good

**Translation Words - UST**

- Jesus
- are you going to stone
- me do...miracles, things
- of them
- my Father
- me do...miracles, things

**ULT**

**32** Jesus answered them, "I have shown you many good works from the Father. For which of those works are you stoning me?"

**UST**

**32** Jesus said to them, "You have seen me do many miracles, things that my Father had told me to do. Which one of them are you going to stone me for?"

# John 10:33

**The Jews answered him (ULT)**

The word "Jews" is a synecdoche that represents the Jewish leaders who opposed Jesus. Alternate translation: "The Jewish opponents replied" or "The Jewish leaders answered him" (See: Synecdoche)

**making yourself God (ULT)**
**God...are making yourself God (UST)**

"claiming to be God"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Jews
- God
- We are...stoning
- work
- any good
- blasphemy

**Translation Words - UST**

- The Jewish opponents
- God...God
- We are wanting to take your life
- did...work
- any good
- are insulting

**ULT**

**33** The Jews answered him, "We are not stoning you for any good work, but for blasphemy, and because you, a man, are making yourself God."

**UST**

**33** The Jewish opponents replied, "We are wanting to take your life, not because you did any good work, but because you, just a man, are insulting God and are making yourself God!"

# John 10:34

### Is it not written in your law, 'I said, "You are gods (ULT)

This remark appears in the form of a question to add emphasis. Alternate translation: "You should already know that it is written in your law that I said, 'you are gods.'" (See: Rhetorical Question)

### You are gods (ULT)
### you are like gods (with great honor and with power over many (UST)

Here Jesus quotes a scripture where God calls his followers "gods," perhaps because he has chosen them to represent him on earth.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- gods
- law
- written

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- like gods (with great honor and with power over many
- scriptures
- written what God said to the rulers whom he had appointed

**ULT**

**34** Jesus answered them, "Is it not written in your law, 'I said, "You are gods"'?

**UST**

**34** Jesus replied to them, "In the scriptures it is written what God said to the rulers whom he had appointed: 'I have said that you are like gods (with great honor and with power over many).'

## John 10:35

**the word of God came (ULT)**
**to those leaders when he appointed them (UST)**

Jesus speaks of God's message as though it were a person who moved toward those who heard it. Alternate translation: "God spoke his message" (See: Metaphor)

**the scripture cannot be broken (ULT)**
**nothing that is in scripture can be shown to be false (UST)**

Possible meanings are 1) "no one can change the scripture" or 2) "the scripture will always be true."

### Translation Words - ULT

- gods
- of God
- word of God
- scripture

### Translation Words - UST

- God said that
- to those leaders when he appointed them
- to those leaders when he appointed them
- that is in scripture

**ULT**

**35** If he called them gods, to whom the word of God came (and the scripture cannot be broken),

**UST**

**35** God said that to those leaders when he appointed them. No one objected to that, and nothing that is in scripture can be shown to be false.

## John 10:36

**do you say to him whom the Father set apart and sent into the world, 'You are blaspheming,' because I said, 'I am the Son of God (ULT)**

Jesus used this question to rebuke his opponents for saying that he was blaspheming when he called himself "the Son of God." Alternate translation: "you should not say to the very one whom the Father set apart to send into the world, 'You are blaspheming,' when I say that I am the Son of God!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

**You are blaspheming (ULT)**
**I am equal with God (UST)**

"You are insulting God." Jesus' opponents understood that when said that he is the Son of God, he was implying that he is equal with God.

**Father...the Son of God (ULT)**
**my Father...the Son of God (UST)**

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. (See: Translating Son and Father)

### Translation Words - ULT

- of God
- the Son of God
- world
- set apart
- Father
- You are blaspheming
- sent

### Translation Words - UST

- of God
- the Son of God
- world
- chose to
- my Father
- I am equal with God
- send

**ULT**

**36** do you say to him whom the Father set apart and sent into the world, 'You are blaspheming,' because I said, 'I am the Son of God'?

**UST**

**36** I am the one whom my Father chose to send here into this world. So why are you angry with me for saying that I am equal with God when I said, 'I am the Son of God'?

# John 10:37

## Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes responding to the Jews.

## of...Father (ULT)
## that...Father told me to do (UST)

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

## believe me (ULT)
## you to believe in me (UST)

Here the word "believe" means to accept or trust what Jesus said is true.

## Translation Words - ULT

- works
- believe
- of...Father

## Translation Words - UST

- works
- you to believe
- that...Father told me to do

**ULT**

**37** If I am not doing the works of my Father, do not believe me.

**UST**

**37** If I were not doing the works that my Father told me to do, I would not expect you to believe in me.

# John 10:38

**believe in the works (ULT)**
**place your trust in what these works tell you about me (UST)**

Here "believe in" is to acknowledge that the works Jesus does are from the Father.

**the Father is in me and that I am in the Father (ULT)**
**my Father is in me and...I am in my Father (UST)**

These are idioms that express the close personal relationship between God and Jesus. Alternate translation: "My Father and I are completely joined together as one" (See: Idiom)

## Translation Words - ULT

- works
- you...believe
- believe
- Father is
- Father
- you may know
- understand

## Translation Words - UST

- in what these works tell you about me
- you do...trust
- place your trust
- my Father
- my Father
- you will know
- understand

**ULT**

**38** But if I am doing them, even if you do not believe me, believe in the works so that you may know and understand that the Father is in me and that I am in the Father."

**UST**

**38** However, because I am doing these works, place your trust in what these works tell you about me even though you do not trust what I say. If you do that, then you will know and understand that my Father is in me and that I am in my Father."

# John 10:39

**he went away out of their hand (ULT)**
**he got away from them one more time (UST)**

The word "hand" is a metonym that represents the custody or possession of the Jewish leaders. Alternate translation: "got away from them again" (See: Metonymy)

## Translation Words - ULT

- hand
- they tried
- to seize

## Translation Words - UST

- from
- they tried
- to arrest

**ULT**

**39** Therefore they tried to seize him again, but he went away out of their hand.

**UST**

**39** After they heard that, they tried to arrest Jesus again, but he got away from them one more time.

# John 10:40

**beyond the Jordan (ULT)**
**across to the east side of the Jordan River (UST)**

Jesus had been on the west side of the Jordan River. Alternate translation: "to the east side of the Jordan River" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**he stayed there (ULT)**
**Jesus stayed there for several days (UST)**

Jesus remained on the east side of Jordan for a short period of time. Alternate translation: "Jesus stayed there for several days" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

## Translation Words - ULT

- had…been baptizing
- Jordan
- John

## Translation Words - UST

- had baptized many people
- Jordan River
- John the Baptizer

**ULT**

**40** So he went away again beyond the Jordan to the place where John had first been baptizing, and he stayed there.

**UST**

**40** Then Jesus went back across to the east side of the Jordan River. He went to the place where John the Baptizer had baptized many people at the beginning of his ministry. Jesus stayed there for several days.

# John 10:41

**John indeed did no signs, but all the things that John has said about this man are true**

"It is true that John did no signs, but he certainly did speak the truth about this man, who does signs."

**signs (ULT)**
**a miracle (UST)**

These are miracles that prove that something is true or that give someone credibility.

## Translation Words - ULT

- signs
- indeed
- true
- John
- John (2)

## Translation Words - UST

- a miracle
- true, truth
- true
- John the Baptizer
- John (2)

# John 10:42

**believed in (ULT)**
**came to trust him; they put their trust in who he was**
**and in what he would do for them (UST)**

Here "believed in" means accepted or trusted what Jesus said was
true.

## Translation Words - ULT

- believed
- in him

## Translation Words - UST

- came to trust...they put their trust
- him...in who he was and in what he would do for them

**ULT**

**42** Then many people believed in him
there.
10:22 [1] Some versions place, *It was*
*winter,* at the beginning of verse 23.
10:23 [2] Some versions place, *It was*
*winter,* at the beginning of verse 23
instead of at the end of verse 22.

**UST**

**42** Many people came to trust him; they
put their trust in who he was and in
what he would do for them.

## John 11

**John 11 General Notes**

# Special concepts in this chapter

### Light and darkness

The Bible often speaks of unrighteous people, people who do not do what pleases God, as if they were walking around in darkness. It speaks of light as if it were what enables those sinful people to become righteous, to understand what they are doing wrong and begin to obey God. (See: righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness)

### Passover

After Jesus made Lazarus become alive again, the Jewish leaders were trying hard to kill him, so he started traveling from place to place in secret. Now the Pharisees knew that he would probably come to Jerusalem for the Passover because God had commanded all Jewish men to celebrate the Passover in Jerusalem, so they planned to catch him and kill him then. (See: Passover)

# Important figures of speech in this chapter

### "One man dies for the people"

The law of Moses commanded the priests to kill animals so that God would forgive the people's sins. The high priest Caiaphas said, "It is better for you that one man dies for the people than that the whole nation perishes" (John 10:50). He said this because he loved his "place" and "nation" (John 10:48) more than he loved the God who had made Lazarus become alive again. He wanted Jesus to die so that the Romans would not destroy the temple and Jerusalem, but God wanted Jesus to die so that he could forgive all of his people's sins.

### Hypothetical situation

When Martha said, "If you had been here, my brother would not have died," she was speaking of a situation that could have happened but did not happen. Jesus had not come, and her brother had died.

## John 11:1

### General Information:

These verses introduce the story of Lazarus and give background information about him and his sister Mary. (See: Introduction of New and Old Participants and Background Information)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Martha
- named Lazarus
- of Mary
- Bethany
- sister

### Translation Words - UST

- Martha
- named Lazarus
- Mary
- Bethany
- sister

---

**ULT**

**1** Now a certain man named Lazarus was sick. He was from Bethany, the village of Mary and her sister Martha.

**UST**

**1** A man named Lazarus fell very sick. He lived in the village of Bethany where his older sisters Mary and Martha also lived.

---

# John 11:2

### It was Mary who anointed the Lord with myrrh and wiped his feet with her hair (ULT)

As John introduces Mary, the sister of Martha, he also shares information concerning what would later happen in the story. (See: Background Information)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- brother
- who anointed
- Lazarus
- Mary

### Translation Words - UST

- Lord
- brother
- the same…who later would pour…on
- Lazarus
- Mary

**ULT**

**2** It was Mary who anointed the Lord with myrrh and wiped his feet with her hair, whose brother Lazarus was sick.

**UST**

**2** This is the same Mary who later would pour perfume on the Lord to show her love and honor of him, and would wipe his feet with her hair. It was her brother Lazarus who was sick.

# John 11:3

**sent...for Jesus (ULT)**

"asked Jesus to come"

**you love (ULT)**
**the one you love (UST)**

Here "love" refers to brotherly love, a natural, human love between friends or relatives.

## Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- you love
- sent
- sisters

## Translation Words - UST

- Lord
- the one you love
- sent someone to tell...about Lazarus
- two sisters

# John 11:4

**This sickness is not to death (ULT)**
**This illness will not end in the death of Lazarus (UST)**

Jesus implies that he knows what will happen related to Lazarus and his sickness. Alternate translation: "Death will not be the final result of this sickness" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**death (ULT)**
**the death of Lazarus (UST)**

This refers to physical death.

**but it is for the glory of God so that the Son of God may be glorified by it (ULT)**
**The purpose of this illness is so that people may see and know how great God is when he does wonderful things and so that I, the Son of God, also will show his great power (UST)**

### ULT

**4** But when Jesus heard it, he said, "This sickness is not to death, but it is for the glory of God so that the Son of God may be glorified by it."

### UST

**4** When Jesus heard about Lazarus' illness, he said, "This illness will not end in the death of Lazarus. The purpose of this illness is so that people may see and know how great God is when he does wonderful things and so that I, the Son of God, also will show his great power."

Jesus implies that he knows what the outcome will be. Alternate translation: "but the purpose is that the people might see how great God is because of what his power will allow me to do" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**Son of God (ULT)**
**I...Son of God (UST)**

This is an important title for Jesus. (See: Translating Son and Father)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- of God
- of God (2)
- Son of God
- glory
- may be glorified
- death

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- God
- God (2)
- I...Son of God
- is so that people may see and know how great...is when he does wonderful things
- his great power
- the death of Lazarus

# John 11:5

### Now Jesus loved Martha and her sister and Lazarus (ULT)

This is background information. (See: Background Information)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- loved
- Martha
- Lazarus
- sister

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- loved
- Martha
- Lazarus
- sister Mary

**ULT**

**5** Now Jesus loved Martha and her sister and Lazarus.

**UST**

**5** Now Jesus loved Martha, her sister Mary, and Lazarus.

## John 11:6

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- days

### Translation Words - UST

- days

## John 11:7

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- disciples
- Judea

### Translation Words - UST

- apprentices
- Judea

# John 11:8

**Rabbi, right now the Jews are trying to stone you, and you are going back there again (ULT)**
**Teacher, just a short while ago the Jews who oppose you wanted to kill you with stones, and now you want to go back there again (UST)**

This remark appears in the form of a question to emphasize that the disciples do not want Jesus to go to Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "Teacher, you surely do not want to go back there! The Jews were trying to stone you the last time you were there!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

**the Jews (ULT)**
**the Jews who oppose you (UST)**

This is a synecdoche for the Jewish leaders who opposed Jesus. Alternate translation: "the Jewish leaders" (See: Synecdoche)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Rabbi
- Jews
- to stone
- disciples
- are trying

## Translation Words - UST

- Teacher
- Jews who oppose you
- to kill...with stones
- apprentices
- wanted

## John 11:9

### Are there not twelve hours in the day (ULT)

This remark appears in the form of a question to add emphasis. Alternate translation: "You know that the day has twelve hours of light!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

### If someone walks in the daytime, he will not stumble, because he sees by the light of this world (ULT)
### The one who walks during the daytime will walk safely because he can see what is in the road (UST)

People who walk in the light of the day can see well and do not stumble. "Light" is a metaphor for "truth." Jesus is implying that people who live according to truth will be able to successfully do the things that God wants them to do" (See: Metaphor)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- of...world
- hours
- light
- he will...stumble
- walks
- day
- daytime

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- what is in the road
- hours of light...for getting things done
- what is in the road
- will walk safely
- walks
- in a day
- daytime

**ULT**

**9** Jesus answered, "Are there not twelve hours in the day? If someone walks in the daytime, he will not stumble, because he sees by the light of this world.

**UST**

**9** Jesus answered them, "You know there are twelve hours of light in a day for getting things done. The one who walks during the daytime will walk safely because he can see what is in the road.

## John 11:10

**Connecting Statement:**

Jesus continues speaking to his disciples.

**if...someone walks at night (ULT)**
**when...a person walks during the night (UST)**

Here "night" is a metaphor that refers to one's walking without God's light. (See: Metaphor)

**at...the light is not...him (ULT)**
**during...he cannot see (UST)**

Possible meanings are 1) "he cannot see" or "he does not have God's light."

**ULT**

**10** However, if someone walks at night, he will stumble because the light is not in him."

**UST**

**10** However, when a person walks during the night, he may easily stumble because he cannot see."

**Translation Words - ULT**

   • light
   • he will stumble
   • walks

**Translation Words - UST**

   • he cannot see
   • he may easily stumble
   • walks

## John 11:11

**Our friend Lazarus has fallen asleep (ULT)**
**Our friend Lazarus has fallen asleep (UST)**

Here "fallen asleep" is an idiom that means Lazarus has died. If you have a way of saying this in your language, you may use it here. (See: Idiom)

**but I am going so that I may wake him out of sleep (ULT)**
**but I will go there to wake him up (UST)**

The words "wake him out of sleep" form an idiom. Jesus is revealing his plan to bring Lazurus back to life. If you have an idiom for this in your language, you may use it here. (See: Idiom)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Lazarus
- has fallen asleep

### Translation Words - UST

- Lazarus
- has fallen asleep

**ULT**

**11** He said these things, and after these things, he said to them, "Our friend Lazarus has fallen asleep, but I am going so that I may wake him out of sleep."

**UST**

**11** After saying these things, he said to them, "Our friend Lazarus has fallen asleep, but I will go there to wake him up."

# John 11:12

## General Information:

In verse 13 there is a break in the story line as John comments on the disciples' misunderstanding about what Jesus meant when he said Lazarus was asleep. (See: Background Information)

## if he has fallen asleep (ULT)
## if he has fallen asleep (UST)

The disciples misunderstand Jesus to mean that Lazarus is resting and will recover.

## Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- disciples
- he has fallen asleep

## Translation Words - UST

- Lord
- apprentices
- he has fallen asleep

**ULT**

**12** The disciples therefore said to him, " Lord, if he has fallen asleep, he will recover."

**UST**

**12** His apprentices said to him, "Lord, if he has fallen asleep, he will get well."

## John 11:13

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- death
- sleep

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- death
- sleep that we all know

**ULT**

**13** Now Jesus had spoken of his death, but they thought that he was speaking about the sleep of resting.

**UST**

**13** Jesus was really speaking about Lazarus' death, but his apprentices thought that he was talking about the sleep that we all know gives us rest.

## John 11:14

**then…Jesus…said to them plainly (ULT)**
**Then…he told them plainly (UST)**

"So Jesus told them in words that they could understand"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Lazarus
- is dead

### Translation Words - UST

- he
- Lazarus
- has died

**ULT**

**14** Therefore Jesus then said to them plainly, "Lazarus is dead.

**UST**

**14** Then he told them plainly, "Lazarus has died."

## John 11:15

**Connecting Statement:**

Jesus continues speaking to his disciples.

**for your sakes (ULT)**
**for your sakes (UST)**

"for your benefit"

**that I was not there so that you may believe (ULT)**
**that I was not there when he died so that you may see why you can trust in me (UST)**

"that I was not there. Because of this you will learn to trust me more."

### Translation Words - ULT

- you may believe
- I am glad

### Translation Words - UST

- you may see why you can trust in me
- I am glad

# John 11:16

**who was called Didymus (ULT)**
**who was called 'The Twin (UST)**

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "whom they called Didymus" (See: Active or Passive)

**Didymus (ULT)**
**The Twin (UST)**

This is a male name that means "twin." (See: How to Translate Names)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- who was called
- fellow disciples
- Thomas, who was called Didymus
- we may die

**Translation Words - UST**

- who was called
- to the rest of the apprentices
- Thomas, who was called 'The Twin
- we may die

---

**ULT**

**16** Then Thomas, who was called Didymus, said to his fellow disciples, "Let us also go so that we may die with Jesus."

**UST**

**16** Then Thomas, who was called 'The Twin,' said to the rest of the apprentices, "Let us also go with Jesus so that we may die with him."

# John 11:17

## General Information:

Jesus is now in Bethany. These verses give background information about the setting and about what has happened before Jesus arrived. (See: Background Information)

## he found that Lazarus had already been in the tomb for four days (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "he learned that people had put Lazarus in a tomb four days before" (See: Active or Passive)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- tomb
- days

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- tomb
- days

**ULT**

**17** Therefore, when Jesus came, he found that Lazarus had already been in the tomb for four days.

**UST**

**17** When they arrived close to Bethany, someone told Jesus that Lazarus had died and had been buried and his body had been in the tomb for four days.

## John 11:18

**fifteen stadia away (ULT)**
**three kilometers from (UST)**

"about three kilometers away." A "stadium" is 185 meters. (See: Biblical Distance)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jerusalem
- Bethany

### Translation Words - UST

- Jerusalem
- Bethany

**ULT**

**18** Now Bethany was near Jerusalem, about fifteen stadia away.

**UST**

**18** Now Jerusalem was only about three kilometers from Bethany.

## John 11:19

**about their brother (ULT)**
**over their brother's death (UST)**

Lazarus was their younger brother. Alternate translation: "about their younger brother" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jews
- brother
- Martha
- Mary
- comfort

### Translation Words - UST

- Jews knew Lazarus and his family, and they
- their brother's
- Martha
- Mary
- comfort

**ULT**

**19** Many of the Jews had come to Martha and Mary, to comfort them about their brother.

**UST**

**19** Many Jews knew Lazarus and his family, and they came from Jerusalem to comfort Martha and Mary over their brother's death.

## John 11:20

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Then Martha
- Mary
- house

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Martha
- Mary
- house

# John 11:21

**my brother would not have died (ULT)**
**my brother would not have died (UST)**

Lazarus was the younger brother. Alternate translation: "my younger brother would still be alive" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Lord
- brother
- Martha
- would...have died

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus...him
- Lord
- brother
- Martha
- would...have died

**ULT**

**21** Martha then said to Jesus, "Lord, if you had been here, my brother would not have died.

**UST**

**21** When Martha saw Jesus, she said to him, "Lord, if you had been here, my brother would not have died.

## John 11:22

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- from God
- he
- I know

### Translation Words - UST

- from God
- God
- I know

## John 11:23

**Your brother will rise again (ULT)**
**Your brother will become alive again (UST)**

Lazarus was the younger brother. Alternate translation: "Your younger brother will become alive again" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- brother
- will rise again

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- brother
- will become alive again

**ULT**

**23** Jesus said to her, "Your brother will rise again."

**UST**

**23** Jesus said to her, "Your brother will become alive again."

## John 11:24

**he will rise again (ULT)**
**he will come alive again (UST)**

"he will become alive again"

### Translation Words - ULT

- resurrection
- last day
- Martha
- he will rise again
- day
- I know

### Translation Words - UST

- day when God raises all the dead
- last day
- Martha
- he will come alive again
- day
- I know

**ULT**

**24** Martha said to him, "I know that he will rise again in the resurrection on the last day."

**UST**

**24** Martha said to him, "I know that he will come alive again on the day when God raises all the dead on the last day."

# John 11:25

**even if he dies (ULT)**
**even if he dies (UST)**

Here "dies" refers to physical death.

**will live (ULT)**
**yet he will live again (UST)**

Here "live" refers to spiritual life.

## Translation Words - ULT

- life
- will live
- resurrection
- Jesus
- he who believes
- in me
- he dies

## Translation Words - UST

- the one who gives them life
- yet he will live again
- the one who raises people from the dead
- Jesus
- Whoever trusts
- in me
- he dies

**ULT**

**25** Jesus said to her, "I am the resurrection and the life; he who believes in me, even if he dies, will live;

**UST**

**25** Jesus said to her, "I am the one who raises people from the dead; I am the one who gives them life. Whoever trusts in me, even if he dies, yet he will live again.

# John 11:26

## whoever lives and believes in me will never die

"those who live and trust in me will never be separated eternally from God" or "those who live and trust in me will be spiritually alive with God forever"

## in…will certainly not…ever…die (ULT)

Here "die" refers to spiritual death.

## Translation Words - ULT

- whoever lives
- believes
- Do you believe
- in me
- will…die
- ever

## Translation Words - UST

- those who receive life joined to me
- who trust
- Do you believe
- in me
- they will…die
- never

**ULT**

**26** and whoever lives and believes in me will certainly not ever die. Do you believe this?"

**UST**

**26** All those who receive life joined to me and who trust in me—they will never die. Do you believe me?"

# John 11:27

**She said to him (ULT)**
**She said to him (UST)**

"Martha said to Jesus"

**Yes, Lord, I believe that you are the Christ, the Son of God...coming into the world**

Martha believes that Jesus is Lord, the Christ (the Messiah), the Son of God.

**Son of God (ULT)**
**Son of God (UST)**

This is an important title for Jesus. (See: Translating Son and Father)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- of God
- Son of God
- world
- believe
- Christ

## Translation Words - UST

- Lord
- God
- Son of God
- world
- trust what you say and...trust who you are
- Messiah

**ULT**

**27** She said to him, "Yes, Lord, I believe that you are the Christ, the Son of God, who is coming into the world."

**UST**

**27** She said to him, "Yes, Lord! I trust what you say and I trust who you are, that you are the Messiah, the Son of God, the one God promised would come into the world.

# John 11:28

**she went away and called her sister Mary (ULT)**
**she returned to the house and took Mary her sister aside (UST)**

Mary is the younger sister of Martha. Alternate translation: "she went away and called her younger sister Mary" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**Teacher (ULT)**
**Teacher (UST)**

This is a title referring to Jesus.

**is calling for you (ULT)**
**he is calling for you (UST)**

"is asking that you come"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- called
- is calling
- Mary
- sister
- Teacher

**Translation Words - UST**

- took...aside
- he is calling
- Mary
- sister
- Teacher

**ULT**

**28** After she had said this, she went away and called her sister Mary privately. She said, "The Teacher is here and is calling for you."

**UST**

**28** After she said that, she returned to the house and took Mary her sister aside privately and said to her, "The Teacher is here, and he is calling for you."

# John 11:29

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

## Translation Words - ULT

- she got up

## Translation Words - UST

- she got up

## John 11:30

**Now Jesus had not yet come into the village (ULT)**
**Now Jesus had not yet come into the village (UST)**

Here John provides a brief break in the story to give background information regarding the location of Jesus. (See: Background Information)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Martha

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Martha

**ULT**

**30** Now Jesus had not yet come into the village but was still in the place where Martha had met him.

**UST**

**30** Now Jesus had not yet come into the village; he was still at the place where Martha had met him.

# John 11:31

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jews
- Mary
- weep
- tomb
- got up
- who were comforting
- house

## Translation Words - UST

- people who had come...to...the sisters
- Mary
- to grieve for her brother
- tomb where they had buried Lazarus
- get up
- comfort
- house

**ULT**

**31** So when the Jews, who were with her in the house and who were comforting her, saw that Mary got up quickly and went out, they followed her, thinking that she was going to the tomb to weep there.

**UST**

**31** The people who had come to the house to comfort the sisters saw Mary get up quickly and go outside. So they followed her, thinking that she was going to the tomb where they had buried Lazarus in order to grieve for her brother there.

# John 11:32

**she fell down at his feet (ULT)**
**she fell down before him at his feet (UST)**

Mary lay down or knelt at the feet of Jesus to show respect.

**my brother would not have died (ULT)**

Lazarus was Mary's younger brother. See how you translated this in
John 11:21. Alternate translation: "my younger brother would still be
alive" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Lord
- brother
- Then...Mary
- would...have died
- she fell down

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Lord
- brother
- Mary
- would...have died
- she fell down

**ULT**

**32** Then when Mary came to the place
where Jesus was and saw him, she fell
down at his feet and said to him, "Lord,
if you had been here, my brother would
not have died."

**UST**

**32** Mary came to the place where Jesus
was; when she saw him, she fell down
before him at his feet and said, "Lord, if
you had been here, my brother would
not have died."

# John 11:33

**he was deeply moved in his spirit and was troubled (ULT)**
**he cried out in distress deep within his spirit, and he was very upset (UST)**

John combines these phrases that have similar meanings to express the intense emotional distress and possible anger that Jesus experienced. Alternate translation: "he was greatly upset" (See: Doublet)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Jews
- spirit
- who came with
- was troubled
- weeping
- also weeping

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Jew, Jewish
- within his spirit
- the mourners who had come with
- he was very upset
- grieving and crying
- were also crying

### ULT

**33** When therefore <u>Jesus</u> saw her <u>weeping</u>, and the <u>Jews</u> <u>who came with</u> her <u>also weeping</u>, he was deeply moved in his <u>spirit</u> and <u>was troubled</u>;

### UST

**33** When <u>Jesus</u> saw her <u>grieving and crying</u>, and that <u>the mourners who had come with</u> her <u>were also crying</u>, he cried out in distress deep <u>within his spirit</u>, and <u>he was very upset</u>.

# John 11:34

**Where have you laid him (ULT)**
**Where have you buried his body (UST)**

This is a milder way of asking, "Where have you buried him?" (See: Euphemism)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Lord

**Translation Words - UST**

- Lord

**ULT**

**34** so he said, "Where have you laid him?" They said to him, "Lord, come and see."

**UST**

**34** He said, "Where have you buried his body?" They said to him, "Lord, come and see."

# John 11:35

**Jesus wept (ULT)**
**Jesus began to cry (UST)**

"Jesus began to cry" or "Jesus started crying"

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- wept

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- began to cry

## John 11:36

**he loved (ULT)**
**he loved (UST)**

This refers to brotherly love or human love for a friend or family member.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jews
- he loved

### Translation Words - UST

- Jews
- he loved

## John 11:37

### Could not this man, who opened the eyes of a blind man, also could have caused this man not to die (ULT)

This remark appears in the form of a question to express the Jews' surprise that Jesus did not heal Lazarus. Alternate translation: "He could heal a man who was blind, so he should have been able to heal this man so he would not have died!" or "Since he did not keep this man from dying, maybe he did not really heal the man who was born blind, as they say he did!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

### who opened the eyes (ULT)
### to heal the blind man (UST)

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "healed the eyes" (See: Idiom)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Could
- to die

### Translation Words - UST

- was able
- from dying

**ULT**

**37** But some of them said, "Could not this man, who opened the eyes of a blind man, also could have caused this man not to die?"

**UST**

**37** However, some others said, "He was able to heal the blind man? But maybe he didn't have enough power to keep this man from dying!"

# John 11:38

## Now it was a cave, and a stone lay against it (ULT)

John pauses the story briefly to describe the tomb where the people had buried Lazarus. (See: Background Information)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- tomb

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- tomb

**ULT**

**38** Then Jesus again, being deeply moved in himself, went to the tomb. Now it was a cave, and a stone lay against it.

**UST**

**38** Jesus was physically shaken and emotionally upset when he came to the tomb. It was a cave, and the entrance had been covered by a large rock.

# John 11:39

### Martha, the sister of the one who had died (ULT)
### Martha (UST)

Martha and Mary were older sisters of Lazarus. Alternate translation: "Martha, the older sister of Lazarus" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### his body will already stink (ULT)
### by this time there will be a putrid odor (UST)

"by this time there will be a bad smell" or "the body is already stinking"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Lord
- Martha
- already
- of the one who had died
- sister

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Lord
- Martha
- by this time
- Martha
- Martha

**ULT**

**39** Jesus said, "Take away the stone." Martha, the sister of the one who had died, said to Jesus, "Lord, his body will already stink, for it has been four days."

**UST**

**39** Jesus gave a command to those standing there, "Take away the rock." However, Martha objected, "Lord, by this time there will be a putrid odor, for he has been dead for four days."

## John 11:40

**Did I not say to you that, if you believed, you would see the glory of God (ULT)**
**Did I not tell you the truth when I told you that if you trusted me, you would see who God is and you would know what God can do (UST)**

This remark appears in the form of a question to add emphasis to the point that God is about to do something wonderful. Alternate translation: "I told you that if you trusted me, you would see what God can do!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- of God
- glory
- you believed

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- who God is and you would know what God can do
- who God is and you would know what God can do
- you trusted me

**ULT**

**40** Jesus said to her, "Did I not say to you that, if you believed, you would see the glory of God?"

**UST**

**40** Jesus said to her, "Did I not tell you the truth when I told you that if you trusted me, you would see who God is and you would know what God can do?"

# John 11:41

### Then Jesus...lifted up his eyes (ULT)
### Jesus...looked up toward heaven (UST)

This is an idiom that means to look up. Alternate translation: "Jesus looked up toward heaven" (See: Idiom)

### Father, I thank you that you listened to me (ULT)
### Father, I thank you that you have heard me (UST)

Jesus prays directly to the Father so that others around him will hear his prayer. Alternate translation: "Father, I thank you that you have heard me" or "Father, I thank you that you have heard my prayer"

### Father (ULT)
### Father (UST)

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Then Jesus
- Father

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Father

**ULT**

**41** So they took away the stone. Then Jesus lifted up his eyes and said, " Father, I thank you that you listened to me.

**UST**

**41** So they took away the big rock. Jesus looked up toward heaven and said, " Father, I thank you that you have heard me.

# John 11:42

**that...so that they may believe...you sent me (ULT)
that...so that they might put their trust in you and
have confidence in the fact...you sent me (UST)**

"I want them to believe that you have sent me"

## Translation Words - ULT

- they may believe
- sent
- knew

## Translation Words - UST

- they might put their trust in you and have confidence in the
  fact
- sent
- know

**ULT**

**42** I <u>knew</u> that you always listen to me,
but because of the crowd that is
standing around me, I said this, so that
<u>they may believe</u> that you <u>sent</u> me."

**UST**

**42** I <u>know</u> that you always hear me. I
said this for the sake of the people who
are standing here so that <u>they might
put their trust in you and have
confidence in the fact</u> that you <u>sent</u> me."

## John 11:43

**After he had said...this (ULT)**
**After he said that (UST)**

"After Jesus had prayed"

**he cried out with a loud voice (ULT)**
**he cried out with a loud voice (UST)**

"he shouted"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Lazarus
- with a...voice

**Translation Words - UST**

- Lazarus
- with a...voice

---

**ULT**

**43** After he had said this, he cried out with a loud voice, "Lazarus, come out!"

**UST**

**43** After he said that, he cried out with a loud voice, "Lazarus, come out!"

---

# John 11:44

**his feet and hands were bound with cloths, and his face was bound with a cloth (ULT)**
**His hands were still wrapped and his feet were still bound with linen strips of cloth, and there was a cloth wrapped around his face as well (UST)**

A burial custom of this time was to wrap the dead body with long strips of linen cloth. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Someone had wrapped strips of cloth around his hands and feet. They had also tied a cloth around his face" (See: Active or Passive)

**The...Jesus...said to them (ULT)**
**The man who had died...Jesus...said to them (UST)**

The word "them" refers to the people who were there and saw the miracle.

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- were bound
- was bound
- hands
- dead man
- face

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- were still wrapped...were still bound
- wrapped around
- His hands
- The man who had died
- face

# John 11:45

## General Information:

These verses tell us what happened after Jesus raised Lazarus from the dead. (See: Background Information)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jews
- believed
- in him
- Mary

## Translation Words - UST

- Jews
- put their trust
- in him
- Mary

**ULT**

**45** Then many of the Jews who came to Mary and saw what Jesus did, believed in him.

**UST**

**45** As a result, many of the Jews who had come to see Mary and who had witnessed what Jesus did, put their trust in him.

## John 11:46

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Pharisees

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Pharisees

# John 11:47

## General Information:

Because so many people have told them that Lazarus is alive again, the chief priests and Pharisees gather the Jewish council for a meeting.

## Then the chief priests (ULT)
## So the chief priests (UST)

"Then the leaders among the priests"

## Then (ULT)
## So (UST)

The author uses this word to tell the reader that the events that begin in this verse are a result of the events of John 11:45-46.

## What will we do (ULT)
## What are we going to do (UST)

It is implied here that the council members are talking about Jesus. Alternate translation: "What are we going to do about Jesus?" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

## Translation Words - ULT

- signs
- Pharisees
- chief priests
- gathered...together
- the council

## Translation Words - UST

- miracles
- Pharisees
- chief priests
- gathered...together
- all the members of the Jewish council

---

**ULT**

**47** Then the chief priests and the Pharisees gathered the council together and said, "What will we do? This man does many signs.

**UST**

**47** So the chief priests and the Pharisees gathered all the members of the Jewish council together. They were saying to each other, "What are we going to do? This man is performing many miracles.

# John 11:48

**all will believe in him (ULT)**
**everyone will trust in him (UST)**

The Jewish leaders were afraid that the people would try to make Jesus their king. Alternate translation: "everyone will trust in him and rebel against Rome" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**the Romans will come (ULT)**
**the Roman army will come (UST)**

This is a synecdoche for the Roman army. Alternate translation: "the Roman army will come" (See: Synecdoche)

**take away both our place and our nation**

"destroy both our temple and our nation"

## Translation Words - ULT

- will believe
- in him
- Romans
- nation

## Translation Words - UST

- will trust
- in him
- Roman army
- our nation

**ULT**

**48** If we leave him alone like this, all will believe in him, and the Romans will come and take away from us both our place and our nation."

**UST**

**48** If we allow him to keep doing them, everyone will trust in him and rebel against Rome. Then the Roman army will come and destroy both our temple and our nation!"

# John 11:49

### a…certain man among them (ULT)

This is a way to introduce a new character to the story. If you have a way to do this in your language, you can use it here. (See: Introduction of New and Old Participants)

### You do not know anything (ULT)

This is an exaggeration that Caiaphas uses to insult his hearers. Alternate translation: "You do not understand what is happening" or "You speak as though you know nothing" (See: Hyperbole)

### Translation Words - ULT

- high priest
- Caiaphas
- year
- know

### Translation Words - UST

- the high priest
- Caiaphas
- for…year
- know

**ULT**

**49** However, a certain man among them, Caiaphas, who was high priest that year, said to them, "You do not know anything.

**UST**

**49** One of them on the council was Caiaphas, the high priest for that year. He said to them, "You all know nothing!

## John 11:50

**and that the whole nation does not perish (ULT) rather than that the Romans kill all the people of our Jewish nation (UST)**

Caiaphas implies that the Roman army would kill all of the people of the Jewish nation if Jesus is allowed to live and cause a rebellion. The word "nation" here is a synecdoche that represents all of the Jewish people. Alternate translation: "than that the Romans kill all the people of our nation" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and Synecdoche)

### Translation Words - ULT

- perish
- people
- it is better
- dies
- nation

### Translation Words - UST

- the Romans kill
- people
- it would be much better
- died
- Jewish nation

**ULT**

**50** You do not consider that it is better for you that one man dies for the people, and that the whole nation does not perish."

**UST**

**50** You do not realize that it would be much better for us if one man died for the sake of the people rather than that the Romans kill all the people of our Jewish nation."

# John 11:51

## General Information:

In verses 51 and 52 John explains that Caiaphus was prophesying even though he did not realize it at the time. This is background information. (See: Background Information)

## to die for the nation (ULT)
## die for the Jewish nation (UST)

The word "nation" is a synecdoche and refers to the people of the nation of Israel. (See: Synecdoche)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- he prophesied
- high priest
- year
- to die
- nation

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- he was prophesying
- the high priest
- year
- die
- Jewish nation

**ULT**

**51** Now this he said not from himself. Instead, being high priest that year, he prophesied that Jesus was going to die for the nation;

**UST**

**51** He said that, not because he thought of it himself. Instead, since he was the high priest that year, he was prophesying that Jesus would die for the Jewish nation.

# John 11:52

**would be gathered together into one (ULT)**
**he could gather into one nation from (UST)**

This is an ellipsis. The word "people" is implied by the context. Alternate translation: "would be gathered into one people" (See: Ellipsis)

**the...children...of God (ULT)**
**the...children...God (UST)**

This refers to people who belong to God through faith in Jesus and are spiritually God's children.

## Translation Words - ULT

- of God
- children
- would be gathered together
- nation

## Translation Words - UST

- God
- children
- he could gather...from
- Jewish nation

**ULT**

**52** and not only for the nation, but so that also the children of God who are scattered would be gathered together into one.

**UST**

**52** But he was also prophesying that Jesus would die, not just for the Jewish nation only, but also so he could gather into one nation from all the children of God, those who live in other lands everywhere.

# John 11:53

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

## Translation Words - ULT

- they planned
- day onward

## Translation Words - UST

- the council began to look for any way
- day

## John 11:54

**General Information:**

Jesus leaves Bethany and goes to Ephraim. In verse 55 the story shifts to telling about what many of the Jews are doing now that Passover is near.

**walked openly among the Jews (ULT)**
**traveled around publicly among his Jewish opponents (UST)**

Here "Jews" is a synecdoche for the Jewish leaders and "walk openly" is a metaphor for "live where everyone could see him." Alternate translation: "live where all the Jews could see him" or "walk openly among the Jewish leaders who opposed him" (See: Synecdoche and Metaphor)

**the country (ULT)**
**in an area (UST)**

the rural area outside cities where fewer people live

**There he stayed with the disciples (ULT)**
**There he stayed with his apprentices for a while (UST)**

Jesus and his disciples stayed in Ephraim for a while. Alternate translation: "There he stayed with his disciples for a short period of time" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### ULT

**54** Therefore Jesus no longer walked openly among the Jews, but he departed from there into the country near to the wilderness into a town called Ephraim. There he stayed with the disciples.

### UST

**54** Because of that, Jesus no longer traveled around publicly among his Jewish opponents. Instead, he left Jerusalem and, with his apprentices, went to a town called Ephraim in an area near the desolate desert region. There he stayed with his apprentices for a while.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Therefore Jesus
- called
- Jews
- disciples
- Ephraim
- wilderness
- walked

**Translation Words - UST**

- Jesus
- called
- his Jewish opponents
- his apprentices
- Ephraim
- desolate desert region
- traveled around

## John 11:55

**went up…to Jerusalem (ULT)**
**went up…to Jerusalem (UST)**

The phrase "went up" is used here because Jerusalem is higher in elevation than the surrounding areas.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jews
- purify
- Passover
- Passover (2)
- Jerusalem

### Translation Words - UST

- Jewish
- They would wash…to make…clean
- Passover Celebration
- Passover (2)
- Jerusalem

**ULT**

**55** Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem from the country before the Passover in order to purify themselves.

**UST**

**55** Now it was almost time for the Jewish Passover Celebration, and many worshipers went up from the country and the villages to Jerusalem. They would wash themselves in preparation, to make themselves clean according to the Jewish rules, so that they would be allowed to celebrate the Passover.

# John 11:56

## General Information:

The content of verse 57 occurs before that of verse 56. If this order might confuse your readers, you can combine these verses and put the text of verse 57 before the text of verse 56. (See: Order of Events)

**they were looking for...Jesus (ULT)**
**The worshipers who came to Jerusalem for the Passover Festival were all looking...for Jesus (UST)**

The word "they" refers to the Jewish people who had traveled to Jerusalem.

**What do you think? That he will not come to the festival (ULT)**

These are rhetorical questions that express a strong element of doubt that Jesus will come to the Passover Festival. The second question is an ellipsis that leaves out the words "do you think." The speakers here were wondering if Jesus would come to the festival since there was the danger of his being arrested. Alternate translation: "Jesus will probably not come to the festival. He might be afraid of getting arrested!" (See: Rhetorical Question and Ellipsis)

**ULT**

**56** So they were looking for Jesus, and speaking one with another as they stood in the temple, "What do you think? That he will not come to the festival?"

**UST**

**56** The worshipers who came to Jerusalem for the Passover Festival were all looking for Jesus. When they came and stood in the temple, they said to one another, "What do you think? He will not come to the Passover, will he?"

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- temple
- they were looking for
- festival

## Translation Words - UST

- for Jesus
- temple
- The worshipers who came to Jerusalem for the Passover Festival were all looking
- Passover

# John 11:57

## Now the chief priests (ULT)

This is background information that explains why the Jewish worshipers were wondering if Jesus would come to the festival or not. If your language has a way to mark background information, use it here. (See: Background Information)

## Translation Words - ULT

- an order
- Pharisees
- chief priests
- he should report it
- they might seize
- knew

## Translation Words - UST

- orders
- Pharisees
- Jewish chief priests
- they should report it to them
- they could arrest
- found out

**ULT**

**57** Now the chief priests and the Pharisees had given an order that if anyone knew where Jesus was, he should report it so that they might seize him.

**UST**

**57** The Jewish chief priests and the Pharisees had issued orders that if anyone found out where Jesus was, they should report it to them, so that they could arrest him.

# John 12

## John 12 General Notes

## Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 12:38 and 40, which are words from the Old Testament.

Verse 16 is a commentary on these events. It is possible to put this entire verse in parentheses in order to set it apart from the narrative of the story.

## Special concepts in this chapter

### Mary anointed Jesus' feet

The Jews would put oil on a person's head to make that person feel welcome and comfortable. They would also put oil on a person's body after the person had died but before they buried the body. But they would never think to put oil on a person's feet, because they thought that feet were dirty.

### The donkey and the colt

Jesus rode into Jerusalem on an animal. In this way he was like a king who came into a city after he had won an important battle. Also, the kings of Israel in the Old Testament rode on a donkeys. Other kings rode on horses. So Jesus was showing that he was the king of Israel and that he was not like other kings.

Matthew, Mark, Luke, and John all wrote about this event. Matthew and Mark wrote that the disciples brought Jesus a donkey. John wrote that Jesus found a donkey. Luke wrote that they brought him a colt. Only Matthew wrote that there were both a donkey had a colt. No one knows for sure whether Jesus rode the donkey or the colt. It is best to translate each of these accounts as it appears in the ULT without trying to make them all say exactly the same thing. (See: Matthew 21:1-7 and Mark 11:1-7 and Luke 19:29-36 and John 12:14-15)

### Glory

Scripture often speaks of God's glory as a great, brilliant light. When people see this light, they are afraid. In this chapter John says that the glory of Jesus is his resurrection (John 12:16).

## Important figures of speech in this chapter

### The metaphors of light and darkness

The Bible often speaks of unrighteous people, people who do not do what pleases God, as if they were walking around in darkness. It speaks of light as if it were what enables those sinful people to become righteous, to understand what they are doing wrong and begin to obey God. (See: Metaphor and righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness)

## Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

### Paradox

A paradox is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. A paradox occurs in 12:25: "He who loves his life will lose it; but he who hates his life in this world will keep it for eternal life." But in 12:26 Jesus explains what it means to keep one's life for eternal life. (John 12:25-26).

# John 12:1

## General Information:

Jesus is at dinner in Bethany when Mary anoints his feet with oil.

### six days before the Passover (ULT)
### six days before the Passover Festival began (UST)

The author uses these words to mark the beginning of a new event. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

### had raised from the dead (ULT)
### made alive again after he had died (UST)

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "had made alive again" (See: Idiom)

**ULT**

**1** Therefore, six days before the Passover, Jesus came to Bethany, where Lazarus, whom Jesus had raised from the dead, was.

**UST**

**1** Jesus arrived in Bethany six days before the Passover Festival began. Bethany was the village where Lazarus lived, the man Jesus made alive again after he had died.

## Translation Words - ULT

- Therefore...Jesus
- Jesus (2)
- Passover
- Lazarus
- Bethany
- the dead
- had raised
- days

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Jesus (2)
- Passover Festival
- Lazarus
- Bethany...Bethany
- after he had died
- made alive again
- days

## John 12:2

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- was serving
- Martha
- but Lazarus
- a dinner

### Translation Words - UST

- made preparations for the dinner
- Martha
- Lazarus
- a dinner to honor

## John 12:3

**a litra of perfume (ULT)**
**a bottle of...perfume (UST)**

You may convert this to a modern measure. A "litra" is about one third of a kilogram. Or you may refer to a container that could hold that amount. Alternate translation: "a third of a kilogram of perfume" or "a bottle of perfume" (See: Biblical Weight)

**of perfume (ULT)**
**of...perfume (UST)**

This is a good-smelling liquid made by using the oils of pleasant smelling plants and flowers.

**made of...nard (ULT)**
**called nard (UST)**

This is a perfume made from a pink, bell-shaped flower in the mountains of Nepal, China, and India. (See: Translate Unknowns)

**the...house was filled with the fragrance of the perfume (ULT)**
**the...The beautiful smell of the perfume filled...entire house (UST)**

This can be translated in an active form. Alternate translation: "The scent of her perfume filled the house" (See: Active or Passive)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- of Jesus
- anointed...with it
- Then Mary
- very precious
- house

**Translation Words - UST**

- his
- and, to honor Jesus, she poured it out
- Mary
- expensive
- entire house

**ULT**

**3** Then Mary took a litra of perfume made of very precious pure nard, anointed the feet of Jesus with it, and wiped his feet with her hair. Then the house was filled with the fragrance of the perfume.

**UST**

**3** Then Mary took a bottle of expensive perfume (called nard) and, to honor Jesus, she poured it out on his feet and then wiped his feet with her hair. The beautiful smell of the perfume filled the entire house.

# John 12:4

**Iscariot…the one who would…betray him (ULT)**
**Iscariot…soon he would give Jesus up to his enemies (UST)**

"the one who later enabled Jesus' enemies to seize him"

## Translation Words - ULT

- of…disciples
- Judas Iscariot
- betray

## Translation Words - UST

- apprentices
- Judas Iscariot
- give…up to his enemies

---

**ULT**

**4** But Judas Iscariot, one of his disciples, the one who would betray him, said,

**UST**

**4** However, one of his apprentices, Judas Iscariot, (he was the one who broke the trust Jesus had in him, and soon he would give Jesus up to his enemies)—he objected and said,

---

## John 12:5

### Why was this perfume not sold for three hundred denarii and given to the poor (ULT)

This is a rhetorical question. You can translate it as a strong statement. Alternate translation: "This perfume could have been sold for three hundred denarii and the money could have been given to the poor!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

### for three hundred denarii (ULT)
### for three hundred days' wages (UST)

You can translate this as a numeral. Alternate translation: "300 denarii" (See: Numbers)

### denarii (ULT)
### days' wages (UST)

A denarius was the amount of silver that a common laborer could earn in one day of work. (See: Biblical Money)

**ULT**

**5** "Why was this perfume not sold for three hundred denarii and given to the poor?"

**UST**

**5** "We should have sold this perfume for three hundred days' wages and given the money to the poor."

## John 12:6

**Now he said this, not because he cared about the poor, but because he was a thief. He had the moneybag and would steal from what was put in it (ULT)**

John explains why Judas asked the question about the poor. If your language has a way of indicating background information, you can use it here. (See: Background Information)

**he said this, not because he cared about the poor, but because he was a thief**

"he said this because he was a thief. He did not care about the poor"

**Translation Words - ULT**

  • a thief

**Translation Words - UST**

  • a thief

---

**ULT**

**6** Now he said this, not because he cared about the poor, but because he was a thief. He had the moneybag and would steal from what was put in it.

**UST**

**6** He said this, not because he cared about the poor people, but because he was a thief. He kept charge of the bag that held their money, but he would take money for his own use whenever he wanted.

# John 12:7

### Leave her alone. She has kept it for the day of my burial (ULT)

Jesus implies that the woman's actions can be understood as anticipating his death and burial. Alternate translation: "Allow her to show how much she appreciates me! In this way she has prepared my body for burial" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- of…burial
- day

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- when I would die and they would bury
- day

## John 12:8

**the poor…you will always have…with you (ULT)**
**poor people…There will always be…among you, so you**
**can help them whenever you want to (UST)**

Jesus implies that there will always be opportunities to help the poor people. Alternate translation: "There will always be poor people among you, and you can help them whenever you want" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**But you will not always have me (ULT)**
**But I will not be with you much longer, so it is good**
**that she showed right now how much she appreciates**
**me (UST)**

In this way, Jesus implies that he will die. Alternate translation: "But I will not always be here with you" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

---

**ULT**

**8** For you will always have the poor with you. But you will not always have me."

**UST**

**8** There will always be poor people among you, so you can help them whenever you want to. But I will not be with you much longer, so it is good that she showed right now how much she appreciates me."

## John 12:9

### Now (ULT)

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here John tells about a new group of people that has come to Bethany from Jerusalem. (See: Background Information)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Jews
- Lazarus
- the dead
- Jesus had raised
- learned

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus was there
- Jews in Jerusalem
- Lazarus
- Jesus had made alive
- Jesus had made alive
- heard

**ULT**

**9** Now a large crowd of the Jews learned that Jesus was there, and they came, not only for Jesus, but also to see Lazarus, whom Jesus had raised from the dead.

**UST**

**9** A large crowd of Jews in Jerusalem heard that Jesus was in Bethany, so they went there. They came not only because Jesus was there, but also to see Lazarus, whom Jesus had made alive.

## John 12:10

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- chief priests
- Lazarus
- conspired together

### Translation Words - UST

- chief priests
- Lazarus
- decided

**ULT**

**10** But the chief priests conspired together so that they might also put Lazarus to death;

**UST**

**10** Then the chief priests decided it was necessary to put Lazarus to death, as well,

# John 12:11

**because of him (ULT)**
**it was because of him that (UST)**

The fact that Lazarus was alive again caused many Jews to believe in Jesus.

**believed in Jesus (ULT)**
**they were putting their trust in Jesus (UST)**

This implies that many of the Jewish people were trusting in Jesus as the Son of God. Alternate translation: "were putting their trust in Jesus" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Jesus
- Jews
- believed
- in Jesus

**Translation Words - UST**

- Jesus
- of the Jews
- they were putting their trust
- in Jesus

**ULT**

**11** for because of him many of the Jews went away and believed in Jesus.

**UST**

**11** for it was because of him that many of the Jews were no longer believing in what the chief priests were teaching; instead, they were putting their trust in Jesus.

# John 12:12

## General Information:

Jesus enters Jerusalem and the people honor him as a king.

## On the next day (ULT)
## The next day (UST)

The author uses these words to mark the beginning of a new event. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

## a great crowd (ULT)
## the large crowd (UST)

"a great crowd of people"

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Jerusalem
- festival

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Jerusalem
- Passover Festival

**ULT**
**12** On the next day a great crowd came to the festival. When they heard that Jesus was coming to Jerusalem,

**UST**
**12** The next day the large crowd that had come for the Passover Festival heard that Jesus was on his way to Jerusalem.

## John 12:13

**Hosanna (ULT)**
**Hosanna! Praise God...Welcome (UST)**

This means "May God save us now!"

**Blessed is (ULT)**
**God bless (UST)**

This expresses a desire for God to cause good things to happen to a person.

**he who comes in the name of the Lord (ULT)**
**the One who comes in the Name of the Lord (UST)**

Here the word "name" is a metonym for the person's authority and power. Alternate translation: "comes as the representative of the Lord" or "comes in the power of the Lord" (See: Metonymy)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Blessed is
- of the Lord
- the name
- of Israel
- palm trees
- King

### Translation Words - UST

- God bless
- of the Lord
- the Name
- Israel
- from palm trees
- King

**ULT**

**13** they took the branches of the palm trees and went out to meet him and cried out, "Hosanna! Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord, even the King of Israel."

**UST**

**13** So they cut branches from palm trees and went out to wave them to welcome him as he came into the city. They were shouting, "Hosanna! Praise God! God bless the One who comes in the Name of the Lord! Welcome, King of Israel!"

# John 12:14

**found...Jesus...a young donkey and sat on it (ULT)**
**When...came near to Jerusalem, he found...Jesus...a**
**young donkey and sat on it, riding into the city (UST)**

Here John gives background information that Jesus secures a
donkey. He implies that Jesus will ride the donkey into Jerusalem.
Alternate translation: "he found a young donkey and sat on it, riding
into the city" (See: Background Information and Assumed Knowledge
and Implicit Information)

**as it was written (ULT)**
**By doing this, he fulfilled what had been written in**
**scripture (UST)**

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "as the prophets wrote in the Scripture" (See: Active
or Passive)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Jesus
- a young donkey
- as
- written

**Translation Words - UST**

- Jesus
- a young donkey
- By doing this, he fulfilled
- what had been written in scripture

**ULT**

¹⁴ But Jesus found a young donkey and
sat on it; as it was written,

**UST**

¹⁴ When Jesus came near to Jerusalem,
he found a young donkey and sat on it,
riding into the city. By doing this, he
fulfilled what had been written in
scripture:

# John 12:15

**daughter of Zion (ULT)**
**you who live in Jerusalem (UST)**

"Daughter of Zion" here is a metonym that refers to the people of Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "you people of Jerusalem" (See: Metonymy)

## Translation Words - ULT

- fear
- daughter of Zion
- of Zion
- of a donkey
- King

## Translation Words - UST

- Do...be afraid
- you who live in Jerusalem
- you who live in Jerusalem
- a donkey's
- King

**ULT**

**15** "Do not fear, daughter of Zion; see, your King is coming, sitting on the colt of a donkey."

**UST**

**15** "Do not be afraid, you who live in Jerusalem. Look! Your King is coming. He is riding on a donkey's colt!"

## John 12:16

### General Information:

John, the writer, interrupts here to give the reader some background information about what the disciples later understood. (See: Background Information)

### His disciples did not understand these things (ULT)

Here the words "these things" refer to the words that the prophet had written about Jesus.

### when Jesus was glorified (ULT)
### after Jesus had finished his work and had received again his full powers as God (UST)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "when God glorified Jesus" (See: Active or Passive)

### these things...him...they had done (ULT)
### that this was a fulfillment of prophecy...him...what people had done (UST)

The words "these things" refer to what the people did when Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a donkey (praising him and waving the palm branches).

**ULT**

**16** His disciples did not understand these things at first; but when Jesus was glorified, then they remembered that these things had been written about him and that they had done these things to him.

**UST**

**16** When this happened, his apprentices did not understand that this was a fulfillment of prophecy. However, after Jesus had finished his work and had received again his full powers as God, they looked back and remembered what the prophets had written about him and what people had done to him.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- was glorified
- disciples
- understand
- written

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- had finished his work and had received again his full powers as God
- his apprentices
- did...understand
- what the prophets had written

## John 12:17

### Now (ULT)

This word is used here to mark a break in the main narrative. Here John explains that many of the people came to meet Jesus because they heard others say that he had raised Lazarus from the dead. (See: Background Information)

### Translation Words - ULT

- he called
- testified
- Lazarus
- the dead
- tomb
- raised...up

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus had called
- kept telling others what they had seen
- Lazarus
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- tomb
- had made...alive again

**ULT**

**17** Now the crowd testified that they had been with him when he called Lazarus out of the tomb and raised him up from the dead.

**UST**

**17** The crowd that was following along with Jesus kept telling others what they had seen: That Jesus had called Lazarus out of the tomb and had made him alive again.

# John 12:18

### It was...for this reason that...they heard that he had done...sign (ULT)

"they heard others say that he had done this sign"

### It was...for this reason that...sign (ULT)

A "sign" is an event or occurrence that proves something is true. In this case, the "sign" of raising Lazarus proves that Jesus is the Messiah.

### Translation Words - ULT

- sign

### Translation Words - UST

- to show them his power

**ULT**

**18** It was also for this reason that the crowd went out to meet him, because they heard that he had done this sign.

**UST**

**18** The other crowd of people, those who went out of the city gate to meet Jesus, did so because they heard he had done great things to show them his power.

# John 12:19

### Look, you are accompishing nothing (ULT)

The Pharisees imply here that it might be impossible to stop Jesus. Alternate translation: "It seems like we can do nothing to stop him" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### see, the world has gone after him (ULT)
### here. Look! The whole world is following him (UST)

The Pharisees use this exaggeration to express their shock that so many people have come out to meet Jesus. Alternate translation: "It looks like everyone is becoming his disciple" (See: Hyperbole)

### the world (ULT)
### The whole world (UST)

Here "the world" is a metonym that represents (in exaggeration) all of the people in the world. You may need to make explicit that the hearers would have understood that the Pharisees were speaking only of the people in Judea. (See: Metonymy and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### Translation Words - ULT

- world
- Pharisees
- you are accompishing nothing

### Translation Words - UST

- whole world
- Pharisees
- We are gaining...advantage

**ULT**

**19** The Pharisees therefore said among themselves, "Look, you are accompishing nothing; see, the world has gone after him."

**UST**

**19** So the Pharisees said to each other, "See! We are gaining no advantage here. Look! The whole world is following him!"

## John 12:20

### Now certain Greeks (ULT)

The phrase "now certain" marks the introduction of new characters to the story. (See: Introduction of New and Old Participants)

### to worship at the festival (ULT)
### to worship God during the Passover Festival (UST)

John implies that these "Greeks" were going to worship God during the Passover. Alternate translation: "to worship God at the Passover festival" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### Translation Words - ULT

- worship
- Greeks
- festival

### Translation Words - UST

- to worship God
- some Greeks
- Passover Festival

**ULT**

**20** Now certain Greeks were among those who were going up to worship at the festival.

**UST**

**20** Among those who went up to Jerusalem to worship God during the Passover Festival were some Greeks.

# John 12:21

**Bethsaida (ULT)**
**who was from Bethsaida (UST)**

This was a town in the province of Galilee.

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Sir
- in Galilee
- Philip

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Sir
- in the district of Galilee
- to Philip

**ULT**

**21** Therefore these men went to Philip, who was from Bethsaida in Galilee, and asked him, saying, "Sir, we want to see Jesus."

**UST**

**21** They came to Philip, who was from Bethsaida in the district of Galilee. They had something to ask him; they said, "Sir, would you introduce us to Jesus?"

## John 12:22

**they told Jesus (ULT)**
**told Jesus (UST)**

Philip and Andrew tell Jesus about the Greeks' request to see him. You can translate this by adding the implied words. Alternate translation: "they told Jesus what the Greeks had said" (See: Ellipsis)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Andrew
- Andrew
- Philip
- Philip (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Andrew
- they both
- Philip
- they both (2)

**ULT**

**22** Philip went and told Andrew; Andrew went with Philip, and they told Jesus.

**UST**

**22** So Philip reported this to Andrew, and they both went and told Jesus.

## John 12:23

### General Information:

Jesus begins to respond to Philip and Andrew.

### The hour has come for the Son of Man to be glorified (ULT)
### It is time for God to show the people everything that I, the Son of Man, have done and to tell them all that I have said (UST)

Jesus implies that it is now the right time for God to honor the Son of Man through his upcoming suffering, death and resurrection. Alternate translation: "God will soon honor me when I die and rise again" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### Translation Words - ULT

- But Jesus
- to be glorified
- Son of Man
- hour

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- God to show the people everything that...have done and to tell them all that I have said
- I...Son of Man
- It is time

**ULT**

**23** But Jesus answered them and said, "The hour has come for the Son of Man to be glorified.

**UST**

**23** Jesus answered Philip and Andrew, "It is time for God to show the people everything that I, the Son of Man, have done and to tell them all that I have said.

# John 12:24

## Truly, truly, I say to you

Translate this the way your language emphasizes that what follows is important and true. See how you translated "Truly, truly" in John 1:51.

## unless a grain of wheat falls into the earth and dies, it remains by itself; but if it dies, it will bear much fruit (ULT)

Here "a grain of wheat" or "seed" is a metaphor for Jesus' death, burial and resurrection. Just as a seed is planted and grows again into a plant that will bear much fruit, so will many people trust in Jesus after he is killed, buried, and raised back to life. (See: Metaphor)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Truly
- truly (2)
- fruit
- and dies
- it dies (2)
- of wheat
- earth
- it will bear
- a grain

## Translation Words - UST

- the truth
- the truth (2)
- wheat
- and dies
- dies in the ground (2)
- of wheat
- earth
- then it will grow and produce a harvest
- a seed

---

**ULT**

**24** Truly, truly, I say to you, unless a grain of wheat falls into the earth and dies, it remains by itself; but if it dies, it will bear much fruit.

**UST**

**24** I am telling you the truth: Unless a seed of wheat is planted in the earth and dies, it remains only one seed; but after it dies in the ground, then it will grow and produce a harvest of much wheat.

# John 12:25

## He who loves his life will lose it (ULT)
## Anyone who tries to live to please himself will fail (UST)

Here "loves his life" means to consider one's own physical life to be more valuable than the lives of others. Alternate translation: "whoever values his own life more than others will not receive eternal life" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

## he who hates his life in this world will keep it for eternal life (ULT)

Here the one who "hates his life" refers to one who loves his own life less than he loves the lives of others. Alternate translation: "whoever considers the lives of others as more important than his own life will live with God forever" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

## Translation Words - ULT

- life
- life (2)
- life
- eternal
- He who loves
- world

## Translation Words - UST

- Anyone who tries to live to please
- anyone who does not live to please (2)
- his life
- forever
- Anyone who tries to live to please
- world

## John 12:26

### where I am, there will my servant also be (ULT)

Jesus implies that those who serve him will be with him in heaven. Alternate translation: "when I am in heaven, my servant will also be there with me" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### the Father will honor him (ULT)

Here "Father" is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

### Translation Words - ULT

- will honor
- serves
- servant
- serves (2)
- Father

### Translation Words - UST

- will honor
- wants to serve
- servant
- serves (2)
- Father

**ULT**

**26** If anyone serves me, let him follow me; and where I am, there will my servant also be. If anyone serves me, the Father will honor him.

**UST**

**26** If anyone wants to serve me, he must also follow me because my servant must be where I am. The Father will honor everyone who serves me.

# John 12:27

### what should I say? 'Father, save me from this hour (ULT)

This remark appears in the form of a rhetorical question. Although Jesus desires to avoid crucifixion, he chooses to be obedient to God and to be killed. Alternate translation: "I will not pray, 'Father, save me from this hour!'" (See: Rhetorical Question)

### Father (ULT)
### Father (UST)

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

### this hour (ULT)
### this time when I will suffer and die (UST)

Here "this hour" is a metonym that represents when Jesus would suffer and die on the cross. (See: Metonymy)

**ULT**

**27** Now my soul is troubled and what should I say? 'Father, save me from this hour'? But for this reason I came to this hour.

**UST**

**27** Now my soul is greatly troubled. Should I say, 'Father, save me from this time when I will suffer and die!'? No, for this is the very reason I came into this world.

### Translation Words - ULT

- save
- Father
- soul
- is troubled
- hour
- hour

### Translation Words - UST

- save
- Father
- soul
- is greatly troubled
- time when I will suffer and die
- into this world

# John 12:28

**glorify your name (ULT)**
**show how powerful you are in all you have said, in all you have done, and in all you are (UST)**

Here the word "name" is a metonym that refers to God. Alternate translation: "make your glory known" or "reveal your glory" (See: Metonymy)

**came...a voice...from heaven (ULT)**

This represents God speaking. Sometimes people avoid referring directly to God because they respect him. Alternate translation: "God spoke from the heavens" (See: Metonymy and Euphemism)

## Translation Words - ULT

- heaven
- glorify
- I have glorified it
- I will glorify it
- Father
- name
- a voice

## Translation Words - UST

- heaven
- show how powerful you are in all you have said, in all you have done, and in all you are
- I have already displayed my nature, my words, and my works
- I will do it
- My Father
- show how powerful you are in all you have said, in all you have done, and in all you are
- God spoke

**ULT**

**28** Father, glorify your name." Then a voice came from heaven and said, "I have glorified it and I will glorify it again."

**UST**

**28** My Father, show how powerful you are in all you have said, in all you have done, and in all you are!" Then God spoke from heaven, "I have already displayed my nature, my words, and my works; and I will do it again!"

## John 12:29

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

• An angel

### Translation Words - UST

• an angel

---

**ULT**

**29** Then the crowd that stood by and heard it said that it had thundered. Others said, "An angel has spoken to him."

**UST**

**29** The crowd that was there heard the voice of God, but some said it was just thunder. Others said an angel had spoken to Jesus.

---

# John 12:30

## General Information:

Jesus explains why the voice spoke from heaven.

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- voice

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- voice

---

**ULT**

**30** Jesus answered and said, "This voice did not come for me, but for you.

**UST**

**30** Jesus replied to them, "The voice you heard speaking was God's voice. However, he spoke not for my benefit, but for yours!

## John 12:31

**Now is the judgment of this world (ULT)**
**Now is the time for God to judge the world (UST)**

Here "this world" is a metonym that refers to all the people in the world. Alternate translation: "Now is the time for God to judge all of the people" (See: Metonymy)

**Now will the ruler of this world be thrown out (ULT)**
**Now is the time when he will drive out Satan, the one who rules this world (UST)**

Here "ruler" refers to Satan. You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "Now is the time when I will destroy the power of Satan who rules this world" (See: Active or Passive)

### Translation Words - ULT

- of...world
- of...world (2)
- the judgment
- will...be thrown
- ruler

### Translation Words - UST

- world
- world (2)
- to judge
- he will drive
- Satan, the one who rules

**ULT**

**31** Now is the judgment of this world: Now will the ruler of this world be thrown out.

**UST**

**31** Now is the time for God to judge the world. Now is the time when he will drive out Satan, the one who rules this world.

## John 12:32

### General Information:

In verse 33 John tells us background information about what Jesus said about being "lifted up" (See: Background Information)

### When I am lifted up from the earth (ULT)
### As for me, when people raise me high on a cross (UST)

Here Jesus refers to his crucifixion. You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "When people raise me high on a cross" (See: Active or Passive)

### I will draw everyone to myself (ULT)
### I will draw everyone to myself (UST)

Through his crucifixion, Jesus will provide a way for everyone to trust in him.

### Translation Words - ULT

- earth

### Translation Words - UST

- people raise me high on a cross

---

**ULT**

**32** When I am lifted up from the earth, I will draw everyone to myself."

**UST**

**32** As for me, when people raise me high on a cross, I will draw everyone to myself."

## John 12:33

**this…he said…to indicate what kind of death he would die (ULT)**
**this…He said…to let the people know how he would die (UST)**

John interprets Jesus' words to mean that people will crucify him. Alternate translation: "He said this to let the people know how he would die" (See: Background Information)

### Translation Words - ULT

- of death
- die

### Translation Words - UST

- how
- he would die

## John 12:34

### The Son of Man...must...be lifted up (ULT)
### the Son of Man will die (UST)

The phrase "lifted up" means crucified. You may translate this in a way that includes the implied words "on a cross." Alternate translation: "The Son of Man must be lifted up on a cross" (See: Ellipsis)

### the...the...of Man...Who is this...Son (ULT)
### Someone in the...the...of Man...Who is this...Son (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) "What is the identity of this Son of Man? or 2) "What kind of Son of Man are you talking about?"

### Translation Words - ULT

- law
- Son of Man
- Son...of Man
- Christ
- forever

### Translation Words - UST

- scriptures
- Son of Man
- Son...of Man
- Messiah
- forever

**ULT**

**34** Then the crowd answered him, "We have heard from the law that the Christ will stay forever. How can you say, 'The Son of Man must be lifted up'? Who is this Son of Man?"

**UST**

**34** Someone in the crowd answered him, "We understand from the scriptures that the Messiah will live forever. So why do you say that the Son of Man will die? Who is this 'Son of Man'?"

## John 12:35

**The light will still be with you for a short amount of time. Walk while you have the light, so that darkness does not overtake you. He who walks in the darkness does not know where he is going**

Here "light" is a metaphor for Jesus' teachings which reveal the truth of God. To "walk in darkness" is a metaphor that means to live without God's truth. Alternate translation: "My words are like a light to you, to help you understand how to live as God wants you to. I will not be with you much longer. You need to follow my instructions while I am still with you. If you reject my words, it will be like walking in darkness and you cannot see where you are going" (See: Metaphor)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- of time
- darkness
- darkness
- light
- light (2)
- overtake
- Walk
- He who walks
- while
- know

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- longer
- the darkness
- darkness
- My message is like a light
- that light...my light (2)
- will overtake
- Live
- Those who walk
- in...while
- see

**ULT**

**35** Jesus then said to them, "The light will still be with you for a short amount of time. Walk while you have the light, so that darkness does not overtake you. He who walks in the darkness does not know where he is going.

**UST**

**35** Jesus answered, "My message is like a light that will shine on you for just a little longer. Live in that light while you have my light, or the darkness will overtake you. Those who walk in the darkness cannot see where they are going!

## John 12:36

**While you have the light, believe in the light so that you may be sons of light (ULT)**
**Trust in that light while you have the light; then you will belong to the light (UST)**

The "light" is a metaphor for the teachings of Jesus which reveal the truth of God. "sons of light" is a metaphor for those who accept the message of Jesus and live according to God's truth. Alternate translation: "While I am with you, believe what I teach so that God's truth will be in you" (See: Metaphor)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- sons
- believe
- light
- light (2)
- of light

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- belong to
- Trust
- light
- that light (2)
- the light

**ULT**

**36** While you have the light, believe in the light so that you may be sons of light." Jesus said these things and then departed and hid from them.

**UST**

**36** Trust in that light while you have the light; then you will belong to the light. After he said those things, Jesus left them and hid from them.

# John 12:37

## General Information:

This is a break in the main story line as the John begins to explain about the fulfillment of prophesies that had been spoken by the prophet Isaiah.

## Translation Words - ULT

- signs
- they...believe
- in him

## Translation Words - UST

- miracles
- most of the people did...believe
- what he had told them

**ULT**

**37** Although Jesus had done so many signs before them, they did not believe in him

**UST**

**37** Although Jesus had done many miracles, most of the people did not believe what he had told them.

## John 12:38

**so that the word of Isaiah the prophet would be fulfilled (ULT)**
**This was to make come true...Isaiah the prophet had written long ago (UST)**

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "in order to fulfill the message of Isaiah the prophet" (See: Active or Passive)

**Lord, who has believed our report,and to whom has the arm of the Lord been revealed (ULT)**

This appears in the form of two rhetorical questions to express the prophet's dismay that the people do not believe his message.They may be stated as a single rhetorical question, Alternate translation: "Lord, hardly anyone has believed our message, even though they have seen that you are powerfully able to save them!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

**the arm of the Lord (ULT)**
**The Lord...how he can powerfully rescue us (UST)**

This is a metonym that refers to the Lord's ability to rescue with power. (See: Metonymy)

**ULT**

**38** so that the word of Isaiah the prophet would be fulfilled, in which he said: "Lord, who has believed our report, and to whom has the arm of the Lord been revealed?"

**UST**

**38** This was to make come true what Isaiah the prophet had written long ago: "Lord, who has believed anything that they have heard from us? The Lord has shown us how he can powerfully rescue us!"

## Translation Words - ULT

- has...been revealed
- Lord
- of the Lord
- prophet
- has believed
- would be fulfilled
- of Isaiah
- report

## Translation Words - UST

- has shown
- Lord
- The Lord
- prophet
- has believed
- to make come true
- Isaiah
- anything that they have heard

## John 12:39

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- believe
- Isaiah

### Translation Words - UST

- trust in him
- Isaiah

**ULT**
**39** For this reason they could not believe, for Isaiah had also said,

**UST**
**39** Yet, they could not trust in him for the reason that Isaiah had written:

# John 12:40

**he has hardened their hearts…understand with their hearts (ULT)**
**he has made them stubborn…they would understand (UST)**

Here "hearts" is a metonym for a person's mind. The phrase "hardened their hearts" is a metaphor for making someone become stubborn. Also, to "understand with their hearts" means to "truly understand." Alternate translation: "he has made them stubborn… truly understand" (See: Metonymy and Metaphor)

**and turn (ULT)**

Here "turn" is a metaphor for "repent." Alternate translation: "and they would repent" (See: Metaphor)

## Translation Words - ULT

- hearts
- hearts
- I would heal
- turn
- understand
- he has hardened

## Translation Words - UST

- he has made them stubborn
- they would understand
- I cannot heal
- they would repent and pray for me to forgive them
- they would understand
- he has made them stubborn

**ULT**

**40** "He has blinded their eyes, and he has hardened their hearts; otherwise they would see with their eyes and understand with their hearts, and turn, and I would heal them."

**UST**

**40** "The Lord has made them so they cannot see, and he has made them stubborn; they cannot even see with their eyes, If they could, they would understand; they would repent and pray for me to forgive them. For this reason, I cannot heal them!"

## John 12:41

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- glory
- Isaiah

### Translation Words - UST

- would serve God powerfully
- Isaiah

**ULT**
**41** Isaiah said these things because he saw the glory of Jesus and spoke of him.

**UST**
**41** Isaiah wrote those words long ago because he understood that the Messiah would serve God powerfully.

# John 12:42

**so that they would not be banned from the synagogue (ULT)**

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "so people would not stop them from going to the synagogue" (See: Active or Passive)

## Translation Words - ULT

- they...confess it
- believed
- Pharisees
- in Jesus
- rulers

## Translation Words - UST

- they did...speak out about trusting in Jesus
- put their trust
- Pharisees
- in Jesus
- leaders of the Jewish people

**ULT**

**42** But despite that, many of the rulers believed in Jesus; but because of the Pharisees, they did not confess it so that they would not be banned from the synagogue.

**UST**

**42** Although this was true, many of the leaders of the Jewish people put their trust in Jesus. Nevertheless, they greatly feared that the Pharisees would ban them from the synagogues, so they did not speak out about trusting in Jesus.

# John 12:43

**They loved the praise that comes from people more than the praise that comes from God**

"They wanted people to praise them more than they wanted God to praise them"

## Translation Words - ULT

- they loved
- from God
- praise
- praise (2)

## Translation Words - UST

- They preferred
- God
- praise and respect them
- would praise them (2)

**ULT**

**43** For they loved the praise from people more than the praise from God.

**UST**

**43** They preferred that other people praise and respect them rather than that God would praise them.

## John 12:44

### General Information:

Now John returns to the main story line. This is another time when Jesus begins to speak to the crowd.

### Jesus...cried out and said (ULT)
### Jesus...shouted out to the crowd that had gathered (UST)

Here John implies that a crowd of people had gathered to hear Jesus speak. Alternate translation: "Jesus shouted out to the crowd that had gathered" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- The one who believes
- believes
- in me
- in me
- him who sent
- cried out

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Those who put their trust
- are...putting their trust
- in me
- only...in me
- the Father who sent
- shouted out to the crowd that had gathered

**ULT**

**44** Then Jesus cried out and said, "The one who believes in me, believes not only in me but also in him who sent me,

**UST**

**44** Jesus shouted out to the crowd that had gathered, "Those who put their trust in me are not only putting their trust in me but also are putting their trust in the Father who sent me.

## John 12:45

**the one who sees me sees him who sent me (ULT)**
**you see me, you are also seeing the one who sent me (UST)**

Here the word "him" refers to God. Alternate translation: "the one who sees me sees God, who sent me"

### Translation Words - ULT

 • him who sent

### Translation Words - UST

 • one who sent

# John 12:46

**Connecting Statement:**

Jesus continues speaking to the crowd.

**I...a light...have come as (ULT)**
**I...as the light...have come (UST)**

Here the "light" is a metaphor for Jesus' example. Alternate translation: "I have come to show the truth" (See: Metaphor)

**may not remain in the darkness (ULT)**
**will not remain in the darkness (UST)**

> **ULT**
> **46** I have come as a light into the world, so that everyone believes in me may not remain in the darkness.
>
> **UST**
> **46** I have come into the world as the light of the world; whoever puts his trust in me will not remain in the darkness.

Here "darkness" is a metaphor for living in ignorance of God's truth. Alternate translation: "may not continue to be spiritually blind" (See: Metaphor)

**the world (ULT)**
**the world...the world (UST)**

Here "the world" is a metonym that represents all of the people in the world. (See: Metonymy)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- world
- believes
- in me
- darkness
- a light

**Translation Words - UST**

- world...world
- whoever puts his trust
- in me
- darkness
- as the light

# John 12:47

**If anyone hears my words but does not keep them, I do not judge him; for I have not come to judge the world, but to save the world**

Here "to judge the world" implies condemnation. Jesus did not come to condemn people. Alternate translation: "If anyone hears my teaching and rejects it, I do not condemn him. I have not come to condemn people. Instead, I have come to save those who trust in me" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

## Translation Words - ULT

- save
- world
- world (2)
- judge
- judge (2)
- keep them

## Translation Words - UST

- to save…from being punished for their sins
- people of the world
- them (2)
- do…judge
- to condemn (2)
- to obey

**ULT**

[47] If anyone hears my words but does not keep them, I do not judge him; for I have not come to judge the world, but to save the world.

**UST**

[47] I do not judge those who listen to my words but refuse to obey me. I did not come into this world to condemn the people of the world. Instead, I came to save them from being punished for their sins.

## John 12:48

### on the last day (ULT)

"at the time when God judges people's sins"

### Translation Words - ULT

- word
- one who judges
- will judge
- last day
- who...receive
- The one who rejects
- day

### Translation Words - UST

- message
- are condemned by
- will condemn
- last day, latter days
- do...follow
- those who reject
- day

**ULT**

**48** The one who rejects me and who does not receive my words, has one who judges him. The word which I have spoken, this will judge him on the last day.

**UST**

**48** Yet, there is something that will condemn those who reject me and do not follow my message. They are condemned by the message I have spoken to them.

## John 12:49

**Father (ULT)**
**The Father (UST)**

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

### Translation Words - ULT

- the command
- Father
- who sent

### Translation Words - UST

- clear instructions
- The Father
- who sent

---

**ULT**

**49** For I did not speak for myself, but the Father himself who sent me gave me the command about what I should say and what I should speak.

**UST**

**49** When I taught about God, I was not merely saying what I thought. The Father, who sent me, gave me clear instructions on what I should say and how I should say it.

# John 12:50

**I know...that his command is eternal life (ULT)**
**I know that the Father's most important instructions**
**are the ones that teach people how to live forever (UST)**

"I know that the words that he commanded me to speak are the words that give life forever"

## Translation Words - ULT

- life
- eternal
- command
- Father
- just as
- I know

## Translation Words - UST

- live
- forever
- most important instructions...the ones that teach people
- my Father
- exactly what
- I know

**ULT**

**50** I know that his command is eternal life, so that is what I say—just as the Father has spoken to me, so I speak."

**UST**

**50** I know that the Father's most important instructions are the ones that teach people how to live forever, and I have said exactly what my Father has told me to say."

# John 13

## John 13 General Notes

## Structure and formatting

The events of this chapter are commonly referred to as the last supper or the Lord's supper. This Passover feast in many ways parallels Jesus' sacrifice as the lamb of God. (See: Passover)

## Special concepts in this chapter

### The washing of feet

People in the ancient Near East thought that feet were very dirty. Only servants would wash people's feet. The disciples did not want Jesus to wash their feet because they considered him their master and themselves his servants, but he wanted to show them that they needed to serve each other. (See: Symbolic Action)

### I AM

John records Jesus as saying these words four times in this book, once in this chapter. They stand alone as a complete sentence, and they literally translate the Hebrew word for "I AM," by which Yahweh identified himself to Moses. For these reasons, many people believe that when Jesus said these words he was claiming to be Yahweh. (See: Yahweh).

## Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

### "Son of Man"

Jesus refers to himself as the "Son of Man" in this chapter (John 13:31). Your language may not allow people to speak of themselves as if they were speaking about someone else. (See: Son of Man, son of man and First, Second or Third Person)

# John 13:1

## General Information:

It is not yet Passover and Jesus is together with his disciples for supper. These verses explain the setting of the story and give background information about Jesus and Judas. (See: Background Information)

## Father (ULT)
## Father (UST)

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

## Having loved (ULT)
## He showed how much he loved (UST)

This is the kind of love that comes from God, which is focused on the good of others, even when it does not benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do.

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Having loved
- he loved
- world
- world
- Passover
- Father
- hour
- Festival
- knew

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- He showed how much he loved
- and he loved
- world
- world
- Passover
- Father
- time
- Festival
- knew

---

**ULT**

**1** Now before the Festival of the Passover, Jesus knew that his hour had come to go out of this world to the Father. Having loved his own who were in the world, he loved them to the end.

**UST**

**1** It was now the day before the Passover Festival was to begin. Jesus knew it was time for him to leave this world and to return to his Father. He showed how much he loved those who were with him here in this world, and he loved them until the end of his life.

## John 13:2

**the devil had already put into the heart of Judas Iscariot son of Simon, to betray Jesus (ULT)**
**the devil had already put the thought into the mind of Judas Iscariot, the son of Simon, that he would hand Jesus over to his enemies (UST)**

The phrase "put it into the heart" is an idiom that means to cause someone to think about something. Alternate translation: "the devil had already caused Judas Iscariot, the son of Simon, to think about betraying Jesus" (See: Idiom)

### Translation Words - ULT

- heart
- devil
- of Judas Iscariot son of Simon
- betray
- supper

### Translation Words - UST

- mind
- devil
- of Judas Iscariot, the son of Simon
- he would hand...over to his enemies
- evening meal

**ULT**

² While supper was taking place, the devil had already put into the heart of Judas Iscariot son of Simon, to betray Jesus.

**UST**

² Before Jesus and his apprentices had their evening meal, the devil had already put the thought into the mind of Judas Iscariot, the son of Simon, that he would hand Jesus over to his enemies.

# John 13:3

## Connecting Statement:

Verse 3 continues to tell us background information about what Jesus knew. The action in the story begins in verse 4. (See: Background Information)

## Father (ULT)
## his Father (UST)

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

## had given everything to him...into his hands (ULT)
## had given him...over everything...complete power and authority (UST)

Here "his hands" is a metonym for power and authority. Alternate translation: "had given him complete power and authority over everything" (See: Metonymy)

## and...he had come from God...was going back to God (ULT)
## also...he himself had come from God...would soon return to God (UST)

Jesus had always been with the Father, and would return there after his work on earth was finished.

> **ULT**
>
> **3** He knew that the Father had given everything to him, into his hands, and that he had come from God and was going back to God.
>
> **UST**
>
> **3** Yet Jesus knew that his Father had given him complete power and authority over everything. He also knew that he himself had come from God and would soon return to God.

## Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- Father
- hands
- He knew

## Translation Words - UST

- God
- God
- his Father
- complete power and authority
- Yet Jesus knew...He...knew

# John 13:4

## He got up from dinner and took off his outer clothing (ULT)

Because the region was very dusty, it was customary for the host of a dinner to provide a servant to wash the feet of the guests. Jesus took off his outer clothing so he would look like a servant.

## Translation Words - ULT

- dinner
- and wrapped it around
- He got up
- outer clothing

## Translation Words - UST

- dinner
- wrapped...around
- Jesus got up
- his outer clothing

**ULT**

**4** He got up from dinner and took off his outer clothing. Then he took a towel and wrapped it around himself.

**UST**

**4** Jesus got up from the dinner. He took off his outer clothing and wrapped a towel around his waist.

# John 13:5

**began to wash the feet of the disciples (ULT)**
**began to wash the apprentices' feet (UST)**

Because the region was very dusty, it was customary for the host of a dinner to provide a servant to wash the feet of the guests. Jesus did the work of the servant by washing the disciples' feet.

## Translation Words - ULT

- disciples
- water
- he had put around himself

## Translation Words - UST

- apprentices
- some water
- gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around

**ULT**

**5** Then he poured water into a basin and began to wash the feet of the disciples and dry them with the towel that he had put around himself.

**UST**

**5** He poured out some water into a basin and began to wash the apprentices' feet and to wipe them dry with the towel.

# John 13:6

**Lord, are you going to wash my feet (ULT)**
**Lord, are you going to wash my feet (UST)**

Peter's question shows that he is not willing for Jesus to wash his feet. Alternate translation: "Lord, it is not right for you to wash the feet of me, a sinner!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- Simon Peter

## Translation Words - UST

- Lord
- Simon Peter

**ULT**

**6** Then he came to Simon Peter, and Peter said to him, "Lord, are you going to wash my feet?"

**UST**

**6** He came to Simon Peter, who said to him, "Lord, are you going to wash my feet?"

## John 13:7

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- understand
- you will understand

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- do…understand
- you will understand

**ULT**

**7** Jesus answered and said to him, "What I am doing you do not understand now, but you will understand this later."

**UST**

**7** Jesus replied to him, "You do not understand now what I am doing for you, but later you will understand."

# John 13:8

**If I do not wash you, you have no share with me (ULT)**
**If I do not wash you, then you have nothing to do with me (UST)**

Here Jesus states two negatives to convince Peter to allow him to wash his feet. Jesus implies that Peter must let him wash his feet if he wants to continue being a disciple. Alternate translation: "If I wash you, you will always belong with me" (See: Double Negatives and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Peter
- ever

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Peter
- never

**ULT**

**8** Peter said to him, "You will certainly not ever wash my feet." Jesus answered him, "If I do not wash you, you have no share with me."

**UST**

**8** Peter said, "You will never wash my feet!" Jesus replied to him, "If I do not wash you, then you have nothing to do with me."

## John 13:9

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- Simon Peter
- hands
- head

### Translation Words - UST

- Lord
- Simon Peter
- my hands
- my head

**ULT**

**9** Simon Peter said to him, "Lord, do not only wash my feet, but also my hands and my head."

**UST**

**9** So Simon Peter said to him, "Lord, wash not only my feet! Wash my hands and my head also!"

# John 13:10

### General Information:

Jesus uses the word "you" to refer to all of his disciples.

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to speak to Simon Peter.

### He who is bathed has no need, except to wash his feet (ULT)
### One who has taken a bath needs only to wash his feet (UST)

Here "bathed" is a metaphor that means that God has cleansed a person spiritually. Alternate translation: "If anyone has already received God's forgiveness, he now only needs to receive cleansing from his daily sins" (See: Metaphor)

> **ULT**
> **10** Jesus said to him, "He who is bathed has no need, except to wash his feet, but he is completely clean; and you are clean, but not everyone."
>
> **UST**
> **10** Jesus said to him, "One who has taken a bath needs only to wash his feet. The rest of his body is already clean. You are clean, but not all of you."

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- clean
- clean

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- clean
- clean

## John 13:11

### Not...all of you are clean (ULT)
### Not all of you are clean (UST)

Jesus implies that the one who will betray him, Judas, has not trusted in him. Therefore God has not forgiven him of his sins. Alternate translation: "Not all of you have received God's forgiveness" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### Translation Words - ULT

- clean
- who would betray
- Jesus knew

### Translation Words - UST

- clean
- who was going to hand...over
- He knew

**ULT**

**11** (For Jesus knew who would betray him; that is why he said, "Not all of you are clean.")

**UST**

**11** He knew who was going to hand him over. That is the reason he said, "Not all of you are clean."

## John 13:12

### Do you know what I have done for you (ULT)
### Do you understand what I have done for you (UST)

This remark appears in the form of a question so Jesus can emphasize the importance of what he is teaching his disciples. Alternate translation: "You need to understand what I have done for you!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Do you know
- garments

### Translation Words - UST

- Do you understand
- outer clothing

**ULT**

**12** So when Jesus had washed their feet and taken his garments and sat down again, he said to them, "Do you know what I have done for you?

**UST**

**12** After he finished washing their feet, he put his outer clothing on again. Then he sat down at his place again and said, "Do you understand what I have done for you?

# John 13:13

### You call me 'teacher' and 'Lord (ULT)
### You call me 'teacher' and 'Lord (UST)

Here Jesus implies that his disciples have great respect for him. Alternate translation: "You show me great respect when you call me 'teacher' and 'Lord.'" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### Translation Words - ULT

- call
- Lord
- teacher

### Translation Words - UST

- call
- Lord
- teacher

---

**ULT**

**13** You call me 'teacher' and 'Lord,' and you are speaking correctly, because so I am.

**UST**

**13** You call me 'teacher' and 'Lord. You are right to say this, for that is what I am.

## John 13:14

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- Teacher

### Translation Words - UST

- your teacher
- Lord

**ULT**

**14** If I then, the Lord and the Teacher, have washed your feet, you should also wash the feet of one another.

**UST**

**14** If I, your teacher and Lord, have washed your feet, you also ought to serve each other by doing things like washing each other's feet.

## John 13:15

### you should also do just as I did for you (ULT)

Jesus implies that his disciples should be willing to follow his example and serve one another. Alternate translation: "you should also humbly serve each other" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### Translation Words - ULT

- just as

### Translation Words - UST

- as

**UST**

**15** I have given you an example to follow in order that you should do as I have done for you.

# John 13:16

## Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to speak to his disciples.

## Truly, truly

See how you translated this in John 1:51.

## greater than (ULT)
## greater (UST)

one who is more important or more powerful, or one who should have an easier life or a more pleasant life

## Translation Words - ULT

- master
- Truly
- truly (2)
- a messenger
- he who sent
- a servant

## Translation Words - UST

- than...master
- the truth
- the truth (2)
- a messenger
- than the one who has sent
- A servant

**ULT**

**16** Truly, truly, I say to you, a servant is not greater than his master; nor is a messenger greater than he who sent him.

**UST**

**16** I am telling you the truth: A servant is not greater than his master, nor is a messenger greater than the one who has sent him.

## John 13:17

**you are blessed (ULT)**
**God will be pleased with you (UST)**

Here "bless" means to cause good, beneficial things to happen to a person. You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "God will bless you" (See: Active or Passive)

### Translation Words - ULT

- blessed
- you know

### Translation Words - UST

- God will be pleased
- you now know

**ULT**

**17** If you know these things, you are blessed if you do them.

**UST**

**17** Since you now know these things, God will be pleased with you if you do them.

## John 13:18

### so that the scripture will be fulfilled (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "this is in order to fulfill the scripture" (See: Active or Passive)

### He who eats bread with me lifted up his heel against me (ULT)
### The one who ate my food with me as a friend, he has turned against me and treated me like an enemy (UST)

Here the phrase "eats my bread" is an idiom for someone who pretends to be a friend. The phrase "lifted up his heel" is also an idiom, which means someone who has become an enemy. If you have idioms in your language that carry these meanings, you can use them here. Alternate translation: "the one who has pretended to be my friend has turned out to be an enemy" (See: Idiom)

### Translation Words - ULT

- scripture
- I have chosen
- will be fulfilled
- bread
- know

### Translation Words - UST

- what is written in scripture
- I have chosen
- must come true
- food
- know

> **ULT**
>
> **18** I am not speaking about all of you; I know those whom I have chosen—but so that the scripture will be fulfilled: 'He who eats bread with me lifted up his heel against me.'
>
> **UST**
>
> **18** I am not saying this about all of you. I know the ones I have chosen. However, what is written in scripture must come true: 'The one who ate my food with me as a friend, he has turned against me and treated me like an enemy.'

## John 13:19

**I tell you this now before it happens (ULT)**
**I am telling you this now before he hands me over (UST)**

"I am telling you now what is going to happen before it happens"

**I AM (ULT)**
**I am God (UST)**

Possible meanings are 1) Jesus is identifying himself as Yahweh, who identified himself to Moses as "I AM," or 2) Jesus is saying, "I am the one I claim to be."

### Translation Words - ULT

- you may believe

### Translation Words - UST

- you may believe

**ULT**
**19** I tell you this now before it happens so that when it happens, you may believe that I AM.

**UST**
**19** I am telling you this now before he hands me over so that when it does happen, you may believe that I am God.

## John 13:20

### Truly, truly

See how you translated this in John 1:51.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Truly
- truly (2)
- he who receives
- receives
- who receives (2)
- receives (2)
- I sent
- him who sent

### Translation Words - UST

- the truth
- the truth (2)
- If you receive
- you are also receiving
- receives (2)
- is also receiving (2)
- I send to you
- my Father, the one who sent

**ULT**

**20** Truly, truly, I say to you, he who receives whomever I sent, receives me, and he who receives me, receives him who sent me."

**UST**

**20** I am telling you the truth: If you receive the one I send to you, you are also receiving me; and whoever receives me, is also receiving my Father, the one who sent me."

## John 13:21

**he was troubled (ULT)**
**he was disturbed (UST)**

concerned, upset

**Truly, truly**

See how you translated this in John 1:51.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Jesus
- He testified
- Truly
- truly (2)
- in spirit
- will betray
- he was troubled

**Translation Words - UST**

- Jesus
- He solemnly declared
- the truth
- the truth (2)
- within himself
- is going to hand...over to my enemies
- he was disturbed

---

**ULT**

**21** When Jesus said this, he was troubled in spirit. He testified and said, "Truly, truly, I say to you that one of you will betray me."

**UST**

**21** After Jesus said this, he was disturbed within himself. He solemnly declared, "I am telling you the truth: One of you is going to hand me over to my enemies."

## John 13:22

**The disciples looked at each other, wondering of whom he was speaking (ULT)**
**The apprentices looked at one another. They were confused about which of them he was talking about (UST)**

"The disciples looked at each other and wondered: "Who will betray Jesus?"

### Translation Words - ULT

- disciples

### Translation Words - UST

- apprentices

## John 13:23

**one of his disciples...whom Jesus loved (ULT)**
**One of his apprentices...John, the one whom Jesus especially loved (UST)**

This refers to John.

**lying down at the table (ULT)**
**at the table (UST)**

During the time of Christ, Jews would often dine together in the Greek style, in which they lay on their sides on low couches. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**Jesus' side (ULT)**
**next to...Jesus (UST)**

Lying with one's head against the side of another diner in the Greek style was considered to be the place of greatest friendship with him.

**loved (ULT)**
**John, the one...especially loved (UST)**

This kind of love comes from God and focuses on the good of others, even when it does not benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Jesus
- Jesus
- loved
- disciples

**Translation Words - UST**

- Jesus
- Jesus
- John, the one...especially loved
- apprentices

**ULT**

**23** But one of his disciples, whom Jesus loved, was lying down at the table against Jesus' side.

**UST**

**23** One of his apprentices, John, the one whom Jesus especially loved, was at the table next to Jesus.

# John 13:24

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

## Translation Words - ULT

• Simon Peter

## Translation Words - UST

• Simon Peter

**ULT**

**24** Therefore Simon Peter motioned to this disciple, "Ask him who it is about whom he is speaking."

**UST**

**24** Simon Peter motioned to John that he should ask Jesus which apprentice he was talking about.

# John 13:25

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

## Translation Words - ULT

- of Jesus
- Lord

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Lord

# John 13:26

**Iscariot (ULT)**
**Iscariot (UST)**

This indicates that Judas was from the village of Kerioth. (See:
Background Information)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Jesus
- to Judas son of Simon Iscariot

**Translation Words - UST**

- Jesus
- to Judas, the son of Simon Iscariot

**ULT**

**26** Jesus answered, "It is he to whom I will dip the piece of bread and hand it over and give it to him." Then he dipped the bread and gave it to Judas son of Simon Iscariot.

**UST**

**26** Jesus answered, "It is the one to whom I will give this piece of bread after I dip it in the bowl." Then he dipped the bread and gave it to Judas, the son of Simon Iscariot.

# John 13:27

### Then after the bread (ULT)
### As soon as Judas took the piece of bread (UST)

The words "Judas took" are understood from the context. Alternate translation: "Then after Judas took the bread" (See: Ellipsis)

### Satan entered into him (ULT)
### Satan entered in to him and took control of him (UST)

This is an idiom that means Satan took complete control of Judas. Alternate translation: "Satan took control of him" or "Satan started to command him" (See: Idiom)

### Satan…Jesus…therefore said to him (ULT)

Here Jesus is speaking to Judas.

### What you are doing, do it quickly (ULT)
### Whatever you need to do, do it quickly (UST)

"Do quickly what you are planning to do!"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Satan

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Satan

**ULT**

**27** Then after the bread, when Satan entered into him, Jesus therefore said to him, "What you are doing, do it quickly."

**UST**

**27** As soon as Judas took the piece of bread, Satan entered in to him and took control of him. Jesus said to him, "Whatever you need to do, do it quickly."

## John 13:28

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- knew

### Translation Words - UST

- knew

**ULT**

**28** Now no one who was lying down at the table knew why he said this to him.

**UST**

**28** No one else at the table knew why Jesus had said that to him.

# John 13:29

## that he should give something to the poor (ULT)

You can translate this as a direct quote: "Go and give some money to the poor."

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Judas
- festival

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Judas
- Passover Festival

**ULT**

**29** For some thought that, since Judas had the moneybag, Jesus said to him, "Buy what we need to have for the festival," or that he should give something to the poor.

**UST**

**29** Some thought that because Judas had the money bag, Jesus was telling him to go and buy some things needed for the Passover Festival. Others thought Jesus was telling Judas to give something to the poor.

## John 13:30

**he went out immediately. It was...night (ULT)**
**immediately Judas went out. It was...night (UST)**

John seems to draw attention here to the fact that Judas will do his evil or "dark" deed in the darkness of the night. Alternate translation: "he went out immediately into the dark night" (See: Background Information)

### Translation Words - ULT

• After Judas...received

### Translation Words - UST

• After receiving

**ULT**

**30** After Judas therefore received the bread, he went out immediately. It was night.

**UST**

**30** After receiving the bread, immediately Judas went out. It was night.

# John 13:31

### Now the Son of Man is glorified, and God is glorified in him (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "Now people are about to see how the Son of Man will receive honor and how God will receive honor through what the Son of Man is doing" (See: Active or Passive)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- God
- is glorified
- is glorified (2)
- Son of Man

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- God
- God will make people know what...am doing
- will make people know what...is doing as well, and people will praise him for it (2)
- I...Son of Man...I...Son of Man

**ULT**

**31** Therefore, when Judas was gone, Jesus said, "Now the Son of Man is glorified, and God is glorified in him.

**UST**

**31** After Judas left, Jesus said, "Now God will make people know what I, the Son of Man, am doing. I, the Son of Man, will make people know what God is doing as well, and people will praise him for it.

# John 13:32

## God...will glorify him in himself, and he will glorify him immediately (ULT)

The word "him" refers to the Son of Man. The word "himself" is a reflexive pronoun that refers to God. Alternate translation: "God himself will immediately give honor to the Son of Man" (See: Reflexive Pronouns)

## Translation Words - ULT

- God
- will glorify
- he will glorify (2)

## Translation Words - UST

- God
- will also honor
- honor (2)

**ULT**

**32** God will glorify him in himself, and he will glorify him immediately.

**UST**

**32** Since I, the Son of Man, make God known to people and since I honor him, God will also honor me. God will do this immediately.

## John 13:33

**Little children (ULT)**
**You whom I love as though you were my children (UST)**

Jesus uses the term "Little children" to communicate that he loves the disciples as though they were his children.

**as I said to the Jews (ULT)**
**Just like I told the Jewish leaders (UST)**

Here "Jews" is a synecdoche for the Jewish leaders who opposed Jesus. Alternate translation: "as I said to the Jewish leaders" (See: Synecdoche)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jews
- Little children
- You will look
- as

### Translation Words - UST

- Jewish leaders
- You whom I love as though you were my children
- Then you will look...but I will not be here
- Just like

**ULT**

**33** Little children, I am with you for still a short amount of time. You will look for me, and as I said to the Jews, 'Where I am going, you cannot come.' Now I also say this to you.

**UST**

**33** You whom I love as though you were my children, I will continue with you only a short time longer. Then you will look for me, but I will not be here. Just like I told the Jewish leaders, I am telling you now, that where I am going, you cannot come.

# John 13:34

## Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues speaking to his disciples.

## you should love (ULT)
## You must love (UST)

This is the kind of love that comes from God and focuses on the good of others, even when it does not benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do.

## Translation Words - ULT

- a...commandment
- you should love
- I have loved
- should love (2)
- as

## Translation Words - UST

- command
- You must love
- I have loved
- love, beloved (2)
- just as

**ULT**

**34** I am giving you a new commandment, that you should love one another; as I have loved you, so also you should love one another.

**UST**

**34** I will give you this new command: You must love one another, just as I have loved you.

## John 13:35

**everyone (ULT)**
**all people (UST)**

You may need to make explicit that this exaggeration refers only to those people who see how the disciples love each other. (See: Hyperbole)

### Translation Words - ULT

- love
- disciples
- will know

### Translation Words - UST

- you love
- apprentices
- will know

# John 13:36

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Lord
- Simon Peter

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Lord
- Simon Peter

**ULT**

**36** Simon Peter said to him, "Lord, where are you going?" Jesus answered him, "Where I am going, you cannot follow me now, but you will follow later."

**UST**

**36** Simon Peter said to him, "Lord, where are you going?" Jesus replied, "Where I am going, you cannot come with me now; but you will come later."

## John 13:37

**my life...I will lay down (ULT)**

"give up my life" or "die"

### Translation Words - ULT

- life
- Lord
- Peter

### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- Lord
- Peter

## John 13:38

### Will you lay down your life for me (ULT)

This remark appears in the form of a question to add emphasis to Jesus' statement. Alternate translation: "You say that you will die for me, but the truth is that you will not!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

### the rooster will certainly not crow before you have denied me three times (ULT)

"you will say that you do not know me three times before the rooster crows"

### Translation Words - ULT

- life
- Jesus
- Truly
- truly (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- Jesus
- the truth
- the truth (2)

**ULT**

**38** Jesus answered, "Will you lay down your life for me? Truly, truly, I say to you, the rooster will certainly not crow before you have denied me three times."

**UST**

**38** Jesus answered, "You say that you are ready to die for me. I am telling you the truth: The rooster will not crow in the morning before you will say three times that you do not know me!"

# John 14

## John 14 General Notes

# Special concepts in this chapter

### "My Father's house"

Jesus used these words to speak of heaven, where God lives, not of the temple. (See: heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly)

### The Holy Spirit

Jesus told his disciples that he would send the Holy Spirit to them. The Holy Spirit is the Comforter (John 14:16) who is always with God's people to help them and to speak to God for them, He is also the Spirit of truth (John 14:17) who tells God's people what is true about God so they know him better and serve him well. (See: Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit)

# John 14:1

## Connecting Statement:

The part of the story from the previous chapter continues. Jesus reclines at the table with his disciples and continues to speak to them.

## Do not let your heart be troubled (ULT)
## Do not be upset or anxious (UST)

Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's inner being. Alternate translation: "Stop being so anxious and worried" (See: Metonymy)

## Translation Words - ULT

- God
- heart
- You believe
- believe (2)
- in me
- let...be troubled

## Translation Words - UST

- God
- Do...be upset or anxious
- You are trusting
- trust (2)
- in me
- Do...be upset or anxious

**ULT**
[1] "Do not let your heart be troubled. You believe in God, believe also in me.

**UST**
[1] "Do not be upset or anxious. You are trusting in God; trust also in me.

## John 14:2

**In my Father's house are many rooms (ULT)**
**Where my Father lives there are many places to live (UST)**

"There are many places to live in my Father's house"

**In my Father's house (ULT)**
**Where my Father lives (UST)**

This refers to heaven, where God lives.

**Father's (ULT)**
**Father (UST)**

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

**many rooms (ULT)**
**many places to live (UST)**

The word "room" can refer to a single room, or to a larger dwelling.

**I am going to prepare a place for you (ULT)**
**I will go there to prepare a place for you (UST)**

Jesus will prepare a place in heaven for every person who trusts in him. The "you" is plural and refers to all his disciples. (See: Forms of You)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Father's
- house

**Translation Words - UST**

- Father
- Where...lives

> **ULT**
>
> **2** In my Father's house are many rooms. But if it were not so, I would have told you, for I am going to prepare a place for you.
>
> **UST**
>
> **2** Where my Father lives there are many places to live. If that were not true, I would have told you. I will go there to prepare a place for you.

# John 14:3

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

## Translation Words - ULT

• receive

## Translation Words - UST

• take

**ULT**

**3** if I go and prepare a place for you, I will come again and receive you to myself, so that where I am you will also be.

**UST**

**3** And because I will go there to prepare a place for you, I will return and take you to be with me, so that where I am, there you may be with me.

## John 14:4

**the way (ULT)**
**the way (UST)**

This is a metaphor that has these possible meanings 1) "the way to God" or 2) "the one who takes people to God." (See: Metaphor)

### Translation Words - ULT

• You know

### Translation Words - UST

• You know...and you know

---

**ULT**
**4** You know the way to where I am going."

**UST**
**4** You know where I am going, and you know the way."

## John 14:5

**how can we know the way (ULT)**
**How can we know the way (UST)**

"how can we know how to get there?"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- Thomas
- we...know
- we know

### Translation Words - UST

- Lord
- Thomas
- we do...know
- we know

**ULT**

**5** Thomas said to Jesus, "Lord, we do not know where you are going, how can we know the way?"

**UST**

**5** Thomas said to him, "Lord, we do not know where you are going. How can we know the way?"

# John 14:6

**the truth (ULT)**
**the one who reveals the truth about God (UST)**

This is a metaphor that has these possible meanings 1) "the true person" or 2) "the one who speaks true words about God." (See: Metaphor)

**the life (ULT)**
**the one who gives eternal life to people (UST)**

This is a metaphor that means Jesus can give life to people. Alternate translation: "the one who can make people alive" (See: Metaphor)

**no one comes to the Father except through me (ULT)**
**I am the only one who can enable people to come to my Father. There is no other way (UST)**

People can come to God and live with him only by trusting Jesus. Alternate translation: "No one can come to the Father and live with him unless he comes through me" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**Father (ULT)**
**Father (UST)**

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

**ULT**

**6** Jesus said to him, "I am the way, and the truth, and the life; no one comes to the Father except through me.

**UST**

**6** Jesus said to him, "I am the way to where my Father is. I am the one who reveals the truth about God, and the one who gives eternal life to people. I am the only one who can enable people to come to my Father. There is no other way.

## Translation Words - ULT

- life
- Jesus
- truth
- Father

## Translation Words - UST

- one who gives eternal life to people
- Jesus
- one who reveals the truth about God
- Father

# John 14:7

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

## Translation Words - ULT

- Father
- you had known
- you would have known
- you know

## Translation Words - UST

- Father
- you really knew
- you would have known
- you know

---

**ULT**

**7** If you had known me, you would have known my Father also. From now on you know him and have seen him."

**UST**

**7** If you really knew who I was, you would have known my Father also. From now on, you know him, and it is as though you have seen him"

---

# John 14:8

**Lord, show us the Father (ULT)**
**Lord, show us the Father (UST)**

The "Father" is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Lord
- Father
- Philip

**Translation Words - UST**

- Lord
- Father
- Philip

**ULT**

**8** Philip said to Jesus, "Lord, show us the Father, and that will be enough for us."

**UST**

**8** Philip said to Jesus, "Lord, show us the Father and that will be all we will ever want!"

## John 14:9

**I have been with you for so long and you still do not know me, Philip (ULT)**
**Philip, I have been with you so long, and still you do not know me (UST)**

This remark appears in the form of a question to add emphasis to Jesus' words. Alternate translation: "Philip, I have been with you disciples already for a very long time. You should know me by now!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

**Whoever has seen me has seen the Father (ULT)**
**Those who have seen me, have seen my Father (UST)**

To see Jesus, who is God the Son, is to see God the Father. The "Father" is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

**How can you say, 'Show us the Father (ULT)**
**So why do you say 'Show us the Father (UST)**

This remark appears in the form of a question to emphasize Jesus' words to Philip. Alternate translation: "So you really should not be saying, 'Show us the Father!'" (See: Rhetorical Question)

**ULT**

**9** Jesus said to him, "I have been with you for so long and you still do not know me, Philip? Whoever has seen me has seen the Father. How can you say, 'Show us the Father'?

**UST**

**9** Jesus said to him, "Philip, I have been with you so long, and still you do not know me. Those who have seen me, have seen my Father. So why do you say 'Show us the Father'?

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Jesus
- Father
- Father (2)
- Philip
- for so long
- you...know

**Translation Words - UST**

- Jesus
- Father
- Father (2)
- Philip
- so long
- still you do...know

# John 14:10

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus asks Philip a question and then he continues to speak to all of his disciples.

### Do you not believe that I am in the Father and the Father is in me (ULT)

This remark appears in the form of a question to emphasize Jesus' words to Philip. Alternate translation: "You really should believe…in me." (See: Rhetorical Question)

### Father (ULT)
### my Father (UST)

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

### The words that I say to you I do not speak from my own authority

"What I am telling you is not from me" or "The words I tell you are not from me"

### I am…The words that…say to you (ULT)

Here "you" is plural. Jesus is now speaking to all of his disciples.

### Translation Words - ULT

- work
- you…believe
- Father
- Father
- Father (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- and works through me
- Do you…believe
- my Father
- my Father
- it is my Father who has sent me to tell you all of these things, for my Father (2)

**ULT**

**10** Do you not believe that I am in the Father and the Father is in me? The words that I say to you I do not speak from myself, but the Father living in me is doing his work.

**UST**

**10** Do you not believe that I am joined to my Father and that my Father is joined to me? The things I have told you—I did not think of these things; rather, it is my Father who has sent me to tell you all of these things, for my Father is joined to me and works through me.

# John 14:11

**I am in the Father, and the Father is in me (ULT)**
**I am joined to the Father and that the Father is joined to me (UST)**

This is an idiom that means God the Father and Jesus have a unique relationship. Alternate translation: "I am one with the Father, and the Father is one with me" or "my Father and I are just as though we were one" (See: Idiom)

## Translation Words - ULT

- works
- Believe
- believe
- Father
- Father

## Translation Words - UST

- of all the signs and mighty acts you have seen me do
- Trust…because I have told you
- trust me
- Father
- Father

**ULT**

**11** Believe me that I am in the Father, and the Father is in me, or else believe because of the works themselves.

**UST**

**11** Trust me because I have told you that I am joined to the Father and that the Father is joined to me, or else trust me because of all the signs and mighty acts you have seen me do.

# John 14:12

### Truly, truly

See how you translated this in John 1:51.

### he who believes in me (ULT)
### Whoever trusts in me (UST)

This means to believe that Jesus is the Son of God.

### Father (ULT)
### Father (UST)

This is an important title that describes the relationship between God and Jesus. (See: Translating Son and Father)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Truly
- truly (2)
- works
- he who believes
- Father
- in me

### Translation Words - UST

- the truth
- the truth (2)
- the things
- Whoever trusts
- Father
- in me

**ULT**

**12** Truly, truly, I say to you, he who believes in me, the works that I do, he also will do, and he will do greater works than these because I am going to the Father.

**UST**

**12** I am telling you the truth: Whoever trusts in me will also do the things that I do. He will do even greater works because I am going to be with the Father.

# John 14:13

### Whatever...you ask in my name (ULT)

Here "name" is a metonym that represents the authority of Jesus. Alternate translation: "Whatever you ask, using my authority" (See: Metonymy)

### so that the Father will be glorified in the Son (ULT)
### in order that everyone might honor the Father and that they might know the Father because of everything that I, his Son, do (UST)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "so I can show everyone how great my Father is" (See: Active or Passive)

### Father...Son (ULT)
### Father...Father...I, his Son (UST)

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. (See: Translating Son and Father)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Son
- will be glorified
- Father
- name

### Translation Words - UST

- I, his Son
- everyone might honor...they might know
- Father...Father
- name

> **ULT**
>
> **13** Whatever you ask in my name, this I will do, so that the Father will be glorified in the Son.
>
> **UST**
>
> **13** Whatever you ask in my name, that I will do. I will do this in order that everyone might honor the Father and that they might know the Father because of everything that I, his Son, do.

## John 14:14

**If you ask me anything in my name, I will do it (ULT)**
**If you ask the Father for anything because you belong to me, I will do it (UST)**

Here "name" is a metonym that represents the authority of Jesus. Alternate translation: "If you ask me anything as one of my followers, I will do it" or "Whatever you ask of me, I will do it because you belong to me" (See: Metonymy)

### Translation Words - ULT

• name

### Translation Words - UST

• because you belong to me

**ULT**
**14** If you ask me anything in my name, I will do it.

**UST**
**14** If you ask the Father for anything because you belong to me, I will do it.

## John 14:15

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- commandments
- you love
- you will keep

### Translation Words - UST

- you will live as I have taught you
- you love
- you will live as I have taught you

## John 14:16

**Comforter (ULT)**
**Helper, one who will come alongside (UST)**

This refers to the Holy Spirit.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Father
- will pray
- forever
- Comforter

### Translation Words - UST

- Father
- will ask
- forever
- Helper, one who will come alongside

**ULT**

**16** and I will pray to the Father, and he will give you another Comforter so that he will be with you forever—

**UST**

**16** Then I will ask the Father to give you another gift, and he will send you another Helper, one who will come alongside you to be with you forever.

# John 14:17

**Spirit of truth (ULT)**
**Spirit who tells the truth about God (UST)**

This refers to the Holy Spirit who teaches people what is true about God.

**The world cannot receive him (ULT)**
**The unbelieving people in this world will never welcome Him. The world (UST)**

Here the "world" is a metonym that refers to the people who oppose God. Alternate translation: "The unbelieving people in this world will never welcome him" or "Those who oppose God will not accept him" (See: Metonymy)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Spirit of truth
- of truth
- world
- receive
- know him
- know

## Translation Words - UST

- Spirit who tells the truth about God
- truth about God
- unbelieving people in this world...world
- will never welcome
- know him
- know

**ULT**

**17** the Spirit of truth. The world cannot receive him because it does not see him or know him. But you know him, for he lives with you and will be in you.

**UST**

**17** He is the Spirit who tells the truth about God. The unbelieving people in this world will never welcome Him. The world cannot see him or know him. You know him because he lives with you and he will be joined to you.

## John 14:18

**I will...leave you as orphans (ULT)**
**I will...abandon you and leave you with no one to care for you (UST)**

Here Jesus implies that he will not leave his disciples with no one to care for them. Alternate translation: "leave you with no one to care for you" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**ULT**

**18** I will not leave you as orphans; I will come back to you.

**UST**

**18** I will not abandon you and leave you with no one to care for you; I will come to you.

## John 14:19

**the world (ULT)**
**the world (UST)**

Here the "world" is a metonym that represents the people who do not belong to God. Alternate translation: "the unbelievers" (See: Metonymy)

### Translation Words - ULT

- live
- will...live
- world

### Translation Words - UST

- live
- will live
- world

---

**ULT**

**19** Yet a short amount of time and the world will no longer see me, but you see me. Because I live, you will also live.

**UST**

**19** Soon the world will not see me anymore, but you will see me. Because I live, you will live.

---

# John 14:20

**On...you will know that I am...my Father (ULT)**
**When you see me again, you will know that I...my Father...that (UST)**

God the Father and Jesus live as one person. Alternate translation: "you will know that my Father and I are just like one person"

**my...Father (ULT)**
**my...Father (UST)**

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

**you are in me, and that I am in you**

"you and I are just like one person"

## Translation Words - ULT

- Father
- day
- will know

## Translation Words - UST

- Father
- When you see me again
- will know

---

**ULT**

**20** On that day you will know that I am in my Father, and that you are in me, and that I am in you.

**UST**

**20** When you see me again, you will know that I am joined to my Father and that you are joined to me and I to you.

# John 14:21

### the one who loves (ULT)
### the ones who love (UST)

This kind of love comes from God and focuses on the good of others, even when it does not benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do.

### he...who loves me will be loved by my Father (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "my Father will love anyone who loves me" (See: Active or Passive)

### my...Father (ULT)
### my...Father (UST)

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

## Translation Words - ULT

- commandments
- the one who loves
- who loves (2)
- will be loved
- will love
- Father
- keeps

## Translation Words - UST

- commandments
- the ones who love
- And the ones who love (2)
- will love them, too
- will love
- Father
- obeys

**ULT**

**21** He who has my commandments and keeps them, this is the one who loves me, and he who loves me will be loved by my Father, and I will love him and I will show myself to him."

**UST**

**21** Everyone who has heard my commandments and obeys them, they are the ones who love me. And the ones who love me, my Father will love them, too; I will love them and I will reveal myself to them."

# John 14:22

### Judas (not Iscariot (ULT)
### Judas (not Iscariot, but the other apprentice with the same name...He (UST)

This refers to another disciple whose name was Judas, not to the disciple who was from the village of Kerioth who betrayed Jesus. (See: How to Translate Names)

### why is it that you will show yourself to us

Here the word "show" refers to revealing how wonderful Jesus is. Alternate translation: "Why will you reveal yourself only to us" or "Why will you only let us see how wonderful you are?"

### not to the world (ULT)
### not to the whole world (UST)

Here "world" is a metonym that represents the people who oppose God. Alternate translation: "not to those who do not belong to God" (See: Metonymy)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- world
- Judas
- Iscariot

### Translation Words - UST

- Lord
- to the whole world
- Judas...He
- Iscariot

**ULT**

**22** Judas (not Iscariot) said to Jesus, " Lord, why is it that you are about to show yourself to us and not to the world?"

**UST**

**22** Then Judas (not Iscariot, but the other apprentice with the same name) spoke to Jesus. He said, "Lord, how will you reveal yourself just to us and not to the whole world?"

# John 14:23

**Connecting Statement:**

Jesus responds to Judas (not Iscariot).

**If anyone loves me, he will keep my word (ULT)**
**This is how you can tell whether people love me:**
**Whether they do what I have told you to do (UST)**

"The one who loves me will do what I have told him to do"

**loves (ULT)**
**love (UST)**

This kind of love comes from God and focuses on the good of others, even when it does not benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do.

**My...Father (ULT)**
**my Father (UST)**

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

**we will come to him and we will make our home with him (ULT)**
**He and I will come to them and live with them (UST)**

The Father and the Son will share life with those who obey what Jesus commands. Alternate translation: "we will come to live with him, and will have a personal relationship with him" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- loves
- will love
- word
- Father
- he will keep

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- love
- will love
- what...have told you to do
- Father
- Whether they do

> **ULT**
> **23** Jesus answered and said to him, "If anyone loves me, he will keep my word. My Father will love him, and we will come to him and we will make our home with him.
>
> **UST**
> **23** Jesus replied to him, "This is how you can tell whether people love me: Whether they do what I have told you to do. Any people like this, my Father will love them. He and I will come to them and live with them.

## John 14:24

**He…me…word that you hear is not from me but from the Father who sent (ULT)**
**As for those who do not love me…The things I have told you…are not things that I have decided to say on my own; instead, they are things that my Father has sent… to tell you (UST)**

"The things I have told you are not things that I have decided to say on my own"

**He…word (ULT)**
**As for those who do not love…The things I have told you (UST)**

"The message"

**that you hear (ULT)**
**The things I have told you (UST)**

Here when Jesus says "you" he is speaking to all of his disciples.

### Translation Words - ULT

- who…love
- words
- word
- Father
- keep
- who sent

### Translation Words - UST

- As for those who do not love
- what I have told them to do
- The things I have told you
- my Father
- they will…obey
- they are things that…has sent…to tell you

**ULT**

**24** He who does not love me does not keep my words. The word that you hear is not from me but from the Father who sent me.

**UST**

**24** As for those who do not love me, they will not obey what I have told them to do. The things I have told you are not things that I have decided to say on my own; instead, they are things that my Father has sent me to tell you.

## John 14:25

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

**ULT**

**25** I have said these things to you, while I am staying with you.

**UST**

**25** I have said these things to you while I am still with you.

# John 14:26

**Father (ULT)**
**Father (UST)**

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Holy
- Comforter—the Holy Spirit
- Father
- name
- will teach
- will send
- Comforter

## Translation Words - UST

- Holy
- the Holy Spirit. He is the one who will encourage you. He
- Father
- authority
- will teach
- will send...will come
- He is the one who will encourage you

**ULT**

**26** However, the Comforter—the Holy Spirit whom the Father will send in my name—he will teach you everything and he will remind you of everything that I said to you.

**UST**

**26** But my Father will send the Holy Spirit. He is the one who will encourage you. He will come with my authority. He will teach you all of God's truth that you need to know. He will also cause you to remember all the things that I have told you.

## John 14:27

**world (ULT)**
**this world (UST)**

The "world" is a metonym that represents those people who do not love God. (See: Metonymy)

**Do not let your heart be troubled, and do not be afraid (ULT)**
**So do not be upset or anxious; and do not be afraid (UST)**

Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's inner being. Alternate translation: "So stop being anxious, and do not be afraid" (See: Metonymy)

### Translation Words - ULT

- be afraid
- heart
- world
- let...be troubled
- peace
- peace (2)
- as

### Translation Words - UST

- do...be afraid
- So do...be upset or anxious
- this world
- So do...be upset or anxious
- with peace
- it is...peace (2)
- a kind of peace no one and nothing that belongs to

**ULT**

**27** I leave you peace; I give you my peace. I do not give to you as the world gives. Do not let your heart be troubled, and do not be afraid.

**UST**

**27** As I leave you with peace, it is my peace that I am giving to you. I give you a kind of peace no one and nothing that belongs to this world can give you. So do not be upset or anxious; and do not be afraid.

## John 14:28

**you loved (ULT)**
**you loved (UST)**

This kind of love comes from God and desires the good of others, even when it does not benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do.

**I am going to the Father (ULT)**
**I am going back to the Father (UST)**

Here Jesus implies that he will return to his Father. Alternate translation: "I am going back to the Father" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**the Father is greater than I am (ULT)**
**the Father is greater than I (UST)**

> **ULT**
> **28** You heard that I said to you, 'I am going away, and I will come back to you.' If you loved me, you would be glad because I am going to the Father, for the Father is greater than I am.
>
> **UST**
> **28** You heard me say to you that I am going away and will later come back to you. If you loved me, you would be glad that I am going back to the Father because the Father is greater than I am.

Here Jesus implies that the Father has greater authority than the Son while the Son is on the earth. Alternate translation: "the Father has greater authority than I have here" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**Father (ULT)**
**Father (UST)**

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- you loved
- Father
- Father
- you would be glad

**Translation Words - UST**

- you loved
- Father
- Father
- you would be glad

## John 14:29

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

  • you will believe

### Translation Words - UST

  • you will continue to trust me

## John 14:30

**ruler of this world (ULT)**
**Satan...ruler of this world (UST)**

Here "ruler" refers to Satan. See how you translated this in John 12:31. Alternate translation: "Satan who rules this world"

**is coming...ruler (ULT)**
**is coming...Satan...ruler (UST)**

Here Jesus implies that Satan is coming to attack him. Alternate translation: "Satan is coming to attack me" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### Translation Words - ULT

- world
- ruler

### Translation Words - UST

- of this world
- Satan...ruler

**ULT**

**30** I will not speak with you much longer, for the ruler of this world is coming. He has nothing in me,

**UST**

**30** I will not be able to talk with you much longer because Satan, the ruler of this world is coming. But he has no control over what happens to me,

## John 14:31

**in order that the world will know (ULT)**
**that the world will know forever (UST)**

Here the "world" is a metonym for the people who do not belong to God. Alternate translation: "in order that the ones who do not belong to God may know" (See: Metonymy)

**the Father (ULT)**
**the Father (UST)**

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

### Translation Words - ULT

- commanded
- I love
- world
- Father
- Father
- Let us get up
- just as
- will know

### Translation Words - UST

- has commanded…to do
- I love
- world
- Father
- Father
- Come
- what
- will know forever

**ULT**

**31** but in order that the world will know that I love the Father, and just as the Father commanded me, thus I do. Let us get up and go from here."

**UST**

**31** and I will do what the Father has commanded me to do. This is so that the world will know forever that I love the Father. Come, let us go from here."

# John 15

## John 15 General Notes

## Structure and formatting

## Special concepts in this chapter

### Vine

Jesus used the vine as a metaphor for himself. This is because the vine of the grape plant is what takes water and minerals from the ground to the leaves and grapes. Without the vine, the grapes and leaves die. He wanted his followers to know that unless they loved and obeyed him, they would be unable to do anything that pleased God. (See: Metaphor)

# John 15:1

### Connecting Statement:

The part of the story from the previous chapter continues. Jesus reclines at the table with his disciples and continues to speak to them.

### I am the true vine (ULT)
### I am like a genuine vine (not like those Jewish leaders who do not teach the truth (UST)

Here the "true vine" is a metaphor. Jesus compares himself to a vine or a vine stem. He is the source of life that causes people to live in a way that pleases God. Alternate translation: "I am like a vine that produces good fruit" (See: Metaphor)

### my Father is the gardener (ULT)
### My Father is like a gardener who works to take care of a vineyard (UST)

The "gardener" is a metaphor. A "gardener" is a person who takes care of the vine to ensure it is as fruitful as possible. Alternate translation: "my Father is like a gardener" (See: Metaphor)

### my Father (ULT)
### My Father (UST)

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

### Translation Words - ULT

- true
- Father
- vine
- gardener

### Translation Words - UST

- genuine...not like those Jewish leaders who do not teach the truth
- Father
- vine
- gardener who works to take care of a vineyard

**ULT**

**1** "I am the true vine, and my Father is the gardener.

**UST**

**1** ""I am like a genuine vine (not like those Jewish leaders who do not teach the truth). My Father is like a gardener who works to take care of a vineyard.

# John 15:2

**Every branch in me that does not bear fruit, he takes... away (ULT)**
**Every branch in me that does not grow fruit—my Father cuts...off and takes...away (UST)**

Here "every branch" represents people, and "bear fruit" represents living in a way that pleases God. (See: Metaphor)

**he takes...away (ULT)**
**my Father cuts...off and takes...away (UST)**

"cuts off and takes away"

**Every...he prunes (ULT)**
**Every...he makes...clean by pruning (UST)**

"trims every branch"

## Translation Words - ULT

- fruit
- fruit (2)
- fruit (3)
- it will bear

## Translation Words - UST

- fruit
- good fruit (2)
- fruit (3)
- it may produce

**ULT**

**2** Every branch in me that does not bear fruit, he takes it away; and every branch that bears fruit, he prunes it so that it will bear more fruit.

**UST**

**2** Every branch in me that does not grow fruit—my Father cuts it off and takes it away. As for every branch that gives good fruit, he makes it clean by pruning it so that it may produce even more fruit.

# John 15:3

### You are already clean because of the message that I have spoken to you (ULT)

The implied metaphor here is the "clean branches" that have already been "pruned." Alternate translation: "It is as if you have already been pruned and are clean branches because you have obeyed what I have taught you" (See: Metaphor)

### You...to you (ULT)
### You...to you (UST)

The word "you" throughout this passage is plural and refers to the disciples of Jesus. (See: Forms of You)

### Translation Words - ULT

- message
- clean

### Translation Words - UST

- of the message
- pure

---

**ULT**

**3** You are already clean because of the message that I have spoken to you.

**UST**

**3** You are already pure because of the message I spoke to you.

---

# John 15:4

### Remain in me, and I in you

"If you remain joined to me, I will remain joined to you" or "Remain joined to me, and I will remain joined to you"

### in…unless…you remain…me (ULT)
### Remain joined to…unless…stay joined to me and depend upon me for everything (UST)

By remaining in Christ, those who belong to him depend on him for everything. Alternate translation: "unless you stay joined to me and depend upon me for everything"

### Translation Words - ULT

- cannot
- vine
- fruit
- Just as
- bear

### Translation Words - UST

- cannot
- vine
- any fruit…fruit
- As
- bear…bear

---

**ULT**

**4** Remain in me, and I in you. Just as a branch cannot bear fruit by itself unless it remains in the vine, so neither can you, unless you remain in me.

**UST**

**4** Remain joined to me, and I will remain joined to you. As the branch cannot bear any fruit on its own, neither can you bear fruit unless you stay joined to me and depend upon me for everything.

# John 15:5

### I am the vine, you are the branches (ULT)
### I am like the vine; you are like the branches (UST)

The "vine" is a metaphor that represents Jesus. The "branches" is a metaphor that represent those who trust in Jesus and belong to him. Alternate translation: "I am like a vine, and you are like branches that are attached to the vine" (See: Metaphor)

### He who remains in me and I in him (ULT)
### If you remain joined to me and I remain joined to you (UST)

Here Jesus implies that his followers are joined to him as he is joined to God. Alternate translation: "He who stays joined to me, as I stay joined to my Father" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### he bears much fruit (ULT)
### you will bear much fruit (UST)

The implied metaphor here is the fruitful branch that represents the believer who pleases God. Just as a branch that is attached to the vine will bear much fruit, those who stay joined to Jesus will do many things that please God. Alternate translation: "you will bear much fruit" (See: Metaphor)

### Translation Words - ULT

- you can
- vine
- fruit
- bears

### Translation Words - UST

- you can
- vine
- fruit
- will bear

**ULT**

**5** I am the vine, you are the branches. He who remains in me and I in him, he bears much fruit, for without me you can do nothing.

**UST**

**5** I am like the vine; you are like the branches. If you remain joined to me and I remain joined to you, you will bear much fruit, for apart from me you can do nothing at all.

# John 15:6

### he is thrown away like a branch and dries up (ULT)

Here the implied metaphor is the unfruitful branch that represents those who do not stay joined to Jesus. You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "the vinedresser throws him away like a branch and it dries up" (See: Metaphor and Active or Passive)

### they are burned up (ULT)
### burns them (UST)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "the fire burns them" (See: Active or Passive)

### Translation Words - ULT

- fire
- like

### Translation Words - UST

- fire
- like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if

**ULT**

**6** If anyone does not remain in me, he is thrown away like a branch and dries up, and they gather the branches and throw them into the fire, and they are burned up.

**UST**

**6** The gardener cuts off and throws away useless branches. Then, after they dry up, he picks them up and throws them into a fire and burns them. Similarly, everyone who does not stay joined to me, God will get rid of.

## John 15:7

### ask whatever you wish (ULT)

Jesus implies that believers must ask God to answer their prayers. Alternate translation: "ask God whatever you wish" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### it will be done for you (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "he will do it for you" (See: Active or Passive)

### Translation Words - ULT

- words

### Translation Words - UST

- live by my message

---

**ULT**

**7** If you remain in me, and if my words remain in you, ask whatever you wish, and it will be done for you.

**UST**

**7** If you stay joined to me and live by my message, you can ask God for anything, and he will do it.

## John 15:8

### My Father is glorified in this (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "It causes people to honor my Father" (See: Active or Passive)

### My Father (ULT)
### my Father (UST)

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

### that you bear much fruit (ULT)
### When you bear much fruit (UST)

Here "fruit" is a metaphor for living to please God. Alternate translation: "when you live in a way that pleases him" (See: Metaphor)

### you will be my disciples (ULT)
### you will show that you are my apprentices (UST)

"show you are my disciples" or "demonstrate you are my disciples"

### Translation Words - ULT

- is glorified
- disciples
- Father
- fruit
- you bear

### Translation Words - UST

- it causes people to honor
- apprentices
- Father
- fruit
- you bear

**ULT**

**8** My Father is glorified in this, that you bear much fruit and you will be my disciples.

**UST**

**8** When you bear much fruit, it causes people to honor my Father. By doing that you will show that you are my apprentices.

# John 15:9

## As the Father has loved me, I have also loved you (ULT)
## I have loved you just as my Father has loved me (UST)

Jesus shares the love that God the Father has for him with those who trust in him. Here "Father" is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

## Remain in my love

"Continue to accept my love"

## Translation Words - ULT

- has loved
- have...loved
- love
- Father
- As

## Translation Words - UST

- has loved
- have loved
- Now keep living in a way that is appropriate for those whom I love
- Father
- just as

**ULT**

**9** As the Father has loved me, I have also loved you. Remain in my love.

**UST**

**9** I have loved you just as my Father has loved me. Now keep living in a way that is appropriate for those whom I love.

## John 15:10

**If you keep my commandments, you will remain in my love, as I have kept the commandments of my Father and remain in his love (ULT)**
**If you obey what I have commanded you, you will be acting in a way that is appropriate for those whom I love, just like I have obeyed what my Father has commanded me and I act in a way that is appropriate for someone whom he loves (UST)**

When Jesus' followers obey him, they show their love for him. Alternate translation: "When you do the things I have told you to do, you are living in my love, just as I obey my Father and live in his love" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**of my Father (ULT)**
**my Father (UST)**

Here "Father" is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

### Translation Words - ULT

- commandments
- commandments
- love
- love (2)
- Father
- you keep
- have kept
- as

### Translation Words - UST

- what...have commanded you
- what...has commanded me
- you will be acting in a way that is appropriate for those whom I love
- I act in a way that is appropriate for someone whom he loves (2)
- Father
- you obey
- have obeyed
- just like

> **ULT**
>
> **10** If you keep my commandments, you will remain in my love, as I have kept the commandments of my Father and remain in his love.
>
> **UST**
>
> **10** If you obey what I have commanded you, you will be acting in a way that is appropriate for those whom I love, just like I have obeyed what my Father has commanded me and I act in a way that is appropriate for someone whom he loves.

## John 15:11

### I have spoken these things to you so that my joy will be in you

"I have told you these things so that you will have the same kind of joy that I have"

### and so that your joy will be complete (ULT)
### and...you may rejoice to the fullest extent (UST)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "so that you will be completely joyful" or "so that your joy may have nothing missing" (See: Active or Passive)

### Translation Words - ULT

- joy
- joy (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- joy
- may rejoice (2)

**ULT**

**11** I have spoken these things to you so that my joy will be in you and so that your joy will be complete.

**UST**

**11** I told you these things so that my joy may be in you, and so that you may rejoice to the fullest extent.

## John 15:12

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- commandment
- you love
- I have loved
- as

### Translation Words - UST

- What I command you to do
- Love
- I have loved
- in the way that

**ULT**

**12** This is my commandment, that you love one another as I have loved you.

**UST**

**12** What I command you to do is this: Love each other in the way that I have loved you.

## John 15:13

**life (ULT)**
**life (UST)**

This refers to physical life.

### Translation Words - ULT

- life
- love

### Translation Words - UST

- life
- love

## John 15:14

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- command

### Translation Words - UST

- commands...them

## John 15:15

**everything that I heard from my Father, I have made known to you (ULT)**

"I have told you everything my Father told me"

**my Father (ULT)**
**my Father (UST)**

Here "Father" is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- do I call
- I have called
- master
- Father
- servants
- servant
- know
- I have made known

**Translation Words - UST**

- I...call
- I...call
- master
- Father
- my servants
- servant
- does...understand
- I made it all known...so that you also could understand it

**ULT**

**15** No longer do I call you servants, for the servant does not know what his master is doing. But I have called you friends, for everything that I heard from my Father, I have made known to you.

**UST**

**15** I no longer call you my servants, for the servant does not understand what his master is doing. I now call you friends, for everything I heard from my Father I made it all known to you so that you also could understand it.

## John 15:16

**You did not choose me (ULT)**
**You did not decide to become my apprentices (UST)**

Jesus implies that his followers did not decide on their own to become his disciples. Alternate translation: "You did not decide to become my disciples" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**would go and bear fruit (ULT)**
**should go out and bear much fruit (UST)**

Here "fruit" is a metaphor that represents a life that is pleasing to God. Alternate translation: "live lives that please God" (See: Metaphor)

**and...your fruit should remain (ULT)**

"that the results of what you do should last forever"

**whatever you ask of the Father in my name, he will give it to you (ULT)**
**everything you ask my Father using my authority, he will do for you (UST)**

Here "name" is a metonym that represents the authority of Jesus. Alternate translation: "Because you belong to me, whatever you ask of the Father, he will give it to you" (See: Metonymy)

**of the Father (ULT)**
**my Father (UST)**

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

## Translation Words - ULT

- appointed
- choose
- chose
- Father
- name
- fruit
- fruit
- bear

## Translation Words - UST

- appoint, appointed
- did...decide to become my apprentices
- chose
- Father
- using...authority
- much fruit
- fruit
- bear

## John 15:17

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- I command
- you love

### Translation Words - UST

- I command...to do
- Love

**ULT**
**17** These things I command you, so that you love one another.

**UST**
**17** This is what I command you to do: Love one another.

## John 15:18

**the world (ULT)**
**the world (UST)**

the people who do not belong to God and are opposed to him (See:
Metonymy)

### Translation Words - ULT

- world
- know

### Translation Words - UST

- world
- you should realize

**ULT**

**18** If the world hates you, know that it
has hated me before it hated you.

**UST**

**18** If the world despises you, you should
realize that it hated me first.

## John 15:19

**the world (ULT)**
**to the unbelievers in this world (UST)**

the people who do not belong to God and are opposed to him (See: Metonymy)

**would love you (ULT)**
**would love you (UST)**

This refers to human, brotherly love or love for a friend or family member.

### Translation Words - ULT

- would love you
- world
- world
- world (2)
- world (3)
- world (2)
- chose

### Translation Words - UST

- would love you
- to the unbelievers in this world
- world
- to them (2)
- among them (3)
- the unbelievers in this world (2)
- chose

**ULT**

**19** If you were of the world, the world would love you as its own. But because you are not of the world and because I chose you out of the world, on account of this, the world hates you.

**UST**

**19** If you belonged to the unbelievers in this world, the world would love you, and you would love what they love and do what they do. But you do not belong to them; instead, I chose you to come out from among them. That is the reason the unbelievers in this world despise you.

# John 15:20

## Remember the word that I said to you (ULT)
## Remember when I taught you this (UST)

Here "word" is a metonym for the message of Jesus. Alternate translation: "Remember the message that I spoke to you" (See: Metonymy)

## Translation Words - ULT

- master
- word
- word
- they kept
- they will...keep
- they persecuted
- they will...persecute
- A servant

## Translation Words - UST

- master
- this
- teachings
- any of them have received...and followed them
- they will...follow
- they have made...suffer
- they will make you suffer
- A servant

**ULT**

**20** Remember the word that I said to you, 'A servant is not greater than his master.' If they persecuted me, they will also persecute you; if they kept my word, they will also keep yours.

**UST**

**20** Remember when I taught you this: 'A servant is not greater than his master.' Since they have made me suffer, you can be sure they will make you suffer also. If any of them have received my teachings and followed them, they will also follow what you teach them.

## John 15:21

**because of my name (ULT)**
**because you represent me (UST)**

Here "because of my name" is a metonym that represents Jesus.
People will make his followers suffer because they belong to him.
Alternate translation: "because you belong to me" (See: Metonymy)

### Translation Words - ULT

- of...name
- him who sent
- they...know

### Translation Words - UST

- you represent me
- my Father, who has sent...to you
- they do...know

---

**ULT**

**21** But they will do all these things to you because of my name, because they do not know him who sent me.

**UST**

**21** The unbelievers in this world will do horrible things to you because you represent me and because they do not know my Father, who has sent me to you.

## John 15:22

**If I had not come and spoken to them, they would not have sin, but now they have no excuse for their sin (ULT)**
**If I had not come and spoken God's message to them, they would not have been guilty of rejecting me and my message. However, now I have come and told them God's message, and they have no excuse for their sin (UST)**

Jesus implies here that he has shared God's message with those who do not trust him. Alternate translation: "Because I have come and told them God's message, they have no excuse when God judges them for their sins" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### Translation Words - ULT

- sin
- sin

### Translation Words - UST

- guilty of rejecting me and my message
- sin

**ULT**

**22** If I had not come and spoken to them, they would not have sin, but now they have no excuse for their sin.

**UST**

**22** If I had not come and spoken God's message to them, they would not have been guilty of rejecting me and my message. However, now I have come and told them God's message, and they have no excuse for their sin.

# John 15:23

**He who hates me also hates my Father (ULT)**
**Whoever hates me also hates my Father (UST)**

To hate God the Son is to hate God the Father.

**Father (ULT)**
**Father (UST)**

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Father

**Translation Words - UST**

- Father

## John 15:24

**If I had not done the works that no one else did among them, they would have no sin...but (ULT)**
**If I had not done those things among them, those things in which I showed my power, things that no one else has ever done, they would not have been guilty of sin...Yet (UST)**

You can translate this double negative in a positive form. Alternate translation: "Because I have done among them the works that no one else did, they have had sin, and" (See: Double Negatives)

**they would have no sin (ULT)**
**they would not have been guilty of sin (UST)**

"they would not have any sin." See how you translated this in John 15:22.

**they have seen and hated both me and my Father**

To hate God the Son is to hate God the Father.

### Translation Words - ULT

- sin
- works
- Father

### Translation Words - UST

- sin
- those things
- Father

**ULT**

**24** If I had not done the works that no one else did among them, they would have no sin, but now they have both seen and hated both me and my Father.

**UST**

**24** If I had not done those things among them, those things in which I showed my power, things that no one else has ever done, they would not have been guilty of sin. Yet now that they have seen me, they hate me, and they hate my Father, too.

## John 15:25

### this is in order to fulfill the word that is written in their law (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. "Word" here is a metonym for the entire message of God. Alternate translation: "to fulfill the prophecy in their law" and "to fulfill the prophecy in their law" (See: Active or Passive and Metonymy)

### law (ULT)
### law (UST)

This refers generally to the entire Old Testament, which contained all of God's instructions for his people.

### Translation Words - ULT

- word
- law
- fulfill
- is written

### Translation Words - UST

- These words
- law
- and have now come true
- were written

**ULT**

**25** But this is in order to fulfill the word that is written in their law, 'They hated me without a cause.'

**UST**

**25** These words were written in their law and have now come true: 'They hated me for no reason.'

# John 15:26

**will send to…from the Father—the Spirit of truth…he will testify about me (ULT)**
**send…from the Father…He is the Spirit who tells the truth about God and me…He will tell everyone who I am, and he will show everyone all that I have done (UST)**

God the Father sent God the Spirit to show the world that Jesus is God the Son.

**Father (ULT)**
**Father (UST)**

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

**the Spirit of truth (ULT)**
**He is the Spirit who tells the truth about God and me (UST)**

This is a title for the Holy Spirit. Alternate translation: "the Spirit who tells the truth about God and me" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

> **ULT**
>
> **26** When the Comforter whom I will send to you from the Father—the Spirit of truth who goes out from the Father—comes, he will testify about me.
>
> **UST**
>
> **26** When I send you the Helper, he is the one who will come from the Father and who will comfort you. He is the Spirit who tells the truth about God and me. He will tell everyone who I am, and he will show everyone all that I have done.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- will testify
- Spirit of truth
- of truth
- Father
- Father
- will send to
- Comforter

**Translation Words - UST**

- will tell
- Spirit who tells the truth about God and me
- who tells the truth about God and me
- Father
- God the Father, heavenly Father, Father
- send
- Helper…and who will comfort you

## John 15:27

**you…also…are…testifying (ULT)**
**You also…must tell everyone what you know about me (UST)**

Here "testifying" means to tell others about Jesus. Alternate translation: "You also must tell everyone what you know about me" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**the beginning (ULT)**
**the very first days when I began to teach the people and to do miracles (UST)**

Here the "beginning" is a metonym that means the first days of Jesus' ministry. Alternate translation: "from the very first days when I began teaching the people and doing miracles" (See: Metonymy)

**Translation Words - ULT**

> • are…testifying

**Translation Words - UST**

> • must tell everyone what you know about me

**ULT**

**27** But you are also testifying because you have been with me from the beginning.

**UST**

**27** You also must tell everyone what you know about me because you have been with me the whole time from the very first days when I began to teach the people and to do miracles."

**John 16**

**John 16 General Notes**

## Special concepts in this chapter

### The Holy Spirit

Jesus told his disciples that he would send the Holy Spirit to them. The Holy Spirit is the Comforter (John 14:16) who is always with God's people to help them and to speak to God for them, He is also the Spirit of truth (John 14:17) who tells God's people what is true about God so they know him better and serve him well. (See: Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit)

### "The hour is coming"

Jesus used these words to begin prophecies about times that could be shorter or longer than sixty minutes. "The hour" in which people would persecute his followers (John 16:2) was days, weeks, and years long, but "the hour" in which his disciples would scatter and leave him alone (John 16:32) was less than sixty minutes long. (See: prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess)

## Important figures of speech in this chapter

### Simile

Jesus said that just as a woman is in pain as she gives birth to a baby and his followers would be sad when he died. But the woman is glad after the baby is born, and his followers would be happy when he became alive again. (See: Simile)

# John 16:1

**Connecting Statement:**

The part of the story from the previous chapter continues. Jesus reclines at the table with his disciples and continues to speak to them.

**you will not fall away (ULT)**
**you would not stumble or stop trusting in me because of the difficulties you must face (UST)**

Here the phrase "fall away" implies to stop putting one's trust in Jesus. You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "you will not stop trusting in me because of the difficulties you must face" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and Active or Passive)

**ULT**
**1** "I have spoken these things to you so that you will not fall away.

**UST**
**1** I told you these things so that you would not stumble or stop trusting in me because of the difficulties you must face.

## John 16:2

**you…the hour is coming when everyone who kills…will think that he is offering a service to God (ULT) Difficult days are ahead…you…something even worse will happen. The days are coming when people will put…to death and think that they are pleasing God (UST)**

"it will someday happen that a person will kill you and think he is doing something good for God."

### Translation Words - ULT

- to God
- the hour
- a service

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- Difficult days…something even worse…The days
- that they are pleasing

**ULT**

**2** They will throw you out of the synagogues. But the hour is coming when everyone who kills you will think that he is offering a service to God.

**UST**

**2** Difficult days are ahead. Your enemies will stop you from worshiping in the synagogues. However, something even worse will happen. The days are coming when people will put you to death and think that they are pleasing God.

# John 16:3

**They will do...these things...because they have not known the Father nor me (ULT)**
**They will do such things because they have never known who I really am, nor who my Father is (UST)**

They will kill some believers because they do not know God the Father or Jesus.

**Father (ULT)**
**who my Father is (UST)**

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Father
- they have...known

**Translation Words - UST**

- who my Father is
- they have...known

## John 16:4

**when their hour comes (ULT)**
**at the time when these hardships come (UST)**

Here "hour" is a metonym that refers to the time when people will persecute Jesus' followers. Alternate translation: "when they cause you to suffer" (See: Metonymy)

**in the beginning (ULT)**
**at the beginning (UST)**

This is a metonym that refers to the first days of Jesus' ministry. Alternate translation: "when you first started following me" (See: Metonymy)

**Translation Words - ULT**

   • hour

**Translation Words - UST**

   • time

**ULT**

**4** But I have spoken these things to you so that when their <u>hour</u> comes, you will remember that I told you about them. But I did not tell you about these things in the beginning, because I was with you.

**UST**

**4** I have told you these things so that at the <u>time</u> when these hardships come, you will remember that I warned you. I did not tell you these things at the beginning because I was with you then.

# John 16:5

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

## Translation Words - ULT

- him who sent

## Translation Words - UST

- Father. He is the one who sent

**ULT**

**5** But now I go to him who sent me, yet none of you asks me, 'Where are you going?'

**UST**

**5** "Now I am going back to the Father. He is the one who sent me. Yet none of you dares to ask me, 'Where are you going?'

# John 16:6

**sadness has filled your heart (ULT)**
**now you are very sad (UST)**

Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's inner being. Alternate translation: "you are now very sad" (See: Metonymy)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- heart

**Translation Words - UST**

- now you are very sad

## John 16:7

### if...I do not go away, the Comforter will not come to you (ULT)

You can translate this in a positive form. Alternate translation: "the Comforter will come to you only if I go away" (See: Double Negatives)

### Comforter (ULT)
### Helper who comforts you (UST)

This is a title for the Holy Spirit who will be with the disciples after Jesus goes away. See how you translated this in John 14:26.

### Translation Words - ULT

- truly
- it is better
- I will send
- Comforter

### Translation Words - UST

- truth
- it is good
- I will send
- Helper who comforts you

**ULT**

**7** But truly I tell you, it is better for you that I go away. For if I do not go away, the Comforter will not come to you, but if I go, I will send him to you.

**UST**

**7** I tell you the truth, it is good for you that I am going away. Unless I go away, the Helper who comforts you will not come. If I go away, I will send him to you.

## John 16:8

**the Comforter will prove the world to be wrong about sin (ULT)**
**the Helper…he will convict them of the sins they have committed; he will show them (UST)**

When the Holy Spirit came, he began to show people that they are sinners.

**the Comforter (ULT)**
**the Helper (UST)**

This refers to the Holy Spirit. See how you translated this in John 14:16.

**world (ULT)**
**them…them (UST)**

This is a metonym that refers to the people in the world.(See: Metonymy)

### Translation Words - ULT

- righteousness
- sin
- world
- judgment

### Translation Words - UST

- that they do not reach God's standard of goodness
- the sins they have committed
- them…them
- he promises them that God will judge them because they did what God commanded them not to do

**ULT**

**8** When he comes, the Comforter will prove the world to be wrong about sin, and about righteousness, and about judgment—

**UST**

**8** When the Helper comes, he will convict them of the sins they have committed; he will show them that they do not reach God's standard of goodness; and he promises them that God will judge them because they did what God commanded them not to do.

## John 16:9

**about sin, because they do not believe in me (ULT)**

"they are guilty of sin because they do not trust in me"

### Translation Words - ULT

- sin
- they...believe
- in me

### Translation Words - UST

- greatest sin
- they do...believe
- in me

---

**ULT**

**9** about <u>sin</u>, because <u>they</u> do not <u>believe in me</u>;

**UST**

**9** He will tell people that their <u>greatest sin</u> is that <u>they do</u> not <u>believe</u> <u>in me</u>.

---

## John 16:10

**about righteousness...because I am going to the Father, and you will no longer see me (ULT)**
**He will tell people that...you will know that I am the one who was truly righteous...because I am going back to my Father, and you will no longer see me (UST)**

"when I return to God, and they see me no more, they will know that I did the right things"

**Father (ULT)**
**Father (UST)**

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

### Translation Words - ULT

- righteousness
- Father

### Translation Words - UST

- you will know that I am the one who was truly righteous
- Father

**ULT**

**10** and about <u>righteousness</u>, because I am going to the <u>Father</u>, and you will no longer see me;

**UST**

**10** He will tell people that because I am going back to my <u>Father</u>, and you will no longer see me, <u>you will know that I am the one who was truly righteous</u>.

# John 16:11

### about...judgment, because the ruler of this world has been judged (ULT)

"God will hold them accountable and will punish them for their sins, just as he will punish Satan, the one who rules this world"

### the ruler of this world (ULT)
### Satan, the one who rules this world (UST)

Here "ruler" refers to Satan. See how you translated this in John 12:31. Alternate translation: "Satan who rules this world"

### Translation Words - ULT

- of...world
- judgment
- has been judged
- ruler

### Translation Words - UST

- world
- some day God will also punish those who do not belong to him
- God has already determined that he will punish
- Satan...one who rules

**ULT**

**11** and about judgment, because the ruler of this world has been judged.

**UST**

**11** He will tell people that the fact that God has already determined that he will punish Satan, the one who rules this world, shows that some day God will also punish those who do not belong to him.

## John 16:12

**many…things…to say to you (ULT)**
**many…things…to tell you (UST)**

"messages for you" or "words for you"

### Translation Words - ULT

  • bear them

### Translation Words - UST

  • to live well knowing these things

---

**ULT**

**12** I have many more things to say to you, but you cannot bear them now.

**UST**

**12** I have many more things I want to tell you. However, if I tell you now, you will not be able to live well knowing these things.

---

## John 16:13

**the Spirit of Truth (ULT)**
**the Spirit of truth (UST)**

This is a name for the Holy Spirit who will tell the people the truth about God.

**he will guide you into all the truth (ULT)**
**he will lead you into all the truth you need to know (UST)**

The "truth" refers to spiritual truth. Alternate translation: "he will teach you all the spiritual truth you need to know" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**he will say whatever he hears (ULT)**
**whatever he hears he will tell you (UST)**

**ULT**

**13** But when he, the Spirit of Truth, comes, he will guide you into all the truth, for he will not speak from himself. But he will say whatever he hears, and he will tell you things that are to come.

**UST**

**13** When the Spirit of truth comes, he will lead you into all the truth you need to know. He will not speak from his own authority, but whatever he hears he will tell you, and he will tell you ahead of time about things that will happen.

Jesus implies that God the Father will speak to the Spirit. Alternate translation: "he will say whatever God tells him to say" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Spirit of Truth
- of Truth
- truth
- he will tell

### Translation Words - UST

- Spirit of truth
- truth
- truth
- he will tell...ahead of time

## John 16:14

**he will take from what is mine and he will tell it to you (ULT)**

Here "things of mine" refers to Jesus' teaching and mighty works. Alternate translation: "he will reveal to you that what I have said and done are indeed true" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- will glorify
- he will tell it

**Translation Words - UST**

- will honor…by telling you who I am and showing you what I have done
- He will explain

**ULT**

**14** He will glorify me, because he will take from what is mine and he will tell it to you.

**UST**

**14** The Spirit will honor me by telling you who I am and showing you what I have done. He will explain to you everything he heard from me.

## John 16:15

**Father (ULT)**
**my Father (UST)**

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

**the Spirit will take from what is mine and he will tell it to you (ULT)**
**the Spirit will take whatever he receives from me and will explain it to you (UST)**

The Holy Spirit will tell people that the words and works of Jesus are true. Alternate translation: "The Holy Spirit will tell everyone that my words and works are true" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Father
- he will tell it

### Translation Words - UST

- my Father
- will explain it

**ULT**

**15** Everything that the Father has is mine. Therefore, I said that the Spirit will take from what is mine and he will tell it to you.

**UST**

**15** Everything my Father has belongs to me. That is why I said that the Spirit will take whatever he receives from me and will explain it to you.

## John 16:16

**In a little while (ULT)**
**In a little while (UST)**

"Soon" or "Before much time passes"

**In a little while…another (ULT)**

"again, before much time passes"

**ULT**

**16** In a little while you will no longer see me, and after another little while you will see me again."

**UST**

**16** In a little while, you will not see me. Then after a little while, you will see me again."

## John 16:17

### General Information:

There is a break in Jesus' speaking as his disciples ask each other about what Jesus meant.

### A little while…you will no longer see me (ULT)
### In a little while…you will not see me (UST)

The disciples did not understand that this refers to Jesus' death on the cross.

### A little while and…me…another…you will see (ULT)

Possible meanings are 1) This could refer to Jesus' resurrection or 2) This could refer to Jesus' coming at the end of time.

### the Father (ULT)
### my Father (UST)

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

### Translation Words - ULT

  - disciples
  - Father

### Translation Words - UST

  - apprentices
  - Father

---

**ULT**

**17** Then some of his disciples said to one another, "What is this that he says to us, 'A little while and you will no longer see me, and after another little while you will see me again,' and, 'Because I go to the Father'?"

**UST**

**17** So some of his apprentices said to one another, "What does Jesus mean when he says to us, 'In a little while, you will not see me,' and 'after a little while, you will see me again' and what does he mean by 'because I am going back to my Father'?"

## John 16:18

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

• We...know

### Translation Words - UST

• We do...understand

---

**ULT**

**18** Therefore they said, "What is this that he says, 'A little while'? We do not know what he is talking about."

**UST**

**18** They kept asking, "What does he mean by saying, 'after a little while'? We do not understand what he is saying."

---

## John 16:19

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues speaking to his disciples.

### Are you asking among yourselves concerning this, that I said, 'A little while and you will no longer see me, and again a little while and you will see me (ULT)

Jesus uses this question so his disciples will focus on what he has just told them, so he can explain further. Alternate translation: "You are asking yourselves what I meant when I said,...see me.'" (See: Rhetorical Question)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- saw

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- saw

**ULT**

**19** Jesus saw that they wanted to ask him, and he said to them, "Are you asking among yourselves concerning this, that I said, 'A little while and you will no longer see me, and again a little while and you will see me'?

**UST**

**19** Jesus saw that they wanted to ask him more questions. So he said to the apprentices, "Why are you asking each other what I meant? I said that in a little while, you would not see me; and then after a little while, you would see me again.

## John 16:20

### Truly, truly, I say to you

Translate this the way your language emphasizes that what follows is important and true. See how you translated this in John 1:51.

### but the world will be glad (ULT)

Here the "world" is a metonym for the people who oppose God. Alternate translation: "but the people who oppose God will be glad" (See: Metonymy)

### but your sorrow will be turned into joy (ULT)
### but your sadness will change into joy (UST)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "but your sadness will become joy" or "but afterwards instead of being sad you will be very happy" (See: Active or Passive)

**ULT**

**20** Truly, truly, I say to you that you will weep and lament, but the world will be glad. You will become full of sadness, but your sorrow will be turned into joy.

**UST**

**20** I am telling you the truth: You will cry and grieve, but those who belong to this world will rejoice. You will go through great sadness, but your sadness will change into joy.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Truly
- truly (2)
- world
- lament
- will be glad
- joy
- will weep

### Translation Words - UST

- the truth
- the truth (2)
- those who belong to this world
- grieve
- will rejoice
- joy
- You will cry

# John 16:21

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

## Translation Words - ULT

- world
- child
- pain
- joy
- hour

## Translation Words - UST

- world
- her baby
- her anguish
- of the joy she has
- hour

**ULT**

**21** When a woman gives birth she has pain because her hour has come, but when she has given birth to the child, she no longer remembers her pain because of her joy that a person has been born into the world.

**UST**

**21** This is like a woman who is suffering the pains of labor when giving birth. After her baby is born, she forgets her anguish because of the joy she has that her child has been born into the world.

## John 16:22

**your heart will be glad (ULT)**
**God will give you great joy (UST)**

Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's inner being. Alternate translation: "you will be very happy" or "you will be very joyful" (See: Metonymy)

### Translation Words - ULT

- heart
- will be glad
- joy

### Translation Words - UST

- God will give you great joy
- God will give you great joy
- joy

**ULT**

**22** So you have sorrow now, but I will see you again, and your heart will be glad, and no one will take away your joy from you.

**UST**

**22** You, like her, have sorrow now, but I will see you again and God will give you great joy, joy no one can take from you.

# John 16:23

### Truly, truly, I say to you

Translate this the way your language emphasizes that what follows is important and true. See how you translated this in John 1:51.

### if you ask anything of the Father in my name, he will give it to you (ULT)
### Whatever you ask the Father, he will give it to you when you ask because you are joined to me (UST)

Here the word "name" is a metonym that refers to the person and authority of Jesus. Alternate translation: "if you ask anything of the Father, he will give it to you because you belong to me" (See: Metonymy)

### Father (ULT)
### Father (UST)

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

### in my name (ULT)
### when you ask because you are joined to me (UST)

Here "name" is a metonym that refers to the person and authority of Jesus. The Father will honor the requests of the believers because of their relationship with Jesus. Alternate translation: "because you are my followers" or "on my authority" (See: Metonymy)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Truly
- truly (2)
- Father
- name
- day

### Translation Words - UST

- the truth
- the truth (2)
- Father
- when you ask because you are joined to me
- day

> **ULT**
>
> **23** On that day you will not ask me anything. Truly, truly, I say to you, if you ask anything of the Father in my name, he will give it to you.
>
> **UST**
>
> **23** On that day, you will have no more questions to ask me. I am telling you the truth: Whatever you ask the Father, he will give it to you when you ask because you are joined to me.

## John 16:24

**your joy will be fulfilled (ULT)**
**you such joy that fills everything (UST)**

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "God will give you great joy" (See: Active or Passive)

### Translation Words - ULT

- name
- you will receive
- joy

### Translation Words - UST

- like that
- you will receive it
- such joy

**ULT**

**24** Until now you have not asked anything in my name. Ask, and you will receive so that your joy will be fulfilled.

**UST**

**24** Up until now, you have not asked for anything like that. Ask and you will receive it, and God will give you such joy that fills everything.

## John 16:25

**in figures of speech (ULT)**
**using language of parables (UST)**

"in language that is not clear"

**but the hour is coming (ULT)**
**but there will soon be a time (UST)**

"it will soon happen"

**to you…I will tell…plainly about the Father (ULT)**

"tell you about the Father in a way that you will clearly understand."

**Father (ULT)**
**my Father (UST)**

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Father
- I will tell
- the hour

### Translation Words - UST

- my Father
- I will tell
- a time

**ULT**

**25** I have said these things to you in figures of speech, but the hour is coming when I will no longer speak to you in figures of speech, but instead I will tell you plainly about the Father.

**UST**

**25** I have been speaking these things using language of parables, but there will soon be a time when I will no longer use that kind of language. Instead, I will tell you all about my Father in language that you can clearly understand.

## John 16:26

**you will ask in my name (ULT)**
**you will make your requests to God in my name and according to God's purposes (UST)**

Here "name" is a metonym for the person and authority of Jesus. Alternate translation: "you will ask because you belong to me" (See: Metonymy)

**Father (ULT)**
**Father (UST)**

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Father
- name
- will pray
- day

### Translation Words - UST

- Father
- in my name and according to God's purposes
- will...have to ask
- At that time

**ULT**

**26** On that day you will ask in my name and I do not say to you that I will pray to the Father for you,

**UST**

**26** At that time you will make your requests to God in my name and according to God's purposes. I will not have to ask the Father to meet your needs,

## John 16:27

**himself...the Father...loves you because you have loved me (ULT)**
**himself...the Father...loves you because you have loved me (UST)**

When a person loves Jesus, the Son, they also love the Father, because the Father and Son are one.

**I came from the Father (ULT)**
**I came from God (UST)**

Here "Father" is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

### Translation Words - ULT

- loves
- have loved
- Father
- you have believed
- Father

### Translation Words - UST

- loves
- have loved
- God
- have put your trust in me
- Father

---

**ULT**

**27** for the Father himself loves you because you have loved me and because you have believed that I came from the Father.

**UST**

**27** for the Father himself loves you because you have loved me and have put your trust in me and because you know that I came from God.

---

# John 16:28

**I came from the Father…I am leaving the world and I am going to the Father**

After his death and resurrection, Jesus will return to God the Father.

**I came from the Father…I am going to the Father (ULT)**
**I came from the Father…I am going back to my Father (UST)**

Here "Father" is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

**world (ULT)**
**this world (UST)**

The "world" is a metonym that refers to the people who live in the world. (See: Metonymy)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- world
- world (2)
- Father
- Father

**Translation Words - UST**

- this world
- this world (2)
- Father
- Father

---

**ULT**

**28** I came from the Father, and I have come into the world. Again, I am leaving the world and I am going to the Father."

**UST**

**28** I came from the Father, and I entered this world. Very soon I will be leaving this world, and I am going back to my Father."

# John 16:29

## Connecting Statement:

The disciples respond to Jesus.

## Translation Words - ULT

- disciples

## Translation Words - UST

- apprentices

**ULT**

**29** His disciples said, "See, now you are speaking plainly and you are not speaking in figures of speech.

**UST**

**29** Then his apprentices said, "Finally! Now you are speaking plainly and not using figurative language.

# John 16:30

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

## Translation Words - ULT

- God
- we believe
- we know
- you know

## Translation Words - UST

- God
- we gave you our trust, and we know for certain
- we understand
- you know

**ULT**

**30** Now we know that you know all things, and you do not need that anyone to ask you questions. Because of this, we believe that you have come from God."

**UST**

**30** Now we understand that you know everything. There is no need to ask you questions. This is why we gave you our trust, and we know for certain that you came from God."

# John 16:31

**Do you believe now (ULT)**
**Do you now finally put your trust in me (UST)**

This remarks appears in the form of a question to show that Jesus is puzzled that his disciples are only now ready to trust him. Alternate translation: "So, now you finally place your trust in me! (See: Rhetorical Question)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Do you believe

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Do you...put your trust in me

# John 16:32

**Connecting Statement:**

Jesus continues speaking to his disciples.

**you will be scattered (ULT)**
**others will scatter you everywhere (UST)**

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "others will scatter you" (See: Active or Passive)

**the Father is with me (ULT)**
**the Father is always with me (UST)**

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Father
- the hour

**Translation Words - UST**

- Father
- The time

## John 16:33

**so that you will have peace in me (ULT)**
**in order that you may have inner peace because of your relationship with me (UST)**

Here "peace" refers to inner peace. Alternate translation: "so that you may have inner peace because of your relationship with me" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**I have conquered the world (ULT)**
**I have conquered the world (UST)**

Here "the world" refers to the troubles and persecution that believers will endure from those who oppose God. Alternate translation: "I have conquered the troubles of this world" (See: Metonymy)

## Translation Words - ULT

- world
- world
- troubles
- have courage
- peace

## Translation Words - UST

- world
- world
- trials and sorrows
- be brave
- inner peace

# John 17

## John 17 General Notes

## Structure and formatting

This chapter forms one long prayer.

## Special concepts in this chapter

### Glory

Scripture often speaks of God's glory as a great, brilliant light. When people see this light, they are afraid. In this chapter Jesus asks God to show his followers his true glory (John 17:1).

### Jesus is eternal

Jesus existed before God created the world (John 17:5). John wrote about this in John 1:1.

## Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

### Prayer

Jesus is God's one and only Son (John 3:16), so he could pray differently from the way other people pray. He used many words that sounded like commands. Your translation should make Jesus sound like a son speaking with love and respect to his father and telling him what the father needs to do so that the father will be happy.

## John 17:1

### Connecting Statement:

The part of the story from the previous chapter continues. Jesus had been speaking to his disciples, but now he begins to pray to God.

### lifted up his eyes to the heavens (ULT)
### he looked up to the sky (UST)

This is an idiom that means to look upward. Alternate translation: "he looked up to the sky" (See: Idiom)

### heavens (ULT)
### sky (UST)

This refers to the sky.

### Father...the...glorify your...Son...so that the Son will glorify you (ULT)
### Father...the...for you to announce to everyone and to tell them who I, your...Son...am, and to show them all that I have done. Do this so that I, your Son, may reveal you to everyone who you really are, the great King who can do anything (UST)

Jesus asks God the Father to honor him so that he can give honor to God.

### Father...Son (ULT)
### Father...I, your Son (UST)

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. (See: Translating Son and Father)

### the hour has come (ULT)
### it is time (UST)

Here the word "hour" is a metonym that refers to the time for Jesus to suffer and die. Alternate translation: "it is time for me to suffer and die" (See: Metonymy)

### Translation Words - ULT

- heavens
- Jesus
- Son
- Son
- glorify
- will glorify
- Father
- hour

### Translation Words - UST

- sky
- Jesus

**ULT**

**1** After Jesus said these things and lifted up his eyes to the heavens, he said, " Father, the hour has come, glorify your Son so that the Son will glorify you—

**UST**

**1** After Jesus said these things, he looked up to the sky and said, "Father, it is time for you to announce to everyone and to tell them who I, your Son, am, and to show them all that I have done. Do this so that I, your Son, may reveal you to everyone who you really are, the great King who can do anything.

- Son
- I, your Son
- for you to announce to everyone and to tell them who I…am, and to show them all that I have done
- may reveal you to everyone who…really are, the great King who can do anything
- Father
- it is time

# John 17:2

**over all flesh (ULT)**
**over all people (UST)**

This refers to all people.

## Translation Words - ULT

- life
- eternal
- flesh
- authority
- just as

## Translation Words - UST

- to live
- eternally
- people
- authority
- like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if

**ULT**

**2** just as you gave him authority over all flesh so that to everyone whom you have given him, he would give them eternal life.

**UST**

**2** You gave me authority over all people, in order that I might enable all those whom you chose to come to me to live eternally.

# John 17:3

**This is eternal life: That they know you, the only true God, and him whom you sent, Jesus Christ (ULT)**

Eternal life is to know the only true God, God the Father and God the Son.

## Translation Words - ULT

- life
- eternal
- Jesus Christ
- God
- true
- Christ
- you sent
- they know

## Translation Words - UST

- life
- everlasting
- me, Jesus the Messiah
- God
- true
- the Messiah
- you have sent into the world
- know…know

**ULT**

**3** This is eternal life: That they know you, the only true God, and him whom you sent, Jesus Christ.

**UST**

**3** This is everlasting life: To know you, Father—you, who are the only true God, and to know me, Jesus the Messiah, the one whom you have sent into the world.

## John 17:4

### the work...that you have given me to do (ULT)

Here "work" is a metonym that refers to Jesus' entire earthly ministry. (See: Metonymy)

### Translation Words - ULT

- work
- glorified
- I have finished
- earth

### Translation Words - UST

- work
- have brought all kinds of people to...to show them all about
- by finishing
- have brought all kinds of people to...to show them all about

---

**ULT**

**4** I glorified you on the earth. I have finished the work that you have given me to do.

**UST**

**4** I have brought all kinds of people to you to show them all about you. I did this by finishing the work you gave me.

---

# John 17:5

### Father, glorify me...with the glory that I had with you before the world was made (ULT)

Jesus had glory with God the Father "before the world was made" because Jesus is God the Son. Alternate translation: "Father, give me honor by bringing me into your presence as we were before we made the world" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### Father (ULT)
### Father (UST)

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

### Translation Words - ULT

- world
- glorify
- glory
- Father

### Translation Words - UST

- before the time...the world
- give...honor by bringing
- glory, glorious, glorify
- Father

**ULT**

**5** Now, Father, glorify me along with yourself with the glory that I had with you before the world was made.

**UST**

**5** Father, give me honor by bringing me into your own presence, as we were before the time we created the world.

## John 17:6

**Connecting Statement:**

Jesus begins to pray for his disciples.

**I revealed your name (ULT)**
**I have taught them who you really are and what you are like (UST)**

Here "name" is a metonym that refers to the person of God. Alternate translation: "I taught them who you really are and what you are like" (See: Metonymy)

**from the world (ULT)**
**in this world (UST)**

Here "world" is a metonym that refers to the people of the world that oppose God. This means that God has separated the believers spiritually from the people who do not believe in him. (See: Metonymy)

**they have kept your word (ULT)**
**They have believed in what you said to them, and they have obeyed it (UST)**

This is an idiom that means to obey. Alternate translation: "obeyed your teaching" (See: Idiom)

### Translation Words - ULT

- I revealed
- word
- world
- name
- they have kept

### Translation Words - UST

- I have taught them who you really are and what you are like
- what...said to them
- in this world
- I have taught them who you really are and what you are like
- They have believed in...and they have obeyed it

---

**ULT**

**6** I revealed your name to the people whom you gave me from the world. They were yours, and you gave them to me, and they have kept your word.

**UST**

**6** Those whom you chose from everyone in this world to belong to me—I have taught them who you really are and what you are like. They belonged to you and you have given them to me. They have believed in what you said to them, and they have obeyed it.

# John 17:7

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

## Translation Words - ULT

• they know

## Translation Words - UST

• they know

## John 17:8

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- truly
- they believed
- received them
- sent
- knew

### Translation Words - UST

- for sure
- they believe
- accepted it
- sent
- now they know

## John 17:9

**I do not pray for the world (ULT)
not...for those who belong to this world, those who
continue to oppose you. I am praying (UST)**

Here the word "world" is a metonym that refers to the people who
oppose God. Alternate translation: "I am not praying for those who
do not belong to you" (See: Metonymy)

### Translation Words - ULT

- world
- pray
- I...pray (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- those who belong to this world, those who continue to oppose you
- am praying...am...praying
- I am praying (2)

---

**ULT**

**9** I pray for them. I do not pray for the
world but for those whom you have
given me, for they are yours.

**UST**

**9** I am praying for them. I am not
praying for those who belong to this
world, those who continue to oppose
you. I am praying for those whom you
gave me because they belong to you.

## John 17:10

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- I am glorified

### Translation Words - UST

- They know who I am, and they sincerely tell the truth about who I am

---

**ULT**

**10** Everything that is mine is yours, and yours is mine, and I am glorified in them.

**UST**

**10** All I have belongs to you, and all you have is mine. They know who I am, and they sincerely tell the truth about who I am.

## John 17:11

**in the world (ULT)**
**in the world (UST)**

This is a metonym that refers to being on earth and being among the people who oppose God. Alternate translation: "among the people who do not belong to you" (See: Metonymy)

**Holy Father, keep them...so that they will be one, just as we are one (ULT)**
**Holy Father, keep them safe; keep them belonging to yourself by the same power...so that they may be united together, just as we are (UST)**

Jesus asks the Father to keep those who trust in him so they can have a close relationship with God.

**Father (ULT)**
**Father (UST)**

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

**keep them in your name that you have given me (ULT)**
**keep them safe; keep them belonging to yourself by the same power that you gave to me (UST)**

Here the word "name" is a metonym for God's power and authority. Alternate translation: "keep them safe by your power and authority, which you have given me" (See: Metonymy)

### ULT

**11** I am no longer in the world, but these people are in the world, and I am coming to you. Holy Father, keep them in your name that you have given me so that they will be one, just as we are one.

### UST

**11** I am not staying in the world any longer. However, they are staying in the world. I am coming to you. Holy Father, keep them safe; keep them belonging to yourself by the same power that you gave to me so that they may be united together, just as we are.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Holy
- world
- world (2)
- Holy Father
- name
- just as

### Translation Words - UST

- Holy
- world
- world (2)
- Holy Father
- keep them safe; keep them belonging to yourself by the same power
- just as

# John 17:12

**I kept them in your name (ULT)**
**I kept them safe...by your own power (UST)**

Here "name" is a metonym that refers to the power and protection of God. Alternate translation: "I kept them with your protection" (See: Metonymy)

**them...not one of...was destroyed, except for the son of destruction (ULT)**
**them...Not one of...was lost, except the one whom you had destined for destruction (UST)**

"the only one among them who was destroyed is the son of destruction"

**the son of destruction (ULT)**
**the one whom you had destined for destruction (UST)**

This refers to Judas, who betrayed Jesus. Alternate translation: "the one whom you long ago decided you would destroy" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**so that the scriptures would be fulfilled (ULT)**
**as the scriptures foretold long ago (UST)**

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "to fulfill the prophecy about him in the scriptures" (See: Active or Passive)

## Translation Words - ULT

- was destroyed
- son
- scriptures
- name
- would be fulfilled
- kept

## Translation Words - UST

- was lost
- one whom you had destined for destruction
- scriptures
- them safe...by your own power
- foretold long ago
- kept

## John 17:13

**the world (ULT)**
**the world (UST)**

These words are a metonym for the people who live in the world. (See: Metonymy)

**so that they will have my joy fulfilled in themselves (ULT)**

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "so that you might give them great joy" (See: Active or Passive)

### Translation Words - ULT

- world
- fulfilled
- joy

### Translation Words - UST

- world
- complete
- joy

**ULT**

**13** But now I am coming to you, but I am saying these things in the world so that they will have my joy fulfilled in themselves.

**UST**

**13** Now I am coming to you, Father. I have said these things while I am here in the world so that I may give them my complete joy.

## John 17:14

**I have given them your word (ULT)**
**I have spoken your messages to them (UST)**

"I have spoken your message to them"

**the world...because they are not of the world...I am not of the world (ULT)**
**the world...The world...because...they do not belong to this world...like me (UST)**

Here "the "world" is a metonym that refers to the people who oppose God. Alternate translation: "The people who oppose you have hated my followers because they do not belong to those who do not believe, just as I do not belong to them" (See: Metonymy)

### Translation Words - ULT

- word
- world
- world
- world (2)
- just as

### Translation Words - UST

- messages
- world...world
- to this world
- like me (2)
- like me

## John 17:15

**the world (ULT)**
**out of this world (UST)**

In this passage, "the world" is a metonym for the people who oppose God. (See: Metonymy)

**you to keep them from the evil one (ULT)**
**you to protect them from the harm that the evil one can do to them (UST)**

This refers to Satan. Alternate translation: "protect them from Satan, the evil one" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### Translation Words - ULT

- world
- the evil one
- evil one
- you to keep

### Translation Words - UST

- out of this world
- the harm that the evil one can do to them
- harm that the evil one can do to them
- you to protect

**ULT**

**15** I do not ask for you to take them away from the world, but for you to keep them from the evil one.

**UST**

**15** I am not asking for you to take them out of this world, but instead for you to protect them from the harm that the evil one can do to them.

## John 17:16

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- world
- world (2)
- just as

### Translation Words - UST

- to those in this world who are opposed to you
- belong to them (2)
- just like

**ULT**

**16** They are not of the world, just as I am not of the world.

**UST**

**16** They do not belong to those in this world who are opposed to you, just like I also do not belong to them.

# John 17:17

**Set them apart by the truth (ULT)**
**Set my apprentices apart so that they may completely belong to you, by enabling them to live in accordance with what is true (UST)**

The purpose for setting them apart can be stated clearly. The phrase "by the truth" here represents by teaching the truth. Alternate translation: "Make them your own people by teaching them the truth" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**Your word is truth**

"Your message is true" or "What you say is true"

## Translation Words - ULT

- word
- truth
- truth
- Set…apart

## Translation Words - UST

- message
- by enabling them to live in accordance with what is true
- true
- Set…apart so that they may completely belong to you

---

**ULT**

**17** Set them apart by the truth. Your word is truth.

**UST**

**17** Set my apprentices apart so that they may completely belong to you, by enabling them to live in accordance with what is true. Your message is true.

## John 17:18

**into the world (ULT)**
**into the world (UST)**

Here into "the world" is a metonym that means to the people who live in the world. Alternate translation: "to the people of the world" (See: Metonymy)

### Translation Words - ULT

- world
- world (2)
- you sent
- I have sent
- Just as

### Translation Words - UST

- world
- world (2)
- you sent
- am sending
- As

**ULT**

**18** Just as you sent me into the world, so I have sent them into the world.

**UST**

**18** As you sent me into the world, I am sending them into the world.

# John 17:19

**so that they themselves may also be set apart in truth (ULT)**
**so that they also may dedicate themselves completely to you (UST)**

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "so that they may also set apart themselves truly to you" (See: Active or Passive)

## Translation Words - ULT

- truth
- have set
- set apart

## Translation Words - UST

- dedicate themselves completely to you
- dedicate...to completely belong to you
- dedicate themselves completely to you

**ULT**

**19** For their sakes I have set myself apart, so that they themselves may also be set apart in truth.

**UST**

**19** I dedicate myself to completely belong to you for their sakes, so that they also may dedicate themselves completely to you."

# John 17:20

**those who will believe in me through their word (ULT) those who will trust in me when they hear their message (UST)**

"those who will believe in me because they teach about me"

## Translation Words - ULT

- those who will believe
- I pray
- in me

## Translation Words - UST

- those who will trust
- I am praying...I am praying
- in me

**ULT**

**20** But I pray not only for these, but also for those who will believe in me through their word

**UST**

**20** "I am praying not only for these apprentices here, but also I am praying for those who will trust in me when they hear their message.

# John 17:21

**they will all be one, just as you, Father, are in me, and I am in you. May they also be in us**

Those who trust in Jesus become united with the Father and the Son when they believe.

**Father (ULT)**
**Father (UST)**

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

**the world (ULT)**
**the world (UST)**

Here the "the world" is a metonym that refers to the people who do not yet know God. Alternate translation: "the people who do not know God" (See: Metonymy)

## Translation Words - ULT

- world
- will believe
- Father
- have sent
- just as

## Translation Words - UST

- world
- will know
- Father
- sent
- just as

**ULT**

**21** so that they will all be one, just as you, Father, are in me, and I am in you, so that they also be in us, so that the world will believe that you have sent me.

**UST**

**21** I pray that they may all be united, just as you and I are united. Father, you are united to me, and I am to you—may they also be united to us. Do this so that the world will know you sent me.

## John 17:22

**The glory that you gave me, I also have given to them (ULT)**
**I have shown them who I am, and they have seen what I have done (UST)**

"I have honored my followers just as you have honored me"

**so that they will be one, just as we are one (ULT)**
**I have taught them this so that they may be united together, as you and I are united (UST)**

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "so that you can unite them just as you have united us" (See: Active or Passive)

### Translation Words - ULT

- glory
- just as

### Translation Words - UST

- have shown them who I am, and they have seen what I have done
- as

---

**ULT**

**22** The glory that you gave me, I also have given to them, so that they will be one, just as we are one:

**UST**

**22** I have shown them who I am, and they have seen what I have done. I have taught them this so that they may be united together, as you and I are united.

# John 17:23

**that they may be brought to complete unity (ULT)**
**I have done this so that they may be perfectly united together (UST)**

"that they may be completely united"

**so that the world will know (ULT)**
**and so that the unbelievers may know...that (UST)**

Here "the world" is a metonym that refers to the people who do not know God. Alternate translation: "that all the people will know" (See: Metonymy)

**you have loved (ULT)**
**you love (UST)**

This kind of love comes from God and focuses on the good of others, even when it does not benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do.

## Translation Words - ULT

- you have loved
- you loved (2)
- world
- sent
- brought to complete unity
- just as
- will know

## Translation Words - UST

- you love
- you love (2)
- unbelievers
- sent
- may be perfectly
- just as
- may know

## John 17:24

**Father (ULT)**
**Father (UST)**

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

**where I am (ULT)**
**where I am (UST)**

Here "where I am" refers to heaven. Alternate translation: "with me in heaven" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**to see my glory**

"to see my greatness"

**before the creation of the world (ULT)**
**from before the time we created the world (UST)**

Here Jesus refers to the time before creation. Alternate translation: "before we created the world" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**ULT**

**24** Father, those you have given me, I desire that they also may be with me where I am, in order to see my glory, which you gave me because you loved me before the creation of the world.

**UST**

**24** "Father, I want these whom you have given to me to be with me always where I am so that they can see the splendor and majesty you will give to me when I am with you. You do this because you have loved me from before the time we created the world.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- you loved
- of the world
- glory
- Father
- the creation
- the creation of the world

**Translation Words - UST**

- you have loved
- the world
- splendor and majesty
- Father
- we created
- we created the world

# John 17:25

## Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes his prayer.

## Righteous Father (ULT)
## O Righteous Father (UST)

Here "Father" is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

## the world did not know you (ULT)
## the world does not know you (UST)

> **ULT**
> **25** Righteous Father, the world did not know you, but I know you; and these know that you sent me.
>
> **UST**
> **25** O Righteous Father, the world does not know you, but I know you; and these with me here know that you have sent me to them.

The "world" is a metonym for the people who do not belong to God. Alternate translation: "those who do not belong to you do not know what you are like" (See: Metonymy)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Righteous Father
- world
- Righteous Father
- sent
- know
- know
- know

## Translation Words - UST

- O Righteous
- world
- Father
- have sent...to them
- does...know
- know
- know

# John 17:26

### I made...your name...known...to them (ULT)
### I have made them know who you are (UST)

The word "name" refers to God. Alternate translation: "I have revealed to them what you are like" (See: Metonymy)

### love...you have loved (ULT)
### you love...you love (UST)

This kind of love comes from God and focuses on the good of others, even when it does not benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do.

## Translation Words - ULT

- love
- you have loved
- name
- I made...known
- I will make it known

## Translation Words - UST

- you love
- you love
- who...are
- I have made...know
- I will continue to do this

**ULT**

**26** I made your name known to them, and I will make it known so that the love with which you have loved me will be in them, and I will be in them."

**UST**

**26** I have made them know who you are. I will continue to do this so that you may love them like you love me and so that I may be united with them."

# John 18

## John 18 General Notes

## Structure and formatting

Verse 14 says, "Now Caiaphas was the one who had given the advice to the Jews that it would be better that one man die for the people." The author says this to help the reader understand why it was to Caiaphas that they took Jesus. You might want to put these words in parentheses. (See: Background Information)

## Special concepts in this chapter

### "It is not lawful for us to put any man to death"

The Roman government did not allow the Jews to kill criminals, so the Jews needed to ask Pilate, the governor, to kill him (John 18:31).

### Jesus' kingdom

No one knows for sure what Jesus meant when he told Pilate that his kingdom was not "of this world" (John 18:36). Some people think that Jesus means that his kingdom is only spiritual and that he has no visible kingdom on this earth, Other people think that Jesus meant that he would not build and rule his kingdom by force, the way other kings build theirs. It is possible to translate the words "is not of this world" as "is not from this place" or "comes from another place."

### King of the Jews

When Pilate asked if Jesus were the King of the Jews (John 18:33), he was asking if Jesus were claiming to be like King Herod, whom the Romans were permitting to rule Judea. When he asked the crowd if he should release the King of the Jews (John 18:39), he is mocking the Jews, because the Romans and Jews hated each other. He was also mocking Jesus, because he did not think that Jesus was a king at all, (See: Irony)

## John 18:1

### General Information:

Verses 1-2 give background information for the events that follow. Verse 1 tells where they took place, and verse 2 gives background information about Judas. (See: Background Information)

### After Jesus spoke these words (ULT)
### When Jesus finished his prayer, he (UST)

The author uses these words to mark the beginning of a new event. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

### Kidron Valley (ULT)
### Kidron (UST)

a valley in Jerusalem separating the Temple Mount from the Mount of Olives (See: How to Translate Names)

### where there was a garden (ULT)
### On the other side there was a grove of olive trees (UST)

This was a grove of olive trees. Alternate translation: "where there was a grove of olive trees" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- disciples
- disciples
- other side of the Kidron Valley

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus...he
- apprentices
- they
- Kidron Valley

---

**ULT**

**1** After Jesus spoke these words, he went out with his disciples to the other side of the Kidron Valley, where there was a garden into which he and his disciples entered.

**UST**

**1** When Jesus finished his prayer, he went with his apprentices and crossed the Kidron Valley. On the other side there was a grove of olive trees, and they entered it.

## John 18:2

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- disciples
- Judas
- who was going to betray
- went
- knew

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- apprentices
- Judas
- the one who was about to hand...over to his enemies
- went
- knew

**ULT**

**2** Now Judas, who was going to betray him, also knew the place, for Jesus often went there with his disciples.

**UST**

**2** Judas, the one who was about to hand Jesus over to his enemies, knew where the place was because Jesus often went there with his apprentices.

# John 18:3

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

## Translation Words - ULT

- Pharisees
- chief priests
- Then Judas
- torches
- weapons

## Translation Words - UST

- Pharisees
- chief priests
- Judas
- torches
- weapons

**ULT**

**3** Then Judas, leading a group of soldiers and some officers from the chief priests and from the Pharisees, went there with lanterns, and torches, and weapons.

**UST**

**3** So Judas came to that grove. He was leading a troop of Roman soldiers and some Temple guards who had been sent by the Pharisees and chief priests. They were carrying torches and lamps and weapons.

# John 18:4

## General Information:

Jesus begins to speak with the soldiers, officers, and Pharisees.

## Then Jesus, who knew all the things that were happening to him (ULT)

"Then Jesus, who knew everything that was about to happen to him"

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- are you looking for
- who knew

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- are you looking for
- knew

---

**ULT**

**4** Then Jesus, who knew all the things that were happening to him, went forward and asked them, "Who are you looking for?"

**UST**

**4** Jesus knew what was going to happen to him, so he went forward and asked them, "Who are you looking for?"

# John 18:5

**Jesus of Nazareth (ULT)**
**Jesus the Nazarene (UST)**

"Jesus, the man from Nazareth"

**I am (ULT)**
**I am that person (UST)**

The word "he" is implied in the text. Alternate translation: "I am he" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**who betrayed him (ULT)**
**the one who was handing him over (UST)**

"who handed him over"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Jesus of Nazareth
- of Nazareth
- Judas
- who betrayed

**Translation Words - UST**

- Jesus the Nazarene
- Nazarene
- Judas
- the one who was handing...over

**ULT**

**5** They answered him, "Jesus of Nazareth." Jesus said to them, "I am." But Judas, who betrayed him, was also standing with the soldiers.

**UST**

**5** They replied to him, "Jesus the Nazarene." Jesus said to them, "I am that person." (Now Judas, the one who was handing him over, was standing with them.)

## John 18:6

**I am (ULT)**
**I am that person (UST)**

Here the word "he" is not present in the original text, but it is implied. Alternate translation: "I am he" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**fell to the ground (ULT)**
**fell to the ground because of his power (UST)**

The men fell to the ground because of Jesus' power. Alternate translation: "fell down because of Jesus' power" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

---

**ULT**

**6** So when he said to them, "I am," they went backward and fell to the ground.

**UST**

**6** When Jesus said to them, "I am that person," they swiftly moved back and fell to the ground because of his power.

# John 18:7

**Jesus of Nazareth (ULT)**
**Jesus the Nazarene (UST)**

"Jesus, the man from Nazareth"

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus of Nazareth
- of Nazareth
- are you looking for

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus the Nazarene
- Nazarene
- are you looking for

**ULT**

**7** Then again he asked them, "Who are you looking for?" Again they said, "Jesus of Nazareth."

**UST**

**7** So he asked them again, "Who are you looking for?" They answered, "Jesus the Nazarene."

## John 18:8

### General Information:

In verse 9 there is a break from the main story line as John tells us background information about Jesus fulfilling Scripture. (See: Background Information)

### I am (ULT)
### I am that person...am the one (UST)

Here the word "he" is not present in the original text, but it is implied. Alternate translation: "I am he" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- you are looking for

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- you are looking for

**ULT**

**8** Jesus answered, "I told you that I am. So if you are looking for me, let these go."

**UST**

**8** Jesus replied to them, "I told you that I am that person. Since I am the one you are looking for, let these other men go.

## John 18:9

### This was in order to fulfill the word that he said (ULT)

Here "the word" refers to the words Jesus had prayed. You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "This happened in order to fulfill the words that he had said when he was praying to his Father" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and Active or Passive)

### Translation Words - ULT

- word
- to fulfill

### Translation Words - UST

- words
- to fulfill

**ULT**

**9** This was in order to fulfill the word that he said: "Of those whom you have given me, I did not lose any of them."

**UST**

**9** This happened in order to fulfill the words he had said when he was praying to his Father, "I did not lose even one of those you gave me."

## John 18:10

**Malchus (ULT)**
**Malchus (UST)**

Malchus is a male servant of the high priest. (See: How to Translate Names)

### Translation Words - ULT

- the name
- high priest
- Then Simon Peter
- a sword
- servant
- servant

### Translation Words - UST

- named
- high priest's
- Then Simon Peter
- a short sword
- servant
- a man

---

**ULT**

**10** Then Simon Peter, who had a sword, drew it and struck the servant of the high priest and cut off his right ear. Now the name of the servant was Malchus.

**UST**

**10** Then Simon Peter drew out a short sword and struck the high priest's servant, a man named Malchus, and cut off his right ear.

# John 18:11

**sheath (ULT)**
**back into its sheath (UST)**

the cover for a sharp knife or sword, so the knife will not cut the owner

**The cup which the Father has given me, should I not drink it (ULT)**
**Of course I will suffer in the way that my Father has planned for me to do (UST)**

This remark appears in the form of a question to add emphasis to Jesus' statement. Alternate translation: "I must surely drink the cup that the Father has given to me!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

**The cup (ULT)**
**in the way that...has planned for...to do (UST)**

Here "cup" is a metaphor that refers to the suffering that Jesus must endure. (See: Metaphor)

**Father (ULT)**
**Father (UST)**

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Jesus
- Father
- to Peter
- sword

**Translation Words - UST**

- Jesus
- Father
- Peter
- your sword

**ULT**

**11** Therefore Jesus said to Peter, "Put the sword back into its sheath. The cup which the Father has given me, should I not drink it?"

**UST**

**11** Jesus said to Peter, "Put your sword back into its sheath! Of course I will suffer in the way that my Father has planned for me to do."

# John 18:12

## General Information:

Verse 14 tells us background information about Caiaphas. (See:
Background Information)

## of the Jews (ULT)
## some of the temple guards (UST)

Here "the Jews" is a synecdoche for the Jewish leaders who opposed
Jesus. Alternate translation: "the Jewish leaders" (See: Synecdoche)

## seized Jesus and tied him up (ULT)
## seized Jesus and tied him to prevent him from escaping
## (UST)

The soldiers tied Jesus' hands to prevent him from escaping. Alternate translation: "captured Jesus and tied him up
to prevent him from escaping" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**ULT**

**12** So the group of soldiers and the
captain, and the officers of the Jews,
seized Jesus and tied him up.

**UST**

**12** Then the group of soldiers, along
with their captain and some of the
temple guards, seized Jesus and tied
him to prevent him from escaping.

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Jews
- tied...up
- captain
- seized

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- some of the temple guards
- tied...to prevent him from escaping
- their captain
- seized

## John 18:13

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- high priest
- of Caiaphas
- Annas

### Translation Words - UST

- the high priest
- of Caiaphas
- Annas

---

**ULT**

**13** Then they led him first to Annas, for he was the father-in-law of Caiaphas, who was high priest that year.

**UST**

**13** Then they took him to Annas, the father-in-law of Caiaphas, who was the high priest that year.

---

## John 18:14

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jews
- Caiaphas
- people
- it would be better
- die
- the one who had given the advice

### Translation Words - UST

- other leaders
- Caiaphas
- people
- it would be better that
- should die
- who had advised

**ULT**

**14** Now Caiaphas was the one who had given the advice to the Jews that it would be better that one man die for the people.

**UST**

**14** It was Caiaphas who had advised other leaders that it would be better that one man should die for the people than that all the people should perish.

# John 18:15

**another...Now that disciple was known to the high priest, and he entered with Jesus (ULT)**

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "Now the high priest knew that disciple so he was able to enter with Jesus" (See: Active or Passive)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Jesus (2)
- disciple
- another...Now...disciple
- high priest
- high priest
- Simon Peter
- courtyard

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Jesus (2)
- apprentice
- apprentice
- to the high priest
- the high priest's
- Simon Peter
- courtyard

**ULT**

**15** But Simon Peter followed Jesus, and so did another disciple. Now that disciple was known to the high priest, and he entered with Jesus into the courtyard of the high priest;

**UST**

**15** Simon Peter followed Jesus and so did one other apprentice. The other apprentice was known to the high priest, so he had permission to enter the high priest's courtyard when the soldiers took Jesus.

# John 18:16

## So the other disciple, who was known to the high priest (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "So the other disciple, whom the high priest knew" (See: Active or Passive)

### Translation Words - ULT

- disciple
- high priest
- but Peter
- Peter
- female doorkeeper
- known

### Translation Words - UST

- apprentice
- high priest, chief priests
- Peter
- Peter
- to the servant girl who was watching the gate
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

**ULT**

**16** but Peter was standing at the door outside. So the other disciple, who was known to the high priest, went out and spoke to the female doorkeeper and he brought Peter in.

**UST**

**16** Peter had to stop outside at the gate. So the other apprentice went out again and spoke to the servant girl who was watching the gate, and she let Peter in.

# John 18:17

## Are you not also one of the disciples of this man (ULT)

This appears in the form of a question to enable the servant to express her remark somewhat cautiously. Alternate translation: "You are also one of the arrested man's disciples! Are you not?" (See: Rhetorical Question)

## Translation Words - ULT

- disciples
- to Peter
- doorkeeper
- female servant

## Translation Words - UST

- apprentices
- Peter
- That servant girl
- That servant girl

**ULT**

**17** Then the female servant, the doorkeeper, said to Peter, "Are you not also one of the disciples of this man?" He said, "I am not."

**UST**

**17** That servant girl said to Peter, "You are one the apprentices of the man whom they have arrested, are you not?" He said, "No, I am not."

# John 18:18

**Now the servants and the officers were standing there, and they had made a charcoal fire, for it was cold, and they were warming themselves (ULT)**

These were the high priest's servants and the temple guards. Alternate translation: "It was cold, so the high priest's servants and temple guards made a charcoal fire and were standing and warming themselves around it" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**Now (ULT)**

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line so John can add the information about the people who were warming themselves around the fire. (See: Background Information)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Peter
- a charcoal fire
- servants

## Translation Words - UST

- Peter
- a charcoal fire
- high priest's servants

**ULT**

**18** Now the servants and the officers were standing there, and they had made a charcoal fire, for it was cold, and they were warming themselves. But Peter was also with them, standing there and warming himself.

**UST**

**18** It was cold, so the high priest's servants and temple guards made a charcoal fire and were standing and warming themselves around it. Peter was also there with them. He was standing and warming himself.

## John 18:19

### General Information:

Here the story line shifts back to Jesus.

### The...high priest (ULT)
### The...high priest (UST)

This was Caiphas (John 18:13).

### about his disciples and about his teaching (ULT)
### about his apprentices and what he had been teaching them (UST)

Here "his teaching" refers to what Jesus had been teaching the people. Alternate translation: "about his disciples and what he had been teaching the people" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- disciples
- high priest
- teaching

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- apprentices
- high priest
- what...had been teaching them

# John 18:20

**I have spoken openly to the world (ULT)**
**I have spoken openly to everyone (UST)**

You may need to make explicit that the word "world" is a metonym for those people who had heard Jesus teach. Here the exaggeration "the world" emphasizes that Jesus has spoken openly. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and Metonymy and Hyperbole)

**where all the Jews come together (ULT)**
**in the places where our people come together (UST)**

Here "all the Jews" is an exaggeration that emphasizes that Jesus spoke where anyone who wanted to hear him could hear him. (See: Hyperbole)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- the synagogue
- Jews
- world
- temple
- was...teaching
- come together

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- the Jewish preaching places
- our people
- to everyone
- temple
- have...taught
- come together

---

**ULT**

**20** Jesus answered him, "I have spoken openly to the world. I was always teaching in the synagogue and in the temple where all the Jews come together. I said nothing in secret.

**UST**

**20** Jesus replied, "I have spoken openly to everyone. I have always taught in the Jewish preaching places and in the temple, in the places where our people come together. I have said nothing in secret.

# John 18:21

**Why do you ask me (ULT)**
**So why are you asking me these questions (UST)**

This remark appears in the form of a question to add emphasis to what Jesus is saying. Alternate translation: "You should not be asking me these questions!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- know

**Translation Words - UST**

- know

# John 18:22

**Is that how you answer the high priest (ULT)**
**That is not the right way to answer the high priest (UST)**

This remark appears in the form of a question to add emphasis. Alternate translation: "That is not how you should answer the high priest!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- high priest

## Translation Words - UST

- him
- high priest

**ULT**

**22** Now when Jesus had said this, one of the officers standing there struck Jesus and said, "Is that how you answer the high priest?"

**UST**

**22** When Jesus said these things, one of the temple guards standing near him struck him hard with his hand. He said, "That is not the right way to answer the high priest."

## John 18:23

**testify about the wrong (ULT)**
**tell me what it was (UST)**

"tell me what I said that was wrong"

**if...rightly, why do you hit me (ULT)**
**if...what I said was right, you should not slap me (UST)**

This remark appears in the form of a question to add emphasis to what Jesus is saying. Alternate translation: "if I said only what was right, you should not be hitting me!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- testify
- wrongly
- wrong

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- tell me
- something wrong
- what it was

**ULT**

**23** Jesus answered him, "If I spoke wrongly, testify about the wrong, but if rightly, why do you hit me?"

**UST**

**23** Jesus replied to him, "If I had said something wrong, tell me what it was. However, if what I said was right, you should not slap me!"

## John 18:24

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- high priest
- Caiaphas
- Annas
- sent

### Translation Words - UST

- high priest
- Caiaphas
- Annas
- sent

**ULT**
**24** Then Annas sent him tied up to Caiaphas the high priest.

**UST**
**24** Then Annas sent Jesus, who was still tied up, to Caiaphas the high priest.

## John 18:25

### General Information:

Here the story line shifts back to Peter.

### Now (ULT)
### still (UST)

This word is used to mark a break in the story line so John can provide information about Peter. (See: Background Information)

### Are you not also one of his disciples (ULT)

This remark appears in the form of a question to add emphasis. Alternate translation: "You are also one of his disciples!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

### Translation Words - ULT

- disciples
- Simon Peter

### Translation Words - UST

- apprentices
- Simon Peter

**ULT**

**25** Now Simon Peter was standing and warming himself. The people then said to him, "Are you not also one of his disciples?" He denied it and said, "I am not."

**UST**

**25** Simon Peter was still standing and warming himself. Another person said to him, "You are one of the apprentices of the man whom they have arrested, are you not?" He said, "No, I am not."

# John 18:26

**Did I not see you in the garden with him (ULT)
Surely I saw you in the olive tree grove with the man they have arrested, did I not (UST)**

This remark appears in the form of a question to add emphasis. Here the word "him" refers to Jesus. Alternate translation: "I saw you in the olive tree grove with the man they arrested! Did I not?" (See: Rhetorical Question and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

## Translation Words - ULT

- high priest
- Peter
- a relative
- servants

## Translation Words - UST

- high priest's
- Peter
- a relative
- servants

**ULT**

**26** One of the servants of the high priest, who was a relative of the man whose ear Peter had cut off, said, "Did I not see you in the garden with him?"

**UST**

**26** One of the high priest's servants, a relative of the man whose ear Peter had cut off, said to him, "Surely I saw you in the olive tree grove with the man they have arrested, did I not?"

# John 18:27

### Peter then denied again (ULT)

Here it is implied that Peter denied knowing and being with Jesus. Alternate translation: "Peter then denied again that he knew Jesus or that he had been with him" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### immediately the rooster crowed (ULT)
### immediately a rooster crowed (UST)

> **ULT**
> **27** Peter then denied again, and immediately the rooster crowed.
>
> **UST**
> **27** Peter again denied it, and immediately a rooster crowed.

Here it is assumed the reader will remember that Jesus had said Peter would deny him before the rooster crowed. Alternate translation: "immediately the rooster crowed, just as Jesus had said would happen" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Peter

### Translation Words - UST

- Peter

# John 18:28

## General Information:

Here the story line shifts back to Jesus. The soldiers and Jesus' accusers bring him to Caiaphas. Verse 28 gives us background information about why they did not enter the Praetorium. (See: Background Information)

## Then they led Jesus from Caiaphas (ULT)
## Then the soldiers led Jesus from Caiaphas' house (UST)

Here it is implied that they are leading Jesus from Caiaphas' house. Alternate translation: "Then they led Jesus from Caiaphas' house" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

## they did not enter into the government headquarters so that they would not be defiled (ULT)

Pilate was not a Jew, so if the Jewish leaders entered his headquarters, they would be defiled. This would have prevented them from celebrating the Passover. You can translate the double negative in a positive form. Alternate translation: "they themselves remained outside Pilate's headquarters because Pilate was a Gentile. They did not want to become defiled" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and Double Negatives)

**ULT**

**28** Then they led Jesus from Caiaphas to the government headquarters. But it was early in the morning, and they did not enter into the government headquarters so that they would not be defiled but would eat the Passover.

**UST**

**28** Then the soldiers led Jesus from Caiaphas' house to the headquarters of Pilate, the Roman governor. It was early morning. Pilate was not a Jew, so Jesus' accusers thought that if they entered his headquarters, they would defile themselves and be unable to celebrate the Passover Festival. So they did not go in.

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Passover
- Caiaphas
- government headquarters
- government headquarters (2)
- they would…be defiled

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Passover Festival
- Caiaphas' house
- headquarters of Pilate, the Roman governor
- his headquarters (2)
- they would defile themselves

## John 18:29

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Pilate
- accusation

### Translation Words - UST

- Pilate
- Of what are you accusing

---

**ULT**

**29** So Pilate went out to them and said, "What accusation are you bringing against this man?"

**UST**

**29** So Pilate came out to talk to them. He said, "Of what are you accusing this man?"

## John 18:30

**If this man was not an evildoer, we would not have given him over to you (ULT)**

You can translate this double negative in a positive form. Alternate translation: "This man is an evil doer, and we had to bring him to you for punishment" (See: Double Negatives)

**we would...have given him over (ULT)**
**we would...have brought him (UST)**

This phrase here means to hand over to an enemy.

### Translation Words - ULT

   • an evildoer

### Translation Words - UST

   • a criminal

# John 18:31

## General Information:

In verse 32 there is a break from the main story line as the author tells us background information about how Jesus' predicted how he would die. (See: Background Information)

## The Jews said to him (ULT)

Here "Jews" is a synecdoche for the Jewish leaders who opposed Jesus and arrested him. Alternate translation: "The Jewish leaders said to him" (See: Synecdoche)

## It is not lawful for us to put any man to death (ULT) We want to execute him, but your Roman law prevents us from doing that (UST)

According to Roman law, the Jews could not put a man to death. Alternate translation: "According to Roman law, we cannot put a person to death" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jews
- law
- judge
- Pilate
- It is...lawful

## Translation Words - UST

- Jewish leaders
- law
- judge
- Pilate
- We want...but your Roman law prevents us from doing that

# John 18:32

**They said this so that the word of Jesus would be fulfilled (ULT)**
**They said this in order to make true what Jesus (UST)**

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "in order to fulfill what Jesus had said earlier" (See: Active or Passive)

**to indicate by what kind of death he would die (ULT)**
**about the kind of death he was going to die (UST)**

"regarding how he would die"

## Translation Words - ULT

- of Jesus
- word of Jesus
- would be fulfilled
- of death
- die

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- what...Jesus
- to make true
- death
- to die

---

**ULT**

**32** They said this so that the word of Jesus would be fulfilled which he had spoken to indicate by what kind of death he would die.

**UST**

**32** They said this in order to make true what Jesus had said about the kind of death he was going to die.

# John 18:33

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- called
- Jews
- King of the Jews
- Pilate
- government headquarters
- King

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- He summoned
- Jews
- king of the Jews
- Pilate
- his headquarters
- king

**ULT**

**33** Then Pilate entered into the government headquarters again and called Jesus and he said to him, "Are you the King of the Jews?"

**UST**

**33** Pilate then went back inside his headquarters. He summoned Jesus and said to him, "Are you the king of the Jews?"

## John 18:34

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus

> **ULT**
> **34** Jesus answered, "Do you speak this from yourself, or did others speak to you about me?"
>
> **UST**
> **34** Jesus replied, "Are you asking because you yourself want to know, or did others tell you to ask me this question?"

## John 18:35

### I am not a Jew, am I (ULT)
### I am not a Jew (UST)

This remark appears in the form of a question so Pilate can emphasize his complete lack of interest in the cultural affairs of the Jewish people. Alternate translation: "Well I am certainly not a Jew, and I have no interest in these matters!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

### Your own people

"Your fellow Jews"

### Translation Words - ULT

- a Jew
- chief priests
- Pilate
- people

### Translation Words - UST

- a Jew
- chief priests
- Pilate
- nation

**ULT**

**35** Pilate answered, "I am not a Jew, am I? Your own people and the chief priests gave you over to me. What did you do?"

**UST**

**35** Pilate replied, "I am not a Jew! Your own nation and the chief priests have delivered you over to me. What have you done wrong?"

# John 18:36

**My kingdom is not of this world (ULT)**
**My kingdom is not part of this world (UST)**

Here "world" is a metonym for the people who oppose Jesus. Possible meanings are 1) "My kingdom is not part of this world" or 2) "I do not need this world's permission to rule as their king" or "It is not from this world that I have authority to be king." (See: Metonymy)

**so that I would not be given over to the Jews (ULT)**

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "and would prevent the Jewish leaders from arresting me" (See: Active or Passive)

**to the Jews (ULT)**
**to my Jewish opponents (UST)**

Here "Jews" is a synecdoche that refers to the Jewish leaders who opposed Jesus. (See: Synecdoche)

**ULT**

**36** Jesus answered, "My kingdom is not of this world. If my kingdom were of this world, my servants would fight so that I would not be given over to the Jews. But now my kingdom is not from here."

**UST**

**36** Jesus replied, "My kingdom is not part of this world. If my kingdom were of this world, my servants would have been fighting to keep me from being handed over to my Jewish opponents, but my kingdom is not of this world."

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Jesus
- Jews
- world
- world (2)
- kingdom
- kingdom (2)
- kingdom (3)
- I...be given over
- servants

**Translation Words - UST**

- Jesus
- my Jewish opponents
- part of...world
- world (2)
- kingdom
- kingdom (2)
- kingdom (3)
- to keep me from being handed over
- servants

# John 18:37

**I have come into the world (ULT)**
**I came into this world (UST)**

Here "world" is a synecdoche that refers to the people who live in the world. (See: Synecdoche)

**I would bear witness to the truth (ULT)**
**to tell people the truth about God (UST)**

Here "the truth" refers to the truth about God. Alternate translation: "tell people the truth about God" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**who is of the truth (ULT)**
**who believes the truth (UST)**

This is an idiom that refers to anyone who loves the truth about God. (See: Idiom)

**to my voice (ULT)**
**what I say (UST)**

Here "voice" is a synecdoche that refers to words Jesus says. Alternate translation: "the things I say" or "me" (See: Synecdoche)

**ULT**

**37** Pilate then said to him, "Are you a king then?" Jesus answered, "You say that I am a king. For this purpose I have been born, and for this purpose I have come into the world, so that I would bear witness to the truth. Everyone who is of the truth listens to my voice."

**UST**

**37** Then Pilate said to him, "So you are a king?" Jesus replied, "Yes, what you have said about my being a king is correct. I was born to become a king, and I came into this world to tell people the truth about God. Everyone who believes the truth pays attention to what I say."

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Jesus
- I would bear witness
- truth
- truth
- world
- Pilate
- voice
- a king
- a king

**Translation Words - UST**

- Jesus
- to tell people
- truth about God
- truth
- into this world
- Pilate
- what...say
- a king
- a king

## John 18:38

**What is truth (ULT)**
**How can anyone know what the truth is (UST)**

This remark appears in the form of a question to reflect Pilate's belief that no one really knows what truth is. Alternate translation: "No one can know what is true!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

**the Jews (ULT)**
**the Jewish leaders (UST)**

Here "Jews" is a synecdoche that refers to the Jewish leaders who opposed Jesus. (See: Synecdoche)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Jews
- truth
- guilt
- Pilate

**Translation Words - UST**

- Jewish leaders
- How anyone know what the truth is
- has broken...law
- Pilate

**ULT**

**38** Pilate said to him, "What is truth?" When he had said this, he went out again to the Jews and said to them, "I find no guilt in this man.

**UST**

**38** Pilate asked him, "How can anyone know what the truth is?" After Pilate asked that question, he went outside and talked to the Jewish leaders again. He said to them, "I find he has broken no law.

# John 18:39

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jews
- Passover
- King of the Jews
- King

## Translation Words - UST

- you Jews
- Passover Festival
- man who you Jews say is your king
- man who...say is your king

**ULT**

**39** But you have the custom that I release one person to you at the Passover. So do you want me to release the King of the Jews to you?"

**UST**

**39** However, you Jews have a custom where every year during the Passover Festival, you ask me to release one man who is in prison. So would you like me to release for you the man who you Jews say is your king?"

# John 18:40

**Not this man, but Barabbas (ULT)**
**No, do not release this man, but release Barabbas (UST)**

This is an ellipsis. You can add the implied words. Alternate translation: "No! Do not release this man! Release Barabbas instead" (See: Ellipsis)

**Now Barabbas was a robber (ULT)**
**Now Barabbas was a revolutionary (UST)**

Here John provides background information about Barabbas. (See: Background Information)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Barabbas
- Barabbas
- a robber
- they cried out

**Translation Words - UST**

- Barabbas
- Barabbas
- a revolutionary
- They shouted

**ULT**

**40** Then they cried out again and said, "Not this man, but Barabbas." Now Barabbas was a robber.

**UST**

**40** They shouted again, "No, do not release this man, but release Barabbas!" Now Barabbas was a revolutionary.

## John 19

### John 19 General Notes

## Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 19:24, which are words from the Old Testament.

## Special concepts in this chapter

### "Purple garment"

Purple is a color like red or blue. The people were mocking Jesus, so they put him in a purple garment. This was because kings wore purple garments. They spoke and acted like they were giving honor to a king, but everyone knew that they were doing it because they hated Jesus. (See: Irony)

### "You are not Caesar's friend"

Pilate knew that Jesus was not a criminal, so he did not want to have his soldiers kill him. But the Jews told him that Jesus was claiming to be a king, and anyone who did that was breaking Caesar's laws (John 19:12).

### The tomb

The tomb in which Jesus was buried (John 19:41) was the kind of tomb in which wealthy Jewish families buried their dead. It was an actual room cut into a rock. It had a flat place on one side where they could place the body after they had put oil and spices on it and wrapped it in cloth. Then they would roll a large rock in front of the tomb so no one could see inside or enter.

## Important figures of speech in this chapter

### Sarcasm

The soldiers were insulting Jesus when they said, "Hail, King of the Jews." Pilate was insulting the Jews when he asked, "Should I crucify your king?" He was probably also insulting both Jesus and the Jews when he wrote, "Jesus of Nazareth, King of the Jews." (See: Irony)

## Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

### Gabbatha, Golgotha

These are two Hebrew words. After translating the meanings of these words ("The Pavement" and "The Place of a Skull"), the author transliterates their sounds by writing them with Greek letters.

# John 19:1

## Connecting Statement:

The part of the story from the previous chapter continues. Jesus is standing before Pilate as he is being accused by the Jews.

## Therefore Pilate then took Jesus and whipped him (ULT)

Pilate himself did not whip Jesus. Here "Pilate" is a synecdoche for the soldiers that Pilate ordered to whip Jesus. Alternate translation: "Then Pilate ordered his soldiers to whip Jesus" (See: Synecdoche)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Pilate

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Pilate

**ULT**
**1** Therefore Pilate then took Jesus and whipped him.

**UST**
**1** Then Pilate sent for Jesus. He had his soldiers beat him severely using whips.

## John 19:2

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- with a...garment
- thorns
- head
- soldiers
- purple
- a crown

### Translation Words - UST

- a...robe
- took some branches with thorns
- on his head
- soldiers
- purple
- something like a crown

**ULT**

**2** The soldiers weaved a crown of thorns. They put it on the head of Jesus and dressed him with a purple garment.

**UST**

**2** The soldiers also took some branches with thorns and wove them to make something like a crown. Then they put it on his head. They also put a purple robe on him. They did these things to ridicule him by pretending that he was a king.

# John 19:3

**Hail, King of the Jews (ULT)**
**Hooray for the King of the Jews (UST)**

The greeting "Hail" with a raised hand was only used to greet Caesar. As the soldiers use the crown of thorns and the purple robe to mock Jesus, it is ironic that they do not recognize that he is indeed a king. (See: Irony)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jews
- King...of the Jews
- King

## Translation Words - UST

- of the Jews
- for the King...of the Jews
- for the King

**ULT**

**3** They came to him and said, "Hail, King of the Jews!" and they struck him.

**UST**

**3** They mocked him and said, "Hooray for the King of the Jews!" and they struck him over and over again.

## John 19:4

**I find no guilt in him (ULT)**
**I find no reason to punish him (UST)**

Pilate states this twice to say he does not believe Jesus is not guilty of any crime. He does not want to punish him. Alternate translation: "I see no reason to punish him" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### Translation Words - ULT

- guilt
- Pilate
- you will know

### Translation Words - UST

- reason to punish
- Pilate
- you can know

**ULT**

**4** Then Pilate went outside again and said to them, "See, I am bringing him outside to you so that you will know that I find no guilt in him."

**UST**

**4** Pilate came outside again and said to the people, "Look, I am bringing him out to you so that you can know that I find no reason to punish him."

## John 19:5

**the crown of thorns and the purple garment (ULT)**
**the crown of thorns and the purple robe (UST)**

The crown and the purple robe are things only kings wear. The soldiers dressed Jesus in this manner to mock him. See John 19:2.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- garment
- of thorns
- purple
- crown

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- robe
- of thorns
- purple
- crown

**ULT**

**5** So Jesus came out, wearing the crown of thorns and the purple garment. Pilate said to them, "Look, here is the man!"

**UST**

**5** So Jesus came out, wearing the crown of thorns and the purple robe. Pilate said to them, "Look, here is the man!"

## John 19:6

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- • Crucify him
- • crucify him (2)
- • crucify him
- • guilt
- • chief priests
- • Pilate
- • they cried out

### Translation Words - UST

- • Crucify him
- • Crucify him (2)
- • crucify him
- • reason to punish
- • chief priests
- • Pilate
- • they shouted

**ULT**

**6** When therefore the chief priests and the officers saw Jesus, they cried out, saying, "Crucify him, crucify him!" Pilate said to them, "Take him yourselves and crucify him, for I find no guilt in him."

**UST**

**6** When the chief priests and temple guards saw him, they shouted, "Crucify him! Crucify him!" Pilate said to them, "Take him yourselves and crucify him! As for me, I find no reason to punish him."

# John 19:7

**The Jews answered him (ULT)**
**The Jewish leaders replied to Pilate (UST)**

Here "Jews" is a synecdoche for the Jewish leaders who opposed Jesus. Alternate translation: "The Jewish leaders answered Pilate" (See: Synecdoche)

**he ought to die because he claimed to be the Son of God (ULT)**
**he ought to die because he claimed to be the Son of God (UST)**

Jesus was condemned to death by crucifixion because he claimed he was "the Son of God."

**the Son of God (ULT)**
**the Son of God (UST)**

This is an important title for Jesus. (See: Translating Son and Father)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jews
- of God
- a law
- law (2)
- the Son of God
- to die

## Translation Words - UST

- The Jewish leaders
- of God
- a certain law
- that says (2)
- the Son of God
- to die

---

**ULT**

**7** The Jews answered him, "We have a law, and according to that law he ought to die because he claimed to be the Son of God."

**UST**

**7** The Jewish leaders replied to Pilate, "We have a certain law that says he ought to die because he claimed to be the Son of God."

# John 19:8

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

## Translation Words - ULT

- he was...afraid
- Pilate

## Translation Words - UST

- he was...afraid of what would happen to himself if he commanded the soldiers to kill Jesus
- Pilate

**ULT**

**8** When therefore Pilate heard this statement, he was even more afraid,

**UST**

**8** When Pilate heard that, he was more afraid of what would happen to himself if he commanded the soldiers to kill Jesus.

## John 19:9

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- to Jesus
- But Jesus
- government headquarters

### Translation Words - UST

- to Jesus
- Jesus
- his headquarters

**ULT**

**9** and he entered into the government headquarters again and said to Jesus, "Where do you come from?" But Jesus gave him no answer.

**UST**

**9** He entered his headquarters once more and called the soldiers to bring Jesus back inside. Then he said to Jesus, "From where do you come?" However, Jesus did not answer him.

## John 19:10

**Are you not speaking to me (ULT)**
**Will you not speak to me (UST)**

This remark appears in the form of a question. Here Pilate expresses his surprise that Jesus does not take the opportunity to defend himself. Alternate translation: "I cannot believe you are refusing to speak to me!" or "Answer me!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

**Do you not know that I have the power to release you, and I have the power to crucify you (ULT)**
**Do you not know that I have authority to release you, and I also have authority to crucify you (UST)**

This remark appears in the form of a question to add emphasis.
Alternate translation: "You should know that I am able to release you or to order my soldiers to crucify you!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

**the power (ULT)**
**authority (UST)**

Here "power" is a metonym that refers to the ability to do something or to cause something to happen. (See: Metonymy)

> **ULT**
>
> **10** Then Pilate said to him, "Are you not speaking to me? Do you not know that I have the power to release you, and I have the power to crucify you?"
>
> **UST**
>
> **10** So Pilate said to him, "Will you not speak to me? Do you not know that I have authority to release you, and I also have authority to crucify you?"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- to crucify
- the power
- the power (2)
- Pilate
- Do you...know

**Translation Words - UST**

- to crucify
- authority
- authority (2)
- Pilate
- Do you...know

# John 19:11

### You do not have any power over me except for what has been given to you from above (ULT)

You can translate this double negative in a positive and active form. Alternate translation: "You are able to act against me only because God has made you able" (See: Double Negatives and Active or Passive)

### from above (ULT)

This is a respectful way of referring to God.

### he who gave...me...over (ULT)
### one who handed me over (UST)

This phrase here means to hand over to an enemy.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- a...sin
- power

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- sin
- authority

**ULT**

**11** Jesus answered him, "You do not have any power over me except for what has been given to you from above. Therefore, he who gave me over to you has a greater sin."

**UST**

**11** Jesus answered him, "You would have no authority over me at all, if God had not given it to you. So the one who handed me over to you is guilty of a worse sin."

# John 19:12

**At this answer (ULT)**
**From that moment on (UST)**

Here "this answer" refers to Jesus' answer. Alternate translation:
"When Pilate heard Jesus' answer" (See: Assumed Knowledge and
Implicit Information)

**Pilate tried to release him (ULT)**
**Pilate kept trying to release Jesus (UST)**

The form of "tried" in the original indicates that Pilate tried "hard" or
"repeatedly" to release Jesus. Alternate translation: "he tried hard to
release Jesus" or "he tried again and again to release Jesus" (See:
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**but the Jews cried out (ULT)**
**However, the Jewish leaders cried out (UST)**

> **ULT**
>
> **12** At this answer, Pilate tried to release
> him, but the Jews cried out, saying, "If
> you release this man, you are not a
> friend of Caesar. Everyone who makes
> himself a king speaks against Caesar."
>
> **UST**
>
> **12** From that moment on, Pilate kept
> trying to release Jesus. However, the
> Jewish leaders cried out, "If you release
> this man, you are no friend of Roman
> emperor Caesar! Anyone who makes
> himself a king, stands opposed to
> Caesar."

Here "Jews" is a synecdoche that refers to the Jewish leaders that opposed Jesus. In the original, the form of "cried
out" indicates that they cried out or shouted repeatedly. Alternate translation: "but the Jewish leaders kept
shouting" (See: Synecdoche and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**you are not a friend of Caesar (ULT)**
**you are no friend of Roman emperor Caesar (UST)**

"you are opposing Caesar" or "you are opposing the emperor"

**makes himself a king (ULT)**
**who…makes himself…a king (UST)**

"claims that he is a king"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Jews
- Pilate
- of Caesar
- Caesar
- cried out
- a king
- tried

**Translation Words - UST**

- However, the Jewish leaders
- Pilate
- of Roman emperor Caesar
- to Caesar
- cried out
- who…a king
- kept trying

## John 19:13

**he brought Jesus out (ULT)**
**he brought Jesus out (UST)**

Here "he" refers to Pilate and is a synecdoche for "Pilate ordered the soldiers." Alternate translation: "he ordered the soldiers to bring Jesus out" (See: Synecdoche)

**sat down (ULT)**
**Pilate sat down (UST)**

Important people like Pilate sat down when they performed an official duty, while people who were not so important stood up.

**in the judgment seat (ULT)**
**in front of him in the judgment seat...where he usually pronounced verdicts (UST)**

> **ULT**
>
> **13** When Pilate heard these words, he brought Jesus out and sat down in the judgment seat in a place called "The Pavement," but in Hebrew, "Gabbatha."
>
> **UST**
>
> **13** When Pilate heard that, he brought Jesus out. Then Pilate sat down in front of him in the judgment seat, the place where he usually pronounced verdicts. This was called "The Stone Pavement," and in Hebrew it was "Gabbatha."

This is the special chair that an important person like Pilate sat in when he was making an official judgment. If your language has a special way to describe this action, you can use it here.

**in a place called "The Pavement...but (ULT)**

This is a special stone platform where only the important people were allowed to go. You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "in a place the people called The Pavement, but" (See: Active or Passive)

**in Hebrew (ULT)**
**and in Hebrew (UST)**

This refers to the language that the people of Israel spoke.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Jesus
- called
- When Pilate

**Translation Words - UST**

- Jesus
- This was called
- Pilate

# John 19:14

### Connecting Statement:

Some time has passed and it is now the sixth hour, as Pilate orders his soldiers to crucify Jesus.

### Now (ULT)
### Now (UST)

This word marks a break in the story line so that John can provide information about the upcoming Passover and the time of day. (See: Background Information)

### hour...the sixth (ULT)
### It...almost noontime (UST)

"about noontime"

### Pilate said...to the Jews (ULT)
### Pilate said to the Jews (UST)

Here "Jews" is a synecdoche that refers to the Jewish leaders who opposed Jesus. Alternate translation: "Pilate said to the Jewish leaders" (See: Synecdoche)

**ULT**

**14** Now it was the day of preparation for the Passover, at about the sixth hour. Pilate said to the Jews, "See, here is your king!"

**UST**

**14** Now it was the day before the Passover Festival, the day of preparation. It was almost noontime when Pilate said to the Jews, "See, here is your king!"

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jews
- Passover
- your...king
- hour
- king

### Translation Words - UST

- to the Jews
- Passover Festival
- your...king
- It
- king

# John 19:15

## Should I crucify your King (ULT)
## Should I crucify your king (UST)

Here "I" is a synecdoche that refers to Pilate's soldiers who will actually perform the crucifixion. Alternate translation: "Do you really want me to tell my soldiers to nail your king to a cross?" (See: Synecdoche)

## Translation Words - ULT

- crucify
- Should I crucify
- chief priests
- Pilate
- Caesar
- cried out
- King
- king (2)

## Translation Words - UST

- Crucify
- Should I crucify
- chief priests
- Pilate
- Caesar
- They shouted
- king
- king (2)

### ULT

**15** But they cried out, "Away with him, away with him; crucify him!" Pilate said to them, "Should I crucify your King?" The chief priests answered, "We have no king but Caesar."

### UST

**15** They shouted, "Take him away! Take him away! Crucify him!" Pilate said to them, "Should I crucify your king?" The chief priests replied, "We have no king but Caesar!"

## John 19:16

**then…Pilate…gave Jesus over to them to be crucified (ULT)**
**Then at last…Pilate agreed to do what they wanted, and he told the soldiers to crucify Jesus (UST)**

Here Pilate gives the order for his soldiers to crucify Jesus. You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "So Pilate ordered his soldiers to crucify Jesus" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and Active or Passive)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- be crucified

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- and he told the soldiers to crucify

**ULT**

**16** Therefore Pilate then gave Jesus over to them to <u>be crucified</u>. So they took <u>Jesus</u> and led him away.

**UST**

**16** Then at last Pilate agreed to do what they wanted, <u>and he told the soldiers to crucify</u> Jesus. Then the soldiers took <u>Jesus</u> away.

## John 19:17

**to the place called "The Place of a Skull (ULT)**
**to the place called "The Place of a Skull (UST)**

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "to the place that the people called 'The Place of a Skull,'" (See: Active or Passive)

**which in Hebrew is called "Golgotha (ULT)**
**which in Hebrew is called "Golgotha (UST)**

Hebrew is the language of the people of Israel. You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "which in Hebrew they call 'Golgotha.'"

### Translation Words - ULT

- called
- is called
- cross
- Golgotha
- of a Skull
- carrying

### Translation Words - UST

- place called
- is called
- his own cross
- Golgotha
- of a Skull
- carrying

**ULT**

**17** He went out, carrying the cross for himself, to the place called "The Place of a Skull," which in Hebrew is called " Golgotha."

**UST**

**17** He went out, carrying his own cross by himself to the place called "The Place of a Skull," which in Hebrew is called " Golgotha."

## John 19:18

### with him two other men (ULT)

This is an ellipsis. You can translate this, adding the implied words. Alternate translation: "they also nailed two other criminals to their crosses" (See: Ellipsis)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- They crucified

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- they crucified

## John 19:19

**wrote...Pilate also...a sign and put it on the cross (ULT)**
**told someone to write...Pilate also...a notice on a board**
**and fasten it to Jesus' cross (UST)**

Here "Pilate" is a synecdoche for the person who wrote on the sign.
Here "on the cross" refers to Jesus' cross. Alternate translation: "Pilate
also commanded someone to write on a sign and to attach it to
Jesus' cross" (See: Synecdoche)

**On it was...written: JESUS OF NAZARETH, THE KING OF**
**THE JEWS (ULT)**
**It...read, 'Jesus of Nazareth, the King of the Jews (UST)**

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "So that person wrote the words: Jesus of Nazareth,
King of the Jews" (See: Active or Passive)

**ULT**

**19** But Pilate also wrote a sign and put it
on the cross. On it was written: JESUS
OF NAZARETH, THE KING OF THE JEWS.

**UST**

**19** Pilate also told someone to write a
notice on a board and fasten it to Jesus'
cross. It read, 'Jesus of Nazareth, the
King of the Jews.'

### Translation Words - ULT

- JESUS OF NAZARETH
- JEWS
- cross
- KING OF THE JEWS
- Pilate
- OF NAZARETH
- KING

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus of Nazareth
- of the Jews
- Jesus' cross
- King of the Jews
- Pilate
- of Nazareth
- King

## John 19:20

**the place...where Jesus was crucified (ULT)**
**the place...where Jesus was crucified (UST)**

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "the place where the soldiers crucified Jesus" (See: Active or Passive)

**The sign was written in Hebrew, in Latin, and in Greek (ULT)**
**and the sign was written in three languages: Hebrew, Latin, and Greek (UST)**

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "The one who prepared the sign wrote the words in 3 languages: Hebrew, Latin, and Greek" (See: Active or Passive)

**in Latin (ULT)**
**Latin (UST)**

This was the language of the Roman government.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Jesus
- was crucified
- Jews
- and in Greek

**Translation Words - UST**

- Jesus
- was crucified
- Jews
- and Greek

**ULT**

**20** Therefore, many of the Jews read this inscription because the place where Jesus was crucified was near the city. The sign was written in Hebrew, in Latin, and in Greek.

**UST**

**20** Many Jews read this sign, because the place where Jesus was crucified was near the city, and the sign was written in three languages: Hebrew, Latin, and Greek.

## John 19:21

### Then the chief priests of the Jews said to Pilate (ULT)

The chief priests had to go back to Pilate's headquarters to protest to him about the words on the sign. Alternate translation: "The chief priests went back to Pilate and said" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jews
- Jews (2)
- Jews (3)
- King of the Jews
- I am King of the Jews
- chief priests
- to Pilate
- King
- King (2)

### Translation Words - UST

- Jew, Jewish
- of the Jews (2)
- of the Jews (3)
- King...of the Jews
- that he is the King of the Jews
- chief priests
- to Pilate
- King
- the King (2)

**ULT**

**21** Then the chief priests of the Jews said to Pilate, "Do not write, 'The King of the Jews,' but rather, 'This one said, "I am King of the Jews."'"

**UST**

**21** The chief priests went back to Pilate and said, "You should not have written, 'King of the Jews', but rather, 'This man said that he is the King of the Jews'."

## John 19:22

**What I have written I have written (ULT)**
**What I told them to write is what they have written, and I will not change it (UST)**

Pilate implies that he will not change the words on the sign. Alternate translation: "I have written what I wanted to write, and I will not change it" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### Translation Words - ULT

• Pilate

### Translation Words - UST

• Pilate

# John 19:23

## General Information:

At the end of verse 24 there is a break from the main story line as the John tells us how this event fulfills Scriture. (See: Background Information)

## and also the tunic (ULT)
## However, they kept his tunic separate (UST)

"and they also took his tunic." The soldiers kept the tunic separate and did not divide it. Alternate translation: "they kept his tunic separate" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- crucified
- soldiers
- soldier
- tunic
- tunic
- clothes

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- had put...on the cross
- soldiers
- soldier
- they kept his tunic separate
- This tunic
- clothes

**ULT**

**23** Then, when the soldiers crucified Jesus, they took his clothes and divided them into four shares, one share for each soldier; and also the tunic. Now the tunic was seamless, woven in one piece from the top.

**UST**

**23** After the soldiers had put Jesus on the cross, they took his clothes and divided them into four parts, one part for each soldier. However, they kept his tunic separate. This tunic had been woven from top to bottom from one piece of cloth.

## John 19:24

**let us cast lots for it to decide whose it will be (ULT)**
**let us decide who will keep it as one piece by casting lots for the one who will get it (UST)**

The soldiers will gamble and the winner will receive the shirt. Alternate translation: "let us gamble for the tunic and the winner will get to keep it" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**so that the scripture would be fulfilled which said**

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "This fulfilled the scripture that said" or "This happened to make the scripture come true which said"

**let us cast lots (ULT)**
**let us decide...by casting lots (UST)**

This was how the soldiers divided Jesus' clothing among themselves. Alternate translation: "they gambled"

### Translation Words - ULT

- scripture
- would be fulfilled
- let us cast lots
- lots
- soldiers
- garments
- clothing

### Translation Words - UST

- scripture
- it made...come true
- let us decide...by casting lots
- lots
- soldiers
- clothes
- clothing

---

**ULT**

**24** Then they said to each other, "Let us not tear it, but instead <u>let us cast lots</u> for it to decide whose it will be." This happened so that the <u>scripture</u> <u>would be fulfilled</u> which said, "They divided my <u>garments</u> among themselves and cast <u>lots</u> for my <u>clothing</u>." Therefore, the <u>soldiers</u> did this.

**UST**

**24** So they said to each other, "Let us not tear it. Instead, <u>let us decide</u> who will keep it as one piece <u>by casting lots</u> for the one who will get it." When this happened <u>it made</u> the <u>scripture</u> <u>come true</u> that said, "They divided my <u>clothes</u> among them. They cast <u>lots</u> for my <u>clothing</u>." Indeed the <u>soldiers</u> did those things.

# John 19:25

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

## Translation Words - ULT

- of Jesus
- cross
- Mary Magdalene
- sister

## Translation Words - UST

- his
- cross
- Mary Magdalene
- sister

**ULT**

**25** Now standing beside the cross of Jesus were his mother, and the sister of his mother, Mary the wife of Clopas, and Mary Magdalene.

**UST**

**25** Jesus' mother, his mother's sister, Mary the wife of Clopas, and Mary Magdalene were all standing near his cross.

# John 19:26

**the disciple...whom he loved (ULT)**
**John, the apprentice...whom he especially loved (UST)**

This is John, the writer of this Gospel.

**Woman, see, your son (ULT)**
**Mother, here is the one who will act like a son to you (UST)**

Here the word "son" is a metaphor. Jesus wants his disciple, John, to be like a son to his mother. Alternate translation: "Woman, here is the man who will act like a son to you" (See: Metaphor)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- he loved
- son
- disciple

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- he especially loved
- the one who will act like a son
- apprentice

**ULT**

**26** When Jesus saw his mother and the disciple whom he loved standing nearby, he said to his mother, "Woman, see, your son!"

**UST**

**26** When Jesus saw his mother standing there and John, the apprentice whom he especially loved, standing nearby, he said to his mother, "Mother, here is the one who will act like a son to you."

## John 19:27

**See, your mother (ULT)**
**Here is your mother (UST)**

Here the word "mother" is a metaphor. Jesus wants his mother to be like a mother to his disciple, John. Alternate translation: "Think of this woman as if she were your own mother" (See: Metaphor)

**From...that hour (ULT)**
**from that very moment (UST)**

"From that very moment"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- disciple
- disciple
- hour

**Translation Words - UST**

- to the apprentice
- that apprentice
- very moment

**ULT**

**27** Then he said to the disciple, "See, your mother!" From that hour the disciple took her to his own home.

**UST**

**27** And he said to the apprentice, "Here is your mother!" So from that very moment, that apprentice took her to live in his home.

## John 19:28

**knowing...that everything was now completed (ULT) knew...that everything that God sent him to do had now been done (UST)**

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "he knew that he had done everything that God had sent him to do" (See: Active or Passive)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- scriptures
- was...completed
- would be fulfilled
- knowing

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- one final thing that the scriptures had foretold
- had...been done
- make come true
- knew

**ULT**

**28** After this, knowing that everything was now completed and so that the scriptures would be fulfilled, Jesus said, "I am thirsty."

**UST**

**28** A little later, Jesus knew that everything that God sent him to do had now been done, and in order to make come true one final thing that the scriptures had foretold, he said, "I am thirsty!"

## John 19:29

### A container full of sour wine was placed there (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "Someone had placed there a full container of sour wine" (See: Active or Passive)

### of sour wine (ULT)
### of sour wine (UST)

"bitter wine"

### they put...on (ULT)
### and put...on it (UST)

Here "they" refers to the Roman guards.

### a sponge (ULT)
### a sponge (UST)

a small object that can soak up and hold much liquid

### they put...on a hyssop staff (ULT)
### a short branch from a hyssop plant and put...on it (UST)

"on a branch of a plant called hyssop"

---

**ULT**

**29** A container full of sour wine was placed there, so they put a sponge full of the sour wine on a hyssop staff and lifted it up to his mouth.

**UST**

**29** A jar of sour wine stood there, so they took a short branch from a hyssop plant and put a sponge on it, and they dipped in the sour wine and held it up to Jesus' mouth.

## John 19:30

**he bowed his head and gave up his spirit (ULT)**
**he bowed his head and died (UST)**

John implies here that Jesus gave his spirit back to God. Alternate translation: "He bowed his head and gave God his spirit" or "He bowed his head and died" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- spirit
- head
- he bowed

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- and died
- his head
- he bowed

**ULT**

**30** When therefore Jesus had taken the sour wine, he said, "It is finished." Then he bowed his head and gave up his spirit.

**UST**

**30** After Jesus drank the sour wine, he said, "It is finished," and he bowed his head and died.

## John 19:31

### the...Jews (ULT)

Here "Jews" is a synecdoche for the Jewish leaders who opposed Jesus. Alternate translation: "the Jewish leaders" (See: Synecdoche)

### the day of preparation (ULT)
### the day of preparation for the Passover (UST)

This is the time before the Passover when people prepared food for the Passover.

### to break their legs and to remove them (ULT)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "to break the legs of the executed men and take their bodies down from the crosses" (See: Active or Passive)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jews
- bodies
- cross
- Sabbath
- Sabbath
- Pilate
- day

### Translation Words - UST

- Jew, Jewish
- dead bodies
- crosses
- holiday
- of rest for the Jews
- to Pilate...him
- day

**ULT**

**31** Then the Jews, because it was the day of preparation, and so that the bodies would not remain on the cross during the Sabbath (for that Sabbath was an especially important day), asked Pilate to break their legs and to remove them.

**UST**

**31** This was the day of preparation for the Passover (and the next day was a very special day of rest for the Jews). It was against their law to allow dead bodies to remain on the crosses on the holiday, so they went to Pilate and asked him to break the legs of the three men so that the men would die quickly and their bodies would be taken down.

## John 19:32

**man who had been crucified with Jesus (ULT)**
**the two men who had been crucified with Jesus (UST)**

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "whom they had crucified near Jesus" (See: Active or Passive)

### Translation Words - ULT

- man who had been crucified
- soldiers

### Translation Words - UST

- the two men who had been crucified
- soldiers

**ULT**

**32** Then the soldiers came and broke the legs of the first man and of the second man who had been crucified with Jesus.

**UST**

**32** So the soldiers came and broke the legs of the first and then of the other, the two men who had been crucified with Jesus.

# John 19:33

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- was...dead

## Translation Words - UST

- to Jesus
- was dead

---

**ULT**

**33** But when they came to Jesus, they saw that he was already dead, so they did not break his legs.

**UST**

**33** When they came to Jesus, they saw he was dead already. So they did not break his legs.

---

# John 19:34

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

## Translation Words - ULT

- blood
- with a spear
- water
- soldiers
- pierced

## Translation Words - UST

- blood
- with a spear
- water
- of the soldiers
- pierced

**ULT**

**34** However, one of the soldiers pierced his side with a spear, and immediately blood and water came out.

**UST**

**34** Instead, one of the soldiers pierced Jesus' side with a spear, and right away blood and water poured out of his body.

# John 19:35

**The one who saw this (ULT)**
**The one who saw this (UST)**

This sentence gives background information to the story. John is telling readers that he was there and that we can trust what he has written. (See: Background Information)

**has testified, and his testimony is true (ULT)**

To "testify" means to tell about something that one has seen. Alternate translation: "has told the truth about what he has seen" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**so that you would also believe (ULT)**

Here "believe" means to put one's trust in Jesus. Alternate translation: "so that you will also put your trust in Jesus" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- has testified
- testimony
- true
- the truth
- would...believe
- knows

**Translation Words - UST**

- bears witness
- testimony
- true
- the truth
- may put your trust in Jesus
- knows

> **ULT**
>
> **35** The one who saw this has testified, and his testimony is true. He knows that he is speaking the truth, so that you would also believe.
>
> **UST**
>
> **35** The one who saw this bears witness —his testimony is true, and he knows he is telling the truth—so that you may put your trust in Jesus.

## John 19:36

### General Information:

In these verses there is a break from the main story line as John tells us about how these events have made Scripture come true. (See: Background Information)

### in order to fulfill the scripture (ULT)
### in order to fulfill what was written in scripture (UST)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "to fulfill the words that someone wrote in the scripture" (See: Active or Passive)

### Not one of his bones will be broken (ULT)
### No one will break any of his bones (UST)

This is a quotation from Psalm 34. You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "No one will break any of his bones" (See: Active or Passive)

### Translation Words - ULT

- scripture
- fulfill

### Translation Words - UST

- what was written in scripture
- to fulfill

**ULT**

**36** For these things happened in order to fulfill the scripture, "Not one of his bones will be broken."

**UST**

**36** These things happened in order to fulfill what was written in scripture: "No one will break any of his bones."

## John 19:37

**They…look at him whom they pierced (ULT)**
**They will look on the one whom they have pierced (UST)**

This is a quotation from Zechariah 12.

### Translation Words - ULT

- scripture
- they pierced

### Translation Words - UST

- scripture
- the one whom they have pierced

# John 19:38

**Joseph of Arimathea (ULT)**
**Joseph of Arimathea (UST)**

Arimathea was a small town. Alternate translation: "Joseph from the town of Arimathea" (See: How to Translate Names)

**for fear of the Jews (ULT)**
**because he was afraid of the Jews (UST)**

Here "Jews" is a synecdoche for the Jewish leaders who opposed Jesus. Alternate translation: "for fear of the Jewish leaders" (See: Synecdoche)

**that he might take away the body of Jesus (ULT)**
**if he might take away Jesus' body (UST)**

John implies that Joseph of Arimathea wants to bury the body of Jesus. Alternate translation: "for permission to take the body of Jesus down from the cross for burial" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

## Translation Words - ULT

- of Jesus
- of Jesus (2)
- fear
- Jews
- body
- body (2)
- a disciple
- Pilate
- Pilate

## Translation Words - UST

- of Jesus
- Jesus (2)
- he was afraid
- of the Jews
- body
- body (2)
- an apprentice
- Pilate...him
- Pilate

**ULT**

**38** After these things, Joseph of Arimathea, being a disciple of Jesus (but secretly for fear of the Jews), asked Pilate that he might take away the body of Jesus. Pilate gave him permission. So Joseph came and took away his body.

**UST**

**38** After these things, Joseph of Arimathea, an apprentice of Jesus, but a secret apprentice because he was afraid of the Jews, went to Pilate and asked him if he might take away Jesus' body. Pilate gave Joseph permission, so he came and took away the body of Jesus.

## John 19:39

**Nicodemus (ULT)**
**Nicodemus (UST)**

Nicodemus was one of the Pharisees who believed in Jesus. See how you translated this name in John 3:1.

**also...of myrrh...aloes (ULT)**
**also...of myrrh...aloe spices (UST)**

These are spices that people use to prepare a body for burial.

**about one hundred litras in weight (ULT)**
**The spices weighed about 33 kilograms (UST)**

You may convert this to a modern measure. A "litra" is about one third of a kilogram. Alternate translation: "about 33 kilograms in weight" or "weighing about thirty-three kilograms" (See: Biblical Weight)

**one hundred (ULT)**
**The spices weighed about 33 kilograms (UST)**

"100" (See: Numbers)

**Translation Words - ULT**

    • of myrrh

**Translation Words - UST**

    • of myrrh

---

**ULT**

**39** Nicodemus also came, he who at first had come to Jesus by night. He brought a mixture of myrrh and aloes, about one hundred litras in weight.

**UST**

**39** Nicodemus, who had once come to Jesus at night, also came and brought with him a mixture of myrrh and aloe spices to prepare the body for burial. The spices weighed about 33 kilograms.

# John 19:40

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

## Translation Words - ULT

- of Jesus
- Jews
- wrapped
- body
- to bury bodies
- as

## Translation Words - UST

- of Jesus
- Jewish
- wrapped...around
- body
- about burying bodies in caves
- They did this according to

**ULT**

**40** So they took the body of Jesus and wrapped it in linen cloths with the spices, as was the custom of the Jews to bury bodies.

**UST**

**40** They took the body of Jesus and wrapped strips of linen cloth around it, putting the spices under the strips of cloth. They did this according to the Jewish customs about burying bodies in caves.

# John 19:41

**Now in the place where he was crucified there was a garden; and in the garden was a new tomb in which no person had yet been buried (ULT)**

Here John marks a break in the story line in order to provide background information about the location of the tomb where they would bury Jesus. (See: Background Information)

**Now in the place where he was crucified there was a garden (ULT)**
**Now in the place where Jesus was crucified was a garden (UST)**

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "Now in the place where they crucified Jesus there was a garden" (See: Active or Passive)

**in which no person had yet been buried (ULT)**

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "in which people had buried no one" (See: Active or Passive)

## Translation Words - ULT

- he was crucified
- was a…tomb

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus was crucified
- was a…burial cave

# John 19:42

**because it was the day of preparation for the Jews (ULT)**
**The Passover was about to begin that evening (UST)**

According to Jewish law, no one could work after sundown on Friday. It was the beginning of the Sabbath and Passover. Alternate translation: "The Passover was about to begin that evening" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Jews
- tomb

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- The Passover was about to begin that evening
- tomb

**ULT**

**42** Therefore, because it was the day of preparation for the Jews and because the tomb was close by, they laid Jesus in it.

**UST**

**42** The Passover was about to begin that evening, and they chose this tomb because it was close at hand and because they could bury Jesus quickly. So they laid Jesus there.

## John 20

**John 20 General Notes**

# Special concepts in this chapter

### The tomb

The tomb in which Jesus was buried (John 20:1) was the kind of tomb in which wealthy Jewish families buried their dead. It was an actual room cut into a rock. It had a flat place on one side where they could place the body after they had put oil and spices on it and wrapped it in cloth. Then they would roll a large rock in front of the tomb so no one could see inside or enter.

### "Receive the Holy Spirit"

If your language uses the same word for "breath" and "spirit," be sure that the reader understands that Jesus was performing a symbolic action by breathing, and that what the disciples received was the Holy Spirit, not Jesus' breath. (See: Symbolic Action and Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit)

# Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

### Rabboni

John used Greek letters to describe the sound of the word, and then he explained that it means "Teacher." You should do the same, using the letters of your language.

### Jesus' resurrection body

No one is sure what Jesus' body looked like after he became alive again. His disciples knew it was Jesus because they could see his face and touch the places where the soldiers had put the nails through his hands and feet, But he could also walk through solid walls and doors. It is best not to try to say more than what the ULT says.

### Two angels in white

Matthew, Mark, Luke, and John all wrote about angels in white clothing with the women at Jesus' tomb. Two of the authors called them men, but that is only because the angels were in human form. Two of the authors wrote about two angels, but the other two authors wrote about only one of them. It is best to translate each of these passages as it appears in the ULT without trying to make the passages all say exactly the same thing. (See: Matthew 28:1-2 and Mark 16:5 and Luke 24:4 and John 20:12)

## John 20:1

**General Information:**

This is the third day after Jesus was buried.

**first day of the week (ULT)**
**Now on Sunday, the first day...of the week (UST)**

"Sunday"

**she saw the stone rolled away (ULT)**
**She saw that someone had moved the stone (UST)**

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "she saw that someone had rolled away the stone" (See: Active or Passive)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Mary Magdalene
- dark
- tomb
- tomb

**Translation Words - UST**

- Mary Magdalene
- dark
- tomb
- entrance to the cave

---

**ULT**
**1** Now early on the first day of the week, while it was still dark, Mary Magdalene came to the tomb and she saw the stone rolled away from the tomb.

**UST**
**1** Now on Sunday, the first day of the week, Mary Magdalene came to the tomb very early in the day, while it was still dark. She saw that someone had moved the stone away from the entrance to the cave.

# John 20:2

**disciple whom Jesus loved (ULT)**
**apprentice—the one whom Jesus loved (UST)**

This phrase appears to be the way that John refers to himself throughout his book. Here the word "love" refers to brotherly love or love for a friend or family member.

**They took away the Lord out from the tomb (ULT)**
**They have taken the Lord's body from the tomb (UST)**

Mary Magdalene thinks that someone has stolen the Lord's body. Alternate translation: "Someone has taken the Lord's body out of the tomb" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Lord
- loved
- disciple
- Simon Peter
- tomb
- she ran
- we...know

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Lord's body
- loved
- apprentice
- Simon Peter
- tomb
- she ran
- we do...know

**ULT**

**2** So she ran and came to Simon Peter and to the other disciple whom Jesus loved, and she said to them, "They took away the Lord out from the tomb, and we do not know where they have laid him."

**UST**

**2** So she ran to Jerusalem, where Simon Peter and the other apprentice—the one whom Jesus loved—were staying, and told them, "They have taken the Lord's body from the tomb, and we do not know where they have put it!"

## John 20:3

**Peter…other disciple (ULT)**
**Peter…other apprentice (UST)**

John apparently shows his humility by referring to himself here as "the other disciple," rather than including his name.

**went out (ULT)**
**rushed out (UST)**

John implies that these disciples were going to the tomb. Alternate translation: "rushed out to the tomb" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### Translation Words - ULT

- disciple
- Peter
- tomb

### Translation Words - UST

- apprentice
- Peter
- tomb

**ULT**

**3** Then Peter and the other disciple went out, and they went to the tomb.

**UST**

**3** When they heard this, Peter and the other apprentice rushed out to the tomb.

# John 20:4

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

## Translation Words - ULT

- disciple
- of Peter
- tomb
- ran ahead

## Translation Words - UST

- apprentice
- than Peter
- the tomb
- was faster

**ULT**
**4** They both ran together, but the other disciple quickly ran ahead of Peter and arrived at the tomb first.

**UST**
**4** They were both running, but the other apprentice was faster than Peter and reached the tomb first.

## John 20:5

**linen cloths (ULT)**
**strips of linen (UST)**

These were the burial cloths that people had used to wrap the body of Jesus.

**ULT**

**5** Then stooping down, he saw the linen cloths lying there, but he did not go inside.

**UST**

**5** He bent down and looked into the cave; he saw the strips of linen lying there, but he hesitated to go in.

## John 20:6

**linen cloths (ULT)**
**the strips of linen cloth (UST)**

These were the burial cloths that people had used to wrap the body of Jesus. See how you translated this in John 20:5.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Simon Peter
- tomb

### Translation Words - UST

- Simon Peter
- the tomb

**ULT**

**6** Simon Peter then also arrived after him and went into the tomb. He saw the linen cloths lying there

**UST**

**6** Then Simon Peter, who was running behind him, arrived there, but he went inside the tomb. He, too, saw the strips of linen cloth lying there,

# John 20:7

**cloth that had been on his head (ULT)**
**cloth cover that had been on Jesus' head (UST)**

Here "his head" refers to "Jesus' head." You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "cloth that someone had used to cover Jesus' face" (See: Active or Passive)

**but was folded up in a place by itself (ULT)**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "but someone had folded it and put it aside, separate from the linen cloths" (See: Active or Passive)

**Translation Words - ULT**

> • head

**Translation Words - UST**

> • head

**ULT**

**7** and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up in a place by itself.

**UST**

**7** but he also saw the cloth cover that had been on Jesus' head, folded and put aside, separate from the linen strips.

# John 20:8

**the other disciple (ULT)**
**the other apprentice (UST)**

John apparently expresses his humility by referring to himself as "the other disciple," rather than including his name in this book.

**he saw and believed (ULT)**
**he saw these things and began to believe that Jesus had truly become alive again (UST)**

When he saw that the tomb was empty, he believed that Jesus had risen from the dead. Alternate translation: "he saw these things and began to believe that Jesus had risen from the dead" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### Translation Words - ULT

- believed
- disciple
- tomb

### Translation Words - UST

- began to believe that Jesus had truly become alive again
- apprentice
- grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place

**ULT**

**8** So then the other disciple, the one who first arrived at the tomb, also went in, and he saw and believed.

**UST**

**8** Then the other apprentice also went inside; he saw these things and began to believe that Jesus had truly become alive again.

# John 20:9

**did not yet...they...understand the scripture (ULT)**
**not...they did...understand from what the prophets had written in the scriptures (UST)**

Here the word "they" refers to the disciples who did not understand the scripture that said Jesus would rise again. Alternate translation: "the disciples still did not understand the scripture" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**rise (ULT)**
**become alive again (UST)**

become alive again

**from the dead (ULT)**
**after he died (UST)**

From among all those who have died. This expression describes all dead people together in the underworld.

**ULT**

**9** For they did not yet understand the scripture that he should rise from the dead.

**UST**

**9** Before this happened, they did not understand from what the prophets had written in the scriptures, that he had to become alive again after he died.

## Translation Words - ULT

- scripture
- did not yet
- the dead
- rise
- they...understand

## Translation Words - UST

- from what the prophets had written in the scriptures
- not
- after he died
- become alive again
- they did...understand

## John 20:10

**went back...home again (ULT)**
**went...back to their homes (UST)**

The disciples continued to stay in Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "went back to where they were staying in Jerusalem" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### Translation Words - ULT

• disciples

### Translation Words - UST

• apprentices

**ULT**
**10** So the disciples went back home again.

**UST**
**10** So the apprentices went back to their homes.

# John 20:11

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

## Translation Words - ULT

- Mary
- weeping
- she wept
- tomb
- tomb

## Translation Words - UST

- Mary
- weeping
- she wept
- tomb
- cave

**ULT**

**11** But Mary was standing outside at the tomb weeping. Then as she wept, she stooped down into the tomb.

**UST**

**11** Mary was left standing just outside the tomb, weeping. As she wept, she bent down and looked into the cave.

# John 20:12

**She saw…two angels in white (ULT)**
**She saw two angels dressed in white robes (UST)**

The angels were wearing white clothing. Alternate translation: "She saw two angels dressed in white clothing" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

## Translation Words - ULT

- of Jesus
- angels
- body
- head

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- angels
- body
- head

## John 20:13

**They...said...to her (ULT)**

"They asked her"

**Because they took away my Lord (ULT)**

"Because they took away the body of my Lord"

**I do not know where they have put him (ULT)**
**I do not know where they have put it (UST)**

"I do not know where they have put it"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Lord
- are you weeping
- I...know

**Translation Words - UST**

- Lord
- are you weeping
- I do...know

---

**ULT**

**13** They said to her, "Woman, why are you weeping?" She said to them, "Because they took away my Lord, and I do not know where they have put him."

**UST**

**13** They said to her, "Woman, why are you weeping?" She said to them, "They have taken away the body of my Lord, and I do not know where they have put it!"

## John 20:14

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Jesus
- she turned
- she...know

### Translation Words - UST

- someone
- Jesus
- she turned around
- she did...know

**ULT**

**14** When she said this, she turned around and saw Jesus standing there, but she did not know that it was Jesus.

**UST**

**14** After she said that, she turned around and saw someone standing there, but she did not know that it was Jesus.

# John 20:15

**Jesus said to her (ULT)**

"Jesus asked her"

**Sir, if you have taken him away (ULT)**
**Sir, if you carried him away (UST)**

Here the word "him" refers to Jesus. Alternate translation: "If you have taken away the body of Jesus" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**him...tell me where you have put (ULT)**
**him...tell me where you have put (UST)**

"tell me where you have put it"

**and I will take him away (ULT)**
**and I will take it (UST)**

---

**ULT**

**15** Jesus said to her, "Woman, why are you weeping? Whom are you looking for?" She thought that he was the gardener, so she said to him, "Sir, if you have taken him away, tell me where you have put him, and I will take him away."

**UST**

**15** He said to her, "Woman, why are you weeping? Who are you looking for?" She thought the man speaking to her was the gardener, and she said to him, "Sir, if you carried him away, tell me where you have put his body, and I will take it."

---

Mary Magdalene wants to get Jesus' body and bury it again. Alternate translation: "I will get the body and bury it again" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Jesus
- Sir
- are you weeping
- are you looking for
- have taken...away

**Translation Words - UST**

- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- Sir
- are you weeping
- are you looking for
- carried...away

## John 20:16

**Rabboni (ULT)**
**Rabboni (UST)**

The word "Rabboni" means rabbi or teacher in Aramaic, the language that Jesus and his disciples spoke.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Rabboni
- Mary
- turned
- Teacher

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Rabboni
- Mary
- turned
- Teacher

**ULT**

**16** Jesus said to her, "Mary." She turned, and said to him in Hebrew, "Rabboni" (which means "Teacher").

**UST**

**16** Jesus said to her, "Mary." She turned and said to him in Hebrew, "Rabboni!" (which means "Teacher").

# John 20:17

**brothers (ULT)**
**apprentices (UST)**

Jesus used the word "brothers" to refer to his disciples.

**I will go up to my Father and your Father, and my God and your God (ULT)**
**I am about to return to heaven to be with my Father and your Father, to the one who is my God and your God (UST)**

Jesus rose from the dead and then predicted he would go up into heaven, back to his Father, who is God. Alternate translation: "I am about to return to heaven to be with my Father and your Father, to the one who is my God and your God" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**my Father and your Father (ULT)**
**my Father and your Father (UST)**

These are important titles that describe the relationship between Jesus and God, and between believers and God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

> **ULT**
>
> **17** Jesus said to her, "Do not touch me, for I have not yet gone up to the Father, but go to my brothers and say to them that I will go up to my Father and your Father, and my God and your God."
>
> **UST**
>
> **17** Jesus said to her, "Do not touch me, for I have not yet gone up to heaven to be with my Father. Go to my apprentices and tell them, 'I am about to return to heaven to be with my Father and your Father, to the one who is my God and your God.'"

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- brothers
- God
- God
- Father
- Father (2)
- Father (3)

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- apprentices
- God
- God
- heaven to be with my Father
- Father (2)
- Father (3)

# John 20:18

**Mary Magdalene came and told the disciples (ULT) Mary Magdalene went to the apprentices and announced...and she reported to them (UST)**

Mary Magdalene went to where the disciples were staying and told them what she had seen and heard. Alternate translation: "Mary Magdalene went to where the disciples were and told them" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- disciples
- Mary Magdalene
- and told

## Translation Words - UST

- Lord
- to the apprentices...to them
- Mary Magdalene
- and announced...and she reported

**ULT**

**18** Mary Magdalene came and told the disciples, "I have seen the Lord," and that he had said these things to her.

**UST**

**18** Mary Magdalene went to the apprentices and announced, "I have seen the Lord"—and she reported to them what Jesus had said to her.

## John 20:19

**General Information:**

It is now evening and Jesus appears to the disciples.

**on that day...first day of the week (ULT)**
**that...first day of the week (UST)**

This refers to Sunday.

**the doors of where the disciples were, were closed (ULT)**

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "the disciples had locked the doors where they were" (See: Active or Passive)

**for fear of the Jews (ULT)**
**and...were staying inside because they were afraid that the Jewish authorities might arrest them (UST)**

> **ULT**
> **19** Therefore, when it was evening on that day, the first day of the week, and the doors of where the disciples were, were closed for fear of the Jews, Jesus came and stood in the middle of them and said to them, "Peace to you."

> **UST**
> **19** On that Sunday evening, the first day of the week, the doors were locked, and the apprentices were staying inside because they were afraid that the Jewish authorities might arrest them. Suddenly Jesus came and stood in the middle of their group; he said to them, "May God give you peace."

Here "Jews" is a synecdoche for the Jewish leaders who might arrest the disciples. Alternate translation: "because they were afraid that the Jewish leaders might arrest them" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**Peace to you (ULT)**
**May God give you peace (UST)**

This is a common greeting that means "May God give you peace" .

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Jesus
- fear
- Jews
- disciples
- Peace
- day

**Translation Words - UST**

- Jesus
- they were afraid that...might arrest them
- Jewish authorities
- apprentices
- peace
- day

# John 20:20

**he showed them his hands and his side (ULT)**
**he showed them his hands and his side (UST)**

Jesus showed the disciples his wounds. Alternate translation: "he showed them the wounds in his hands and his side" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- disciples
- hands
- rejoiced

### Translation Words - UST

- Lord
- apprentices
- his hands
- were very happy

**ULT**

**20** After he said this, he showed them his hands and his side. Therefore the disciples rejoiced when they saw the Lord.

**UST**

**20** After he said this, he showed them his hands and his side. The apprentices were very happy when they saw the Lord!

# John 20:21

**Peace to you (ULT)**
**May God give you peace (UST)**

This is a common greeting that means "May God give you peace" .

**Father (ULT)**
**Father (UST)**

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Father
- has sent
- am sending
- Peace
- As

## Translation Words - UST

- Father
- sent
- am sending
- peace
- Just as

**ULT**

**21** Jesus then said to them again, "Peace to you. As the Father has sent me, so I am sending you."

**UST**

**21** Jesus said to them again, "May God give you peace. Just as the Father sent me, now I am sending you."

## John 20:22

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Holy
- the Holy Spirit
- Receive

### Translation Words - UST

- Holy
- the Holy Spirit
- Receive

## John 20:23

**they are forgiven (ULT)**
**God will forgive them (UST)**

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "God will forgive them" (See: Active or Passive)

**Whoever's…you keep back (ULT)**
**If…of anyone…you do not forgive (UST)**

"If you do not forgive another's sins"

**they are kept back (ULT)**
**they will be held against them (UST)**

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "God will not forgive them" (See: Active or Passive)

**ULT**

**23** Whoever's sins you forgive, they are forgiven; whoever's sins you keep back, they are kept back."

**UST**

**23** If you forgive the sins of anyone, God will forgive them. If you do not forgive another's sins, they will be held against them."

### Translation Words - ULT

- sins
- you forgive
- are forgiven

### Translation Words - UST

- sins
- you forgive
- God will forgive

## John 20:24

**Didymus (ULT)**
**The Twin (UST)**

This is a male name that means "twin." See how this name is translated in John 11:15. (See: How to Translate Names)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- called
- twelve
- Thomas

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- who was called
- twelve apprentices
- Thomas

**ULT**

**24** But Thomas, one of the twelve, called Didymus, was not with them when Jesus came.

**UST**

**24** Now Thomas, one of the twelve apprentices, who was called "The Twin," was not with the other apprentices when Jesus came to them.

## John 20:25

**later said...the...to him...disciples (ULT)**
**told...The...him...apprentices (UST)**

The word "him" refers to Thomas.

**Unless I see in his hands the mark of the nails, and put my finger into the mark of the nails, and put my hand into his side, I will not believe (ULT)**
**Unless I see the marks of the nails in his hands and put my fingers in the holes made by the nails, and unless I put my hand into the gaping wound on his side, I will never put my trust in him (UST)**

You can translate this double negative in a positive form. Alternate translation: "I will believe only if I see...his side" (See: Double Negatives)

**in his hands...his...into...hand...side (ULT)**
**in his hands...his...in...hand...the gaping wound on... side (UST)**

The word "his" refers to Jesus.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- I will...believe
- disciples
- hands
- hand

### Translation Words - UST

- Lord
- I will...put my trust in him
- apprentices
- hands
- hand

---

**ULT**

**25** So the other disciples later said to him, "We have seen the Lord." But he said to them, "Unless I see in his hands the mark of the nails, and put my finger into the mark of the nails, and put my hand into his side, I will not believe."

**UST**

**25** The other apprentices told him, "We have seen the Lord." However, he said to them, "Unless I see the marks of the nails in his hands and put my fingers in the holes made by the nails, and unless I put my hand into the gaping wound on his side, I will never put my trust in him."

# John 20:26

**his disciples (ULT)**
**his apprentices (UST)**

The word "his" refers to Jesus.

### while the doors were closed

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "when they had locked the doors" (See: Active or Passive)

**Peace to you (ULT)**
**May God give you peace (UST)**

This is a common greeting that means "May God give you peace" .

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- disciples
- Thomas
- Peace
- days

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- apprentices
- Thomas
- peace
- days

---

**ULT**

**26** After eight days his disciples were inside again, and Thomas was with them. Jesus came while the doors were closed, and stood among them, and said, "Peace to you."

**UST**

**26** Eight days later, his apprentices were again inside the house, and this time Thomas was with them. Although the doors were locked, Jesus came and stood among them, and he said to them all, "May God give you peace."

# John 20:27

## Do not…be unbelieving, but believe (ULT)

Jesus uses the double negative "Do not be unbelieving" to emphasize the words that follow, "but believe." If your language does not allow double negatives or the reader would not understand that Jesus is emphasizing the words that follow, you can leave these words untranslated. Alternate translation: "This is what is most important for you to do: you must believe" (See: Double Negatives)

## believe (ULT)
## put your trust in me (UST)

Here "believe" means to trust in Jesus. Alternate translation: "put your trust in me" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**ULT**

**27** Then he said to Thomas, "Reach here with your finger and see my hands. Reach here with your hand and put it into my side. Do not be unbelieving, but believe."

**UST**

**27** Then he said to Thomas, "Put your finger here and see my hands, and put out your hand and place it in my side! Stop doubting that it is I; put your trust in me."

## Translation Words - ULT

- unbelieving
- believe
- Thomas
- hands
- with…hand

## Translation Words - UST

- Stop doubting that it is I
- put your trust in me
- Thomas
- hands
- hand

## John 20:28

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- God
- Thomas

### Translation Words - UST

- Lord
- God
- Thomas

# John 20:29

**you have believed (ULT)**
**you believe that I have risen (UST)**

Thomas believes that Jesus is alive because he has seen him. Alternate translation: "you have believed that I am alive" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**Blessed are those (ULT)**
**Yet God gives great happiness to those who have not seen me (UST)**

This means "God gives great happiness to those."

**who have not seen (ULT)**
**to those who have not seen me (UST)**

This means those who have not seen Jesus. Alternate translation: "who have not seen me alive" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

> **ULT**
>
> **29** Jesus said to him, "Because you have seen me, you have believed. Blessed are those who have not seen, and believed."
>
> **UST**
>
> **29** Jesus said to him, "Now you believe that I have risen because you see me. Yet God gives great happiness to those who have not seen me and still believe."

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Jesus
- Blessed are
- you have believed
- believed

**Translation Words - UST**

- Jesus
- Yet God gives great happiness
- you believe that I have risen
- still believe

## John 20:30

### General Information:

As the story is nearing the end, the author comments about the many things Jesus did. (See: End of Story)

### signs (ULT)
### works (UST)

The word "signs" refers to miracles that show that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.

### signs that have not been written in this book (ULT) but they were so numerous that I have not written them all down in this book (UST)

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "signs that the author did not write about in this book" (See: Active or Passive)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- signs
- of...disciples
- written

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- works
- apprentices
- written them all down

# John 20:31

**but these have been written (ULT)**
**Nevertheless, I have written these (UST)**

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "but the author wrote about these signs" (See: Active or Passive)

**Son of God (ULT)**
**Son of God (UST)**

This is an important title for Jesus. (See: Translating Son and Father)

**life...in his name (ULT)**
**everlasting life...in his name (UST)**

Here "life" is a metonym that means Jesus gives life. Alternate translation: "you may have life because of Jesus" (See: Metonymy)

**life (ULT)**
**everlasting life (UST)**

This refers to spiritual life.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- life
- Jesus
- of God
- Son of God
- you would believe
- believing
- name
- Christ
- have been written

**Translation Words - UST**

- everlasting life
- Jesus
- of God
- Son of God
- you may have complete confidence
- trusting in him
- name
- Messiah
- I have written

**ULT**

**31** but these have been written so that you would believe that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God, and so that believing, you would have life in his name.

**UST**

**31** Nevertheless, I have written these so that you may have complete confidence that Jesus is the Messiah, the Son of God, and so that by trusting in him, you may have everlasting life in his name.

# John 21

## John 21 General Notes

## Important figures of speech in this chapter

### The metaphor of sheep

Before Jesus died, he spoke of himself taking care of his people as if he were a good shepherd taking care of sheep (John 10:11). After he became alive again, he told Peter that Peter would be the one who took care of Jesus' sheep. (See: Metaphor)

# John 21:1

## General Information:

Jesus shows himself again to the disciples at the Sea of Tiberias. Verses 2 and 3 tell us what happens in the story before Jesus appears. (See: Background Information)

## After these things (ULT)
## After that (UST)

"Some time later"

## Translation Words - ULT

- showed
- he showed himself (2)
- Jesus
- disciples
- Sea of Tiberias

## Translation Words - UST

- appeared
- He made himself known (2)
- Jesus
- to the apprentices
- Lake...Tiberias (also known as Lake Galilee

**ULT**

**1** After these things Jesus showed himself again to the disciples at the Sea of Tiberias. This is how he showed himself:

**UST**

**1** After that, Jesus appeared to the apprentices by Lake Tiberias (also known as Lake Galilee). He made himself known in this way:

# John 21:2

**together...Thomas called Didymus (ULT)**
**together...Thomas (called The Twin (UST)**

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "with Thomas whom we called Didymus" (See: Active or Passive)

**Didymus (ULT)**
**The Twin (UST)**

This is a male name that means "twin." See how this name is translated in John 11:15. (See: How to Translate Names)

## Translation Words - ULT

- called
- disciples
- in Galilee
- from Cana
- Simon Peter
- sons of Zebedee
- Thomas called Didymus

## Translation Words - UST

- called
- apprentices
- Galilee
- Cana
- Simon Peter
- the sons of Zebedee...James and John
- Thomas (called The Twin

**ULT**

**2** they were together—Simon Peter, and Thomas called Didymus, and Nathaniel from Cana in Galilee, and the sons of Zebedee, and two of the other disciples of Jesus.

**UST**

**2** Simon Peter, Thomas (called The Twin), Nathaniel of Cana in Galilee, the sons of Zebedee (James and John), and two other apprentices, were together.

## John 21:3

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Simon Peter

### Translation Words - UST

- Simon Peter

---

**ULT**

**3** Simon Peter said to them, "I am going fishing." They said to him, "We, too, will come with you." They went and got into a boat, but they caught nothing during that night.

**UST**

**3** Simon Peter said to the others, "I am going fishing." They said, "We will go with you." They went out and got into the boat, but that night they caught nothing.

## John 21:4

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Jesus (2)
- disciples
- know

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Jesus (2)
- apprentices
- did...know

**ULT**

**4** Now, when it was already morning, Jesus stood on the beach, but the disciples did not know that it was Jesus.

**UST**

**4** In the morning as day was breaking, Jesus stood on the shore, but the apprentices did not know that it was Jesus.

# John 21:5

**Young men (ULT)**
**My friends (UST)**

This is a term of endearment that means "My dear friends."

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Young men

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- My friends

---

**ULT**

**5** So Jesus said to them, "Young men, do you not have anything to eat?" They answered him, "No."

**UST**

**5** Jesus said to them, "My friends, do you have any fish?" They said, "No."

## John 21:6

**you will find some (ULT)**
**you will find some (UST)**

Here "some" refers to fish. Alternate translation: "you will catch some fish in your net" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**to draw it in (ULT)**
**in the net…to pull the net into the boat (UST)**

"pull the net in"

**Translation Words - ULT**

- were…able

**Translation Words - UST**

- they were

**ULT**

**6** Then he said to them, "Throw your net on the right side of the boat, and you will find some." So they threw their net and were not able to draw it in because of the large number of fish.

**UST**

**6** He said to them, "Throw your net out off the right side of the boat and you will find some." They cast it as he told them, and they caught so many fish in the net that they were unable to pull the net into the boat!

# John 21:7

**loved (ULT)**
**especially loved (UST)**

This is love that comes from God and is focused on the good of others, even when it does not benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do.

**he put on his outer garment (ULT)**
**he tucked up his outer garment around himself (UST)**

"he secured his outer garment around him" or "he put on his tunic"

**for he was undressed (ULT)**
**he had worn almost nothing while working (UST)**

This is background information. Peter had taken off some of his clothes to make it easier to work, but now that he was about to greet the Lord, he wanted to wear more clothing. Alternate translation: "for he had taken off some of his clothes" (See: Background Information)

**threw himself into the sea (ULT)**
**jumped into the water (UST)**

Peter jumped into the water and swam to shore. Alternate translation: "jumped into the sea and swam to shore" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**threw himself (ULT)**
**jumped (UST)**

This is a idiom that means Peter jumped into the water very quickly. (See: Idiom)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Jesus
- Lord
- Lord (2)
- loved
- disciple
- to Peter
- Simon
- Peter
- sea
- he put on

**Translation Words - UST**

- Jesus
- Lord
- this (2)
- especially loved

**ULT**

**7** Then that disciple whom Jesus loved said to Peter, "It is the Lord." When therefore Simon Peter heard that it was the Lord, he put on his outer garment (for he was undressed), and threw himself into the sea.

**UST**

**7** John, the apprentice whom Jesus especially loved, said to Peter, "It is the Lord!" When Simon Peter heard him say this, he tucked up his outer garment around himself (he had worn almost nothing while working), and jumped into the water.

- apprentice
- to Peter
- Simon
- Peter
- water
- he tucked up...around himself

## John 21:8

**for they were not far from the land...about two hundred cubits away (ULT)**

This is background information. (See: Background Information)

**two hundred cubits (ULT)**
**only ninety meters (UST)**

"90 meters." A cubit was a little less than half a meter. (See: Biblical Distance)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- disciples

**Translation Words - UST**

- apprentices

## John 21:9

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- bread
- a charcoal fire

### Translation Words - UST

- there was some bread
- a charcoal fire

**ULT**

**9** When therefore they got out upon the land, they saw a charcoal fire kindled, and fish laid on it, and bread.

**UST**

**9** When they got to shore, they saw a charcoal fire ready and hot, with fish cooking on it, and there was some bread.

## John 21:10

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus

**ULT**
**10** Jesus said to them, "Bring some of the fish that you have just caught."

**UST**
**10** Jesus said to them, "Bring some of the fish that you have just caught!"

## John 21:11

**went up...Simon Peter (ULT)**
**got back in the boat...Simon Peter (UST)**

Here "went up" means Simon Peter had to go back to the boat. Alternate translation: "So Simon Peter went back to the boat" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**drew the net to the shore (ULT)**
**dragged the net to the shore (UST)**

"pulled the net to the shore"

**the net was not torn (ULT)**
**the net was not torn (UST)**

You can translate this as an active form. Alternate translation: "the net did not break" (See: Active or Passive)

**full of large fish (ULT)**
**full of large fish (UST)**

"full of large fish, one hundred and fifty-three." There were 153 large fish. (See: Numbers)

**ULT**

**11** Simon Peter then went up and drew the net to the shore, full of large fish; 153. There were so many, but the net was not torn.

**UST**

**11** Simon Peter got back in the boat and dragged the net to the shore, full of large fish. There were 153 of them. Even so, the net was not torn.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Simon Peter

**Translation Words - UST**

- Simon Peter

## John 21:12

**and eat breakfast (ULT)**
**and eat breakfast (UST)**

the morning meal

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Lord
- disciples
- They knew

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Lord
- of the apprentices
- They knew

---

**ULT**

**12** Jesus said to them, "Come and eat breakfast." But none of the disciples dared ask him, "Who are you?" They knew that it was the Lord.

**UST**

**12** Jesus said to them, "Come and eat breakfast!" None of the apprentices dared to ask him, "Who are you?" They knew it was the Lord.

## John 21:13

*(There are no notes for this verse.)*

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- bread
- also

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- bread
- the same

---

**ULT**

**13** Jesus came and took the bread and gave it to them, and the fish also.

**UST**

**13** Jesus came and took the bread and gave it to them. He did the same with the fish.

---

# John 21:14

**the third time that (ULT)**
**the third time (UST)**

You can translate this ordinal term "third" as "time number 3." (See: Ordinal Numbers)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- showed himself
- Jesus
- disciples
- the dead
- after he had risen

**Translation Words - UST**

- that…appeared
- Jesus
- apprentices
- the dead
- after God had brought him back

## John 21:15

### General Information:

Jesus begins to have a conversation with Simon Peter.

### do you love me (ULT)
### do you love me (UST)

Here "love" refers the type of love that comes from God, which focuses on the good of others, even when it does not benefit oneself.

### you know that I love you (ULT)

When Peter answers, he uses the word for "love" that refers to brotherly love or love for a friend or family member.

### Feed my lambs (ULT)
### Feed my lambs (UST)

> **ULT**
>
> **15** Then after they ate breakfast, Jesus said to Simon Peter, "Simon son of John, do you love me more than these?" Peter said to him, "Yes Lord, you know that I love you." Jesus said to him, "Feed my lambs."
>
> **UST**
>
> **15** When they finished breakfast, Jesus said to Simon Peter, "Simon, son of John, do you love me more than these others love me?" Peter said to him, "Yes, Lord, you know I love you." Jesus said, "Feed my lambs."

Here "lambs" is a metaphor for those persons who love Jesus and follow him. Alternate translation: "Feed the people I care for" (See: Metaphor)

### Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- lambs
- Lord
- do you love
- I
- to Simon...Peter
- Simon son of John
- know

### Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- lambs
- Lord
- do you love
- I love
- Simon Peter
- Simon, son of John
- know

# John 21:16

**do you love me (ULT)**
**do you love me (UST)**

Here "love" refers the type of love that comes from God, which focuses on the good of others, even when it does not benefit oneself.

**Take care of my sheep (ULT)**
**Be a shepherd to my sheep (UST)**

Here "sheep" is a metaphor for those who love and follow Jesus. Alternate translation: "Care for the people I care for" (See: Metaphor)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Lord
- do you love
- I love
- Simon son of John
- Take care
- of...sheep
- know

**Translation Words - UST**

- Lord
- do you love
- I love
- Simon, son of John
- Be a shepherd
- to...sheep
- know

**ULT**

**16** He said to him again a second time, " Simon son of John, do you love me?" Peter said to him, "Yes Lord, you know that I love you." Jesus said to him, "Take care of my sheep."

**UST**

**16** Jesus said to him a second time, " Simon, son of John, do you love me?" He replied, "Yes, Lord, you know that I love you." Jesus said to him, "Be a shepherd to my sheep."

# John 21:17

**He said to him a third time (ULT)**
**Jesus said to him a third time (UST)**

The pronoun "he" refers to Jesus. Here "a third time" means "time number 3." Alternate translation: "Jesus said to him a third time" (See: Ordinal Numbers)

**do you love me (ULT)**
**do you love me (UST)**

This time when Jesus asks this question he uses the word for "love" that refers to brotherly love or love for a friend or family member.

**Feed my sheep (ULT)**
**Feed my sheep (UST)**

Here "sheep" is a metaphor that represents those who belong to Jesus and follow him. Alternate translation: "Care for the people I care for" (See: Metaphor)

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Lord
- do you love
- Do you love (2)
- I love
- Simon son of John
- Peter
- sheep
- know
- know

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Lord
- do you love
- Do you love (2)
- I love
- Simon, son of John
- Peter
- sheep
- know
- know

---

**ULT**

**17** He said to him a third time, "Simon son of John, do you love me?" Peter was sad because Jesus had said to him a third time, "Do you love me?" He said to him, "Lord, you know all things, you know that I love you." Jesus said to him, "Feed my sheep.

**UST**

**17** Jesus said to him a third time, "Simon, son of John, do you love me?" Peter was grieved because Jesus asked him three times, "Do you love me?" Peter said, " Lord, you know everything. You know that I love you." Jesus said, "Feed my sheep."

## John 21:18

### Truly, truly

See how you translated this in John 1:51.

### Translation Words - ULT

- Truly
- truly (2)
- hands
- you used to clothe
- will clothe
- walk

### Translation Words - UST

- the truth
- the truth (2)
- hands
- you put...clothes on
- will dress
- you walked about

**ULT**

**18** Truly, truly, I say to you, when you were young, you used to clothe yourself and walk wherever you wanted, but when you become old, you will stretch out your hands, and someone else will clothe you and carry you where you will not want to go."

**UST**

**18** I am telling you the truth: When you were young, you put your own clothes on and you walked about wherever you wanted to go. However, when you are old, you will stretch out your hands, and someone will dress you and will lead you where you do not want to go."

## John 21:19

**Now (ULT)**

John uses this word to show he is giving background information before he continues the story. (See: Background Information)

**to indicate with what kind of death Peter would glorify God (ULT)**
**to indicate how Peter would die in order to honor God (UST)**

Here John implies that Peter would die on a cross. Alternate translation: "to indicate that Peter would die on a cross to honor God" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**Follow me (ULT)**
**Follow me (UST)**

Here the word "follow" means "to be a disciple." Alternate translation: "Keep on being my disciple" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Peter would glorify
- of death

### Translation Words - UST

- God
- in order to honor
- Peter would die

> **ULT**
>
> **19** Now Jesus said this to indicate with what kind of death Peter would glorify God. After he had said this, he said to Peter, "Follow me."
>
> **UST**
>
> **19** Jesus said this to indicate how Peter would die in order to honor God. Then Jesus said to him, "Follow me."

# John 21:20

**Peter...the disciple whom...Jesus...loved (ULT)**
**Peter...John, the apprentice whom...Jesus...especially loved (UST)**

John refers to himself in this way throughout the book, rather than mentioning his name.

**loved (ULT)**
**especially loved (UST)**

This is the kind of love that comes from God and always desires the good of others, even when it does not benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do.

**at the dinner (ULT)**
**at the table (UST)**

This is a reference to the Last Supper (John 13).

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Lord
- loved
- disciple
- Peter
- the one who will betray
- dinner
- turned around

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Lord
- especially loved
- John...apprentice
- Peter
- going to hand...over to your enemies
- table
- turned around

---

**ULT**

**20** Peter turned around and saw the disciple whom Jesus loved following them, the one who had also leaned back against the side of Jesus at the dinner and who had said, "Lord, who is the one who will betray you?"

**UST**

**20** Peter turned around and saw John, the apprentice whom Jesus especially loved following them. He was the one who had leaned close to Jesus at the table and said, "Lord, who is going to hand you over to your enemies?"

# John 21:21

**him...Peter saw (ULT)**
**him...Peter saw (UST)**

Here "him" refers to "the disciple whom Jesus loved."

**Lord, what will this man do?**

Peter wants to know what will happen to John. Alternate translation: "Lord, what will happen to this man?" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- to Jesus
- Lord
- Peter

**Translation Words - UST**

- to Jesus
- Lord
- Peter

# John 21:22

**Jesus said to him (ULT)**
**Jesus said to him (UST)**

"Jesus said to Peter"

**If I want him to stay (ULT)**
**If I want him to remain alive (UST)**

Here "him" refers to the "disciple whom Jesus loved" in John 21:20.

**I come (ULT)**
**I return (UST)**

This refers to Jesus' second coming, his return to earth from heaven.

**what is that to you (ULT)**
**that is not your concern (UST)**

This remark appears in the form of a question to express a mild rebuke. Alternate translation: "that is not your concern." or "you should not be concerned about that." (See: Rhetorical Question)

**Translation Words - ULT**

  • Jesus

**Translation Words - UST**

  • Jesus

---

**ULT**

**22** Jesus said to him, "If I want him to stay until I come, what is that to you? You follow me."

**UST**

**22** Jesus said to him, "If I want him to remain alive until I return, that is not your concern! You follow me."

# John 21:23

**among the brothers (ULT)**
**among the brothers and sisters (UST)**

Here "the brothers" refers to all the followers of Jesus.

## Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- brothers
- disciple
- would...die
- would...die (2)

## Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- brothers and sisters
- disciple
- was...going to die
- he would...die (2)

**ULT**

**23** So this statement spread among the brothers, that that disciple would not die. Yet Jesus did not say to Peter that the other disciple would not die, but, "If I want him to stay until I come, what is that to you?"

**UST**

**23** So the report circulated among the brothers and sisters that this disciple was not going to die. Yet Jesus did not say that he would not die. He said only, "If I want him to remain alive until I return, that is not your concern!"

# John 21:24

### General Information:

This is the end of the Gospel of John. Here the author, the Apostle John, gives a closing comment about himself and what he has written in this book. (See: End of Story)

### the disciple (ULT)
### the apprentice (UST)

"the disciple John"

### who testifies about these things (ULT)
### who is bearing witness about all these things (UST)

Here "testifies" means that he personally sees something. Alternate translation: "who has seen all these things" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### we know (ULT)
### We know (UST)

Here "we" refers to those who trust in Jesus. Alternate translation: "we who trust in Jesus know" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

### Translation Words - ULT

- who testifies
- testimony
- true
- disciple
- we know

### Translation Words - UST

- who is bearing witness
- testimony
- true
- apprentice
- We know

> **ULT**
>
> **24** This is the disciple who testifies about these things, and who wrote these things, and we know that his testimony is true.
>
> **UST**
>
> **24** I, John, am the apprentice who is bearing witness about all these things, and I have written them down. We know that his testimony is true.

# John 21:25

**if each one were written down (ULT)**
**if they were all written down (UST)**

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "If someone wrote down all of them" (See: Active or Passive)

**not even...itself...the world...would have enough room for the...books (ULT)**

John exaggerates to emphasize that Jesus did many more miracles than what people could write about in many books. (See: Hyperbole)

**for the books that would be written (ULT)**
**the books that would be written (UST)**

You can translate this in an active form. Alternate translation: "the books that people could write about what he did" (See: Active or Passive)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Jesus
- world

**Translation Words - UST**

- Jesus
- whole world

**ULT**

**25** But there are also many other things that Jesus did, which, if each one were written down, I suppose that not even the world itself would have enough room for the books that would be written.

**UST**

**25** Jesus did many other things, so many that if they were all written down, I suppose the whole world could not contain the books that would be written.

# unfoldingWord® Translation Academy

## Version 12

# Abstract Nouns

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

This page answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

## Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. **Abstract Nouns** are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. It is a way of giving names to actions or qualities so that people who speak these languages can talk about them as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, they may not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," but they would express the same meaning in other ways. They would say, for example, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

### Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example, "What is its **weight**?" could be expressed as "How much does it **weigh**?" or "How **heavy** is it?"

## Examples from the Bible

> ...from **\*childhood\*** *you have known the sacred writings...* (2 Timothy 3:15 ULT)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone is a child.

> But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns "godliness" and "contentment" refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun "gain" refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

> Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "salvation" here refers to being saved.

> The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "slowness" refers how slowly something is done.

> He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULT)

The abstract noun "purposes" refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

## Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

> 1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

> **...from** childhood

you have known the sacred writings... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULT)

> Ever since **you were a child** you have known the sacred writings.

**But** godliness

with contentment is great gain. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

> But **being godly** and **content** is very **beneficial**.
> But we **benefit** greatly when we **are godly** and **content**.
> But we **benefit** greatly when we **honor and obey God** and when we are **happy with what we have**.

**Today** salvation

has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

> Today the people in this house **have been saved**...
> Today God **has saved** the people in this house...

**The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider** slowness

to be. (2 Peter 3:9 ULT)

> The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **moving slowly** to be.

**He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the** purposes

of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULT)

> He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal **the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them**.

(**Go back to:** John 3:36)

# Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

> This page answers the question: *What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs]]

- ACTIVE: ***My father*** built the house in 2010.
- PASSIVE: ***The house*** was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

## Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

- **ACTIVE**: ***My father*** built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE**: ***The house*** was built by my father in 2010.
- **PASSIVE**: ***The house*** was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

**Reasons this is a translation issue**

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

**Purposes for the passive**

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

**Translation Principles Regarding the Passive**

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

## Examples from the Bible

> And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants ***were killed***, and your servant Uriah the Hittite ***was killed***, too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

> In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal **was broken down**… (Judges 6:28 ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

> It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea (Luke 17:2 ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

## Translation Strategies

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell  who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
3. Use a different verb.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

> **A loaf of bread** was given

him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

> **The king's servants gave** Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

(2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell  who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or  "people" or  "someone."

> **It would be better for him if a millstone** were put

around his neck and he were thrown into the sea. (Luke 17:2 ULT)

> It would be better for him if **they were to put** a millstone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.
> It would be better for him if **someone were to put** a heavy stone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

(3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

> **A loaf of bread** was given

him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

> He **received** a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Next we recommend you learn about:

*Abstract Nouns*
*[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-order]]*

(**Go back to:** John 1:3; 2:2; 2:17; 3:20; 3:21; 3:23; 3:25; 3:27; 3:28; 3:29; 5:7; 5:34; 6:45; 8:17; 9:32; 11:16; 11:17; 11:44; 12:3; 12:14; 12:16; 12:31; 12:32; 12:38; 12:42; 13:17; 13:18; 13:31; 14:13; 14:21; 15:6; 15:7; 15:8; 15:11; 15:25; 16:1; 16:20; 16:24; 16:32; 17:12; 17:13; 17:19; 17:22; 18:9; 18:15; 18:16; 18:32; 18:36; 19:11; 19:13; 19:16; 19:17; 19:19; 19:20; 19:28; 19:29; 19:31; 19:32; 19:36; 19:41; 20:1; 20:7; 20:19; 20:23; 20:26; 20:30; 20:31; 21:2; 21:11; 21:25)

# Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

• **Assumed knowledge** is whatever **a speaker assumes his audience knows** before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.

> This page answers the question: *How can I be sure that my translation communicates the assumed knowledge and implicit information along with the explicit information of the original message?*

• When **the speaker does give the audience information**, he can do so in two ways:
  ◦ **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
  ◦ **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

## Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. **Implicit information** is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this **implicit information** by combining what they already know (**assumed knowledge**) with the **explicit information** that the speaker tells them directly.

## Reasons this is a translation issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different than the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the **assumed knowledge** or the **implicit information** is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

## Examples from the Bible

> Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

> Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in *Tyre and Sidon* which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But

> it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the ***day of judgment*** than for you. (Matthew
> 11:21, 22 ULT)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged **because** they did not repent.

> Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For ***they do not wash their hands***
> ***when they eat***. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

## Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

1. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.
2. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

> **Jesus said to him, "Foxes** have holes

, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

> Jesus said to him, "Foxes ***have holes to live in***, and the birds of the sky ***have nests to live in***, but
> the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."

**it will be more tolerable for** Tyre and Sidon

at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.

> ...it will be more tolerable for ***those cities Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked***, at
> the day of judgment than for you.
> or:
> ...it will be more tolerable for those ***wicked cities Tyre and Sidon*** at the day of judgment than
> for you.

**Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For** they do not wash their hands

when they eat. (Matthew 15:2 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

> Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness** when they eat.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

> **Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head."** (Matthew 8:19, 20 ULT) - The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, he would have to live like Jesus without a house.

> > Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but **I, the Son of Man**, have **no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live**."

> **it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you** (Matthew 11:22 ULT) - The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

> > At the day of judgment, God will **punish Tyre and Sidon**, cities whose people were very wicked, **less severely than he will punish you**.
> > or:
> > At the day of judgment, God will **punish you more severely** than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

> Next we recommend you learn about:
>
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo]]*

(**Go back to:** John 1:27; 3:26; 4:25; 6:1; 6:21; 7:6; 7:8; 7:19; 7:22; 7:24; 7:26; 7:28; 7:39; 7:40; 7:46; 7:52; 8:13; 8:16; 8:17; 8:18; 8:36; 8:41; 8:59; 9:2; 9:6; 9:7; 9:29; 9:30; 10:8; 10:10; 10:23; 10:40; 11:4; 11:19; 11:21; 11:23; 11:28; 11:32; 11:39; 11:47; 11:48; 11:50; 11:54; 12:7; 12:8; 12:11; 12:14; 12:19; 12:20; 12:23; 12:25; 12:26; 12:44; 12:47; 13:8; 13:11; 13:13; 13:15; 13:23; 14:6; 14:18; 14:23; 14:28; 14:30; 15:5; 15:7; 15:10; 15:16; 15:22; 15:26; 15:27; 16:1; 16:13; 16:14; 16:15; 16:33; 17:5; 17:12; 17:15; 17:17; 17:24; 18:1; 18:5; 18:6; 18:8; 18:9; 18:12; 18:18; 18:19; 18:20; 18:26; 18:27; 18:28; 18:31; 18:37; 19:4; 19:12; 19:16; 19:21; 19:22; 19:23; 19:24; 19:30; 19:35; 19:38; 19:42; 20:2; 20:3; 20:8; 20:9; 20:10; 20:12; 20:15; 20:17; 20:18; 20:19; 20:20; 20:27; 20:29; 21:6; 21:7; 21:11; 21:19; 21:21; 21:24)

# Background Information

## Description

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. This sequence of events makes up the storyline. The storyline is full of action verbs that move the story along in time. But sometimes a writer may take a break from the storyline and give some information to help his listeners understand the story better. This type of information is called **background information**. The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story.

This page answers the question: *What is background information, and how can I show that some information is background information?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Order of Events*
*[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]*

**Example** - The underlined sentences in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because **their village was going to have a feast the next day**. **Peter was the best hunter in the village. He once killed three wild pigs in one day!** They walked for hours through low bushes until they heard a wild pig. The pig ran, but they managed to shoot the pig and kill it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope **they had brought with them**, and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter's cousin saw the pig and realized that **it was his own pig**. **Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin's pig**.

Background information often tells about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are: "their village was going to have a feast the next day;" "He once killed three wild pigs in one day;" "that they had brought with them;" and "Peter had mistakenly killed his cousins' pig."

Often background information uses "be" verbs like "was" and "were", rather than action verbs. Examples of these are "Peter **was** the best hunter in the village" and "it **was** his own pig."

Background information can also be marked with words that tell the reader that this information is not part of the event line of the story. In this story, some of these words are "because," "once," and "had."

**A writer may use background information**

- To help their listeners be interested in the story
- To help their listeners understand something in the story
- To help the listeners understand why something is important in the story
- To tell the setting of a story
- Setting includes:
    ◦ where the story takes place
    ◦ when the story takes place
    ◦ who is present when the story begins
    ◦ what is happening when the story begins

**Reasons this is a translation issue**

- Languages have different ways of marking background information and storyline information.
- You (the translator) need to know the order of the events in the Bible, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.
- You will need to translate the story in a way that marks the background information in a way that your own readers will understand the order of events, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.

**Examples from the Bible**

> Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael.
> Abram **was eighty-six years old** when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

> Now Jesus himself, when he began to teach, **was about thirty years of age**. He **was the son** (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces background information about Jesus' age and ancestors. The story starts up again in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

> Now **it happened on a Sabbath** that Jesus **was going through the grain fields** and his disciples **were picking the heads of grain**, rubbing them between their hands, and eating the grain. But some of the Pharisees said… (Luke 6:1-2a ULT)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus' disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the sentence, "But some of the Pharisees said."

## Translation Strategies

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study how people tell stories in your language. Observe how your language marks background information. You may need to write down some stories in order to study this. Observe what kind of verbs your language uses for background information and what kinds of words or other markers signal that something is background information. Do these same things when you translate, so that your translation is clear and natural and people can understand it easily.

1. Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information.
2. Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain how this was done in the ULT English translations.

> Now

Jesus himself, when he began to teach, was about thirty years of age. He was the son (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

English uses the word "now" to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb "was" shows that it is background information.

> **With many other exhortations also, he preached good news to the people. John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch** for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias

, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The underlined phrases happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb "had" in "had done" shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.

(2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first.

> **Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael.**
> Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram

. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

> "**When Abram was eighty-six years old**, Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael."

**John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch** for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias

, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20)

The translation below reorders John's rebuke and Herod's actions.

> "Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother's wife, Herodias, and he did many other evil things, so John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison."

---

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/grammar-connect-words-phrases]]
*Introduction of a New Event*

---

# Biblical Distance

## Description

The following terms are the most common measures for distance or length that were originally used in the Bible. Most of these are based on the sizes of the hand and forearm.

- The **handbreadth** was the width of the palm of a man's hand.
- The **span** or handspan was the width of a man's hand with the fingers spread out.
- The **cubit** was the length of a man's forearm, from the elbow to the tip of the longest finger.
- The **"long" cubit** is used only in Ezekiel 40-48. It is the length of a normal cubit plus a span.
- The **stadium** (plural, **stadia**) referred to a certain footrace that was about 185 meters in length. Some older English versions translated this word as "furlong", which referred to the average length of a plowed field.

The metric values in the table below are close but not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact length from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

| Original Measure | Metric Measure |
| --- | --- |
| handbreadth | 8 centimeters |
| span | 23 centimeters |
| cubit | 46 centimeters |
| "long" cubit | 54 centimeters |
| stadia | 185 meters |

## Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one cubit as ".46 meters" or even as "46 centimeters", readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say "half a meter", "45 centimeters", or "50 centimeters".
5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word "about" to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, Luke 24:13 says that Emmaus was sixty stadia from Jerusalem. This can be translated as "about ten kilometers" from Jerusalem.
6. When God tells people how long something should be, and when people make things according to those lengths, do not use "about" in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how long something should be.

## Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

## Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 25:10 below.

> **They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half.** (Exodus 25:10 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements given in the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

> "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be ***two and a half kubits*** ; its width will be ***one kubit and a half*** ; and its height will be ***one kubit and a half***."

(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

> "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be ***one meter*** ; its width will be ***two thirds of a meter*** ; and its height will be ***two thirds of a meter***."

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement. For example, if you measure things using the standard meter length, you could translate it as below.

> "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be ***one meter***; its width will be ***two thirds of a meter***; and its height will be ***two thirds of a meter***."

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

> "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be ***two and a half cubits (one meter)***; its width will be ***one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)*** ; and its height will be ***one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)***."

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

> "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be ***one meter*** [1]; its width will be ***two thirds of a meter*** [2]; and its height will be ***two thirds of a meter***."

The footnotes would look like:

> "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be ***one meter*** [1]; its width will be ***two thirds of a meter*** [2]; and its height will be ***two thirds of a meter***."

The footnotes would look like:

> [1] two and a half cubits
> [2] one cubit and a half

(**Go back to:** John 6:19; 11:18; 21:8)

# Biblical Money

### Description:

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the values of money in the Bible?*

In early Old Testament times, people weighed their metals such as silver and gold and would give a certain weight of that metal in order to buy things. Later people started to make coins that each contained a standard amount of a certain metal. The daric is one such coin. In New Testament times, people used silver and copper coins.

The two tables below show some of the most well-known units of money found in the Old Testament (OT) and New Testament (NT). The table for Old Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it weighed. The table for New Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it was worth in terms of a day's wage.

| Unit in OT | Metal | Weight |
|---|---|---|
| daric | gold coin | 8.4 grams |
| shekel | various metals | 11 grams |
| talent | various metals | 33 kilograms |

| Unit in NT | Metal | Day's Wage |
|---|---|---|
| denarius/denarii | silver coin | 1 day |
| drachma | silver coin | 1 day |
| mite | copper coin | 1/64 day |
| shekel | silver coin | 4 days |
| talent | silver | 6,000 days |

**Translation Principle**

Do not use modern money values since these change from year to year. Using them will cause the Bible translation to become outdated and inaccurate.

### Translation Strategies

The value of most money in the Old Testament was based on its weight. So when translating these weights in the Old Testament, see Biblical Weight. The strategies below are for translating the value of money in the New Testament

1. Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
2. Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many coins were used.
3. Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
4. Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a note.
5. Use the Bible term and explain it in a note.

### Translation Strategies

The translations strategies are all applied to Luke 7:41 below.

> **The one owed five hundred denarii, and the other owed fifty denarii.** (Luke 7:41 ULT)

(1) Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

> > "The one owed **five hundred denali**, and the other owed **fifty denali**."

(2) Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many pieces or coins were used.

> > "The one owed **five hundred silver coins**, and the other owed **fifty silver coins**."

(3) Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.

> > "The one owed **five hundred days' wages**, and the other owed **fifty days' wages**."

(4) Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.

> > "The one owed **five hundred denarii** [1], and the other owed **fifty denarii**. [2]"

The footnotes would look like:

> > [1] five hundred days's wages
> > [2] fifty day's wages

(5) Use the Bible term and explain it in a footnote.

> > "The one owed **five hundred denarii** [1], and the other owed **fifty denarii**." (Luke 7:41 ULT)
> >
> > [1] A denarius was the amount of silver that people could earn in one day of work.

---

Next we recommend you learn about:

*[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate]]*
*Translate Unknowns*

---

(**Go back to:** John 6:7; 12:5)

# Biblical Volume

## Description

The following terms are the most common units of volume used in the Bible to state how much a certain container could hold. The containers and measurements are given for both liquids (such as wine) and dry solids (such as grain). The metric values are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

> This page answers the question: *How can I translate the measures of volume that are in the Bible?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-decimal]]*

| Type | Original Measure | Liters |
|------|------------------|--------|
| Dry | omer | 2 liters |
| Dry | ephah | 22 liters |
| Dry | homer | 220 liters |
| Dry | cor | 220 liters |
| Dry | seah | 7.7 liters |
| Dry | lethek | 114.8 liters |
| Liquid | metrete | 40 liters |
| Liquid | bath | 22 liters |
| Liquid | hin | 3.7 liters |
| Liquid | kab | 1.23 liters |
| Liquid | log | 0.31 liters |

## Translation Principles

- The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
- Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
- Whatever measures you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kinds of measures in the text or a footnote.
- If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one hin as "3.7 liters", readers might think that the measurement is exactly 3.7 liters, not 3.6 or 3.8. It would be better to use a more approximate measure such as "three and a half liters" or "four liters".
- When God tells people how much of something to use, and when people use those amounts in obedience to him, do not say "about" in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much they used.

## When the unit of measure is stated

**Translation Strategies**

1. Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

**Translation Strategies Applied**

The strategies are all applied to Isaiah 5:10 below.

> **For four hectares of vineyard will yield only one bath, and one homer of seed will yield only an ephah.** (Isaiah 5:10 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

>> "For four hektares of vineyard will yield only one **bat**, and one **homer** of seed will yield only an **efa**."

(2) Use the measurements given in the UST. Usually they are metric measurements. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

>> "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only **twenty-two liters** and **220 liters** of seed will yield only **twenty-two liters**."

>> "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only **twenty-two liters**, and **ten baskets** of seed will yield only **one basket**."

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

>> "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only six gallons, and **six and a half bushels** of seed will yield only twenty quarts."

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

>> "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only **one bath (six gallons)**, and **one homer (six and a half bushels)** of seed will yield only **an ephah (twenty quarts)**."

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in footnotes.

>> "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only twenty-two liters [1], and 220 liters [2] of seed will yield only twenty-two liters [3]."

The footnotes would look like:

[1] one bath
[2] one homer
[3] one ephah

## When the unit of measure is implied

Sometimes the Hebrew does not specify a particular unit of volume but only uses a number. In these cases, many English versions, including the ULT and UST, add the word "measure".

> **whenever anyone came to the grainery for** twenty measures

of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty measures of wine, there were only twenty. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

**Translation Strategies**

1. Translate literally by using the number without a unit.
2. Use a generic word like "measure" or "quantity" or "amount".
3. Use the name of an appropriate container, such as "basket" for grain or "jar" for wine.
4. Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

**Translation Strategies Applied**

The strategies are all applied to Haggai 2:16 below.

> **whenever anyone came to the grainery for** twenty measures

of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty measures of wine, there were only twenty. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

(1) Translate literally by using the number without a unit.

> whenever anyone came to the grainery for **twenty** of grain, there were only **ten**, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty** of wine, there were only **twenty**.

(2) Use a generic word like "measure" or "quantity" or "amount".

> whenever anyone came to the grainery for **twenty amounts** of grain, there were only **ten**, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty amounts** of wine, there were only **twenty**.

(3) Use the name of an appropriate container, such as "basket" for grain or "jar" for wine.

> whenever anyone came to the grainery for **twenty baskets** of grain, there were only **ten**, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty jars** of wine, there were only **twenty**.

(4) Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

> whenever anyone came to the grainery for **twenty liters** of grain, there were only **ten liters**, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty liters** of wine, there were only **twenty liters**.

---

Next we recommend you learn about:

*[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction]]*
*[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo]]*

(**Go back to:** )

# Biblical Weight

## Description

The following terms are the most common units of weight in the
Bible. The term "shekel" means "weight", and many other weights

<table>
<tr><td>This page answers the question: <em>How can I translate the values of weight in the Bible?</em></td></tr>
</table>

are described in terms of the shekel. Some of these weights were used for money. The metric values in the table below are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are only an attempt to give an average measurement.

| Original Measure | Shekels | Grams | Kilograms |
|---|---|---|---|
| shekel | 1 shekel | 11 grams | - |
| bekah | 1/2 shekel | 5.7 grams | - |
| pim | 2/3 shekel | 7.6 grams | - |
| gerah | 1/20 shekel | 0.57 grams | - |
| mina | 50 shekels | 550 grams | 1/2 kilogram |
| talent | 3,000 shekels | - | 34 kilograms |

### Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one gerah as ".57 grams" readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say "half a gram".
5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word "about" to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, 2 Samuel 21:16 says that Goliath's spear weighed 300 shekels. Instead of translating this as "3300 grams" or "3.3 kilograms", it can be translated as "about three and one half kilograms".
6. When God tells people how much something should weigh, and when people use those weights, do not say "about" in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much the thing should weigh.

## Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

**Translation Strategies Applied**

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 38:29 below.

> **The bronze from the offering weighed** seventy talents and 2,400 shekels

. (Exodus 38:29 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

> > "The bronze from the offering weighed ***seventy talentes and 2,400 sekeles*.**"

(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

> > "The bronze from the offering weighed ***2,400 kilograms*.**"

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

> > "The bronze from the offering weighed ***5,300 pounds*** ."

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a footnote. The following shows both measurements in the text.

> > "The bronze from the offering weighed ***seventy talents (2,380 kilograms) and 2,400 shekels (26.4 kilograms)*.**"

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a footnote. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

> > "The bronze from the offering weighed ***seventy talents and 2,400 shekels***. 1 "

The footnote would look like:

> > [1] This was a total of about 2,400 kilograms.

---

Next we recommend you learn about:

*[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-decimal]]*
*[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction]]*

---

(**Go back to:** John 12:3; 19:39)

# Double Negatives

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each express the meaning of "not." Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

> This page answers the question: *What are double negatives?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

## Description

Negative words are words that have in them the meaning "not." Examples in English are "no," "not," "none," "no one," "nothing," "nowhere," "never," "nor," "neither," and "without." Also, some words have prefixes or suffixes that mean "not" such as the underlined parts of these words: "**un** happy," "**im** possible," and "use**less**." Some other kinds of words also have a negative meaning, such as "lack" or "reject," or even "fight" or "evil."

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each have a negative meaning.

> It is ***not*** that we do ***not*** have authority… (2 Thessalonians 3:9 ULT)
>
> And this better confidence did ***not*** happen ***without*** the taking of an oath,… (Hebrews 7:20 ULT.)
>
> Be sure of this—wicked people will ***not*** go ***un***punished (Proverbs 11:21 ULT)

**Reason this is a translation issue**

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as Spanish, a double negative emphasizes the negative. The following Spanish sentence *No ví a nadie* is literally, "I did not see no one". It has both the word 'no' next to the verb and 'nadie,' which means "no one". The two negatives are seen as in agreement with each other, and the sentence means, "I did not see anyone".
- In some languages, a second negative cancels the first one, creating a positive sentence. So, "He is not unintelligent" means "He is intelligent".
- In some languages the double negative creates a positive sentence, but it is a weak statement. So, "He is not unintelligent" means, "He is somewhat intelligent".
- In some languages, such as the languages of the Bible, the double negative can create a positive sentence, and often strengthens the statement. So, "He is not unintelligent" can mean "He is intelligent" or "He is very intelligent".

To translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know both what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

## Examples from the Bible

> …in order ***not*** to be ***unfruitful***. (Titus 3:14 ULT)

This means "so that they will be fruitful".

> All things were made through him and ***without*** him there was ***not*** one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULT)

By using a double negative, John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything. The double negative makes a stronger statement than the simple positive.

## Translation Strategies

If double negatives are natural and are used to express the positive in your language, consider using them. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

1. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.
2. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as "very" or "surely" or "absolutely."

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

> **For we do** not

have a high priest who cannot feel sympathy for our weaknesses. (Hebrews 4:15 ULT)

> "For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses."

**...in order** not

to be unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14 ULT)

> "...so that they may be fruitful."

(2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as "very" or "surely" or "absolutely."

> **Be sure of this—wicked people will** not

go un punished... (Proverbs 11:21 ULT)

> "Be sure of this—wicked people will **certainly** be punished..."

**All things were made through him and** without

him there was not one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULT)

> "All things were made through him. He made **absolutely** everything that has been made."

> Next we recommend you learn about:
>
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs]]*

# Doublet

## Description

We are using the word "doublet" to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word "and." Unlike Hendiadys, in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

**Reason this is a translation issue**

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

## Examples from the Bible

> King David was **old** and **advanced in years**. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean that he was "very old."

> …he attacked two men **more righteous** and **better** than himself… (1 Kings 2:32 ULT)

This means that they were "much more righteous" than he was.

> You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words (Daniel 2:9 ULT)

This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.

> …as of a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19 ULT)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect--not even one.

## Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words or phrases.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as "very" or "great" or "many."
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

## Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate only one of the words.

> **You have decided to prepare** false

and deceptive words (Daniel 2:9 ULT)

> "You have decided to prepare **false** things to say."

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as "very" or "great" or "many."

> **King David was** old

and advanced in years. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

> "King David was **very old**."

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

> **...a lamb** without blemish

and without spot... (1 Peter 1:19 ULT) - English can emphasize this with "any" and "at all."

> "...a lamb **without any blemish at all**..."

(**Go back to:** John 7:10; 10:1; 11:33)

# Ellipsis

## Description

Ellipsis is what happens when a speaker or writer leaves out one or more words from a sentence that it normally should have to be a complete sentence. The speaker or writer does this because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and supply the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. For example:

> This page answers the question: *What is ellipsis?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]*
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]*

> …the wicked will not stand in the judgment, **nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous**. (Psalm 1:5)

There is ellipsis in the second part because "nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous" is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause. With the action filled in, the complete sentence would be:

> > …nor **will** sinners **stand** in the assembly of the righteous.

**There are two types of ellipsis.**

1. A Relative Ellipsis happens when the reader has to supply the omitted word or words from the context. Usually the word is in the previous sentence, as in the example above.
2. An Absolute Ellipsis happens when the omitted word or words are not in the context, but the phrases are common enough in the language that the reader is expected to supply what is missing from this common usage, or from the nature of the situation.

## Reason this is a translation issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know that there is information missing that the writer expects them to fill in. Or readers may understand that there is information missing, but they may not know what information is missing because they do not know the original biblical language, culture, or situation as the original readers did. In this case, they may fill in the wrong information. Or readers may misunderstand the ellipsis if they do not use ellipsis in the same way in their language.

## Examples from the Bible

### Relative Ellipsis

> He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox**. (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. The full sentence with the information filled in would be:

> > He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

> But if we are afflicted, **for your comfort and salvation**; if we are comforted, **for your comfort**,… (2 Corinthians 1:6)

The information that the reader must understand in the second parts of these sentences can be filled in from the first parts:

> But if we are afflicted, ***we are afflicted*** for your comfort and salvation; if
> we are comforted, ***we are comforted*** for your comfort,...

## Absolute Ellipsis

> ...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He
> said, "Lord, ***that I might receive my sight***." (Luke 18:40-41 ULT)

It seems that the man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him. The complete sentence would be:

> "Lord, ***I want you to heal me so*** that I might receive my sight."

> To Titus...***Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior***. (Titus 1:4 ULT)

The writer assumes that the reader will recognize this common form of a blessing or wish, so he does not need to include the full sentence, which would be:

> To Titus...***May you receive*** grace and peace from God the Father and Christ
> Jesus our savior.

## Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

> **...the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor** sinners in the assembly

of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5)

> ...the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and ***sinners will not stand in the assembly*** of the
> righteous

**...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord,** that I might receive my sight

." (Luke 18:40-41)

> ...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He
> said, "Lord, ***I want you to heal me*** that I might receive my sight."

**He makes Lebanon skip like a calf** and Sirion like a young ox

. (Psalm 29:6)

> He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and ***he makes*** Sirion ***skip*** like a young ox.

(**Go back to:** John 6:67; 7:52; 8:35; 11:52; 11:56; 12:22; 12:34; 13:27; 18:40; 19:18)

# End of Story

## Description

There are different types of information that may be given at the end of a story. Often this is background information. This background information is different from the actions that make up the main part of the story. A book of the Bible is often made up of many smaller stories that are part of the larger story of the book itself. For example, the story of Jesus' birth is a smaller story in the larger story of the book of Luke. Each of these stories, whether large or small, can have background information at the end of it.

> This page answers the question: *What kinds of information are given at the end of a story?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]
> *Background Information*

**Different purposes for end of story information**

- To summarize the story
- To give a comment about what happened in the story
- To connect a smaller story to the larger story it is a part of
- To tell the reader what happens to a specific character after the main part of the story ends
- To tell on-going action that continues after the main part of the story ends
- To tell what happens after the story as a result of the events that happened in the story itself

**Reasons this is a translation issue**

Different languages have different ways of presenting these kinds of information. If you (the translator) do not use your language's ways of doing this, readers may not know these things:

- That this information is ending the story
- What the purpose of the information is
- How the information is related to the story

**Principles of translation**

- Translate the particular kind of information at the end of a story the way your language expresses that kind of information.
- Translate it so that people will understand how it relates to the story it is part of.
- If possible, translate the end of the story in a way that people will know where that story ends and the next begins.

## Examples from the Bible

1. To summarize the story

   > Then the rest of the men should follow, some on planks, and some on other things from the ship. ***In this way it happened that all of us came safely to land.*** (Acts 27:44 ULT)

1. To give a comment about what happened in the story

   > Many who practiced magical arts brought their books together and burned them in the sight of everyone. When they counted the value of them, it was fifty thousand pieces of silver. ***So the word of the Lord spread very widely in powerful ways.*** (Acts 19:19-20 ULT)

1. To tell the reader what happens to a specific character after the main part of the story ends

> Mary said,"My soul praises the Lord, and my spirit has rejoiced in God my savior..." **Mary stayed with Elizabeth about three months and then returned to her house.** (Luke 1:46-47, 56 ULT)

1. To tell on-going action that continues after the main part of the story ends

> All who heard it were amazed at what was spoken to them by the shepherds. **But Mary kept thinking about all the things she had heard, treasuring them in her heart.** (Luke 2:18-19 ULT)

1. To tell what happens after the story as a result of the events that happened in the story itself

> "Woe to you teachers of Jewish laws, because you have taken away the key of knowledge; you do not enter in yourselves, and you hinder those who are entering." **After Jesus left there, the scribes and the Pharisees opposed him and argued with him about many things, trying to trap him in his own words.** (Luke 11:52-54 ULT)

(**Go back to:** )

# Euphemism

## Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private.

> This page answers the question: *What is a Euphemism?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

## Definition

> …they found Saul and his sons ***fallen*** on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULT)

This means that Saul and his sons "were dead". It is a euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

## Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages use different euphemisms. If the target language does not use the same euphemism as in the source language, readers may not understand what it means and they may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

## Examples from the Bible

> …where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself…(1 Samuel 24:3 ULT)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so **he did not say specifically** what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

> Mary said to the angel, "How will this happen, since I have not slept with any man?" (Luke 1:34 ULT)

In order **to be polite**, Mary uses a euphemism to say that she has never had sexual intercourse with a man.

## Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.
2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.

> **…where there was a cave. Saul went inside to** relieve himself

. (1 Samuel 24:3 ULT) - Some languages might use euphemisms like these:

> "…where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave ***to dig a hole*** "
> "…where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave ***to have some time alone*** "

**Mary said to the angel, "How will this happen, since I have not** slept with any man

?" (Luke 1:34 ULT)

> Mary said to the angel, "How will this happen, since ***I do not know a man***?" - (This is the euphemism used in the original Greek)

(2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

> **they found Saul and his sons** fallen

on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULT)

> "they found Saul and his sons ***dead*** on Mount Gilboa."

(**Go back to:** John 10:11; 10:15; 10:17; 11:34; 12:28)

# Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

## Description

Some languages have more than one form of "we": an **inclusive** form that means "I and you" and an **exclusive** form that means "I and someone else but *not you*". The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for "us", "our", "ours", and "ourselves". Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

> This page answers the question: *What is exclusive and inclusive "we"?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns]]

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive "we" and the exclusive "we" refer to.



we/us (inclusive)
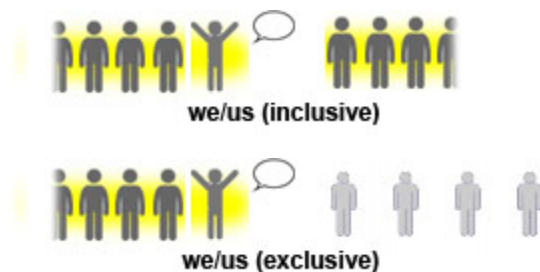
we/us (exclusive)

## Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for "we." If your language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of "we", then you will need to understand what the speaker meant so that you can decide which form of "we" to use.

## Examples from the Bible

> They said, "**We** have no more than five loaves of bread and two fish, unless **we** went and bought food for all this crowd of people." (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the first clause, the disciples are telling Jesus how much food they have among them, so this "we" could be the inclusive form or the exclusive form. In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food, so that "we" would be the exclusive form, since Jesus would not go to buy food.

> **we** have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to **us** (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

> …the shepherds said one to each other, "Let **us** now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to **us**." (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said "us", they were *including* the people they were speaking to - one another.

> Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, "Let **us** go over to the other side of the lake." Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said "us", he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so this would be the inclusive form.

---

Next we recommend you learn about:

*When Masculine Words Include Women*

---

(**Go back to:** John 1:22; 3:11; 9:28)

# First, Second or Third Person

Normally a speaker refers to himself as "I" and the person he is speaking to as "you". Sometimes in the Bible a speaker refers to himself or to the person he is speaking to with terms other than "I" or "you".

> This page answers the question: *What are first, second, and third person, and how do I translate when a third person form does not refer to the third person?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo]]*
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns]]*

## Description

- **First person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns "I" and "we". (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- **Second person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun "you". (Also: your, yours)
- **Third person** - This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns "he", "she", "it" and "they". (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like "the man" or "the woman" are also third person.

## Reason this is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses the third person to refer to himself or to the people he is speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant "I" or "you".

## Examples from the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of "I" or "me" to refer to themselves.

> But David said to Saul, "**Your servant** used to keep **his** father's sheep." (1 Samuel 17:34 ULT)

David referred to himself in the third person as "your servant" and "his". He was calling himself Saul's servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

> Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,
> "…Do you have an arm like **God's**? Can you thunder with a voice like **him**? (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words "God's" and "him". He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of "you" or "your" to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

> Abraham answered and said, "Look what I have done, taking it upon myself to speak to **my Lord**, even though I am only dust and ashes! (Genesis 18:27 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as "My Lord" rather than as "you". He did this to show his humility before God.

> So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

After saying "each of you," Jesus used the third person "his" instead of "your".

## Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean "I" or "you" would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

> 1. Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun "I" or "you".
> 2. Simply use the first person ("I") or second person ("you") instead of the third person.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun "I" or "you".

> **But David said to Saul, "**Your servant

used to keep his father's sheep." (1 Samuel 17:34)

> But David said to Saul, "*I, your servant*, used to keep *my* father's sheep."

(2) Simply use the first person ("I") or second person ("you") instead of the third person.

> **Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, "… Do you have an arm like** God's

? Can you thunder with a voice like him? (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

> Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, "… Do you have an arm like *mine*? Can you thunder with a voice like *me*?"

**So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if** each of you

does not forgive his brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

> So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if *each of you* does not forgive *your* brother from your heart.

---

> Next we recommend you learn about:
>
> *Forms of You*

---

# Forms of You

### Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for "you" based on
how many people the word "you" refers to. The **singular** form
refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one
person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to
two people, and some languages have other forms that refer to
three or four people.

> This page answers the question: *What are the different forms of you?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-yousingular]]*
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-youdual]]*

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_younum.

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of "you" even though he is speaking to a crowd.

> • Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

### Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of "you" based on the relationship between the speaker and the person
he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of "you" when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher
authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone
who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_youform.

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

> • Forms of "You" - Formal or Informal


(**Go back to:** John 3:10; 3:11; 3:12; 3:28; 14:2; 15:3)

# How to Translate Names

## Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

> This page answers the question: *How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Translate Unknowns*

**Meaning of names**

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

> It was this **Melchizedek**, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name "Melchizedek" primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title "king of Salem" tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

> His name "Melchizedek" means "king of righteousness," and also "king of Salem," that is, "king of peace." (Hebrews 7:2 ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek's name and title, because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see Borrow Words.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

## Examples from the Bible

> You went over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the **Amorites** (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that "Jordan" is the name of a river, "Jericho" is the name of a city, and "Amorites" is the name of a group of people.

> she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called **Beerlahairoi**; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that "Beerlahairoi" means "Well of the Living One who sees me".

> She named him **Moses** and said, "Because I drew him from the water." (Exodus 2:11 ULT)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words "pull out".

> ***Saul*** was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULT)

> It came about in Iconium that ***Paul*** and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

## Translation Strategies

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

> **You went over the** Jordan

and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

> You went over the ***Jordan River*** and came to the ***city of Jericho***. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with ***the tribe of the Amorites***

**Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, "Go and leave here because** Herod

wants to kill you." (Luke 13:31 ULT)

> Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, "Go and leave here because ***King Herod*** wants to kill you.

(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

> **She named him** Moses

and said, "Because I drew him from the water." (Exodus 2:11 ULT)

> She named him ***Moses (which sounds like 'drawn out'),*** and said, "Because I drew him from the water."

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

> **...she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called** Beerlahairoi

; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULT)

> ...she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called ***Well of the Living One who sees me***;

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called "Saul" before Acts 13 and "Paul" after Acts 13. You could translate his name as "Paul" all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

> **...a young man named** Saul

(Acts 7:58 ULT)

> ...a young man named ***Paul*** [1]

The footnote would look like:

> > [1] Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

> **But** Saul

, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

> But ***Saul***, who is also called ***Paul***, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write "Saul" where the source text has "Saul" and "Paul" where the source text has "Paul."

> **a young man named** Saul

(Acts 7:58 ULT)

> a young man named ***Saul***

The footnote would look like:

> > [1] This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

> **But** Saul

, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

> But ***Saul***, who is also called ***Paul***, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

> **It came about in Iconium that** Paul

and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

> It came about in Iconium that ***Paul*** [1] and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:

[1] This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.

> Next we recommend you learn about:
>
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate]]*

(**Go back to:** Introduction to the Gospel of John; John 2:11; 3:23; 5:2; 11:16; 14:22; 18:1; 18:10; 19:38; 20:24; 21:2)

# Hyperbole

## Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something that he means as completely true, or as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement. For example, the sentence below could mean three different things.

> This page answers the question: *What are hyperboles? What are generalizations? How can I translate them?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]*

• It rains here every night.

1. The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.
2. The speaker means this as a **generalization** if he means that it rains here most nights.
3. The speaker means this as a **hyperbole** if he wants to say that it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy about it.

**Hyperbole**: This is a figure of speech that uses **exaggeration**. A speaker deliberately describes something by an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

> They will not leave ***one stone upon another*** (Luke 19:44 ULT)

• This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

> Moses was educated in ***all the learning of the Egyptians*** (Acts 7:22 ULT)

• This hyperbole means that he had learned much of what the Egyptians knew and taught, and thus was as educated as any Egyptian.

**Generalization:** This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

> The one who ignores instruction ***will have poverty and shame,*** but ***honor will come*** to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

• These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction. There may be some exceptions to these statements, but they are generally true.

> And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as ***the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.*** (Matthew 6:7)

• This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles did this. It does not matter if a few did not. The point was that the hearers should not join in this well-known practice.

Even though a hyperbole or a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like "all," "always," "none," or "never," it does not necessarliy mean **exactly** "all," "always," "none," or "never." It simply means "most," "most of the time," "hardly any," or "rarely."

## Reason this is a translation issue

1. Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is literally true.
2. If readers realize that a statement is not literally true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)

## Examples from the Bible

### Examples of Hyperbole

> If your hand causes you to stumble, ***cut it off***. It is better for you to enter into life maimed…
> (Mark 9:43 ULT)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should ***do whatever extreme things*** we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

> The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops ***as numerous as the sand on the seashore***. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULT)

The underlined phrase is an exaggeration for the purpose of expression the emotion that the Philistine army was overwhelming in number. It means that there were ***many, many*** soldiers in the Philistine army.

> But as his anointing teaches you about ***all things*** and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27 ULT)

This is a hyperbole. It expresses the assurance that God's Spirit teaches us about ***all things that we need to know***. God's Spirit does not teach us about everything that it is possible to know.

> They found him, and they said to him, "***Everyone*** is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULT)

The disciples probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for Jesus, but that ***many people*** were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him. This is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that they and many others were worried about him.

### Examples of Generalization

> ***Can anything good come out of Nazareth?*** (John 1:46 ULT)

This rhetorical question is meant to express the generalization that there is nothing good in Nazareth. The people there had a reputation for being uneducated and not strictly religious. Of course, there were exceptions.

> One of them, of their own prophets, has said, "***Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy bellies***." (Titus 1:12 ULT)

This is a generalization that means that Cretans had a reputation to be like this because, in general, this is how Cretans behaved. It is possible that there were exceptions.

> ***A lazy hand causes poverty, but the hand of the diligent makes him rich***. (Proverbs 10:4 ULT)

This is generally true, and reflects the experience of most people. It is possible that there are exceptions in some circumstances.

### Caution

Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

> …they saw Jesus ***walking on the sea*** and coming near the boat… (John 6:19 ULT)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

Do not assume that the word "all" is always a generalization that means "most."

> Yahweh is righteous in **all** his ways
> and gracious in **all** he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULT)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

## Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

1. Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
2. For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like "in general" or "in most cases."
3. For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like "many" or "almost" to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.
4. For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like "all," always," "none," or "never," consider deleting that word.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.

> **The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops** as numerous as the sand on the seashore

. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULT)

> The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and **a great number of troops**.

(2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like "in general" or "in most cases".

> **The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame...** (Proverbs 13:18 ULT)

> > **In general,** the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame

> **And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.** (Matthew 6:7)

> > "And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles **generally** do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words."

(3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like "many" or "almost" to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.

> **The** whole

country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5 ULT)

> **Almost all** the country of Judea and **almost all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him."
> or:
> **Many** of the country of Judea and **many** of the people of Jerusalem went out to him."

(4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like "all," always," "none," or "never," consider deleting that word.

> **The** whole

country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5 ULT)

> The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(**Go back to:** John 3:32; 4:29; 4:39; 7:46; 11:49; 12:19; 13:35; 18:20; 21:25)

# Hypothetical Situations

Consider these phrases: "If the sun stopped shining...;" "What if the sun stopped shining...;" "Suppose the sun stopped shining...;" and "If only the sun had not stopped shining." We use such expressions to set up hypothetical situations, imagining what might have happened or what could happen in the future but probably will not. We also use them to express regret or wishes. These occur often in the Bible. You (the translator) need to translate them in a way that people will know that the event did not actually happen, and that they will understand why the event was imagined.

> This page answers the question: *What is a hypothetical situation?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]*

## Description

Hypothetical situations are situations that are not real. They can be in the past, present, or future. Hypothetical situations in the past and present have not happened, and ones in the future are not expected to happen.

People sometimes tell about conditions and what would happen if those conditions were met, but they know that these things have not happened or probably will not happen. (The conditions are the phrase that start with "if.")

- If he had lived to be one hundred years old, he would have seen his grandson's grandson. (But he did not.)
- If he lived to be one hundred years old, he would still be alive today. (But he is not.)
- If he lives to be one hundred years old, he will see his grandson's grandson. (But he probably will not.)

People sometimes express wishes about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- I wish he had come.
- I wish he were here.
- I wish he would come.

People sometimes express regrets about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- If only he had come.
- If only he were here.
- If only he would come.

## Reason this Is a Translation Issue

- Translators need to recognize the different kinds of hypothetical situations in the Bible and understand that they are unreal.
- Translators need to know their own language's ways of talking about different kinds of hypothetical situations.

## Examples from the Bible

### Hypothetical situations in the past

> "Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! **If the mighty deeds had been done** in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, **they would have repented** long ago in sackcloth and ashes." (Matthew 11:21 ULT)

Here in Matthew 11:21 Jesus said that *if* the people living in the ancient cities of Tyre and Sidon had been able to see the miracles that he performed, they would have repented long ago. The people of Tyre and Sidon did not actually see his miracles and they did not repent. He said this to rebuke the people of Chorazin and Bethsaida who had seen his miracles and yet did not repent.

> Martha then said to Jesus, "Lord, **if you had been here, my brother would not have died**." (John 11:21 ULT)

Martha said this to express her wish that Jesus had come sooner, so that her brother would not have died. But Jesus did not come sooner, and her brother did die.

### Hypothetical situations in the present

> Also, no man puts new wine into old wineskins. **If he did that, the new wine would burst the skins, and the wine would be spilled, and the wineskins would be destroyed**. (Luke 5:37 ULT)

Jesus told about what would happen if a person were to put new wine into old wineskins. But no one would do that. He used this imaginary situation as an example to show that there are times when it is unwise to mix new things with old things. He did this so that people could understand why his disciples were not fasting as people traditionally did.

> Jesus said to them, "What man would there be among you, who, **if he had just one sheep, and if this sheep fell into a deep hole on the Sabbath, would not grasp hold of it and lift it out**? (Matthew 12:11 ULT)

Jesus asked the religious leaders what they would do on the Sabbath if one of their sheep fell into a hole. He was not saying that their sheep would fall into a hole. He used this imaginary situation to show them that they were wrong to judge him for healing people on the Sabbath.

### Hypothetical situation in the future

> **Unless those days are shortened, no flesh would be saved**; but for the sake of the elect, those days will be shortened. (Matthew 24:22 ULT)

Jesus was talking about a future time when very bad things would happen. He told what would happen if those days of trouble were to last a long time. He did this to show about how bad those days will be––so bad that if they lasted a long time, no one would be saved. But then he clarified that God will shorten those days of trouble, so that the elect (those he has chosen) will be saved.

### Expressing emotion about a hypothetical situation

People sometimes talk about hypothetical situations in order to express regrets and wishes. Regrets are about the past and wishes are about the present and future.

> The Israelites said to them, "**If only we had died by Yahweh's hand in the land of Egypt when we were sitting by the pots of meat and were eating bread to the full.** For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill our whole community with hunger." (Exodus 16:3 ULT)

Here the Israelites were afraid that they would have to suffer and die of hunger in the wilderness, and so they wished that they had stayed in Egypt and died there with full stomachs. They were complaining, expressing regret that this had not happened.

> I know what you have done, and that you are neither cold nor hot. **I wish that you were either cold or hot!** (Revelation 3:15 ULT)

Jesus wished that the people were either hot or cold, but they are neither. He was rebuking them, expressing anger at this.

## Translation Strategies

Find out how people speaking your language show:

   • that something could have happened, but did not.

• that something could be true now, but is not.
• that something could happen in the future, but will not unless something changes.
• that they wish for something, but it does not happen.
• that they regret that something did not happen.

Use your language's ways of showing these kinds of things.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_hypo.

(**Go back to:** John 2:19)

# Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

> This page answers the question: *What are idioms and how can I translate them?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]*

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, "You are telling me a lie.")
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, "Do not take a matter to its extreme.")
- This house is under water. (This means, "The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.")
- We are painting the town red. (This means, "We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.")

## Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

> he resolutely **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULT)

The words "set his face" is an idiom that means "decided".

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

> I am not worthy that you should **enter under my roof**. (Luke 7:6 ULT)

The phrase "enter under my roof" is an idiom that means "enter my house".

> Let these words **go deeply into your ears**. (Luke 9:44 ULT)

This idiom means "Listen carefully and remember what I say".

**Purpose**: An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

**Reasons this is a translation issue**

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

## Examples from the Bible

> Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your **flesh and bone**." (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, "We and you belong to the same race, the same family."

> the children of Israel went out **with a high hand**. (Exodus 14:8 ASV)

This means, "The Israelites went out defiantly."

> the one who **lifts up my head** (Psalm 3:3 ULT)

This means, "the one who helps me."

## Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

> **Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your** flesh and bone

." ( 1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

> …Look, we all **belong to the same nation**.

**he** resolutely set his face

to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULT)

> He started to travel to Jerusalem, **determined to reach it**.

**I am not worthy that you should enter** under my roof

. (Luke 7:6 ULT)

> I am not worthy that you should enter **my house**.

(2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

> **Let these words** go deeply into your ears

(Luke 9:44 ULT)

> **Be all ears** when I say these words to you.

**"My** eyes grow dim

from grief (Psalm 6:7 ULT)

> I am crying my **eyes out**

# Inclusive and Exclusive "We"

## Description

Some languages have more than one form of "we": an **inclusive** form that means "I and you" and an **exclusive** form that means "I and someone else but not you." The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for "us," "our," "ours," and "ourselves." Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these.

> This page answers the question: *What is inclusive and exclusive "we"?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns]]

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive "we" and the exclusive "we" refer to.



we/us (inclusive)
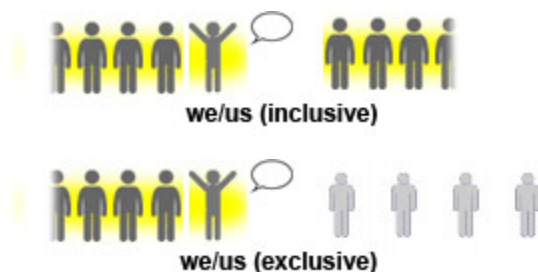


we/us (exclusive)

## Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for "we." Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of "we" will need to understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of "we" to use.

## Examples from the Bible

### Inclusive

> …the shepherds said one to each other, "Let **us** now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to **us**." (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said "us," they were including the people they were speaking to - one another.

> Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, "Let **us** go over to the other side of the lake." Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said "us," he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so this would be the inclusive form.

### Exclusive

> **we** have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to **us** (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

> They said, "**We** have no more than five loaves of bread and two fish, unless **we** went and bought food for all this crowd of people." (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the first clause, the disciples are telling Jesus how much food they have among them, so this "we" could be the inclusive form or the exclusive form. In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food, so that "we" would be the exclusive form, since Jesus would not go to buy food.

> Next we recommend you learn about:
>
> *Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'*

(**Go back to:** John 9:4)

# Introduction of a New Event

## Description

When people tell a story, they tell about an event or a series of events. Often they put certain information at the beginning of the story, such as who the story is about, when it happened, and where it happened. This information that the writer gives before the events of the story begin is called the setting of the story. Some new events in a story also have a setting because they might involve new people, new times, and new places. In some languages people also tell if they saw the event or heard about it from someone else.

> This page answers the question: *How do we introduce a new event in a story?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]
> *Order of Events*

When your people tell about events, what information do they give at the beginning? Is there a certain order that they put it in? In your translation, you will need to follow the way your language introduces new information at the beginning of a story or a new event rather than the way the source language did that. In this way your translation will sound natural and communicate clearly in your language.

## Examples from the Bible

> *In the days of Herod*, king of Judea, *there was a certain priest named Zechariah*, from the division of Abijah. *His wife was* from the daughters of Aaron, and her name was Elizabeth. (Luke 1:5 ULT)

The verses above introduce a story about Zechariah. The first underlined phrase tells when it happened, and the next two underlined phrases introduce the main people. The next two verses go on to explain that Zechariah and Elizabeth were old and did not have any children. All of this is the setting. Then the phrase "One day" in Luke 1:8 helps to introduce the first event in this story:

> *One day* while Zechariah was performing his duties as a priest before God in the order of his division, the priests followed their custom and chose him by lot to enter the temple of the Lord and burn incense. (Luke 1:8-9 ULT)

> *The birth of Jesus Christ happened in the following way.* His mother Mary was engaged to marry Joseph, but before they came together, she was found to be pregnant by the Holy Spirit. (Matthew 1:18 ULT)

The underlined sentence above makes it explicit that a story about Jesus is being introduced. The story will tell about how the birth of Jesus happened.

> *After Jesus was born in Bethlehem of Judea in the days of Herod the king*, learned men from the east arrived in Jerusalem saying,… (Matthew 2:1 ULT)

The underlined phrase above shows that the events concerning the learned men happened *after* Jesus was born.

> *In those days* John the Baptist came preaching in the wilderness of Judea saying,… (Matthew 3:1-22 ULT)

The underlined phrase above shows that John the Baptist came preaching around the time of the previous events. It is probably very general and refers to when Jesus lived in Nazareth.

> *Then* Jesus came from Galilee to the Jordan River to be baptized by John. (Matthew 3:13 ULT)

The word "then" shows that Jesus came to the Jordan River some time after the events in the previous verses.

> Now there was a *Pharisee whose name was Nicodemus, a member of the Jewish Council*. This man came to Jesus at night time (John 3:1-2 ULT)

The author first introduced the new person and then told about what he did and when he did it. In some languages it might be more natural to tell about the time first.

> [6] Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. [7] Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

Verse 6 is a summary of the events that happen in the rest of chapter 7. Chapter 6 already told about how God told Noah that there would be a flood, and how Noah prepared for it. Chapter 7 verse 6 introduces the part of the story that tells about Noah and his family and the animals going into the ship, the rain starting, and the rain flooding the earth. Some languages might need to make it clear that this verse simply introduces the event, or move this verse after verse 7. Verse 6 is not one of the events of the story. The people went into the ship before the flood came.

## Translation Strategies

If the information given at the beginning of a new event is clear and natural to your readers, consider translating it as it is in the ULT or UST. If not, consider one of these strategies.

1. Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.
2. If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase to fill in that information, such as: "another time" or "someone."
3. If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.
4. If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event would actually happen later in the story.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.

> **Now there was a** Pharisee whose name was Nicodemus, a member of the Jewish Council

. This man came to Jesus at night time and said to him… (John 3:1,2)

> There was a **man whose name was Nicodemus. He was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council**. One night he came to Jesus and said…

> One night **a man named Nicodemus, who was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council**, came to Jesus and said…

**As he passed by,** he saw Levi the son of Alpheus, who was sitting

at the tax collecting place, and he said to him… (Mark 2:14 ULT)

> As he passed by, **Levi the son of Alpheus was sitting** at the tax collecting place. Jesus saw him and and said to him…

> As he passed by, **there was a man sitting** at the tax collecting place. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him…

> As he passed by, **there was a tax collector** sitting at the tax collecting place. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him…

(2) If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase such as: another time, someone.

> **Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth.** (Genesis 7:6 ULT) - If people expect to be told something about when the new event happened, the phrase "after that" can help them see that it happened after the events already mentioned.

> *After that*, when Noah was six hundred years old, the flood came upon the earth.

> Again he began

to teach beside the lake. (Mark 4:1 ULT) - In chapter 3 Jesus was teaching at someone's house. Readers may need to be told that this new event happened at another time, or that Jesus actually went to the lake.

> *Another time* Jesus began to teach people again beside the lake.

> Jesus went to the lake and *began to teach people again* there.

(3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.

> **Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth.** (Genesis 7:6 ULT)

> > *Now this is what happened when* Noah was six hundred years old and the flood came upon the earth.

> > *This part tells about what happened when* the flood came upon the earth. It happened when Noah was six hundred years old.

(4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event will actually happen later in the story.

> **Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood.** (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

> > *Now this is what happened when* Noah was six hundred years old. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because *God had said that the waters of the flood would come*.

---

Next we recommend you learn about:

*Background Information*
*Introduction of New and Old Participants*

---

(**Go back to:** John 2:11; 8:12; 9:1; 12:1; 12:12; 18:1)

# Introduction of New and Old Participants

## Description

The first time that people or things are mentioned in a story, they are **new participants**. After that, whenever they are mentioned, they are **old participants**.

> Now **there was a Pharisee whose name was Nicodemus**…**This man** came to Jesus at night time… Jesus replied to **him** (John 3:1)

This page answers the question: *Why cannot the readers of my translation understand who the author was writing about?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

The first underlined phrase introduces Nicodemus as a new participant. He is then referred to as "This man" and "him" when he is an old participant.

## Reason this is a translation issue

In order to make your translation clear and natural, it is necessary to refer to the participants in such a way that people will know if they are new participants or participants that they have already read about. Different languages have different ways of doing this. You must follow the way that your language does this, not the way that the source language does this.

## Examples from the Bible

### New Participants

Often the most important new participant is introduced with a phrase that says that he existed, such as "There was a man" in the example below. The phrase "There was" tells us that this man existed. The word "a" in "a man" tells us that the author is speaking about him for the first time. The rest of the sentence tells where this man was from, who is family was, and what his name was.

> **There was a man** from Zorah, of the family of the Danites, whose name was Manoah. (Judges 13:2 ULT)

A new participant who is not the most important one is often introduced in relation to the more important person who was already introduced. In the example below, Manoah's wife is simply referred to as "his wife". This phrase shows her relationship to him.

> There was a man from Zorah, of the family of the Danites, whose name was Manoah. **His wife** was not able to become pregnant and so she had not given birth. (Judges 13:2 ULT)

Sometimes a new participant is introduced simply by name because the author assumes that the readers know who the person is. In the first verse of 1 Kings, the author assumes that his readers know who King David is, so there is no need to explain who he is.

> When King David was very old, they covered him with blankets, but he could not keep warm. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

### Old Participants

A person who has already been brought into the story can be referred to with a pronoun after that. In the example below, Manoah is referred to with the pronoun "his", and his wife is referred to with the pronoun "she".

> **His** wife was not able to become pregnant and so **she** had not given birth. (Judges 13:2 ULT)

Old participants can also be referred to in other ways, depending on what is happening in the story. In the example below, the story is about bearing a son, and Manoah's wife is referred to with the noun phrase "the woman".

> The angel of Yahweh appeared to **the woman** and said to her, (Judges 13:3 ULT)

If the old participant has not been mentioned for a while, or if there could be confusion between participants, the author may use the participant's name again. In the example below, Manoah is referred to with his name, which the author has not used since verse 2.

> Then **Manoah** prayed to Yahweh…(Judges 13:8 ULT)

Some languages place an affix on the verb that tells something about the subject. In some of those languages people do not always use noun phrases or pronouns for old participants when they are the subject of the sentence. The marker on the verb gives enough information for the listener to understand who the subject is. (See Verbs.)

## Translation Strategies

1. If the participant is new, use one of your language's ways of introducing new participants.
2. If it is not clear to whom a pronoun refers, use a noun phrase or name.
3. If an old participant is referred to by name or a noun phrase, and people wonder if this is another new participant, try using a pronoun instead. If a pronoun is not needed because people would understand it clearly from the context, then leave out the pronoun.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the participant is new, use one of your language's ways of introducing new participants.

> **Joseph, a Levite, a man from Cyprus, was given the name Barnabas by the apostles (that is, being interpreted, Son of encouragement).** (Acts 4:36-37 ULT) - Starting the sentence with Joseph's name when he has not been introduced yet might be confusing in some languages.
>
>> There was a man from Cyprus who was a Levite. His name was Joseph, and he was given the name Barnabas by the apostles (that is, being interpreted, Son of encouragement).
>> There was a Levite from Cyprus whose name was Joseph. The apostles gave him the name Barnabas, which means Son of encouragement.

(2) If it is not clear who a pronoun refers to, use a noun phrase or name.

> **It happened when** he

finished praying in a certain place, that one of his disciples said, "Lord, teach us to pray just as John taught his disciples." (Luke 11:1 ULT) - Since this is the first verse in a chapter, readers might wonder who "he" refers to.

> It happened when **Jesus** finished praying in a certain place, that one of his disciples said, "Lord, teach us to pray just as John taught his disciples.

(3) If an old participant is referred to by name or a noun phrase, and people wonder if this is another new participant, try using a pronoun instead. If a pronoun is not needed because people would understand it clearly from the context, then leave out the pronoun.

> Joseph's

master took Joseph and put him in prison, in the place where all the king's prisoners were put, and Joseph stayed there. (Genesis 39:20 ULT) - Since Joseph is the main person in the story, some languages might find it unnatural or confusing to use his name so much. They might prefer a pronoun.

> Joseph's master took **him** and put **him** in prison, in the place where all the king's prisoners were put, and **he** stayed there in the prison.

Next we recommend you learn about:

*[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-pronouns]]*

(**Go back to:** John 3:1; 5:5; 11:1; 11:49; 12:20)

# Irony

## Description

Irony is a figure of speech in which the sense that the speaker intends to communicate is actually the opposite of the literal meaning of the words. Sometimes a person does this by using someone else's words, but in a way that communicates that he does not agree with them. People do this to emphasize how different something is from what it should be, or how someone else's belief about something is wrong or foolish. It is often humorous.

> This page answers the question: *What is irony and how can I translate it?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

> Jesus answered them, "People who are in good health do not need a physician, only people who are sick need one. I did not come to call righteous people to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance." (Luke 5:31-32 ULT)

When Jesus spoke of "righteous people," he was not referring to people who were truly righteous, but to people who wrongly believed that they were righteous. By using irony, Jesus communicated that they were wrong to think that they were better than others and did not need to repent.

### Reason this is a translation issue

- If someone does not realize that a speaker is using irony, he will think that the speaker actually believes what he is saying. He will understand the passage to mean the opposite of what it was intended to mean.

## Examples from the Bible

> **How well you reject the commandment of God** so you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9 ULT)

Here Jesus praises the Pharisees for doing something that is obviously wrong. Through irony, he communicates the opposite of praise: He communicates that the Pharisees, who take great pride in keeping the commandments, are so far from God that they do not even recognize that their traditions are breaking God's commandments. The use of irony makes the Pharisee's sin more obvious and startling.

> "Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. **"Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled**." (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

People worshiped idols as if their idols had knowledge or power, and Yahweh was angry at them for doing that. So he used irony and challenged their idols to tell what would happen in the future. He knew that the idols could not do this, but by speaking as if they could, he mocked the idols, making their inability more obvious, and rebuked the people for worshiping them.

> Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?
> Can you find the way back to their houses for them?
> **Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;** "**the number of your days is so large!** " (Job 38:20, 21 ULT)

Job thought that he was wise. Yahweh used irony to show Job that he was not so wise. The two underlined phrases above are irony. They emphasize the opposite of what they say, because they are so obviously false. They emphasize that Job could not possibly answer God's questions about the creation of light because Job was not born until many, many years later.

> Already you have all you could want! Already you have become rich! You began to reign—and that quite apart from us! (1 Corinthians 4:8 ULT)

The Corinthians considered themselves to be very wise, self-sufficient, and not in need of any instruction from the Apostle Paul. Paul used irony, speaking as if he agreed with them, to show how proudly they were acting and how far from being wise they really were.

## Translation Strategies

If the irony would be understood correctly in your language, translate it as it is stated. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.
2. Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony. The actual meaning of the irony is **not** found in the literal words of the speaker, but instead the true meaning is found in the opposite of the literal meaning of the speaker's words.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

> How well you reject the commandment of God

so you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9 ULT)

> ***You think that you are doing well when you reject God's commandment*** so you may keep your tradition!
> ***You act like it is good to reject God's commandment*** so you may keep your tradition!

**I did not come to call** righteous people

to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance. (Luke 5:32 ULT)

> I did not come to call ***people who think that they are righteous*** to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance.

(2) Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony.

> How well you reject the commandment of God

so you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9 ULT)

> ***You are doing a terrible thing when you reject the commandment of God*** so you may keep your tradition!

**"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. "**Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen

, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled." (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

> 'Present your case,' says Yahweh; 'present your best arguments for your idols,' says the King of Jacob. Your idols ***cannot bring us their own arguments or come forward to declare to us what will happen*** so we may know these things well. We cannot hear them because ***they cannot speak*** to tell us their earlier predictive declarations, so we cannot reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.

**Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?**
**Can you find the way back to their houses for them?**
Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;


the number of your days is so large!" (Job 38:20, 21 ULT)

> Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? ***You act like you know how light and darkness were created, as if you were there; as if you are as old as creation, but you are not***!

---

Next we recommend you learn about:

*Litotes*

---

(**Go back to:** John 7:28; 9:27; 10:32; Notes; Notes; 19:3)

# Litotes

## Description

Litotes is a figure of speech in which the speaker expresses a strong positive meaning by using two negative words or a negative word with a word that means the opposite of the meaning he intends. A few examples of negative words are "no", "not", "none", and "never". The opposite of "good" is "bad". Someone could say that something is "not bad" to mean that it is extremely good.

> This page answers the question: *What is litotes?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]*

**Reason this is a translation issue**

Some languages do not use litotes. People who speak those languages might not understand that a statement using litotes actually strengthens the positive meaning. Instead, they might think that it weakens or even cancels the positive meaning.

## Examples from the Bible

> For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was ***not useless***, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was ***very*** useful.

> Now when it became day, there was ***no small excitement*** among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a ***lot*** of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very agitated.)

> And you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah,
> are ***not the least*** among the leaders of Judah,
> for from you will come a ruler
> who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULT)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a ***very important city***.

## Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

1. If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the ***positive*** meaning in a strong way.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the ***positive*** meaning in a strong way.

> **For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was** not useless

. (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

> "For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you ***did much good***."

**Now when it became day, there was** no small excitement

among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

> "Now when it became day, there was **great excitement** among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter."
> "Now when it became day, the soldiers were **very concerned** because of what had happened to Peter."

(**Go back to:** John 1:47; 6:37; 6:39)

# Metaphor

## Description

A **metaphor** is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say:

> • The girl I love is a red rose.

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer's task is to understand in what way they are alike.

## The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about "the girl I love". This is the **Topic**. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and "a red rose." The red rose is the **Image** to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both *beautiful*. This is the **Idea** that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the **Point of Comparison**.

Every metaphor has three parts:

> • The **Topic**, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
> • The **Image**, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
> • The **Idea**, the abstract concept or quality that the physical **Image** brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the **Image** and the **Topic** are similar. Often, the **Idea** of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the **Idea** himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a **metaphor** is a figure of speech that uses a physical **Image** to apply an abstract **Idea** to the speaker's **Topic**.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a **Topic**, with at least one **Point of Comparison** (**Idea**) between the **Topic** and the **Image**. Often in metaphors, the **Topic** and the **Image** are explicitly stated, but the **Idea** is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about the similarity between the **Topic** and the **Image** and to figure out for themselves the **Idea** that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a "passive" metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being "active." Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

## Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these "dead metaphors." Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms "table *leg*", "family *tree*", "book *leaf*" (meaning a page in

a book), or the word "crane" (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word "hand" to represent "power," using the word "face" to represent "presence," and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were "clothing."

**Patterned Pairs of Concepts acting as Metaphors**

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction UP (the Image) often represents the concepts of MORE or BETTER (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as "The price of gasoline is going *up*," "A *highly* intelligent man," and also the opposite kind of idea: "The temperature is going *down*," and "I am feeling very *low*."

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world's languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- "Turn the heat *up*." MORE is spoken of as UP.
- "Let us *go ahead* with our debate." DOING WHAT WAS PLANNED is spoken of as WALKING or ADVANCING.
- "You *defend* your theory well." ARGUMENT is spoken of as WAR.
- "A *flow* of words" WORDS are spoken of as LIQUIDS.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

## Active Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. They make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

> For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.
> (Malachi 4:2 ULT)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun's rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

> Jesus said, "Go and tell that fox…," (Luke 13:32 ULT)

Here, "that fox" refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors are the metaphors that need special care to translate correctly. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.

> Jesus said to them, "I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty." (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is "I" (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is "bread." Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is "life." In this case, Jesus stated the central Idea of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

## Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

### Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

## Examples from the Bible

> Listen to this word, **you cows of Bashan**, (Amos 4:1 ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria ("you", the Topic) as if they were cows (the Image). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshipped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

> And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; **we are the clay**. **You are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The Topic(s) are "we" and "you," and the Image(s) are "clay" and "potter." The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material. The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The Idea being expressed by the comparison between the potter's clay and "us" is that **neither the clay nor God's people have a right to complain about what they are becoming**.

> Jesus said to them, "Take heed and beware of **the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees**." The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, "It is because we took no bread." (Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said "yeast," they thought he was talking about bread, but "yeast" was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the **Idea** in the simplest way preferred by your language.
2. If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally ***if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible***. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
3. If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as." See Simile.
4. If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.
5. If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
6. If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)
7. If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the **Idea**) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.
8. If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the **Idea** plainly without using a metaphor.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

> **Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him,** fell at his feet

. (Mark 5:22 ULT)

> Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, ***immediately bowed down in front of him***.

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally ***if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible***. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

> **It was because of your** hard hearts

that he wrote you this law, (Mark 10:5 ULT)

> It was because of your ***hard hearts*** that he wrote you this law,

We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as."

> **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the** clay

. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

> And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are ***like*** clay. You are ***like*** a potter; and we all are the
> work of your hand.

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.

> **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you** to kick a goad

. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

> Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to ***kick against a pointed stick***.

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

> **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the** clay

. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

> "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the ***wood***. You are our ***carver***; and we all are the
> work of your hand."
> "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the ***string***. You are the ***weaver***; and we all are the
> work of your hand."

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

> **Yahweh lives; may** my rock

be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

> Yahweh lives; ***He is my rock***. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

> **Yahweh lives; may** my rock

be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

> Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock ***under which I can hide from my***
> ***enemies***. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

**Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you** to kick a goad

. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

> Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You ***fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that***
> ***kicks against its owner's pointed stick***.

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

> **I will make you become** fishers of men

. (Mark 1:17 ULT)

> I will make you become **people who gather men**.
> Now you gather fish. I will make you **gather people**.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns.

# Metonymy

## Description

**Metonymy** is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A **metonym** is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

> This page answers the question: *What is a metonymy?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]*

> and ***the blood*** of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

> He took ***the cup*** in the same way after supper, saying, "***This cup*** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

**Metonymy can be used**

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

## Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not used to metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

## Examples from the Bible

> The Lord God will give him ***the throne*** of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship," or "reign." This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

> Immediately his ***mouth*** was opened (Luke 1:64 ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

> ...who warned you to flee from ***the wrath*** that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULT)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people, and as a result, he would punish them.

## Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

> He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "***This cup*** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULT)

>> "He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "***The wine in this cup*** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you."

(2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

> The Lord God will give him ***the throne*** of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULT)

>> "The Lord God will give him ***the kingly authority*** of his father, David."
>> or:
>> "The Lord God will ***make him king*** like his ancestor, King David."

> who warned you to flee from ***the wrath*** to come? (Luke 3:7 ULT)

>> "who warned you to flee from God's coming ***punishment***?"

To learn about some common metonymies, see Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies.

(**Go back to:** John 1:4; 1:10; 1:12; 1:23; 1:29; 2:4; 2:23; 3:16; 3:19; 3:27; 3:31; 4:41; 4:42; 4:50; 5:24; 5:43; 5:45; 6:33; 6:51; 6:63; 7:4; 7:6; 7:7; 7:30; 7:36; 7:38; 8:12; 8:20; 8:26; 8:35; 8:37; 8:43; 8:47; 8:51; 8:55; 8:56; 9:5; 9:39; 10:25; 10:28; 10:29; 10:39; 12:13; 12:15; 12:19; 12:27; 12:28; 12:31; 12:38; 12:40; 12:46; 13:3; 14:1; 14:13; 14:14; 14:17; 14:19; 14:22; 14:27; 14:31; 15:16; 15:18; 15:19; 15:20; 15:21; 15:25; 15:27; 16:4; 16:6; 16:8; 16:20; 16:22; 16:23; 16:26; 16:28; 16:33; 17:1; 17:4; 17:6; 17:9; 17:11; 17:12; 17:13; 17:14; 17:15; 17:18; 17:21; 17:23; 17:25; 17:26; 18:20; 18:36; 19:10; 20:31)

# Numbers

## Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words ("five") or as numerals ("5"). Some numbers are very large, such as "two hundred" (200), "twenty-two thousand" (22,000), or "one hundred million" (100,000,000). Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

> This page answers the question: *How do I translate numbers?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Translate Unknowns*

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

> Abram was ***eighty-six*** years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

> That day about ***three thousand*** men out of the people died. (Exodus 32:28 ULT)

Here the number three thousand is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word "about" shows that it is not an exact number.

**Reason this is a translation issue**

Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

**Translation Principles**

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

## Examples from the Bible

> When Jared had lived ***162*** years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived ***eight hundred*** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived ***962*** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULT)

The numbers 162, eight hundred, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

> Our sister, may you be the mother of ***thousands of ten thousands*** (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

## Translation Strategies

1. Write numbers using numerals.
2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parentheses after them.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

We will use the following verse in our examples:

> Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14 ULT)

(1) Write numbers using numerals.

> I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(2) Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.

> I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

> I have prepared for Yahweh's house one **hundred thousand (100,000)** talents of gold, **one million (1,000,000)** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

> I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **a thousand thousand** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

> I have prepared for Yahweh's house **a great amount of gold (100,000 talents)**, **ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents)**, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

**Consistency**

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

**Consistency in the ULT and UST**

The *unfoldingWord® Literal Text* (ULT) and the *unfoldingWord® Simplified Text* (UST) use words for numbers that have only one or two words (nine, sixteen, three hundred). They use numerals for numbers that have more than two words (the numerals "130" instead of "one hundred thirty").

> When Adam had lived **130** years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived **eight hundred** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived **930** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULT)

Next we recommend you learn about:

*Ordinal Numbers*
*[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction]]*

(**Go back to:** John 2:20; 5:5; 12:5; 19:39; 21:11)

# Order of Events

## Description

In the Bible, events are not always told in the order in which they occurred. Sometimes the author wanted to discuss something that happened at an earlier time than the event that he just talked about. This can be confusing to the reader.

**Reason this is a translation issue:** Readers might think that the events happened in the order that they are told. It is important to help them understand the correct order of events.

> This page answers the question: *Why are the events not listed in the order they happened, and how do I translate them?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs]]

## Examples from the Bible

> But then Herod...had John locked up in prison. Now it came about, while all the people were being baptized by John, that Jesus also was baptized. (Luke 3:20-21 ULT)

This could sound like John baptized Jesus after John was locked up in prison, but John baptized Jesus before John was locked up in prison.

> Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets... But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout." (Joshua 6:8-10 ULT)

This could sound like Joshua gave the order not to shout after the army had already started their march, but he had given that order before they started marching.

> Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2 ULT)

This sounds like a person must first open the scroll and then break its seals, but the seals that lock the scroll must be broken before the scroll can be unrolled.

## Translation Strategies

1. If your language uses phrases or time words to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using one of them.
2. If your language uses verb tense or aspect to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using that. (See the section on "Aspect" of Verbs.)
3. If your language prefers to tell events in the order that they occurred, consider reordering the events so they they are in that order. This may require putting two or more verses together (like 5-6). (See Verse Bridges.)

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If your language uses phrases, time words or tenses to show that an event happened before the one just mentioned, consider using one of them.

> **20 But then Herod...had John locked up in prison. 21 Now it came about, while all the people were being baptized by John, that Jesus also was baptized.** (Luke 3:20-21 ULT)

> > 20 But then Herod...had John locked up in prison. 21 ***Before John was put in prison,*** while all the people were being baptized by John, Jesus also was baptized.

> **Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals?** (Revelation 5:2 ULT)

>> Who is worthy to open the scroll **after** breaking its seals?

(2) If your language uses verb tense or aspect to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using that.

> **⁸ Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets... ¹⁰ But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout."** (Joshua 6:8-10 ULT)

>> ⁸ Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets... ¹⁰ But Joshua **had commanded** the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout.

(3) If your language prefers to tell events in the order that they occur, consider reordering the events. This may require putting two or more verses together (like 5-6).

> **⁸ Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets... ¹⁰ But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout."** (Joshua 6:8-10 ULT)

>> ⁸⁻¹⁰ Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout." Then just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets...

> **Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals?** (Revelation 5:2 ULT)

>> Who is worthy to break the seals and open the scroll?

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_events.

---

Next we recommend you learn about:

*Background Information*
*[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/grammar-connect-words-phrases]]*
*Introduction of a New Event*
*[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-versebridge]]*

---

(**Go back to:** John 11:56)

# Ordinal Numbers

## Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

> This page answers the question: *What are ordinal numbers and how can I translate them?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Numbers*

> He gave to the church **first** apostles, **second** prophets, **third** teachers, then those who do powerful deeds (1 Corinthians 12:28 ULT)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

### Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have "-th" added to the end.

| Numeral | Number | Ordinal Number |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 4 | four | fourth |
| 10 | ten | tenth |
| 100 | one hundred | one hundredth |
| 1,000 | one thousand | one thousandth |

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

| Numeral | Number | Ordinal Number |
| --- | --- | --- |
| 1 | one | first |
| 2 | two | second |
| 3 | three | third |
| 5 | five | fifth |
| 12 | twelve | twelfth |

**Reason this is a translation issue:**

Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

## Examples from the Bible

> The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim, … the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

The people cast lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

> You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The **first** row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The **second** row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The **third** row

> must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The **fourth** row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULT)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

## Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

1. Use "one" with the first item and "another" or "the next" with the rest.
2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell the total number of items, and use "one" with the first item and "another" or "the next" with the rest.

> **The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim,...the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

>> There were **twenty-four** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **another** to Jedaiah, **another** to Harim,...**another** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah. There were **twenty-four** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **the next** to Jedaiah, **the next** to Harim,...**the next** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.

> **A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became** four

rivers. The name of the first is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of the second river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of the third river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The fourth river is the Euphrates. (Genesis 2:10-14 ULT)

> A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **one** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the next** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the next** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The **last** river is the Euphrates.

(2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

> **The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim,...the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

>> They cast **twenty-four** lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim,...Delaiah, and Maaziah.

> Next we recommend you learn about:
>
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction]]*

(**Go back to:** John 21:14; 21:17)

# Parables

A parable is a short story that teaches something(s) that is true, and teaches in such a way that is easy to understand and hard to forget.

## Description

A parable is a short story that is told to teach something(s) that is

This page answers the question: *What is a parable?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

true. Though the events in a parable could happen, they did not actually happen. They are told only to teach the lesson(s) that the listener is meant to learn. Parables rarely contain the names of specific people. (This may help you identify what is a parable and what is an account of a real event.) Parables often have figures of speech such as simile and metaphor.

> Then he also told them a parable. "Can a blind person guide another blind person? If he did, they would both fall into a pit, would they not?" (Luke 6:39 ULT)

This parable teaches that if a person does not have spiritual understanding, he cannot help someone else to understand spiritual things.

## Examples from the Bible

> Neither do people light a lamp and put it under a basket, but rather, on the lampstand, and it shines for everyone in the house. Let your light shine before people in such a way that they see your good deeds and praise your Father who is in heaven. (Matthew 5:15-16 ULT)

This parable teaches us not to hide the way we live for God from other people.

> Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, "The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches." (Matthew 13:31-32 ULT)

This parable teaches that the kingdom of God may seem small at first, but it will grow and spread throughout the world.

## Translation Strategies

1. If a parable is hard to understand because it has unknown objects in it, you can replace the unknown objects with objects that people in your culture know. However, be careful to keep the teaching the same. (See Translate Unknowns.)
2. If the teaching of the parable is unclear, consider telling a little about what it teaches in the introduction, such as "Jesus told this story about being generous."

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If a parable is hard to understand because it has unknown objects in it, you can replace the unknown objects with objects that people in your culture know. However, be careful to keep the teaching the same.

> **Jesus said to them, "Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under the bed? You bring it in and you put it on a** lampstand

". (Mark 4:21 ULT) - If people do not know what a lampstand is, you could substitute something else that people put a light on so it can give light to the house.

> Jesus said to them, "Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under the bed? You bring it in and you put it on ***a high shelf***.

**Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, "The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and** sowed

in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches." (Matthew 13:31-32 ULT) - To sow seeds means to toss them so that they scatter on the ground. If people are not familiar with sowing, you can substitute planting.

> Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, "The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and ***planted*** in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches."

(2) If the teaching of the parable is unclear, consider telling a little about what it teaches in the introduction, such as "Jesus told this story about being generous."

> Jesus said to them

, "Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under the bed? You bring it in and you put it on a lampstand". (Mark 4:21 ULT)

> ***Jesus told them a parable about why they should witness openly.*** "Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under the bed? You bring it in and you put it on a lampstand." (Mark 4:21 ULT)

Then Jesus presented another parable to them.

He said, "The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches." (Matthew 13:31-32 ULT)

> ***Then Jesus presented another parable to them about how the Kingdom of God grows***. He said, "The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches."

(**Go back to:** John 10:1)

# Parallelism

## Description

In **parallelism** two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first. This is also called synonymous parallelism.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

Synonymous parallelism (the kind in which the two phrases mean the same thing) in the poetry of the original languages has several effects:

• It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
• It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
• It makes the language more beautiful and above the ordinary way of speaking.

**Reason this is a translation issue**

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it is confusing, rather than beautiful.

Note: We use the term "synonymous parallelism" for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term Doublet for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

## Examples from the Bible

**(1) The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.**

> Your word is a lamp to my feet
> and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULT)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live.

> You make him to rule over the works of your hands;
> you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

**(2) The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.**

> The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere,
> keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULT)

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

**(3) The second completes what is said in the first.**

> I lift up my voice to Yahweh,
> and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULT)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

**(4) The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.**

> For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous,
> but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULT)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

> A gentle answer turns away wrath,
> but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULT)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

## Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

1. Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
2. If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as "truly" or "certainly."
3. If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like "very," "completely" or "all."

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

> **Until now you have deceived me and told me lies.** (Judges 16:13, ULT) - Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.
>
> > "Until now you have deceived me with your lies."

> **Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULT) - The phrase "all the paths he takes" is a metaphor for "all he does."
>
> > "Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does."

> **For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel.** (Micah 6:2 ULT) - This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:
>
> > "For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel."

(2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as "truly" or "certainly."

> **Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)
>
> > "Yahweh truly sees everything a person does."

(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like "very," "completely" or "all."

> **you have deceived me and told me lies.** (Judges 16:13 ULT)
>
> > "All you have done is lie to me."
>
> **Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)
>
> > "Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does."

---

Next we recommend you learn about:

*Personification*

---

(**Go back to:** John 3:17)

# Personification

## Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

> Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

Or sin:

> sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULT)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things, such as wealth, as if they were relationships between people.

> You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULT)

In each case, the purpose of the personification is to highlight a certain characteristic of the non-human thing. As in metaphor, the reader needs to think of the way that the thing is like a certain kind of person.

## Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

## Examples from the Bible

> You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULT)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

> Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

## Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

1. Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.
2. In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.

> **...**sin crouches

at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULT) - God speaks of sin as if it were a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

> ...**sin** is at your door, ***waiting to attack you***

(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.

> **...sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULT) - This can be translated with the word "as."
>
> > ...sin is crouching at the door, ***just as a wild animal does waiting to attack a person*** .

(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

> **...even the** winds and the sea obey him

(Matthew 8:27 ULT) - The men speak of the "wind and the sea" as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus, just as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

> He even ***controls the winds and the sea***.

**NOTE**: We have broadened our definition of "personification" to include "zoomorphism" (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and "anthropomorphism" (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics) because the translation strategies for them are the same.

---

Next we recommend you learn about:

*[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-apostrophe]]*
*[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]*

---

(**Go back to:** John 3:8; 5:36; 7:42; 7:51; 8:32; 10:25)

# Reflexive Pronouns

## Description

All languages have ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. English does this by using **reflexive pronouns**. These are pronouns that refer to someone or something that has already been mentioned in a sentence. In English the reflexive pronouns are: "myself", "yourself", "himself", "herself", "itself", "ourselves", "yourselves", and "themselves". Other languages may have other ways to show this.

> This page answers the question: *What are reflexive pronouns?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns]]
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

## Reason this is a translation issue

- Languages have different ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. For those languages, translators will need to know how to translate the English reflexive pronouns.
- The reflexive pronouns in English also have other functions.

## Uses of Reflexive Pronouns

- To show that the same person or things fills two different roles in a sentence
- To emphasize a person or thing in the sentence
- To show that someone did something alone
- To show that someone or something was alone

## Examples from the Bible

Reflexive pronouns are used to show the same person or thing fills two different roles in a sentence.

> If **I** should testify about **myself** alone, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31 ULT)

> Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and **many** went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to purify **themselves**. (John 11:55 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to emphasize a person or thing in the sentence.

> **Jesus himself** was not baptizing, but his disciples were (John 4:2 ULT)

> So they left the crowd, taking Jesus with them, since he was already in the boat. Other boats were also with him. And a violent windstorm arose and the waves were breaking into the boat so that the boat was already full. But **Jesus himself** was in the stern, asleep on a cushion. (Mark 4:36-38 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone did something alone.

> When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain **by himself**. (John 6:15 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone or something was alone.

> He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. **It** was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up in its place **by itself**. (John 20:6-7 ULT)

## Translation Strategies

If a reflexive pronoun would have the same function in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.
2. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.
3. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it.
4. In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like "alone".
5. In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.

> **If I should testify about** myself

alone, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31)

> "If I should **self-testify** alone, my testimony would not be true."

**Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to** purify themselves

. (John 11:55)

> "Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to **self-purify**."

(2) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.

> He himself

took our sickness and bore our diseases. (Matthew 8:17 ULT)

> "**It was he who** took our sickness and bore our diseases."

Jesus himself

was not baptizing, but his disciples were. (John 4:2)

> "**It was not Jesus who** was baptizing, but his disciples were."

(3) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it. English adds the reflexive pronoun.

> **Now Jesus said this to test Philip, for he** himself

knew what he was going to do. (John 6:6)

(4) In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like "alone".

> **When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain** by himself

. (John 6:15)

> "When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again ***alone*** up the mountain."

(5) In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

> **He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up in its place** by itself

. (John 20:6-7 ULT)

> "He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up and lying ***in it's own place***."

(**Go back to:** John 3:28; 4:2; 4:44; 5:37; 6:6; 7:4; 10:18; 13:32)

# Rhetorical Question

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

This page answers the question: *What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes]]

## Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all. Or, if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

> Those who stood by said, "**Is this how you insult God's high priest?**" (Acts 23:4 ULT)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking about his way of insulting God's high priest. Rather they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. These rhetorical questions might be used for the purpose of expressing attitudes or feelings, rebuking people, teaching something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, or introducing something they want to talk about.

### Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are different or more limited than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

## Examples from the Bible

> Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULT)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

> **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

> Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULT)

Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

> And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

> Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

> Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULT)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

> **What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?** It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden...(Luke 13:18-19 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was about to compare the kingdom of God to something. In this case, he compared the kingdom of God to a mustard seed.

## Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, did the person who asked it expect to receive an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you understand the purpose for the rhetorical question. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
4. Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the orignal speaker communicated in his.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the answer after the question.

> Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?

Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

> Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? **Of course not!** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

**Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone?** (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

> Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? ***None of you would do that!***

(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

> What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?

It is like a mustard seed… (Luke 13:18-19 ULT)

> ***This is what the kingdom of God is like.*** It is like a mustard seed…"

Is this how you insult God's high priest?

(Acts 23:4 ULT)

> ***You should not insult God's high priest!***

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?

(Job 3:11 ULT)

> ***I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!***

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?

(Luke 1:43 ULT)

> ***How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!***

(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

> Do you not still rule

the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULT)

> You still rule the kingdom of Israel, ***do you not?***

(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the orignal speaker communicated in his.

> **Or** what man among you is there who

, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

> If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, ***would you give him a stone***?

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils

? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

> ***What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils***? Yet my poeple have forgotten me for days without number

# Simile

A simile is an explicit comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be "like" the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words "like," "as", or "than".

## Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words "like," "as", or "than".

> When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were **like sheep without a shepherd**. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

> See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, so be as wise **as serpents** and harmless **as doves**. (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus' enemies would attack his disciples.

> For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12 ULT)

God's word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person's flesh. God's word is very effective in showing what is in a person's heart and thoughts.

**Purposes of Simile**

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people's attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

**Reasons this is a translation issue**

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.

## Examples from the Bible

> Suffer hardship with me, **as a good soldier of Christ Jesus**. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULT)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

> for **as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky**, so will the Son of Man be in his day. (Luke 17:24 ULT)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

> **See, I send you out** as sheep in the midst of wolves

(Matthew 10:16 ULT) - This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.

> See, I send **you out among wicked people** and you will be in danger from them **as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves**.

**For the word of God is living and active and sharper** than any two-edged sword

. (Hebrews 4:12 ULT)

> For the word of God is living and active and **more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword**

(2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.

> **See, I send you out** as sheep in the midst of wolves

, (Matthew 10:16 ULT) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

> See, I send you out **as chickens in the midst of wild dogs**,

**How often did I long to gather your children together, just** as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings

, but you did not agree! (Matthew 23:37 ULT)

> How often I wanted to gather your children together, **as a mother closely watches over her infants**, but you refused!

**If you have faith even as small** as a grain of mustard

, (Matthew 17:20)

> If you have faith even as small **as a tiny seed**,

(3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

> **See, I send you out** as sheep in the midst of wolves

, (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

> See, I send you out among ***people who will want to harm you***.

**How often did I long to gather your children together, just** as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings

, but you did not agree! (Matthew 23:37 ULT)

> How often I wanted to ***protect you***, but you refused!

Next we recommend you learn about:

*Metaphor*
*[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]*

(**Go back to:** John 1:32; 3:14; Notes)

# Symbolic Action

## Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their head up and down to mean "Yes" or turn their head from side to side to mean "No". Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

> This page answers the question: *What is a symbolic action and how do I translate it?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Translate Unknowns*

**Examples of symbolic actions**

> • In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
> • In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

**Reason this is a translation issue**

An action may have a meaning in one culture, and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means "I am surprised" or "What did you say?" In others cultures it means "Yes".

In the Bible people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture.

You (the translator) need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in your own culture, then you need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

## Examples from the Bible

> Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

> Look, I stand at the door and **knock**. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come in to his home, and have a meal with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

## Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

1. Tell what the person did and why he did it.
2. Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.
3. Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.

> **Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41 ULT)

>> Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.

> **Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

>> Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.

(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

> **Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41)

>> Jairus showed Jesus great respect.

> **Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20)

>> Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

> **Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41 ULT) - Since Jairus actually did this, you should not substitute an action from your own culture.

> **Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20 ULT) - Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.

>> Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

(**Go back to:** John 13 General Notes; Notes)

# Synecdoche

## Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

> ***My soul*** exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULT)

Mary was was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said "my soul," which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

> ***the Pharisees*** said to him, "Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful...?" (Mark 2:24 ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

**Reasons this is a translation issue**

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

## Example from the Bible

> I looked on all the deeds that ***my hands*** had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULT)

"My hands" is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person's accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

## Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

> ***"**My soul

exalts the Lord." (Luke 1:46 ULT)

> "***I*** exalt the Lord."

**...**the Pharisees

said to him (Mark 2:24 ULT)

> ...***a representative of the Pharisees*** said to him...

**...I looked on all the deeds that** my hands

had accomplished… (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULT)

> I looked on all the deeds that *I* had accomplished

Next we recommend you learn about:

*Metonymy*
*[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part2]]*

# Textual Variants

## Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However, people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, or some mistook a word for another that looked like it. Occasionally they added words or

> This page answers the question: *Why does the ULT have missing or added verses, and should I translate them?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-source-text]]*
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-manuscripts]]*

even whole sentences, either by accident, or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles have some of these sentences that were added. In the ULT, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULT based the ULT on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. Because people who use the ULT may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULT translators have sometimes included information about some of the differences between them, either in the ULT footnotes in the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULT and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULT. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

## Examples from the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULT has a footnote about verse 11.

> [10] See that you do not despise any of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. [11] [1]
>
> [1] Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11. *For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.*

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest manuscripts. It has been included in the ULT, but it is marked off with square brackets ([ ]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

> [53] [Then every man went to his own house…. [11] She said, "No one, Lord." Jesus said, "Neither do I condemn you. Go your way; from now on sin no more."] [2]
>
> [2] The best earliest manuscripts do not have John 7:53-8:11

## Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULT or another version that you have access to.

1. Translate the verses that the ULT does and include the footnote that the ULT provides.
2. Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:14-16 ULT, which has a footnote about verse 16.

**14 He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. 15 There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him."** 16[1]

**[1] The best ancient copies omit v. 16.** *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear*.

(1) Translate the verses that the ULT does and include the footnote that the ULT provides.

14 He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. 15 There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him." 16[1]

[1] The best ancient copies omit verse 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear*.

(2) Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

14 He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. 15 There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him. 16 If any man has ears to hear, let him hear." [1]

[1] Some ancient copies do not have verse 16.

---

Next we recommend you learn about:

*[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-chapverse]]*
*[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-manuscripts]]*
*[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-terms]]*
*[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-original]]*

---

(**Go back to:** Introduction to the Gospel of John; John 1:34; 7:53)

# Translate Unknowns

While working to translate the Bible, you (the translator) might find yourself asking: "How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?"

This page answers the question: *How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

## Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The unfoldingWord® Translation Words pages and the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

> We have here only five loaves of **bread** and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread and do not know what it is.

### Reason this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

### Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God's commands and historical facts accurately.

## Examples from the Bible

> I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11 ULT)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

> Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous **wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

> Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **myrrh**. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

> to him who made **great lights** (Psalm 136:7 ULT)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

> your sins…will be white like **snow** (Isaiah 1:18 ULT)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

## Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

1. Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.
5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

> **Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly**
> ravenous wolves

. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

> Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but **are truly hungry and dangerous animals**.

"Ravenous wolves" is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See Translating Metaphors.)

> **We have here only five** loaves of bread

and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

> We have here only five **loaves of baked grain seeds** and two fish

(2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

> **your sins…will be white like** snow

(Isaiah 1:18 ULT) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.

> your sins…will be white like **milk** your sins…will be white like **the moon**

(3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

> **Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with** myrrh

. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT) - People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word "medicine."

> Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **a medicine called myrrh**. But he refused to drink it.

**We have here only five loaves of** bread

and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT) - People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).

> We have here only five loaves of ***baked crushed seed bread*** and two fish

(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

> **I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for** jackals

(Jeremiah 9:11 ULT)

> I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for ***wild dogs***

**We have here only five** loaves of bread

and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

> We have here only five ***loaves of baked food*** and two fish

(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

> **to him who made** great lights

(Psalm 136:7 ULT)

> to him who made ***the sun and the moon***

---

Next we recommend you learn about:

*[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate]]*
*How to Translate Names*

---

(**Go back to:** John 12:3)

# Translating Son and Father

Door43 supports Bible translations that represent these concepts when they refer to God.

## Biblical Witness

### "Father" and "Son" are names that God calls himself in the Bible.

The Bible shows that God called Jesus his Son:

> After he was baptized, Jesus came up immediately from the water, and…a voice came out of the heavens saying, "**This is my beloved Son**. I am very pleased with him." (Matthew 3:16-17 ULT)

The Bible shows that Jesus called God his Father:

> Jesus said, "I praise you **Father**, Lord of heaven and earth,…no one knows the **Son** except the **Father**, and no one knows the **Father** except the **Son** " (Matthew 11:25-27 ULT) (See also: John 6:26-57)

Christians have found that "Father" and "Son" are the ideas that most essentially describe the eternal relationship of the First and Second Persons of the Trinity to each other. The Bible indeed refers to them in various ways, but no other terms reflect the eternal love and intimacy between these Persons, nor the interdependent eternal relationship between them.

Jesus referred to God in the following terms:

> Baptize them into **the name of the Father, of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit**. (Matthew 28:19 ULT)

The intimate, loving relationship between the Father and the Son is eternal, just as they are eternal.

> The Father **loves** the Son. (John 3:35-36; 5:19-20 ULT)

> I **love** the Father, I do what the Father commands me, just as he gave me the commandment. (John 14:31 ULT)

> **…no one knows who the Son is except the Father, and no one knows who the Father is except the Son**. (Luke 10:22 ULT)

The terms "Father" and "Son" also communicate that the Father and the Son are of the same essence; they are both eternal God.

> Jesus said, "Father, glorify your Son so that the Son may glorify you…I glorified you on the earth,…Now Father, glorify me…with the glory that **I had with you before the world was created**." (John 17:1-5 ULT)

> But in these last days, he [God the Father] has spoken to us through a Son, whom he appointed to be the heir of all things. It is through him that God also made the universe. He is the brightness of God's glory, **the very character of his essence**. He even holds everything together by the word of his power. (Hebrews 1:2-3 ULT)

> Jesus said to him, "I have been with you for so long and you still do not know me, Philip? **Whoever has seen me has seen the Father**. How can you say, 'Show us the Father'? (John 14:9 ULT)

## Human Relationships

**Human fathers and sons are not perfect, but the Bible still uses those terms for the** Father

and Son, who are perfect.

Just as today, human father-son relationships during Bible times were never as loving or perfect as the relationship between Jesus and his Father. But this does not mean that the translator should avoid the concepts of father and son. The Scriptures use these terms to refer to God, the perfect Father and Son, as well as to sinful human fathers and sons. In referring to God as Father and Son, choose words in your language that are widely used to refer to a human "father" and "son." In this way you will communicate that God the Father and God the Son are of the same divine essence (they are both God), just as a human father and son are of the same human essence (they are both human and share the same human characteristics).

## Translation Strategies

1. Think through all the possibilities within your language to translate the words "son" and "father." Determine which words in your language best represent the divine "Son" and "Father."
2. If your language has more than one word for "son," use the word that has the closest meaning to "only son" (or "first son" if necessary).
3. If your language has more than one word for "father," use the word that has the closest meaning to "birth father," rather than "adoptive father."

(See *God the Father* and *Son of God* pages in unfoldingWord® Translation Words for help translating "Father" and "Son.")

# When Masculine Words Include Women

In the Bible, sometimes the words "men", "brothers" and "sons" refer only to men. At other times, those words include both men and women. In those places where the writer meant both men and women, you (the translator) need to translate it in a way that does not limit the meaning to men.

> This page answers the question: *How do I translate "brother" or "he" when it could refer to anyone, male or female?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns]]*
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-genericnoun]]*

## Description

In some languages a word that normally refers to men can also be used in a more general way to refer to both men and women. For example, the Bible sometimes says '**brothers**' when it refers to both brothers and sisters.

Also in some languages, the masculine pronouns "he" and "him" can be used in a more general way for any person if it is not important whether the person is a man or a woman. In the example below, the pronoun is "his", but it is not limited to males.

> A wise child makes **his** father rejoice
> but a foolish child brings grief to **his** mother. (Proverbs 10:1 ULT)

**Reason this is a translation issue**

- In some cultures words like "man," "brother," and "son" can only be used to refer to men. If those words are used in a translation in a more general way, people will think that what is being said does not apply to women.
- In some cultures, the masculine pronouns "he" and "him" can only refer to men. If a masculine pronoun is used, people will think that what is said does not apply to women.

**Translation Principles**

When a statement applies to both men and women, translate it in such a way that people will be able to understand that it applies to both.

## Examples from the Bible

> We want you to know, **brothers**, about the grace of God that has been given to the churches of Macedonia. (2 Corinthians 8:1 ULT)

This verse is addressing the believers in Corinth, not only men, but **men and women**.

> Then said Jesus to his disciples, "If anyone wants to follow me, **he** must deny **himself**, take up **his** cross, and follow me." (Matthew 16:24-26 ULT)

Jesus was not speaking only of men, but of **men and women**.

**Caution**: Sometimes masculine words are used specifically to refer to men. Do not use words that would lead people to think that they include women. The underlined words below are specifically about men.

> Moses said, 'If a **man** dies, having no children, **his brother** must marry **his** wife and have a child for **his brother**.' (Mark 22:24 ULT)

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand that that masculine words like "man," "brother," and "he" can include women, then consider using them. Otherwise, here are some ways for translating those words when they include women.

> 1. Use a noun that can be used for both men and women.
> 2. Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.
> 3. Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use nouns that can be used for both men and women.

> **The wise** man

dies just like the fool dies. (Ecclesiastes 2:16 ULT)

> "The wise **person** dies just like the fool dies."
> "Wise **people** die just like fools die."

(2) Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.

> **For we do not want you to be ignorant,** brothers

, about the troubles we had in Asia. (2 Corinthians 1:8) - Paul was writing this letter to both men and women.

> "For we do not want you to be ignorant, **brothers and sisters**, about the troubles we had in Asia." (2 Corinthians 1:8)

(3) Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

> **If anyone wants to follow me, he must deny himself, take up his cross, and follow me."**
> (Matthew 16:24 ULT) - English speakers can change the masculine singular pronouns, "he," "himself," and "his" to plural pronouns that do not mark gender, "they," "themselves," and "their" in order to show that it applies to all people, not just men.
>
> > "If **people** want to follow me, **they** must deny **themselves**, take up **their** cross, and follow me."

(**Go back to:** John 2:25)

# unfoldingWord® Translation Words

## Version 14

# Abraham, Abram

## Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to "Abraham."

- The name "Abram" means "exalted father."
- "Abraham" means "father of many."
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Chaldea, Sarah, Isaac)

## Bible References:

- Galatians 03:08
- Genesis 11:29-30
- Genesis 21:04
- Genesis 22:02
- James 02:23
- Matthew 01:02

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:06** When **Abram** arrived in Canaan, God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **05:04** Then God changed **Abram**'s name to **Abraham**, which means "father of many."
- **05:05** About a year later, when **Abraham** was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's son.
- **05:06** When Isaac was a young man, God tested **Abraham's** faith by saying, "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."
- **06:01** When **Abraham** was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, **Abraham** sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **06:04** After a long time, **Abraham** died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- **21:02** God promised **Abraham** that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H87, H85, G11

(**Go back to:** John 8:33; 8:37; 8:39; 8:40; 8:52; 8:53; 8:56; 8:57; 8:58)

# accuse, accused, accuser, accusation

### Definition:

The terms "accuse" and "accusation" refer to blaming someone for doing something wrong. A person who accuses others is an "accuser."

- A false accusation is when a charge against someone is not true, as when Jesus was falsely accused of wrongdoing by the leaders of the Jews.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Satan is called "the accuser."

### Bible References:

- Acts 19:40
- Hosea 04:04
- Jeremiah 02:9-11
- Luke 06:6-8
- Romans 08:33

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3198, H6818, G1458, G2147, G2596, G2724

(**Go back to:** John 5:45; 18:29)

# adoption, adopt, adopted

### Definition:

The terms "adopt" and "adoption" refer to the process of someone legally becoming the child of people who are not his biological parents.

- The Bible uses "adoption" and "adopt" in a figurative way to describe how God causes people to be part of his family, making them his spiritual sons and daughters.
- As adopted children, God makes believers to be co-heirs with Jesus Christ, giving them all of the privileges of sons and daughters of God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with a term that the language of translation uses to describe this special parent-child relationship. Make sure it is understood that this has a figurative or spiritual meaning.
- The phrase "experience adoption as sons" could be translated as "be adopted by God as his children" or "become God's (spiritual) children."
- To "wait for the adoption of sons" could be translated as "look forward to becoming God's children" or "wait expectantly for God to receive as children."
- The phrase "adopt them" could be translated as "receive them as his own children" or "make them his own (spiritual) children."

(See also: heir, inherit, spirit)

### Bible References:

- Ephesians 01:5
- Galatians 04:3-5
- Romans 08:14-15
- Romans 08:23
- Romans 09:04

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G5206

(**Go back to:** John 1 General Notes)

# adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress

### Definition:

The term "adultery" refers to a sin that occurs when a married person has sexual relations with someone who is not that person's spouse. Both of them are guilty of adultery. The term "adulterous" describes this kind of behavior or any person who commits this sin.

- The term "adulterer" refers generally to any person who commits adultery.
- Sometimes the term "adulteress" is used to specify that it was a woman who committed adultery.
- Adultery breaks the promises that a husband and wife made to each other in their covenant of marriage.
- God commanded the Israelites to not commit adultery.

### Translation Suggestions:

- If the target language does not have one word that means "adultery," this term could be translated with a phrase such as "having sexual relations with someone else's wife" or "being intimate with another person's spouse."
- Some languages may have an indirect way of talking about adultery, such as "sleeping with someone else's spouse" or "being unfaithful to one's wife." (See: euphemism)

(See also: commit, covenant, sexual immorality, sleep with, faithful)

### Bible References:

- Exodus 20:14
- Hosea 04:1-2
- Luke 16:18
- Matthew 05:28
- Matthew 12:39
- Revelation 02:22

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:06** "Do not commit **adultery**."
- **28:02** Do not commit **adultery**.
- **34:07** "The religious leader prayed like this, 'Thank you, God, that I am not a sinner like other men-such as robbers, unjust men, **adulterers**, or even like that tax collector.'"

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5003, H5004, G3428, G3429, G3430, G3431, G3432

(**Go back to:** John 8 General Notes)

# advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels

## Definition:

The terms "counsel" and "advice" have the same meaning and refer to helping someone decide wisely about what to do in a certain situation. A wise "counselor" or "advisor" is someone who gives advice or counsel that will help a person make right choices.

- Kings often have official advisors or counselors to help them decide important matters that affect the people they are ruling.
- Sometimes the advice or counsel that is given is not good. Evil advisors may urge a king to take action or make a decree that will harm him or his people.
- Depending on the context, "advice" or "counsel" could also be translated as "help in deciding" or "warnings" or "exhortations" or "guidance."
- The action, to "counsel" could be translated as to "advise" or to "make suggestions" or to "exhort."
- Note that "counsel" is a different word than "council," which refers to a group of people.

(See also: exhort, Holy Spirit, wise)

## Bible References:

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1697, H1847, H1875, H1884, H1907, H3272, H3289, H3982, H4156, H4431, H5475, H5779, H6440, H6963, H6098, H7592, H8458, G1011, G1012, G1106, G4823, G4825

(**Go back to:** John 11:53; 12:10; 18:14)

# age, aged

## Definition:

The term "age" refers to the number of years a person has lived. It also used to refer generally to a time period.

- Other words used to express an extended period of time include "era" and "season."
- Jesus refers to "this age" as the present time when evil, sin, and disobedience fill the earth.
- There will be a future age when righteousness will reign over a new heaven and a new earth.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "age" could also be translated as "era" or "number of years old" or "time period" or "time."
- The phrase "at a very old age" could be translated as "at many years old" or "when he was very old" or "when he had lived a very long time."
- The phrase "this present evil age" means "during this time right now when people are very evil."

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:28
- 1 Corinthians 02:07
- Hebrews 06:05
- Job 05:26

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G165, G1074

(**Go back to:** John 4:14; 6:51; 6:58; 8:35; 8:51; 8:52; 9:32; 10:28; 11:26; 12:34; 13:8; 14:16)

# amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, dumbfounded

## Definition:

All these terms refer to being very surprised because of something extraordinary that happened.

- Some of these words are translations of Greek expressions that mean "struck with amazement" or "standing outside of (oneself)." These expressions show how very surprised or shocked the person was feeling. Other languages might also have ways to express this.
- Usually the event that caused the wonder and amazement was a miracle, something only God could do.
- The meaning of these terms can also include feelings of confusion because what happened was totally unexpected.
- Other ways to translate these words could be "extremely surprised" or "very shocked."
- Related words include "marvelous" (amazing, wonderful), "amazement," and "astonishment."
- In general, these terms are positive and express that the people were happy about what had happened.

(See also: miracle, sign)

## Bible References:

- Acts 08:9-11
- Acts 09:20-22
- Galatians 01:06
- Mark 02:10-12
- Matthew 07:28
- Matthew 15:29-31
- Matthew 19:25

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H926, H2865, H3820, H4159, H6313, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H8074, H8429, H8539, H8540, H8541, G639, G1568, G1569, G1605, G1611, G1839, G2284, G2285, G2296, G2297, G2298, G4023, G4592, G5059

(**Go back to:** John 3:7; 4:27; 4:48; 5:20; 5:28; 7:15; 7:21; 9:30)

# amen, truly

### Definition:

The term "amen" is a word used to emphasize or call attention to what a person has said. It is often used at the end of a prayer. Sometimes it is translated as "truly."

- When used at the end of a prayer, "amen" communicates agreement with the prayer or expresses a desire that the prayer be fulfilled.
- In his teaching, Jesus used "amen" to emphasize the truth of what he said. He often followed that by "and I say to you" to introduce another teaching that related to the previous teaching.
- When Jesus uses "amen" this way, some English versions (and the ULT) translate this as "verily" or "truly."
- Another word meaning "truly" is sometimes translated as "surely" or "certainly" and is also used to emphasize what the speaker is saying.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Consider whether the target language has a special word or phrase that is used to emphasize something that has been said.
- When used at the end of a prayer or to confirm something, "amen" could be translated as "let it be so" or "may this happen" or "that is true."
- When Jesus says, "truly I tell you," this could also be translated as "Yes, I tell you sincerely" or "That is true, and I also tell you."
- The phrase "truly, truly I tell you" could be translated as "I tell you this very sincerely" or "I tell you this very earnestly" or "what I am telling you is true."

(See also: fulfill, true)

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 27:15
- John 05:19
- Jude 01:24-25
- Matthew 26:33-35
- Philemon 01:23-25
- Revelation 22:20-21

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H543, G281

(**Go back to:** John 1:51; 3:3; 3:5; 3:11; 5:19; 5:24; 5:25; 6:26; 6:32; 6:47; 6:53; 8:34; 8:51; 8:58; 10:1; 10:7; 12:24; 13:16; 13:20; 13:21; 13:38; 14:12; 16:20; 16:23; 21:18)

# ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

### Definition:

The term "father" refers to a person's male parent.

- The terms "father" and "forefather" are often used to refer to a male ancestor(s) of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated a "ancestor" or "ancestral father."
- The expression "the father of" can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 "the father of all who live in tents" could mean, "the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents."
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the "father" of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

### Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- "God the Father" should also be translated using the usual, common word for "father."
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as "ancestors" or "ancestral fathers."
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as "spiritual father" or "father in Christ."
- Sometimes the word "father" can be translated as "clan leader," depending on the context.
- The phrase "father of all lies" could be translated as "source of all lies" or "the one from whom all lies come."

(See also: God the Father, son, Son of God)

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:02
- Acts 07:32
- Acts 07:45
- Acts 22:03
- Genesis 31:30
- Genesis 31:42
- Genesis 31:53
- Hebrews 07:4-6
- John 04:12
- Joshua 24:3-4
- Malachi 03:07
- Mark 10:7-9
- Matthew 01:07
- Matthew 03:09
- Matthew 10:21
- Matthew 18:14
- Romans 04:12

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H2, H25, H369, H539, H1121, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G540, G1080, G3737, G3962, G3964, G3966, G3967, G3970, G3971, G3995, G4245, G4269, G4613

(**Go back to:** John 4:12; 4:20; 4:53; 6:31; 6:42; 6:49; 6:58; 7:22; 8:19; 8:39; 8:41; 8:44; 8:53; 8:56)

# Andrew

## Facts:

Andrew was one of twelve men whom Jesus chose to be his closest disciples (later called apostles).

- Andrew's brother was Simon Peter. Both of them were fishermen.
- Peter and Andrew were fishing in the Sea of Galilee when Jesus called them to be his disciples.
- Before Peter and Andrew met Jesus, they had been disciples of John the Baptizer.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: apostle, disciple, the twelve)

## Bible References:

- Acts 01:12-14
- John 01:40
- Mark 01:17
- Mark 01:29-31
- Mark 03:17-19
- Matthew 04:19
- Matthew 10:2-4

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G406

(**Go back to:** John 1:40; 1:44; 6:8; 12:22)

# angel, archangel

## Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term "archangel" refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word "angel" literally means "messenger."
- The term "archangel" literally means "chief messenger." The only angel referred to in the Bible as an "archangel" is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God's authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God are by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, "angel of Yahweh," has more than one possible meaning: 1) It may mean "angel who represents Yahweh" or "messenger who serves Yahweh." 2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel's use of "I" as if Yahweh himself was talking.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "angel" could include "messenger from God" or "God's heavenly servant" or "God's spirit messenger."
- The term "archangel" could be translated as "chief angel" or "head ruling angel" or "leader of the angels."
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
- The phrase "angel of Yahweh" should be translated using the words for "angel" and "Yahweh." This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include "angel from Yahweh" or "angel sent by Yahweh" or "Yahweh, who looked like an angel."

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: chief, head, messenger, Michael, ruler, servant)

## Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 24:16
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 12:23
- Colossians 02:18-19
- Genesis 48:16
- Luke 02:13
- Mark 08:38
- Matthew 13:50
- Revelation 01:20
- Zechariah 01:09

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:12** God placed large, powerful **angels** at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.
- **22:03** The **angel** responded to Zechariah,"I was sent by God to bring you this good news."

- **23:06** Suddenly, a shining **angel** appeared to them (the shepherds), and they were terrified. The **angel** said, "Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you."
- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with **angels** praising Godâ€¦
- **25:08** Then **angels** came and took care of Jesus.
- **38:12** Jesus was very troubled and his sweat was like drops of blood. God sent an **angel** to strengthen him.
- **38:15** "I could ask the Father for an army of **angels** to defend me."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H430, H4397, H4398, H8136, G32, G743, G2465

(**Go back to:** John 1:51; 12:29; 20:12)

# Annas

### Facts:

Annas was the Jewish high priest in Jerusalem for 10 years, from approximately AD 6 to AD 15. Then he was removed from the high priesthood by the Roman government, although he continued to be an influential leader among the Jews.

- Annas was father-in-law to Caiaphas, the official high priest during the ministry of Jesus.
- When Jesus was being arrested, Annas's son-in-law Caiaphas was the official high priest. Annas is also mentioned as a high priest, however, because he was a former high priest who still had power and authority over the people.
- During his trial before the Jewish leaders, Jesus was first brought to Annas for questioning.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: high priest, priest)

### Bible References:

- Acts 04:5-7
- John 18:22-24
- Luke 03:02

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G452

(**Go back to:** John 18:13; 18:24)

# anoint, anointed, anointing

## Definition:

The term "anoint" means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell. In biblical times, there were several reasons for anointing someone with oil.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God.
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship. One time Jesus commented that in doing this she was preparing him for his future burial.
- After Jesus died, his friends prepared his body for burial by anointing it with oils and spices.
- The titles "Messiah" (Hebrew) and "Christ" (Greek) mean "the Anointed (One)."
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.
- In biblical times, a woman might anoint herself with perfume to make herself more sexually attractive.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "anoint" could be translated as "pour oil on" or "put oil on" or "consecrate by pouring perfumed oil on."
- To "be anointed" could be translated as "be consecrated with oil." or "be appointed" or "be consecrated."
- In some contexts the term "anoint" could be translated as "appoint."
- A phrase like "the anointed priest," could be translated as "the priest who was consecrated with oil" or "the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil."

(See also: Christ, consecrate, high priest, King of the Jews, priest, prophet )

## Bible References:

- 1 John 02:20
- 1 John 02:27
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- Acts 04:27-28
- Amos 06:5-6
- Exodus 29:5-7
- James 05:13-15

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H430, H1101, H1878, H3323, H4397, H4398, H4473, H4886, H4888, H4899, H5480, H8136, G32, G218, G743, G1472, G2025, G3462, G5545, G5548

(**Go back to:** John 9:11; 11:2; 12:3)

# appoint, appointed

### Definition:

The terms "appoint" and "appointed" refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To "be appointed" can also refer to being "chosen" to receive something, as in "appointed to eternal life." That people were "appointed to eternal life" means they were chosen to receive eterna life.
- The phrase "appointed time" refers to God's "chosen time" or "planned time" for something to happen.
- The word "appoint" may also mean to "command" or "assign" someone to do something.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "appoint" could include "choose" or "assign" or "formally choose" or "designate."
- The term "appointed" could be translated as "assigned" or "planned" or "specifically chose."
- The phrase "be appointed" could also be translated as "be chosen."

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 08:11
- Acts 03:20
- Acts 06:02
- Acts 13:48
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 03:9-10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H561, H977, H2163, H2296, H2706, H2708, H2710, H3198, H3245, H3259, H3677, H3983, H4150, H4151, H4152, H4483, H4487, H4662, H5324, H5344, H5414, H5567, H5975, H6310, H6485, H6565, H6635, H6680, H6923, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7896, G322, G606, G1299, G1303, G1935, G2525, G2749, G4287, G4296, G4384, G4929, G5021, G5087

(**Go back to:** John 15:16)

# armor, armory

### Definition:

The term "armor" refers to the equipment a soldier uses to fight in a battle and protect himself from enemy attacks. It is also used in a figurative way to refer to spiritual armor.

- Parts of a soldier's armor include a helmet, a shield, a breastplate, leg coverings, and a sword.
- Using the term figuratively, the apostle Paul compares physical armor to spiritual armor that God gives the believer to help him fight spiritual battles.
- The spiritual armor God gives his people to fight against sin and Satan includes truth, righteousness, the gospel of peace, faith, salvation, and the Holy Spirit.
- This could be translated with a term that means "soldier gear" or "protective battle clothing" or "protective covering" or "weapons."

(See also: faith, Holy Spirit, peace, save, spirit)

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 31:9-10
- 2 Samuel 20:8
- Ephesians 06:11
- Jeremiah 51:3-4
- Luke 11:22
- Nehemiah 04:15-16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2290, H2488, H3627, H4055, H5402, G3696, G3833

(**Go back to:** John 18:3)

# asleep, fall asleep, sleep, sleeper, sleepless

### Definition:

These terms can have figurative meanings relating to death.

- To "sleep" or "be asleep" can be a metaphor meaning to "be dead." (See: Metaphor)
- The expression "fall asleep" means start sleeping, or, figuratively, die.
- To "sleep with one's fathers" means to die, as one's ancestors have, or to be dead, as one's ancestors are.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To "fall asleep" could be translated as to "suddenly become asleep" or to "start sleeping" or to "die," depending on its meaning.
- Note: It is especially important to keep the figurative expression in contexts where the audience did not understand the meaning. For example, when Jesus told his disciples that Lazarus was "sleeping" they thought he meant that Lazarus was just sleeping naturally. In this context, it would not make sense to translate this as "he died."
- Some project languages may have a different expression for death or dying which could be used if the expressions "sleep" and "asleep" do not make sense.

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:27-29
- 1 Thessalonians 04:14
- Acts 07:60
- Daniel 12:02
- Psalms 044:23
- Romans 13:11

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1957, H3462, H3463, H7290, H7901, H8139, H8142, H8153, H8639, G879, G1852, G1853, G2518, G2837, G5258

(**Go back to:** John 11:11; 11:12; 11:13)

# assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting

## Definition:

The term "assembly" usually refers to a group of people who come together for some reason, often to discuss problems, give advice, or make decisions. An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.

### Old Testament

- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a "sacred assembly" in which the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term "assembly" referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.

### New Testament

- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the "Sanhedrin" or the "Council."

## Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, "assembly" could also be translated as "special gathering" or "congregation" or "council" or "army" or "large group."
- When the term "assembly" refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as "community" or "people of Israel."
- The phrase, "all the assembly" could be translated as "all the people" or "the whole group of Israelites" or "everyone." (See: hyperbole)
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers was sometimes also referred to as an "assembly." This could be translated as "army."

(See also: council)

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:14
- Acts 07:38
- Ezra 10:12-13
- Hebrews 12:22-24
- Leviticus 04:20-21
- Nehemiah 08:1-3

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H622, H1481, H2199, H3259, H4150, H4186, H4744, H5475, H5712, H6116, H6908, H6950, H6951, H6952, G1577, G3831, G4863, G4864, G4871, G4905

(**Go back to:** John 11:33; 11:47; 11:52; 18:2; 18:20)

# astray, go astray, went astray, lead astray, stray

## Definition:

The terms "stray" and "go astray" mean to disobey God's will. People who are "led astray" have allowed other people or circumstances to influence them to disobey God.

- The word "astray" gives a picture of leaving a clear path or a place of safety to go down a wrong and dangerous path.
- Sheep who leave the pasture of their shepherd have "strayed." God compares sinful people to sheep who have left him and "gone astray."

## Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase "go astray" could be translated as "go away from God" or "take a wrong path away from God's will" or "stop obeying God" or "live in a way that goes away from God."
- To "lead someone astray" could be translated as "cause someone to disobey God" or "influence someone to stop obeying God" or "cause someone to follow you down a wrong path."

(See also: disobey, shepherd)

## Bible References:

- 1 John 03:07
- 2 Timothy 03:13
- Exodus 23:4-5
- Ezekiel 48:10-12
- Matthew 18:13
- Matthew 24:05
- Psalms 058:03
- Psalms 119:110

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H5080, H7683, H7686, H8582, G4105, G5351

(**Go back to:** John 7:12)

# authority

## Definition:

The term "authority" refers to the power of influence and control that someone has over someone else.

- Kings and other governing rulers have authority over the people they are ruling.
- The word "authorities" can refer to people, governments, or organizations that have authority over others.
- The word "authorities" can also refer to spirit beings who have power over people who have not submitted themselves to God's authority.
- Masters have authority over their servants or slaves. Parents have authority over their children.
- Governments have the authority or right to make laws that govern their citizens.

## Translation Suggestions:

- The term "authority" can also be translated as "control" or "right" or "qualifications."
- Sometimes "authority" is used with the meaning of "power."
- When "authorities" is used to refer to people or organizations who rule people, it could also be translated as "leaders" or "rulers" or "powers."
- The phrase "by his own authority" could also be translated as, "with his own right to lead" or "based on his own qualifications."
- The expression, "under authority" could be translated as, "responsible to obey" or "having to obey others' commands."

(See also: citizen, command, obey, power, ruler)

## Bible References:

- Colossians 02:10
- Esther 09:29
- Genesis 41:35
- Jonah 03:6-7
- Luke 12:05
- Luke 20:1-2
- Mark 01:22
- Matthew 08:09
- Matthew 28:19
- Titus 03:01

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H8633, G831, G1413, G1849, G1850, G2003, G2715, G5247

(**Go back to:** John 1:12; 5:27; 10:18; 17:2; 19:10; 19:11)

# baptize, baptized, baptism

### Definition:

In the New Testament, the terms "baptize" and "baptism" usually refer to ritually bathing a Christian with water to show that he has been cleansed from sin and has been united with Christ.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Christians have different views about how a person should be baptized with water. It is probably best to translate this term in a general way that allows for different ways of applying the water.
- Depending on the context, the term "baptize" could be translated as "purify," "pour out on," "plunge (or dip) into," "wash." For example, "baptize you with water" could be translated as, "plunge you into water."
- The term "baptism" could be translated as "purification," "a pouring out," "a dipping," "a cleansing."
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: John (the Baptist), repent, Holy Spirit)

### Bible References:

- Acts 02:38
- Acts 08:36
- Acts 09:18
- Acts 10:48
- Luke 03:16
- Matthew 03:14
- Matthew 28:18-19

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:03** When people heard John's message, many of them repented from their sins, and John **baptized** them. Many religious leaders also came to be **baptized** by John, but they did not repent or confess their sins.
- **24:06** The next day, Jesus came to be **baptized** by John.
- **24:07** John said to Jesus, "I am not worthy to **baptize** you. You should **baptize** me instead."
- **42:10** So go, make disciples of all people groups by **baptizing** them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be **baptized** in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins."
- **43:12** About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were **baptized** and became part of the church at Jerusalem.
- **45:11** As Philip and the Ethiopian traveled, they came to some water. The Ethiopian said, "Look! There is some water! May I be **baptized**?"
- **46:05** Saul immediately was able to see again, and Ananias **baptized** him.
- **49:14** Jesus invites you to believe in him and be **baptized**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G907

(**Go back to:** John 1:25; 1:26; 1:28; 1:31; 1:33; 3:22; 3:23; 3:26; 4:1; 4:2; 10:40)

# Barabbas

## Facts:

Barabbas was a prisoner in Jerusalem at the time when Jesus was arrested.

- • Barabbas was a criminal who had committed crimes of murder and rebellion against the Roman government.
- • When Pontius Pilate offered to either release Barabbas or Jesus, the people chose Barabbas.
- • So Pilate allowed Barabbas to go free, but condemned Jesus to be killed.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Pilate, Rome)

## Bible References:

- • John 18:40
- • Luke 23:19
- • Mark 15:07
- • Matthew 27:15-16

## Word Data:

- • Strong's: G912

(**Go back to:** John 18:40)

# barley

### Definition:

The term "barley" refers to a kind of grain that is used to make bread.

- The barley plant has a long stalk with a head at the top where the seeds or grains grow.
- Barley does well in warmer weather so it is often harvested in spring or summer.
- When barley is threshed, the edible seeds are separated from the worthless chaff.
- Barley grain is ground up into flour, which is then mixed with water or oil to make bread.
- If barley is not known, this could be translated as "grain called barley" or "barley grain."

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: grain, thresh, wheat)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:12-14
- Job 31:40
- Judges 07:14
- Numbers 05:15
- Revelation 06:06

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H8184, G2915, G2916

(**Go back to:** John 6:9; 6:13)

# basket, basketfuls

## Definition:

The term "basket" refers to a container made of woven material.

- In biblical times, baskets were probably woven with strong plant materials, such as wood from peeled tree branches or twigs.
- A basket could be coated with a waterproof substance so that it could float.
- When Moses was a baby, his mother made a waterproof basket to put him in and floated it among the reeds of the Nile River.
- The word translated as "basket" in that story is the same word that is translated as "ark" referring to the boat that Noah built. The common meaning of its use in these two contexts may be "floating container."

(See also: ark, Moses, Nile River, Noah)

## Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 11:33
- Acts 09:25
- Amos 08:01
- John 06:13-15
- Judges 06:19-20
- Matthew 14:20

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H374, H1731, H1736, H2935, H3619, H5536, H7991, G2894, G3426, G4553, G4711

(**Go back to:** John 6:13)

# bear, bearer, carry

### Facts:

The term "bear" literally means "carry" something. There are also many figurative uses of this term.

- When speaking of a woman who will bear a child, this means "give birth to" a child.
- To "bear a burden" means to "experience difficult things." These difficult things could include physical or emotional suffering.
- A common expression in the Bible is "bear fruit," which means "produce fruit" or "have fruit."
- The expression "bear witness" means "testify" or "report what one has seen or experienced."
- The statement that "a son will not bear the iniquity of his father" means that he "will not be held responsible for" or "will not be punished for" his father's sins.
- In general, this term could be translated as "carry" or "be responsible for" or "produce" or "have" or "endure," depending on the context.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: burden, Elisha, endure, fruit, iniquity, report, sheep, strength, testimony, testimony)

### Bible References:

- Lamentations 03:27

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2232, H3201, H3205, H5375, H5445, H5449, H6030, H6509, H6779, G142, G430, G941, G1080, G1627, G2592, G3140, G4160, G4722, G4828, G5041, G5088, G5342, G5409, G5576

(**Go back to:** John 12:24; 15:2; 15:4; 15:5; 15:8; 15:16; 16:12; 19:17; 20:15)

# beg, beggar, needy

## Definition:

The term "beg" means to urgently ask someone for something. It often refers to asking for money, but it is also commonly used to refer to pleading for something.

- Often people beg or plead when they strongly need something, but don't know if the other person will give them what they ask for.
- A "beggar" is someone who regularly sits or stands in a public place to ask people for money.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as, "plead" or "urgently ask" or "demand money" or "regularly ask for money."

(See also: plead)

## Bible References:

- Luke 16:20
- Mark 06:56
- Matthew 14:36
- Psalm 045:12-13

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:04** God sent frogs all over Egypt. Pharaoh **begged** Moses to take away the frogs.
- **29:08** "The king called the servant and said, 'You wicked servant! I forgave your debt because you **begged** me."
- **32:07** The demons **begged** Jesus, "Please do not send us out of this region!" There was a herd of pigs feeding on a nearby hill. So, the demons **begged** Jesus, "Please send us into the pigs instead!"
- **32:10** The man who used to have the demons **begged** to go along with Jesus.
- **35:11** His father came out and **begged** him to come and celebrate with them, but he refused."
- **44:01** One day, Peter and John were going to the Temple. As they approached the Temple gate, they saw a crippled man who was **begging** for money.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H34, H7592, G154, G1871, G4319, G4434

(**Go back to:** John 9:8)

# believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief

### Definition:

The terms "believe" and "believe in" are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

### 1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

### 2. believe in

- To "believe in" someone means to "trust in" that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase "have faith in" usually has the same meaning as "believe in."
- To "believe in Jesus" means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

### 3. believer

In the Bible, the term "believer" refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

- The term "believer" literally means "person who believes."
- The term "Christian" eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

### 4. unbelief

The term "unbelief" refers to not believing something or someone.

- In the Bible, "unbelief" refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one's Savior.
- A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an "unbeliever."

## Translation Suggestions:

- To "believe" could be translated as to "know to be true" or "know to be right."
- To "believe in" could be translated as "trust completely" or "trust and obey" or "completely rely on and follow."
- Some translations may prefer to say "believer in Jesus" or "believer in Christ."
- This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means "person who trusts in Jesus" or "someone who knows Jesus and lives for him."
- Other ways to translate "believer" could be "follower of Jesus" or "person who knows and obeys Jesus."
- The term "believer" is a general term for any believer in Christ, while "disciple" and "apostle" were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.
- Other ways to translate "unbelief" could include "lack of faith" or "not believing."
- The term "unbeliever" could be translated as "person who does not believe in Jesus" or "someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior."

(See also: believe, apostle, Christian, disciple, faith, trust)

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 15:06
- Genesis 45:26
- Job 09:16-18
- Habakkuk 01:5-7
- Mark 06:4-6
- Mark 01:14-15
- Luke 09:41
- John 01:12
- Acts 06:05
- Acts 09:42
- Acts 28:23-24
- Romans 03:03
- 1 Corinthians 06:01
- 1 Corinthians 09:05
- 2 Corinthians 06:15
- Hebrews 03:12
- 1 John 03:23

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **03:04** Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- **04:08** Abram **believed** God's promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God's promise.
- **11:02** God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- **11:06** But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- **37:05** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?"
- **43:01** After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem as Jesus had commanded them to do. The **believers** there constantly gathered together to pray.
- **43:03** While the **believers** were all together, suddenly the house where they were was filled with a sound like a strong wind. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared over the heads of all the **believers**.
- **43:13** Every day, more people became **believers**.
- **46:06** That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the **believers** fled to other places. But in spite of this, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **46:01** Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the **believers**.
- **46:09** Some **believers** who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to the city of Antioch and preached about Jesusâ¦It was at Antioch that **believers** in Jesus were first called "Christians."
- **47:14** They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the **believers** in the churches.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H539, H540, G543, G544, G569, G570, G571, G3982, G4100, G4102, G4103, G4135

# Bethany

## Facts:

The town of Bethany was located at the base of the eastern slope of the Mount of Olives, about 2 miles east of Jerusalem.

- Bethany was near the road that ran between Jerusalem and Jericho.
- Jesus often visited Bethany where his close friends Lazarus, Martha, and Mary lived.
- Bethany is especially known as the place where Jesus raised Lazarus from the dead.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Jericho, Jerusalem, Lazarus, Martha, Mary (sister of Martha), Mount of Olives)

## Bible References:

- John 01:26-28
- Luke 24:50-51
- Mark 11:01
- Matthew 21:15-17

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G963

(**Go back to:** John 1:28; 11:1; 11:18; 12:1)

# Bethlehem, Ephrathah

## Facts:

Bethlehem was a small city in the land of Israel, near the city of Jerusalem. It was also known as "Ephrathah," which was probably its original name.

- Bethlehem has been called the "city of David," since King David was born there.
- The prophet Micah said that the Messiah would come from "Bethlehem Ephrathah."
- Fulfilling that prophecy, Jesus was born in Bethlehem, many years later.
- The name "Bethlehem" means "house of bread" or "house of food."

(See also: Caleb, David, Micah)

## Bible References:

- Genesis 35:16
- John 07:42
- Matthew 02:06
- Matthew 02:16
- Ruth 01:02
- Ruth 01:21

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:02** David was a shepherd from the town of **Bethlehem**.
- **21:09** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a virgin. The prophet Micah said that he would be born in the town of **Bethlehem**.
- **23:04** Joseph and Mary had to make a long journey from where they lived in Nazareth to **Bethlehem** because their ancestor was David whose hometown was **Bethlehem**.
- **23:06** "The Messiah, the Master, has been born in **Bethlehem**!"

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H376, H672, H1035, G965

(**Go back to:** John 7:42)

# betray, betrayer

## Definition:

The term "betray" means to act in a way that deceives and harms someone. A "betrayer" is a person who betrays a friend who was trusting him.

- Judas was "the betrayer" because he told the Jewish leaders how to capture Jesus.
- The betrayal by Judas was especially evil because he was an apostle of Jesus who received money in exchange for giving the Jewish leaders information that would result in Jesus' unjust death.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "betray" could be translated as "deceive and cause harm to" or "turn over to the enemy" or "treat treacherously."
- The term "betrayer" could be translated as "person who betrays" or "double dealer" or "traitor."

(See also: Judas Iscariot, Jewish leaders, apostle)

## Bible References:

- Acts 07:52
- John 06:64
- John 13:22
- Matthew 10:04
- Matthew 26:22

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:11** Other prophets foretold that those who killed the Messiah would gamble for his clothes and he would be **betrayed** by a friend. The prophet Zechariah foretold that the friend would be paid thirty silver coins as payment for **betraying** the Messiah.
- **38:02** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in Jerusalem, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to **betray** Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **38:03** The Jewish leaders, led by the high priest, paid Judas thirty silver coins to **betray** Jesus.
- **38:06** Then Jesus said to the disciples, "One of you will **betray** me." â€¦ Jesus said, "The person to whom I give this piece of bread is the **betrayer**."
- **38:13** When he returned the third time, Jesus said, "Wake up! My **betrayer** is here."
- **38:14** Then Jesus said, "Judas, do you **betray** me with a kiss?"
- **39:08** Meanwhile, Judas, the **betrayer**, saw that the Jewish leaders had condemned Jesus to die. He became full of sorrow and went away and killed himself.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H7411, G3860, G4273

(**Go back to:** John 6:64; 6:71; 12:4; 13:2; 13:11; 13:21; 18:2; 18:5; 18:36; 21:20)

# bind, bond, bound

## Definition:

The term "bind" means to tie something or fasten it securely. Something that is tied or joined together is called a "bond." The term "bound" is the past tense of this term.

- To be "bound" means to have something tied or wrapped around something else.
- In a figurative sense, a person can be "bound" to a vow, which means he is "required to fulfill" what he promised to do.
- The term "bonds" refers to anything that binds, confines, or imprisons someone. It usually refers to physical chains, fetters or ropes that keep a person from being free to move.
- In Bible times, bonds such as ropes or chains were used to attach prisoners to the wall or floor of a stone prison.
- The term "bind" can also be used to talk about wrapping cloth around a wound to help it heal.
- A dead person would be "bound" with cloth in preparation for burial.
- The term "bond" is used figuratively to refer to something, such as sin, that controls or enslaves someone.
- A bond can also be a close relationship between people in which they support each other emotionally, spiritually and physically. This applies to the bond of marriage.
- For example, a husband and wife are "bound" or tied to each other. It is a bond that God does not want broken.

## Translation Suggestions:

- The term "bind" could also be translated as "tie" or "tie up" or "wrap (around)."
- Figuratively, it could be translated as to "restrain" or to "prevent" or to "keep from (something)."
- A special use of "bind" in Matthew 16 and 18 means "forbid" or "not permit."
- The term "bonds" could be translated as "chains" or "ropes" or "shackles."
- Figuratively the term "bond" could be translated as "knot" or "connection" or "close relationship."
- The phrase "bond of peace" means "being in harmony, which brings people in closer relationship to each other" or "the tying together that peace brings."
- To "bind up" could be translated as "wrap around" or "put a bandage on."
- To "bind" oneself with a vow could be translated as "promise to fulfill a vow" or "commit to fulfill a vow."
- Depending on the context, the term "bound" could also be translated as "tied" or "tied up" or "chained" or "obligated (to fulfill)" or "required to do."

(See also: fulfill, peace, prison, servant, vow)

## Bible References:

- Leviticus 08:07

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H247, H481, H519, H615, H631, H632, H640, H1366, H1367, H1379, H2280, H2706, H3256, H3533, H3729, H4147, H4148, H4205, H4562, H5650, H5656, H5659, H6029, H6123, H6616, H6696, H6872, H6887, H7194, H7405, H7573, H7576, H8198, H8244, H8379, G254, G331, G332, G1195, G1196, G1198, G1199, G1210, G1397, G1398, G1401, G1402, G2611, G2615, G3734, G3784, G3814, G4019, G4029, G4385, G4886, G4887, G5265

(**Go back to:** John 11:44; 18:12; 19:40)

# blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "blasphemy" refers to speaking in a way that shows a deep disrespect for God or people. To "blaspheme" someone is to speak against that person so that others think something false or bad about him.

- Most often, to blaspheme God means to slander or insult him by saying things that are not true about him or by behaving in an immoral way that dishonors him.
- It is blasphemy for a human being to claim to be God or to claim that there is a God other than the one true God.
- Some English versions translate this term as "slander" when it refers to blaspheming people.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To "blaspheme" can be translated as to "say evil things against" or to "dishonor God" or to "slander."
- Ways to translate "blasphemy" could include "speaking wrongly about others" or "slander" or "spreading false rumors."

(See also: dishonor, slander)

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 01:12-14
- Acts 06:11
- Acts 26:9-11
- James 02:5-7
- John 10:32-33
- Luke 12:10
- Mark 14:64
- Matthew 12:31
- Matthew 26:65
- Psalms 074:10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1288, H1442, H2778, H5006, H5007, H5344, G987, G988, G989

# bless, blessed, blessing

### Definition:

To "bless" someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people "bless" God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term "bless" is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

### Translation Suggestions:

- To "bless" could also be translated as to "provide abundantly for" or to "be very kind and favorable toward."
- "God has brought great blessing to" could be translated as "God has given many good things to" or "God has provided abundantly for" or "God has caused many good things to happen to".
- "He is blessed" could be translated as "he will greatly benefit" or "he will experience good things" or "God will cause him to flourish."
- "Blessed is the person who" could be translated as "How good it is for the person who."
- Expressions like "blessed be the Lord" could be translated as "May the Lord be praised" or "Praise the Lord" or "I praise the Lord."
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as "thanked God for the food" or "praised God for giving them food" or "consecrated the food by praising God for it."

(See also: praise)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34
- Ephesians 01:03
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:03
- James 01:25
- Luke 06:20
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 09:05
- Romans 04:09

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:07** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **01:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, "Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth."
- **01:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **04:04** "I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you."
- **04:07** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, "May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram."
- **07:03** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.

• **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

## Word Data:

• Strong's: H833, H835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G1757, G2127, G2128, G2129, G3106, G3107, G3108, G6050

(**Go back to:** )

# blood

### Definition:

The term "blood" refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person's skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person's entire body.

- Blood is a metaphor for life, and when it is shed or poured out, it is a metaphor for the loss of life, or death.
- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal's life to pay for people's sins.
- The expression "flesh and blood" refers to human beings.
- The expression "own flesh and blood" refers to people who are biologically related.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
- The expression "flesh and blood" could be translated as "people" or "human beings."
- Depending on the context, the expression "my own flesh and blood" could be translated as "my own family" or "my own relatives" or "my own people."
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate "flesh and blood."

(See also: flesh)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Samuel 14:32
- Acts 02:20
- Acts 05:28
- Colossians 01:20
- Galatians 01:16
- Genesis 04:11
- Psalms 016:4
- Psalms 105:28-30

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:03** Before Joseph's brothers returned home, they tore Joseph's robe and dipped it in goat's **blood**.
- **10:03** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
- **11:05** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb's **blood**.
- **13:09** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person's sin, and God's punishment passes over him.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1818, H5332, G129, G130, G131

# body

## Definition:

The term "body" literally refers to the physical body of a person or animal. This term is also used figuratively to refer to an object or whole group that has individual members.

- Often the term "body" refers to a dead person or animal. Sometimes this is referred to as a "dead body" or a "corpse."
- When Jesus said to the disciples at his last Passover meal, "This (bread) is my body," he was referring to his physical body that would be "broken" (killed) to pay for their sins.
- In the Bible, Christians as a group are referred to as the "body of Christ."
- Just as a physical body has many parts, the "body of Christ" has many individual members.
- Each individual believer has a special function in the body of Christ to help the whole group work together to serve God and bring him glory.
- Jesus is also referred to as the "head" (leader) of the "body" of his believers. Just as a person's head tells his body what to do, so Jesus is the one who guides and directs Christians as members of his "body."

## Translation Suggestions:

- The best way to translate this term would be with the word that is most commonly used to refer to a physical body in the project language. Make sure that the word used is not an offensive term.
- When referring collectively to believers, for some languages it may be more natural and accurate to say "spiritual body of Christ."
- When Jesus says, "This is my body," it is best to translate this literally, with a note to explain it if needed.
- Some languages may have a separate word when referring to a dead body, such as "corpse" for a person or "carcass" for an animal. Make sure the word used to translate this makes sense in the context and is acceptable.

(See also: head, spirit)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:12
- 1 Corinthians 05:05
- Ephesians 04:04
- Judges 14:08
- Numbers 06:6-8
- Psalm 031:09
- Romans 12:05

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H990, H1320, H1460, H1465, H1472, H1480, H1655, H3409, H4191, H5038, H5085, H5315, H6106, H6297, H7607, G4430, G4954, G4983, G5559

(**Go back to:** John 2:21; 19:31; 19:38; 19:40; 20:12)

# born again, born of God, new birth

### Definition:

The term "born again" was first used by Jesus to describe what it means for God to change a person from being dead spiritually to being alive spiritually. The terms "born of God" and "born of the Spirit" also refer to a person being given new spiritual life.

- All humans are born spiritually dead and are given a "new birth" when they accept Jesus Christ as their Savior.
- At the moment of the spiritual new birth, God's Holy Spirit begins to live in the new believer and empowers him to produce good spiritual fruit in his life.
- It is God's work to cause a person to be born again and become his child.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "born again" could include "born anew" or "born spiritually."
- It is best to translate this term literally and use the normal word in the language that would be used for being born.
- The term "new birth" might be translated as "spiritual birth."
- The phrase "born of God" could be translated as "caused by God to have new life like a newborn baby" or "given new life by God."
- In the same way, "born of the Spirit" could be translated as "given new life by the Holy Spirit" or "empowered by the Holy Spirit to become God's child" or "caused by the Spirit to have new life like a newborn baby."

(See also: Holy Spirit, save)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 03:09
- 1 Peter 01:03
- 1 Peter 01:23
- John 03:04
- John 03:07
- Titus 03:05

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G313, G509, G1080, G3824

(**Go back to:** John 1:13; 3:3; 3:5; 3:6; 3:7; 3:8)

# bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

## Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To "bow down" means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include "bow the knee" (meaning to kneel) and "bow the head" (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is "bowed down" has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means "bend forward" or "bend the head" or "kneel."
- The term "bow down" could be translated as "kneel down" or "prostrate oneself."
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: humble, worship)

## Bible References:

- 2 Kings 05:18
- Exodus 20:05
- Genesis 24:26
- Genesis 44:14
- Isaiah 44:19
- Luke 24:05
- Matthew 02:11
- Revelation 03:09

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H86, H3721, H3766, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G1120, G2578, G2827, G4098

(**Go back to:** John 11:32; 19:30)

# bread

### Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term "loaf" occurs by itself, it means "loaf of bread."
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast. However, bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. This is called "unleavened bread" in the Bible. The ancient Israelites ate "unleavened bread" during the passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: Synecdoche) Many times the term "bread" can be translated more generally as "food."
- The phrase "bread of the presence" refers to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as "bread showing that God lived among them."
- The term "bread from heaven" refers to the special white food called "manna" that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert. Jesus also called himself the "bread that came down from heaven" and the "bread of life."

(See also: Passover, tabernacle, temple, unleavened bread, yeast)

### Bible References:

- Acts 02:46
- Acts 27:35
- Exodus 16:15
- Luke 09:13
- Mark 06:38
- Matthew 04:04
- Matthew 11:18

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G106, G740, G4286

(**Go back to:** John 6:5; 6:7; 6:9; 6:11; 6:13; 6:23; 6:26; 6:31; 6:32; 6:33; 6:34; 6:35; 6:41; 6:48; 6:50; 6:51; 6:58; 13:18; 21:9; 21:13)

# bride, bridal

### Definition:

A bride is the woman in a wedding ceremony who is getting married to her husband, the bridegroom.

- The term "bride" is used as a metaphor for believers in Jesus, the Church.
- Jesus is metaphorically called the "bridegroom" for the Church. (See: Metaphor)

(See also: bridegroom, church)

### Bible References:

- Exodus 22:16
- Isaiah 62:5
- Joel 02:16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3618, G3565

(**Go back to:** John 3:29)

# bridegroom

## Definition:

In a marriage ceremony, the bridegroom is the man who will marry the bride.

- In the Jewish culture during Bible times, the ceremony was centered around the bridegroom coming to get his bride.
- In the Bible, Jesus is figuratively called the "Bridegroom" who will someday come for his "Bride," the Church.
- Jesus compared his disciples to the friends of the bridegroom who celebrate while the bridegroom is with them, but who will be sad when he is gone.

(See also: bride)

## Bible References:

- Isaiah 62:5
- Joel 02:15-16
- John 03:30
- Luke 05:35
- Mark 02:19
- Mark 02:20
- Matthew 09:15

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2860, G3566

(**Go back to:** John 2:9; 3:29)

# brother

## Definition:

The term "brother" refers to a male sibling who shares at least one biological parent.

- In the Old Testament, the term "brothers" is also used as a general reference to relatives or associates, such as members of the same tribe, clan, occupation, or people group. When used in this way, the term can refer to both men and women.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often use the term "brothers" to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term "sister" when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to "a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing."

## Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when "brothers" is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include "relatives" or "clan members" or "fellow Israelites."
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as "brother in Christ" or "spiritual brother."
- If both males and females are being referred to and "brother" would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be "fellow believers" or "Christian brothers and sisters."
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: apostle, God the Father, sister, spirit)

## Bible References:

- Acts 07:26
- Genesis 29:10
- Leviticus 19:17
- Nehemiah 03:01
- Philippians 04:21
- Revelation 01:09

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H251, H252, H264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G80, G81, G2385, G2455, G2500, G4613, G5360, G5569

(**Go back to:** John 1:40; 1:41; 2:12; 6:8; 7:3; 7:5; 7:10; 11:2; 11:19; 11:21; 11:23; 11:32; 20:17; 21:23)

# bury, buried, burial

## Definition:

The term "bury" refers to putting an object (usually a dead body) into a hole or other burial place and then covering it with dirt or stones, etc. The term "burial" is the act of burying something, or it can be used to describe a place where something has been buried.

- Often people bury a dead body by placing it into a deep hole in the ground and then covering it with dirt.
- Sometimes the dead body is placed in a box-like structure, such as a coffin, before burying it.
- In Bible times, dead people were often buried in a cave or similar place. After Jesus died, his body was wrapped in cloths and placed in a stone tomb that was sealed with a large boulder.
- The terms "burial place" or "burial room" or "burial chamber" or "burial cave" always refer to a place where a dead body is buried.
- Other things can also be buried, such as when Achan buried silver and other things that he had stolen from Jericho.
- The phrase "buried his face" usually means "covered his face with his hands."
- Sometimes the word "hide" can mean "bury" as when Achan hid things in the ground that he had stolen from Jericho. This meant he buried them in the ground.

(See also:Jericho, tomb)

## Bible References:

- 2 Kings 09:9-10
- Genesis 35:4-5
- Jeremiah 25:33
- Luke 16:22
- Matthew 27:07
- Psalm 079:1-3

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H6900, H6912, H6913, G1779, G1780, G2290, G4916, G5027

(**Go back to:** John 12:7; 19:40)

# Caesar

## Facts:

The term "Caesar" was the name or title used by many of the rulers of the Roman Empire. In the Bible, this name refers to three different Roman rulers.

- The first Roman ruler named Caesar was "Caesar Augustus," who was ruling during the time that Jesus was born.
- About thirty years later, at the time when John the Baptist was preaching, Tiberius Caesar was the ruler of the Roman Empire.
- Tiberius Caesar was still ruling Rome when Jesus told the people to pay Caesar what was due him and to give to God what is due him.
- When Paul appealed to Caesar, this referred to the Roman emperor, Nero, who also had the title "Caesar."
- When "Caesar" is used by itself as a title, it can also be translated as: "the Emperor" or "the Roman Ruler."
- In names such as Caesar Augustus or Tiberius Caesar, "Caesar" can be spelled close to the way a national language spells it.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: king, Paul, Rome)

## Bible References:

- Acts 25:06
- Luke 02:01
- Luke 20:23-24
- Luke 23:02
- Mark 12:13-15
- Matthew 22:17
- Philippians 04:22

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G2541

(**Go back to:** John 19:12; 19:15)

# Caiaphas

## Facts:

Caiaphas was the high priest of Israel during the time of John the Baptist and Jesus.

- Caiaphas played a major role in the trial and condemnation of Jesus.
- The high priests Annas and Caiaphas were at the trial of Peter and John when they were arrested after healing a crippled man.
- Caiaphas is the one who said that it was better for one man to die for the whole nation than for the whole nation to perish. God caused him to say this as a prophecy about how Jesus would die to save his people.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Annas, high priest)

## Bible References:

- Acts 04:5-7
- John 18:12
- Luke 03:02
- Matthew 26:3-5
- Matthew 26:57-58

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G2533

(**Go back to:** John 11:49; 18:13; 18:14; 18:24; 18:28)

# call, call out

## Definition:

The terms "call" and "call out" usually mean to speak loudly, but the term "call" can also mean to name or summon a person. There are also some other meanings.

- To "call out" to someone means to shout, to announce, or to proclaim. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, "call" has a meaning of "summon" or "command to come" or "request to come."
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their "calling."
- When God "calls" people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, "His name is called John," means, "He is named John" or "His name is John."
- To be "called by the name of" means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, "I have called you by name" means that God has specifically chosen that person.

## Translation Suggestions:

- The term "call" could be translated by a word that means "summon," which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression "call out to you" could be translated as "ask you for help" or "pray to you urgently."
- When the Bible says that God has "called" us to be his servants, this could be translated as, "specially chose us" or "appointed us" to be his servants.
- "You must call his name" can also be translated as, "you must name him."
- "His name is called" could also be translated as, "his name is" or "he is named."
- To "call out" could be translated as, "say loudly" or "shout" or "say with a loud voice." Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression "your calling" could be translated as "your purpose" or "God's purpose for you" or "God's special work for you."
- To "call on the name of the Lord" could be translated as "seek the Lord and depend on him" or "trust in the Lord and obey him."
- To "call for" something could be translated by "demand" or "ask for" or "command."
- The expression "you are called by my name" could be translated as, "I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me."
- When God says, "I have called you by name," this could be translated as, "I know you and have chosen you."

(See also: pray, cry)

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:24
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- 2 Timothy 01:09
- Ephesians 04:01
- Galatians 01:15
- Matthew 02:15
- Philippians 03:14

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G154, G363, G1458, G1528, G1941, G1951, G2028, G2046, G2564, G2821, G2822, G2840, G2919, G3004, G3106, G3333, G3343, G3603, G3686, G3687, G4316, G4341, G4377, G4779, G4867, G5455, G5537, G5581

# Cana

## Definition:

Cana was a village or town in the province of Galilee, located about nine miles north of Nazareth.

- Cana was the hometown of Nathanael, one of the Twelve.
- Jesus attended a wedding feast in Cana and performed his first miracle there when he turned water into wine.
- Some time after that, Jesus came back to Cana and met an official there from Capernaum who requested healing for his son.

(See also: Capernaum, Galilee, the twelve)

## Bible References:

- John 02:1-2
- John 04:46-47

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G2580

(**Go back to:** John 2:1; 2:11; 4:46; 21:2)

# Capernaum

### Facts:

Capernaum was a fishing village on the northwest shore of the Sea of Galilee.

- Jesus lived in Capernaum whenever he was teaching in Galilee.
- Several of his disciples were from Capernaum.
- Jesus also did many miracles in this city, including bringing a dead girl back to life.
- Capernaum was one of three cities that Jesus publicly rebuked because their people rejected him and did not believe his message. He warned them that God would punish them for their unbelief.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Galilee, Sea of Galilee)

### Bible References:

- John 02:12
- Luke 04:31
- Luke 07:1
- Mark 01:21
- Mark 02:02
- Matthew 04:12-13
- Matthew 17:24-25

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G2584

(**Go back to:** John 2:12; 4:46; 6:17; 6:24; 6:59)

# cast out, driving out, throw out

### Definition:

To "cast out" or "drive out" someone or something means to force that person or thing to go away.

- The term "cast" means the same thing as "throw." To cast a net means to throw the net into the water.
- In a figurative sense, "cast out" or "cast away" someone can mean to reject that person and send him away.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include, "force out" or "send away" or "get rid of."
- To "cast out demons" could be translated as "cause the demons to leave" or "drive the evil spirits out" or "expel the demons" or "command the demon to come out."
- To "cast out" someone from a synagog or church could be translated as "banish them" or "put them out."

(See also: demon, demon-possessed, lots)

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:17-19
- Mark 03:13-16
- Mark 09:29
- Matthew 07:21-23
- Matthew 09:32-34
- Matthew 12:24
- Matthew 17:19-21

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1272, H1644, H1920, H3423, H7971, H7993, G1544

(**Go back to:** John 2:15; 6:37; 9:34; 9:35; 12:31)

# children, child, offspring

## Definition:

The term "child" (plural "children") refers to the offspring of a man and woman. The term is often used more generally to refer to anyone who is young in age and is not yet a fully grown adult. The term "offspring" is a general reference to the biological descendants of people or animals.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called "children."
- Often the term "children" is used to refer to a person's descendants.
- Often in the Bible, "offspring" has the same meaning as "children" or "descendants."
- The term "seed" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to offspring.
- The phrase "children of" can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
    ◦ children of the light
    ◦ children of obedience
    ◦ children of the devil
- This term can also refer to the Church. For example, sometimes the New Testament refers to people who believe in Jesus as "children of God."

## Translation Suggestions:

- The term "children" could be translated as "descendants" when it is referring to a person's great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, "children of" could be translated as, "people who have the characteristics of" or "people who behave like."
- If possible, the phrase, "children of God" should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, "people who belong to God" or "God's spiritual children."
- When Jesus calls his disciples "children," this could also be translated as, "dear friends" or "my beloved disciples."
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as "children," this could also be translated as "dear fellow believers."
- The phrase, "children of the promise" could be translated as, "people who have received what God promised them."

(See also: descendant, seed, promise, son, spirit, believe, beloved)

## Bible References:

- 1 John 02:28
- 3 John 01:04
- Galatians 04:19
- Genesis 45:11
- Joshua 08:34-35
- Nehemiah 05:05
- Acts 17:29
- Exodus 13:11-13
- Genesis 24:07
- Isaiah 41:8-9
- Job 05:25
- Luke 03:7
- Matthew 12:34

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1069, H1121, H1123, H1129, H1323, H1397, H1580, H2029, H2030, H2056, H2138, H2145, H2233, H2945, H3173, H3205, H3206, H3208, H3211, H3243, H3490, H4392, H5209, H5271, H5288, H5290, H5759, H5764, H5768, H5953, H6185, H6363, H6529, H6631, H7908, H7909, H7921, G730, G815, G1025, G1064, G1081, G1085, G1471, G3439, G3515, G3516, G3808, G3812, G3813, G3816, G5040, G5041, G5042, G5043, G5044, G5206, G5207, G5388

(**Go back to:** )

# chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect

## Definition:

The term "the elect" literally means "chosen ones" or "chosen people" and refers to those whom God has appointed or selected to be his people. "Chosen One" or "Chosen One of God" is a title that refers to Jesus, who is the chosen Messiah.

- The term "choose" means to select something or someone or to decide something. It is often used to refer to God appointing people to belong to him and to serve him.
- To be "chosen" means to be "selected" or "appointed" to be or do something.
- God chose people to be holy, to be set apart by him for the purpose of bearing good spiritual fruit. That is why they are called "the chosen (ones) or "the elect."
- The term "chosen one" is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to certain people such as Moses and King David whom God had appointed as leaders over his people. It is also used to refer to the nation of Israel as God's chosen people.
- The phrase "the elect" is an older term that literally means "the chosen ones" or "the chosen people." This phrase in the original language is plural when referring to believers in Christ.
- In older English Bible versions, the term "elect" is used in both the Old and New Testaments to translate the word for "chosen one(s)." More modern versions use "elect" only in the New Testament, to refer to people who have been saved by God through faith in Jesus. Elsewhere in the Bible text, they translate this word more literally as "chosen ones."

## Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate "elect" with a word or phrase that means "chosen ones" or "chosen people." This could also be translated as "people whom God chose" or "the ones God appointed to be his people."
- The phrase "who were chosen" could also be translated as "who were appointed" or "who were selected" or "whom God chose."
- "I chose you" could be translated as "I appointed you" or "I selected you."
- In reference to Jesus, "Chosen One" could also be translated as "God's chosen One" or "God's specially appointed Messiah" or "the One God appointed (to save people)."

(See also: appoint, Christ)

## Bible References:

- 2 John 01:01
- Colossians 03:12
- Ephesians 01:3-4
- Isaiah 65:22-23
- Luke 18:07
- Matthew 24:19-22
- Romans 08:33

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H970, H972, H977, H1262, H1305, H4005, H6901, G138, G140, G1586, G1588, G1589, G1951, G3724, G4400, G4401, G4758, G4899, G5500

(**Go back to:** John 6:70; 13:18; 15:16; 15:19)

# Christ, Messiah

### Facts:

The terms "Messiah" and "Christ" mean "Anointed One" and refer to Jesus, God's Son.

- Both "Messiah" and "Christ" are used in the New Testament to refer to God's Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning "anointed (one)" is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proves he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word "Christ" is often used as a title, as in "the Christ" and "Christ Jesus."
- "Christ" also came to be used as part of his name, as in "Jesus Christ."

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using its meaning, "the Anointed One" or "God's Anointed Savior."
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like "Christ" or "Messiah." (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term as in, "Christ, the Anointed One."
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of "Messiah" and "Christ" work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See also: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Son of God, David, Jesus, anoint)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 05:1-3
- Acts 02:35
- Acts 05:40-42
- John 01:40-42
- John 03:27-28
- John 04:25
- Luke 02:10-12
- Matthew 01:16

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:07** The **Messiah** was God's Chosen One who would save the people of the world from sin.
- **17:08** As it happened, the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the **Messiah** came, almost 1,000 years.
- **21:01** From the very beginning, God planned to send the **Messiah**.
- **21:04** God promised King David that the **Messiah** would be one of David's own descendants.
- **21:05** The **Messiah** would start the New Covenant.
- **21:06** God's prophets also said that the **Messiah** would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.
- **21:09** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the **Messiah** would be born from a virgin.
- **43:07** "But God raised him to life again to fulfill the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your **Holy One** rot in the grave.'"

- **43:09** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and **Messiah**!"
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus **Christ** so that God will forgive your sins."
- **46:06** Saul reasoned with the Jews, proving that Jesus was the **Messiah**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H4899, G3323, G5547

(**Go back to:** )

# circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision

## Definition:

The term "circumcise" means to cut off the foreskin of a man or male child. A circumcision ceremony may be performed in connection with this.

- God commanded Abraham to circumcise every male among his family and servants as a sign of God's covenant with them.
- God also commanded Abraham's descendants to continue to do this for every baby boy born into their households.
- The phrase, "circumcision of the heart" refers figuratively to the "cutting away" or removal of sin from a person.
- In a spiritual sense, "the circumcised" refers to people whom God has purified from sin through the blood of Jesus and who are his people.
- The term "uncircumcised" refers to those who have not been circumcised physically. It can also refer figuratively to those who have not been circumcised spiritually, who do not have a relationship with God.

The terms "uncircumcised" and "uncircumcision" refer to a male who has not been physically circumcised. These terms are also used figuratively.

- Egypt was a nation that also required circumcision. So when God talks about Egypt being defeated by the "uncircumcised," he is referring to people whom the Egyptians despised for not being circumcised.
- The Bible refers to people who have an "uncircumcised heart" or who are "uncircumcised in heart." This a figurative way of saying that these people are not God's people, and are stubbornly disobedient to him.
- If a word for circumcision is used or known in the language, "uncircumcised" could be translated as "not circumcised."
- The expression "the uncircumcision" could be translated as "people who are not circumcised" or "people who do not belong to God," depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate figurative senses of this term could include "not God's people" or "rebellious like those who don't belong to God" or "people who have no sign of belonging to God."
- The expression "uncircumcised in heart" could be translated as "stubbornly rebellious" or "refusing to believe." However, if possible it is best to keep the expression or a similar one since spiritual circumcision is an important concept.

## Translation Suggestions:

- If the culture of the target language performs circumcisions on males, the word used to refer to this should be used for this term.
- Other ways to translate this term would be, "cut around" or "cut in a circle" or "cut off the foreskin."
- In cultures where circumcision is not known, it may be necessary to explain it in a footnote or glossary.
- Make sure the term used to translate this does not refer to females. It may be necessary to translate this with a word or phrase that includes the meaning of "male."

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: Abraham, covenant)

## Bible References:

- Genesis 17:11
- Genesis 17:14
- Exodus 12:48
- Leviticus 26:41
- Joshua 05:03

• Judges 15:18
• 2 Samuel 01:20
• Jeremiah 09:26
• Ezekiel 32:25
• Acts 10:44-45
• Acts 11:03
• Acts 15:01
• Acts 11:03
• Romans 02:27
• Galatians 05:03
• Ephesians 02:11
• Philippians 03:03
• Colossians 02:11
• Colossians 02:13

## Examples from the Bible stories:

• **05:03** "You must **circumcise** every male in your family."
• **05:05** That day Abraham **circumcised** all the males in his household.

## Word Data:

• Strong's: H4135, H4139, H5243, H6188, H6189, H6190, G203, G564, G1986, G4059, G4061

(**Go back to:** John 7:22; 7:23)

# cistern, well

## Definition:

The terms "well" and "cistern" refer to two different kinds of sources for water in Bible times.

- A well is a deep hole dug into the ground so that underground water can flow into it.
- A cistern is a deep hole dug into rock that was used as a holding tank for collecting rain water.
- Cisterns were usually dug into rock and sealed with plaster to keep the water in. A "broken cistern" happened when the plaster became cracked so that the water leaked out.
- Cisterns were often located in the courtyard area of people's homes to catch the rainwater that would run off the roof.
- Wells were often located where they could be accessed by several families or a whole community.
- Because water was very important for both people and livestock, the right to use a well was often a cause of strife and conflict.
- Both wells and cisterns were usually covered with a large stone to prevent anything falling in it. Often there was a rope with a bucket or pot attached to it to bring the water up to the surface.
- Sometimes a dry cistern was used as a place to imprison someone, such as happened to Joseph and Jeremiah.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "well" could include "deep water hole" or "deep hole for spring water" or "deep hole for drawing water."
- The term "cistern" could be translated as "stone water pit" or "deep and narrow pit for water" or "underground tank for holding water."
- These terms are similar in meaning. The main difference is that a well continually receives water from underground springs, whereas a cistern is a holding tank for water that usually comes from rain.

(See also: Jeremiah, prison, strife)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:17
- 2 Samuel 17:17-18
- Genesis 16:14
- Luke 14:4-6
- Numbers 20:17

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H875, H883, H953, H1360, H4599, H4726, H4841, G4077, G5421

(**Go back to:** John 4:6; 4:11; 4:12)

# clean, wash

## Definition:

The term "clean" generally refers either to removing dirt or stains from something or to not having any dirt or stain in the first place. The term "wash" refers specifically to action of removing dirt or stains from something.

- "Cleanse" is the process of making something "clean." It could also be translated as "wash" or "purify."
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually "clean" and which ones were "unclean." Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term "clean" means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared "clean" again.
- Sometimes "clean" is used figuratively to refer to moral purity, meaning to be "clean" from sin.

In the Bible, the term "unclean" is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were "clean" and which ones were "unclean." The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be "unclean" until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something "unclean," they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God's commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God's service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an "unclean spirit" refers to an evil spirit.

## Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with the common word for "clean" or "pure" (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, "ritually clean" or "acceptable to God."
- "Cleanse" could be translated by "wash" or "purify."
- Make sure that the words used for "clean" and "cleanse" can also be understood in a figurative sense.
- The term "unclean" could also be translated as "not clean" or "unfit in God's eyes" or "physically unclean" or "defiled."
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, "unclean" could be translated as "evil" or "defiled."
- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: defile, demon, holy, sacrifice)

## Bible References:

- Genesis 07:02
- Genesis 07:08
- Deuteronomy 12:15
- Psalms 051:07
- Proverbs 20:30
- Ezekiel 24:13
- Matthew 23:27
- Luke 05:13
- Acts 08:07
- Acts 10:27-29

- Colossians 03:05
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- James 04:08

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1305, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2398, H2548, H2834, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2893, H2930, H2931, H2932, H3001, H3722, H5079, H5352, H5355, H5356, H6172, H6565, H6663, H6945, H7137, H8552, H8562, G167, G169, G2511, G2512, G2513, G2839, G2840, G3394, G3689

(**Go back to:** John 2:6; 3:25; 13:10; 13:11; 15:3)

# clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments

## Definition:

When used figuratively in the Bible, "clothed with" means to be endowed or equipped with something. To "clothe" oneself with something means to seek to have a certain character quality.

- In the same way that clothing is external to your body and is visible to all, when you are "clothed" with a certain character quality, others can readily see it. To "clothe yourself with kindness" means to let your actions be so characterized by kindness that it is easily seen by everyone.
- To be "clothed with power from on high" means to have power given to you.
- This term is also used to express negative experiences, such as "clothed with shame" or "clothed with terror."

## Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the literal figure of speech, "clothe yourselves with." Another way to translate this could be "put on" if this refers to putting on clothes.
- If that does not give the correct meaning, other ways to translate "clothed with" could be "showing" or "manifesting" or "filled with" or "having the quality of."
- The term "clothe yourself with" could also be translated as "cover yourself with" or "behave in a way that shows."

## Bible References:

- Luke 24:49

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H899, H3680, H3736, H3830, H3847, H3848, H4055, H4374, H5497, H8008, H8071, H8516, G294, G1463, G1562, G1737, G1742, G1746, G1902, G2066, G2224, G2439, G2440, G4016, G4749, G5509

(**Go back to:** )

# comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomforted

## Definition:

The terms "comfort" and "comforter" refer to helping someone who is suffering physical or emotional pain.

- A person who comforts someone is called a "comforter."
- In the Old Testament, the term "comfort" is used to describe how God is kind and loving to his people and helps them when they are suffering.
- In the New Testament, it says that God will comfort his people through the Holy Spirit. Those who receive the comfort are then enabled to give the same comfort to others who are suffering.
- The expression "comforter of Israel" referred to the Messiah who would come to rescue his people.
- Jesus referred to the Holy Spirit as the "Comforter" who helps believers in Jesus.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "comfort" could also be translated as, "ease the pain of" or "help (someone) overcome grief" or "encourage" or "console."
- A phrase such as "our comfort" could be translated as "our encouragement" or "our consoling of (someone)" or "our help in times of grieving."
- The term "comforter" could be translated as "person who comforts" or "someone who helps ease pain" or "person who encourages."
- When the Holy Spirit is called "the Comforter" this could also be translated as "the Encourager" or "the Helper" or "the One who helps and guides."
- The phrase "comforter of Israel" could be translated as, "the Messiah, who comforts Israel."
- An expression like, "they have no comforter" could also be translated as, "No one has comforted them" or "There is no one to encourage or help them."

(See also: encourage, Holy Spirit)

## Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:8-11
- 2 Corinthians 01:04
- 2 Samuel 10:1-3
- Acts 20:11-12

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2505, H5150, H5162, H5165, H5564, H8575, G302, G3870, G3874, G3875, G3888, G3890, G3931

(**Go back to:** John 11:19; 11:31; 14:16; 14:26; 15:26; 16:7)

# command, commandment

## Definition:

The term "command" means to order someone to do something. The term "commandment" refers to the thing that a person is commanded to do.

- The term "commandment" sometimes refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the "Ten Commandments."
- A command can be positive ("Honor your parents") or negative ("Do not steal").
- To "take command" means to "take control" or "take charge" of something or someone.

## Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, "law." Also compare with the definitions of "decree" and "statute."
- Some translators may prefer to translate "command" and "commandment" with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See decree, statute, law, Ten Commandments)

## Bible References:

- Luke 01:06
- Matthew 01:24
- Matthew 22:38
- Matthew 28:20
- Numbers 01:17-19
- Romans 07:7-8

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H560, H565, H1296, H1696, H1697, H1881, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2941, H2942, H2951, H3027, H3982, H3983, H4406, H4662, H4687, H4929, H4931, H4941, H5057, H5713, H5749, H6213, H6310, H6346, H6490, H6673, H6680, H7101, H7218, H7227, H7262, H7761, H7970, H8269, G1263, G1291, G1296, G1297, G1299, G1690, G1778, G1781, G1785, G2003, G2004, G2008, G2036, G2753, G3056, G3726, G3852, G3853, G4367, G4483, G4487, G5506

(**Go back to:** John 10:18; 11:57; 12:49; 12:50; 13:34; 14:15; 14:21; 14:31; 15:10; 15:12; 15:14; 15:17)

# commander

## Definition:

The term "commander" refers to a leader of an army who is responsible for leading and commanding a certain group of soldiers.

- A commander could be in charge of a small group of soldiers or a large group, such as a thousand men.
- This term is also used to refer to Yahweh as the commander of angel armies.
- Other ways to translate "commander" could include, "leader" or "captain" or "officer."
- The term to "command" an army could be translated as to "lead" or to "be in charge of."

(See also: command, ruler, centurion)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 11:11-12
- Daniel 02:14
- Mark 06:21-22
- Proverbs 06:07

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2710, H2951, H1169, H4929, H5057, H6346, H7101, H7262, H7218, H7227, H7229, H7990, H8269, G5506

(**Go back to:** John 18:12)

# commit, committed, commitment

### Definition:

The terms "commit" and "commitment" refers to making a decision or promising to do something.

- A person who promises to do something is also described as being "committed" to doing it.
- To "commit" to someone a certain task means to assign that task to that person. For example, in 2 Corinthians Paul says that God has "committed" (or "given") to us the ministry of helping people be reconciled to God.
- The terms "commit" and "committed" also often refer to doing a certain wrong action such as "commit a sin" or "commit adultery" or "commit murder."
- The expression "committed to him the task" could also be translated as "gave him the task" or "entrusted to him the task" or "assigned the task to him."
- The term "commitment" could be translated by, "task that was given" or "promise that was made."

(See also: adultery, faithful, promise, sin)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 28:07
- 1 Peter 02:21-23
- Jeremiah 02:12-13
- Matthew 13:41
- Psalm 058:02

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H539, H817, H1361, H1497, H1500, H1540, H1556, H2181, H2388, H2398, H2399, H2403, H4560, H4603, H5003, H5753, H5766, H5771, H6213, H6466, H7683, H7760, H7847, G264, G2038, G2716, G3429, G3431, G3860, G3872, G3908, G4102, G4160, G4203

(**Go back to:** John 5:29; 8:34)

# condemn, condemned, condemnation

### Definition:

The terms "condemn" and "condemnation" refer to judging someone for doing something wrong.

  • Often the word "condemn" includes punishing that person for what they did wrong.
  • Sometimes "condemn" means to falsely accuse someone or to judge someone harshly.
  • The term "condemnation" refers to the act of condemning or accusing someone.

### Translation Suggestions:

  • Depending on the context, this term could be translated as "harshly judge" or "criticize falsely."
  • The phrase "condemn him" could be translated as,"judge that he is guilty" or "state that he must be punished for his sin."
  • The term "condemnation" could be translated as, "harsh judging" or "declaring to be guilty" or "punishment of guilt."

(See also: judge, punish)

### Bible References:

  • 1 John 03:20
  • Job 09:29
  • John 05:24
  • Luke 06:37
  • Matthew 12:07
  • Proverbs 17:15-16
  • Psalms 034:22
  • Romans 05:16

### Word Data:

  • Strong's: H6064, H7034, H7561, H8199, G176, G843, G2607, G2613, G2631, G2632, G2633, G2917, G2919, G2920, G5272, G6048

(**Go back to:** John 3:17; 3:18; 5:24)

# confess, confession

## Definition:

To confess means to admit or assert that something is true. A "confession" is a statement or admission that something is true.

- The term "confess" can refer to boldly stating the truth about God. It can also refer to admitting that we have sinned.
- The Bible says that if people confess their sins to God, he will forgive them.
- James the apostle wrote in his letter that when believers confess their sins to each other, this brings spiritual healing.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Philippians that someday everyone will confess or declare that Jesus is Lord.
- Paul also said that if people confess that Jesus is Lord and believe that God raised him from the dead, they will be saved.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "confess" could include, "admit" or "testify" or "declare" or "acknowledge" or "affirm."
- Different ways to translate "confession" could be, "declaration" or "testimony" or "statement about what we believe" or "admitting sin."

(See also: faith, testimony)

## Bible References:

- 1 John 01:8-10
- 2 John 01:7-8
- James 05:16
- Leviticus 05:5-6
- Matthew 03:4-6
- Nehemiah 01:6-7
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Psalms 038:17-18

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3034, H8426, G1843, G3670, G3671

(**Go back to:** John 1:20; 9:22; 12:42)

# consume, devour

## Definition:

The term "consume" literally means to use up something. It has several figurative meanings.

- In the Bible, the word "consume" often refers to destroying things or people.
- A fire is said to consume things, which means it destroys them by burning them up.
- God is described as a "consuming fire," which is a description of his anger against sin. His anger results in terrible punishment for sinners who do not repent.
- To consume food means to eat or drink something.
- The phrase, "consume the land" could be translated as "destroy the land."

## Translation Suggestions

- In the context of consuming the land or people, this term could be translated as "destroy."
- When fire is referred to, "consume" could be translated as "burn up."
- The burning bush that Moses saw "was not consumed" which could be translated as, "did not get burned up" or "did not burn up."
- When referring to eating, "consume" could be translated as "eat" or "devour."
- If someone's strength is "consumed," it means his strength is "used up" or "gone."
- The expression, "God is a consuming fire" could be translated as, "God is like a fire that burns things up" or "God is angry against sin and will destroy sinners like a fire."

(See also: devour, wrath)

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:38-40
- Deuteronomy 07:16
- Jeremiah 03:23-25
- Job 07:09
- Numbers 11:1-3

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H398, H402, H1086, H1104, H1197, H2628, H3615, H3617, H3857, H4529, H5595, H8046, H8552, G355, G2618, G2654, G2719, G5315

(**Go back to:** John 2:17)

# council

## Definition:

A council is a group of people who meet to discuss, give advice, and make decisions about important matters.

- A council is usually organized in an official and somewhat permanent way for a specific purpose, such as making decisions about legal matters.
- The "Jewish Council" in Jerusalem, also known as the "Sanhedrin," had 70 members, which included Jewish leaders such as chief priests, elders, scribes, Pharisees, and Sadducees who met regularly to decide matters of Jewish law. It was this council of religious leaders who put Jesus on trial and decided that he should be killed.
- There were also smaller Jewish councils in other cities.
- The apostle Paul was brought before a Roman council when he was arrested for teaching the gospel.
- Depending on the context, the word "council" could also be translated as "legal assembly" or "political assembly."
- To be "in council" means to be in a special meeting to decide something.
- Note that this is a different word than "counsel," which means, "wise advice."

(See also: assembly, counsel, Pharisee, law, priest, Sadducee, scribe)

## Bible References:

- Acts 07:57-58
- Acts 24:20
- John 03:02
- Luke 22:68
- Mark 13:09
- Matthew 05:22
- Matthew 26:59

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H4186, H5475, G1010, G4824, G4892

(**Go back to:** John 11:47)

# courage, courageous, encourage, encouragement, discourage, discouragement

## Facts:

The term "courage" refers to boldly facing or doing something that is difficult, frightening, or dangerous.

- The term, "courageous" describes someone who shows courage, who does the right thing even when feeling afraid or pressured to give up.
- A person shows courage when he faces emotional or physical pain with strength and perseverance.
- The expression "take courage" means, "don't be afraid" or "be assured that things will turn out well."
- When Joshua was preparing to go into the dangerous land of Canaan, Moses exhorted him to be "strong and courageous."
- The term "courageous" could also be translated as "brave" or "unafraid" or "bold."
- Depending on the context, to "have courage" could also be translated as, "be emotionally strong" or "be confident" or "stand firm."
- To "speak with courage" could be translated as, "speak boldly" or "speak without being afraid" or "speak confidently."

The terms "encourage" and encouragement" refer to saying and doing things to cause someone to have comfort, hope, confidence, and courage.

- A similar term is "exhort," which means to urge someone to reject an activity that is wrong and to instead do things that are good and right.
- The apostle Paul and other New Testament writers taught Christians to encourage one another to love and serve others.

The term "discourage" refers to saying and doing things that cause people to lose hope, confidence, and courage and so to have less desire to keep working hard to do what they know they should do.

## Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "encourage" could include "urge" or "comfort" or "say kind things" or "help and support."
- The phrase "give words of encouragement" means "say things that cause other people to feel loved, accepted, and empowered."

(See also: confidence, exhort, fear, strength)

## Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 01:37-38
- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 1 Chronicles 17:25
- Matthew 09:20-22
- 1 Corinthians 14:1-4
- 2 Corinthians 07:13
- Acts 05:12-13
- Acts 16:40
- Hebrews 03:12-13
- Hebrews 13:5-6

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H533, H553, H1368, H2388, H2388, H2428, H3820, H3824, H7307, G2114, G2115, G2174, G2292, G2293, G2294, G3870, G3874, G3954, G4389, G4837, G5111

(**Go back to:** John 16:33)

# court, courtyard

## Definition:

The terms "courtyard" and "court" refer to an enclosed area that is open to the sky and surrounded by walls. The term "court" also refers to a place where judges decide legal and criminal matters.

- The tabernacle was surrounded by one courtyard which was enclosed by walls made of thick, cloth curtains.
- The temple complex had three inner courtyards: one for the priests, one for Jewish men, and one for Jewish women.
- These inner courtyards were surrounded by a low stone wall that separated them from an outer courtyard where Gentiles were permitted to worship.
- The courtyard of a house was an open area in the middle of the house.
- The phrase "king's court" can refer to his palace or to a place in his palace where he makes judgments.
- The expression, "courts of Yahweh" is a figurative way of referring to Yahweh's dwelling place or to the place where people go to worship Yahweh.

## Translation Suggestions:

- The term "courtyard" could be translated as "enclosed space" or "walled-in land" or "temple grounds" or "temple enclosure."
- Sometimes the term "temple" may need to be translated as "temple courtyards" or "temple complex" so that it is clear that the courtyards are being referred to, not the temple building.
- The expression, "courts of Yahweh" could be translated as, "place where Yahweh lives" or "place where Yahweh is worshiped."
- The term used for a king's court could also be used to refer to Yahweh's court.

(See also: Gentile, judge, king, tabernacle, temple)

## Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:4-5
- Exodus 27:09
- Jeremiah 19:14-15
- Luke 22:55
- Matthew 26:69-70
- Numbers 03:26
- Psalms 065:4

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1508, H2691, H5835, H7339, H8651, G833, G4259

(**Go back to:** John 18:15)

# cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox

## Definition:

The terms "cow," "bull," "heifer," "ox," and "cattle" all refer to a kind of large, four-legged bovine animal that eats grass.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a "cow," the male is a "bull," and their offspring is a "calf."
- In the Bible, cattle were among the "clean" animals that the people could eat and use for sacrifice. They were primarily raised for their meat and milk.

A "heifer" is an adult female cow that has not yet given birth to a calf.

An "ox" is a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is "oxen." Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

- Throughout the Bible, oxen were depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
- Having oxen work together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase to "be under a yoke" became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
- A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: yoke)

## Bible References:

- Genesis 15:9-11
- Exodus 24:5-6
- Numbers 19:1-2
- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- 1 Samuel 01:24-25
- 1 Samuel 15:03
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- 1 Kings 01:09
- 2 Chronicles 11:15
- 2 Chronicles 15:10-11
- Matthew 22:4
- Luke 13:15
- Luke 14:05
- Hebrews 09:13

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H441, H504, H929, H1165, H1241, H1241, H1241, H4399, H4735, H4806, H5695, H5697, H5697, H6499, H6499, H6510, H6510, H6629, H7214, H7716, H7794, H7794, H7921, H8377, H8377, H8450, H8450, G1016, G1151, G2353, G2934, G3447, G3448, G4165, G5022, G5022

(**Go back to:** John 2:14; 2:15; 4:12)

# create, created, creation, creator

## Definition:

The term "create" means to make something or to cause something to be. Whatever is created is called a "creation." God is called the "Creator" because he caused everything in the entire universe to come into existence.

- When this term is used to refer to God creating the world, it means he made it out of nothing.
- When human beings "create" something, it means they made it out of things that already existed.
- Sometimes "create" is used in a figurative way to describe something abstract, such as creating peace, or creating a pure heart in someone.
- The term "creation" can refer to the very beginning of the world when God first created everything. It can also be used to refer generally to everything that God created. Sometimes the word "creation" refers more specifically to just the people in the world.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages may have to directly say that God created the world "out of nothing" to make sure this meaning is clear.
- The phrase, "since the creation of the world" means, "since the time when God created the world."
- A similar phrase, "at the beginning of creation" could be translated as, "when God created the world at the beginning of time," or "when the world was first created."
- To preach the good news to "all creation" means to preach the good news to "all people everywhere on earth."
- The phrase "Let all creation rejoice" means "Let everything that God created rejoice."
- Depending on the context, "create" could be translated as "make" or "cause to be" or "make out of nothing."
- The term "the Creator" could be translated as "the One who created everything" or "God, who made the whole world."
- Phrases like "your Creator" could be translated as "God, who created you."

(See also: God, good news, world)

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 11:9-10
- 1 Peter 04:17-19
- Colossians 01:15
- Galatians 06:15
- Genesis 01:01
- Genesis 14:19-20

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3335, H4639, H6213, H6385, H7069, G2041, G2602, G2675, G2936, G2937, G2939, G4160, G5480

(**Go back to:** John 17:24)

# cross

### Definition:

In Bible times, a cross was an upright wooden post stuck into the ground, with a horizontal wooden beam attached to it near the top.

- During the time of the Roman Empire, the Roman government would execute criminals by tying or nailing them to a cross and leaving them there to die.
- Jesus was falsely accused of crimes he did not commit and the Romans put him to death on a cross.
- Note that this is a completely different word from the verb "cross" that means to go over to the other side of something, such as a river or lake.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using a term in the target language that refers to the shape of a cross.
- Consider describing the cross as something on which people were killed, using phrases such as "execution post" or "tree of death."
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: crucify, Rome)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 01:17
- Colossians 02:15
- Galatians 06:12
- John 19:18
- Luke 09:23
- Luke 23:26
- Matthew 10:38
- Philippians 02:08

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **40:01** After the soldiers mocked Jesus, they led him away to crucify him. They made him carry the **cross** on which he would die.
- **40:02** The soldiers brought Jesus to a place called "the Skull" and nailed his arms and feet to the **cross**.
- **40:05** The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd mocked Jesus. They said to him, "If you are the Son of God, come down from the **cross** and save yourself! Then we will believe you."
- **49:10** When Jesus died on the **cross**, he received your punishment.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the **cross** instead of you, and that God raised him to life again.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G4716

(**Go back to:** John 19:17; 19:19; 19:25; 19:31)

# crown, crowned

## Definition:

A crown is a decorative, circular headpiece worn on the head of rulers such as kings and queens. The term to "crown" means to put a crown on someone's head; figuratively it means, to "honor."

- Crowns are usually made of gold or silver, and are embedded with precious gems such as emeralds and rubies.
- A crown was intended to be a symbol of a king's power and wealth.
- By contrast, the crown made of thorn branches that the Roman soldiers placed on Jesus' head was meant to mock him and hurt him.
- In ancient times, winners of athletic contests would be awarded a crown made out of olive branches. The apostle Paul mentions this crown in his second letter to Timothy.
- Used figuratively, to "crown" means to honor someone. We honor God by obeying him and praising him to others. This is like putting a crown on him and acknowledging that he is King.
- Pauls calls fellow believers his "joy and crown." In this expression, "crown" is used figuratively to mean that Paul has been greatly blessed and honored by how these believers have remained faithful in serving God.
- When used figuratively, "crown" could be translated as "prize" or "honor" or "reward."
- The figurative use of to "crown" could be translated as to "honor" or to "decorate."
- If a person is "crowned" this could be translated as "a crown was put on his head."
- The expression, "he was crowned with glory and honor" could be translated as, "glory and honor were bestowed on him" or "he was given glory and honor" or "he was endowed with glory and honor."

(See also: glory, king, olive)

## Bible References:

- John 19:03
- Lamentations 05:16
- Matthew 27:29
- Philippians 04:01
- Psalms 021:03
- Revelation 03:11

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3803, H3804, H5145, H5849, H5850, H6936, G1238, G4735, G4737

(**Go back to:** John 19:2; 19:5)

# crucify, crucified

**Definition:**

The term "crucify" means to execute someone by attaching him to a cross and leaving him there to suffer and die in great pain.

- The victim was either tied to the cross or nailed to it. Crucified people died from blood loss or from suffocation.
- The ancient Roman Empire frequently used this method of execution to punish and kill people who were terrible criminals or who had rebelled against the authority of their government.
- The Jewish religious leaders asked the Roman governor to order his soldiers to crucify Jesus. The soldiers nailed Jesus to a cross. He suffered there for six hours, and then died.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term "crucify" could be translated as, "kill on a cross" or "execute by nailing to a cross."

(See also: cross, Rome)

**Bible References:**

- Acts 02:23
- Galatians 02:20-21
- Luke 23:20-22
- Luke 23:34
- Matthew 20:17-19
- Matthew 27:23-24

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **39:11** But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, "**Crucify** him (Jesus)!"
- **39:12** Pilate became afraid that the crowd would begin to riot, so he ordered his soldiers to **crucify** Jesus.played a major role in the crucifixion of Jesus Christ.
- **40:01** After the soldiers mocked Jesus, they led him away to **crucify** him. They made him carry the cross on which he would die.
- **40:04** Jesus was **crucified** between two robbers.
- **43:06** "Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know. But you **crucified** him!"
- **43:09** "You **crucified** this man, Jesus."
- **44:08** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You **crucified** Jesus, but God raised him to life again!"

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G388, G4362, G4717, G4957

# cry, cry out, outcry

### Definition:

The terms "cry" or "cry out" usually mean to say something loudly or urgently. Someone can "cry out" in pain, distress, anger, or fear, often with the intent of asking for help.

- The phrase "cry out" can also mean to shout or to call out with the intent of asking for help.
- This term could also be translated as "exclaim loudly" or "urgently ask for help," depending on the context.
- An expression such as, "I cry out to you" could be translated as, "I call to you for help" or "I urgently ask you for help."

(See also: call, plead)

### Bible References:

- Job 27:09
- Mark 05:5-6
- Mark 06:48-50
- Psalm 022:1-2

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1058, H2199, H2201, H6030, H6463, H6670, H6682, H6817, H6818, H6873, H6963, H7121, H7123, H7321, H7440, H7442, H7723, H7737, H7768, H7771, H7775, H8663, G310, G349, G863, G994, G995, G1916, G2019, G2799, G2805, G2896, G2905, G2906, G2929, G4377, G5455

(**Go back to:** John 1:15; 1:23; 7:28; 7:37; 11:31; 11:33; 11:35; 12:44; 16:20; 18:40; 19:6; 19:12; 19:15; 20:11; 20:13; 20:15)

# cure, cured, heal, healed, healing, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy

## Definition:

The terms "heal" and "cure" both mean to cause a sick, wounded, or disabled person to be healthy again.

- A person who is "healed" or "cured" has been "made well" or "made healthy."
- Healing can happen naturally since God gave our bodies the ability to recover from many kinds of wounds and diseases. Thsi kind of healing usually happens slowly.
- However, certain conditions, such as being blind or paralyzed, and certain serious diseases, such as leprosy, however do not heal on their own. When people are healed of these things, it is a miracle that usually happens suddenly.
- For example, Jesus healed many people who were blind or lame or diseased, and they became well right away.
- The apostles also healed people miraculously, such as when Peter caused a crippled man to immediately be able to walk.

(See also: miracle)

## Bible References:

- Acts 05:16
- Acts 08:06
- Luke 05:13
- Luke 06:19
- Luke 08:43
- Matthew 04:23-25
- Matthew 09:35
- Matthew 13:15

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:14** One of the miracles happened to Naaman, an enemy commander, who had a horrible skin disease. He had heard of Elisha so he went and asked Elisha to **heal** him.
- **21:10** He (Isaiah) also predicted that the Messiah would **heal** sick people and those who could not hear, see, speak, or walk.
- **26:06** Jesus continued saying, "And during the time of the prophet Elisha, there were many people in Israel with skin diseases. But Elisha did not **heal** any of them. He only **healed** the skin disease of Naaman, a commander of Israel's enemies."
- **26:08** They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and Jesus **healed** them.
- **32:14** She had heard that Jesus had **healed** many sick people and thought, "I'm sure that if I can just touch Jesus' clothes, then I will be **healed**, too!"
- **44:03** Immediately, God **healed** the lame man, and he began to walk and jump around, and to praise God.
- **44:08** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you **healed** by the power of Jesus the Messiah."
- **49:02** Jesus did many miracles that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, **healed** many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H724, H1369, H1455, H2280, H2421, H2896, H3545, H4832, H4974, H7495, H7499, H7500, H7725, H7965, H8549, H8585, H8644, H622, G1295, G1743, G2322, G2323, G2386, G2390, G2392, G2511, G3647, G4982, G5198, G5199

(**Go back to:** John 4:47; 5:10; 5:13; 7:23; 12:40)

# curse, cursed, cursing

## Definition:

The term "curse" means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

## Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as "cause bad things to happen to" or "declare that something bad will happen to" or "swear to cause evil things to happen to."
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as, "punish by allowing bad things to happen."
- The term "cursed" when used to describe people could be translated as, "(this person) will experience much trouble."
- The phrase "cursed be" could be translated as, "May (this person) experience great difficulties."
- The phrase, "Cursed is the ground" could be translated as, "The soil will not be very fertile."
- However, if the target language has the phrase "cursed be" and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: bless)

## Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 2 Peter 02:12-14
- Galatians 03:10
- Galatians 03:14
- Genesis 03:14
- Genesis 03:17
- James 03:10
- Numbers 22:06
- Psalms 109:28

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:09** God said to the snake, "You are **cursed**!"
- **02:11** "Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food."
- **04:04** "I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you."
- **39:07** Then Peter vowed, saying, "May God **curse** me if I know this man!"
- **50:16** Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H422, H423, H779, H1288, H2763, H2764, H3994, H5344, H6895, H7043, H7045, H7621, H8381, G331, G332, G685, G1944, G2551, G2652, G2653, G2671, G2672, G6035

(**Go back to:** John 7:49)

# darkness

### Definition:

The term "darkness" literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of this term:

- As a metaphor, "darkness" means "impurity" or "evil" or "spiritual blindness."
- It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
- The expression "dominion of darkness" refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
- The term "darkness" can also be used as a metaphor for death. (See: Metaphor)
- People who do not know God are said to be "living in darkness," which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
- God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
- The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as "outer darkness."

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
- For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, "darkness of night" (as opposed to "light of day") or "not seeing anything, like at night" or "evil, like a dark place".

(See also: corrupt, dominion, kingdom, light, redeem, righteous)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 01:06
- 1 John 02:08
- 1 Thessalonians 05:05
- 2 Samuel 22:12
- Colossians 01:13
- Isaiah 05:30
- Jeremiah 13:16
- Joshua 24:7
- Matthew 08:12

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H652, H653, H2816, H2821, H2822, H2825, H3990, H3991, H4285, H5890, H6205, G2217, G4652, G4653, G4655, G4656

(**Go back to:** John 1:5; 3:19; 6:17; 8:12; 12:35; 12:46; 20:1)

# daughter of Zion

## Definition:

"Daughter of Zion" is a figurative way of referring to the people of Israel. It is usually used in prophecies.

- In the Old Testament, "Zion" is often used as another name for the city of Jerusalem.
- Both "Zion" and "Jerusalem" are also used to refer to Israel.
- The term "Daughter" is a term of endearment or affection. It is a metaphor for the patience and care that God has for his people.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate this could include "my daughter Israel, from Zion" or "people from Zion, who are like a daughter to me" or "Zion, my dear people Israel."
- It is best to keep the term "Zion" in this expression since it is used many times in the Bible. A note could be included in the translation to explain its figurative meaning and prophetic use.
- It is also better to keep the term "Daughter" in the translation of this expression, as long as it is understood correctly.

(See also: Jerusalem, prophet, Zion)

## Bible References:

- Jeremiah 06:02
- John 12:15
- Matthew 21:05

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1323, H6726

(**Go back to:** John 12:15)

# David

## Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Goliath, Philistines, Saul (OT))

## Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 17:12-13
- 1 Samuel 20:34
- 2 Samuel 05:02
- 2 Timothy 02:08
- Acts 02:25
- Acts 13:22
- Luke 01:32
- Mark 02:26

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:02** God chose a young Israelite named **David** to be king after Saul. **David** was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. … **David** was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **17:03 David** was also a great soldier and leader. When **David** was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath.
- **17:04** Saul became jealous of the people's love for **David**. Saul tried many times to kill him, so **David** hid from Saul.
- **17:05** God blessed **David** and made him successful. **David** fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.
- **17:06 David** wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **17:09 David** ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what **David** had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell **David** how evil his sin was. **David** repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, **David** followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1732, G1138

(**Go back to:** John 7:42)

# day

### Definition:

The term "day" literally refers to a period of time lasting 24 hours beginning at sundown. It is also used figuratively.

- For the Israelites and the Jews, a day began at sunset of one day and ended at sunset of the next day.
- Sometimes the term "day" is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the "day of Yahweh" or "last days."
- Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate "day" nonfiguratively.
- Other translations of "day" could include, "time" or "season" or "occasion" or "event," depending on the context.

(See also: judgment day, last day)

### Bible References:

- Acts 20:06
- Daniel 10:04
- Ezra 06:15
- Ezra 06:19
- Matthew 09:15

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H3118, H6242, G2250

# deceive, deceit, deceiver, deceitful, deception, illusions

## Definition:

The term "deceive" means to cause someone to believe something that is not true. The act of deceiving someone is called "deceit" or "deception."

- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a "deceiver." For example, Satan is called a "deceiver." The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as "deceptive."
- The terms "deceit" and "deception" have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms "deceitful" and "deceptive" have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "deceive" could include "lie to" or "cause to have a false belief" or "cause someone to think something that is not true."
- The term "deceived" could also be translated as "caused to think something false" or "lied to" or "tricked" or "fooled" or "misled."
- "Deceiver" could be translated as "liar" or "one who misleads" or "someone who deceives."
- Depending on the context, the terms "deception" or "deceit" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "falsehood" or "lying" or "trickery" or "dishonesty."
- The terms "deceptive" or "deceitful" could be translated as "untruthful" or "misleading" or "lying" to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: true)

## Bible References:

- 1 John 01:08
- 1 Timothy 02:14
- 2 Thessalonians 02:3-4
- Genesis 03:12-13
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Leviticus 19:11-12
- Matthew 27:64
- Micah 06:11

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H898, H2048, H3577, H3584, H3868, H4123, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H5558, H6121, H6231, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8582, H8591, H8649, G538, G539, G1386, G1387, G1388, G1818, G3884, G4105, G4106, G4108, G5422, G5423

(**Go back to:** )

# declare, proclaim, announce

## Definition:

The terms "declare" and "declaration" refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something. Other terms with similar meaning include "proclaim," "proclamation," "announce," and "announcement."

- A "declaration" not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by "the declaration of Yahweh" or "this is what Yahweh declares." This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "declare" could also be translated as "proclaim" or "publicly state" or "strongly say" or "emphatically state."
- The term "declaration" could also be translated as "statement" or "proclamation."
- The phrase "this is Yahweh's declaration" could be translated as "this is what Yahweh declares" or "this is what Yahweh says."

(See also: preach, decree)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:24
- 1 Corinthians 15:31-32
- 1 Samuel 24:17-18
- Amos 02:16
- Ezekiel 05:11-12
- Matthew 07:21-23

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H262, H559, H816, H874, H1696, H3045, H4853, H5002, H5042, H5046, H5608, H6567, H7121, H7561, H7878, H8085, G312, G518, G669, G1229, G1344, G1555, G1718, G1834, G2097, G2511, G2605, G2607, G3140, G3670, G3724, G3822, G3870, G3955, G4296

(**Go back to:** John 4:25; 5:15; 16:13; 16:14; 16:15)

# defile, defiled

## Definition:

The terms "defile" and "be defiled" refer to becoming polluted or dirty. Something can be defiled in a physical, moral, or ritual sense.

- God warned the Israelites to not defile themselves by eating or touching things that he had declared as "unclean" and "unholy."
- Certain things such as dead bodies and contagious diseases were declared by God to be unclean and would defile a person if they touched them.
- God commanded the Israelites to avoid sexual sins. These would defile them and make them unacceptable to God.
- There were also certain kinds of bodily processes that defiled a person temporarily until he could become ritually pure again.
- In the New Testament, Jesus taught that sinful thoughts and actions are what truly defile a person.

## Translation Suggestions:

- The term "defile" can also be translated as "cause to be unclean" or "cause to be unrighteous" or "cause to be ritually unacceptable."
- To "be defiled" could be translated as "become unclean" or "be caused to be morally unacceptable (to God)" or "become ritually unacceptable."

(See also: clean, clean)

## Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:08
- Exodus 20:24-26
- Genesis 34:27
- Genesis 49:04
- Isaiah 43:27-28
- Leviticus 11:43-45
- Mark 07:14-16
- Matthew 15:10

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1351, H1352, H1602, H2490, H2491, H2610, H2930, H2931, G2839, G2840, G3392, G3435

(**Go back to:** John 18:28)

# demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit

### Definition:

All these terms refer to demons, which are spirit beings that oppose God's will.

- God created angels to serve him. When the devil rebelled against God, some of the angels also rebelled and were thrown out of heaven. It is believed that demons and evil spirits are these "fallen angels."
- Sometimes these demons are called "unclean spirits." The term "unclean" means "impure" or "evil" or "unholy."
- Because demons serve the devil, they do evil things. Sometimes they live inside people and control them.
- Demons are more powerful than human beings, but not as powerful as God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "demon" could also be translated as "evil spirit."
- The term "unclean spirit" could also be translated as "impure spirit" or "corrupt spirit" or "evil spirit."
- Make sure that the word or phrase used to translate this term is different from the term used to refer to the devil.
- Also consider how the term "demon" is translated in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: demon-possessed, Satan, false god, false god, angel, evil, clean)

### Bible References:

- James 02:19
- James 03:15
- Luke 04:36
- Mark 03:22
- Matthew 04:24

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **26:09** Many people who had **demons** in them were brought to Jesus. When Jesus commanded them, the **demons** came out of the people, and often shouted, "You are the Son of God!"
- **32:08** The **demons** came out of the man and entered the pigs.
- **47:05** Finally one day when the slave girl started yelling, Paul turned to her and said to the **demon** that was in her, "In the name of Jesus, come out of her." Right away the **demon** left her.
- **49:02** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out **demons**, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2932, H7307, H7451, H7700, G169, G1139, G1140, G1141, G1142, G4190, G4151, G4152, G4189

(**Go back to:** John 7:20; 8:48; 8:49; 8:52; 10:20; 10:21)

# demon-possessed

## Definition:

A person who is demon-possessed has a demon or evil spirit that controls what he does and thinks.

- Often a demon-possessed person will hurt himself or other people because the demon causes him to do that.
- Jesus healed demon-possessed people by commanding the demons to come out of them. This is often called "casting out" demons.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include "demon-controlled" or "controlled by an evil spirit" or "having an evil spirit living inside."

(See also: demon)

## Bible References:

- Mark 01:32
- Matthew 04:24
- Matthew 08:16
- Matthew 08:33

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **26:09** Many people who had **demons in them** were brought to Jesus.
- **32:02** When they reached the other side of the lake, a **demon-possessed** man came running up to Jesus.
- **32:06** The man **with the demon** cried out in a loud voice, "What do you want with me, Jesus, Son of the Most High God? Please do not torture me!"
- **32:09** The people from the town came and saw the man who used to **have the demons**.
- **47:03** Every day as they (Paul and Silas) walked there, a slave girl **possessed by a demon** followed them.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G1139

(**Go back to:** John 8:48; 8:52; 10:20; 10:21)

# descend, descendant

## Definition:

A "descendant" is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

- For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
- A person's descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob's descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The phrase "descended from" is another way of saying "a descendant of" as in "Abraham was descended from Noah." This could also be translated as "from the family line of."

(See also: Abraham, ancestor, Jacob, Noah, twelve tribes of Israel)

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:4-5
- Acts 13:23
- Deuteronomy 02:20-22
- Genesis 10:1
- Genesis 28:12-13

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:09** "The woman's **descendant** will crush your head, and you will wound his heel."
- **04:09** "I give the land of Canaan to your **descendants**."
- **05:10** "Your **descendants** will be more than the stars in the sky."
- **17:07** "Someone from your family will always rule as king over Israel, and the Messiah will be one of your **descendants**!"
- **18:13** The kings of Judah were **descendants** of David.
- **21:04** God promised King David that the Messiah would be one of David's own **descendants**.
- **48:13** God promised David that the Messiah would be one of his **descendants**. Jesus, the Messiah, was that special **descendant** of David.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H319, H1004, H1121, H1323, H1755, H2232, H2233, H3205, H3211, H3318, H3409, H4294, H5220, H6849, H7611, H8435, G1074, G1085, G4690

(**Go back to:** John 8:33; 8:37)

# desert, wilderness

## Definition:

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as "wilderness."
- "Wilderness" conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as "deserted place" or "remote place" or "uninhabited place."

## Bible References:

- Acts 13:16-18
- Acts 21:38
- Exodus 04:27-28
- Genesis 37:21-22
- John 03:14
- Luke 01:80
- Luke 09:12-14
- Mark 01:03
- Matthew 04:01
- Matthew 11:08

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H776, H2723, H3293, H3452, H4057, H6160, H6723, H6728, H6921, H8047, H8414, G2047, G2048

(**Go back to:** John 1:23; 3:14; 6:31; 6:49; 11:54)

# die, dead, deadly, death,

## Definition:

The term "death" refers to being physically dead instead of alive.

### 1. Physical death

- To "die" means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- The expression "put to death" refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

### 2. Eternal death

- Eternal death is the separation of a person from God.
- This is the kind of death that happened to Adam when he sinned and disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- This same kind of death happens to every person, because we sin. But God gives us eternal life when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

## Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
- In some languages, to "die" may be expressed as to "not live." The term "dead" may be translated as "not alive" or "not having any life" or "not living."
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as to "pass away" in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, eternal life and eternal death are often compared to physical life and physical death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and eternal death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say "eternal death" when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say "physical death" in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression "the dead" is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as "dead people" or "people who have died." (See: nominal adjective)
- The expression "put to death" could also be translated as "kill" or "murder" or "execute."

(See also: believe, faith, life)

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:21
- 1 Thessalonians 04:17
- Acts 10:42
- Acts 14:19
- Colossians 02:15
- Colossians 02:20
- Genesis 02:15-17
- Genesis 34:27
- Matthew 16:28
- Romans 05:10
- Romans 05:12
- Romans 06:10

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **01:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **02:11** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **07:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **37:05** "Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **40:08** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:07** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **48:02** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H6, H1478, H1826, H1934, H2491, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H8045, H8546, H8552, G336, G337, G520, G599, G615, G622, G1634, G1935, G2079, G2253, G2286, G2287, G2288, G2289, G2348, G2837, G2966, G3498, G3499, G3500, G4430, G4880, G4881, G5053, G5054

# disciple

### Definition:

The term "disciple" refers to a person who spends much time with a teacher, learning from that teacher's character and teaching.

- The people who followed Jesus around, listening to his teachings and obeying them, were called his "disciples."
- John the Baptist also had disciples.
- During Jesus' ministry, there were many disciples who followed him and heard his teachings.
- Jesus chose twelve disciples to be his closest followers; these men became known as his "apostles."
- Jesus' twelve apostles continued to be known as his "disciples" or "the 12."
- Just before Jesus went up to heaven, he commanded his disciples to teach other people about how to become Jesus' disciples, too.
- Anyone who believes in Jesus and obeys his teachings is called a disciple of Jesus.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "disciple" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "follower" or "student" or "pupil" or "learner."
- Make sure that the translation of this term does not refer only to a student who learns in a classroom.
- The translation of this term should also be different from the translation of "apostle."

(See also: apostle, believe, Jesus, John (the Baptist), the twelve)

### Bible References:

- Acts 06:1
- Acts 09:26-27
- Acts 11:26
- Acts 14:22
- John 13:23
- Luke 06:40
- Matthew 11:03
- Matthew 26:33-35
- Matthew 27:64

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **30:08** He (Jesus) gave the pieces to his **disciples** to give to the people. The **disciples** kept passing out the food, and it never ran out!
- **38:01** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his **disciples** that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- **38:11** Then Jesus went with his **disciples** to a place called Gethsemane. Jesus told his **disciples** to pray that they would not enter into temptation.
- **42:10** Jesus said to his **disciples**, "All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me. So go, make **disciples** of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit, and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3928, G3100, G3101, G3102

(**Go back to:** John 1:35; 1:37; 2:2; 2:11; 2:12; 2:17; 2:22; 3:22; 3:25; 4:1; 4:2; 4:8; 4:27; 4:31; 4:33; 6:3; 6:8; 6:12; 6:16; 6:22; 6:24; 6:60; 6:61; 6:66; 7:3; 8:31; 9:2; 9:27; 9:28; 11:7; 11:8; 11:12; 11:16; 11:54; 12:4; 12:16; 13:5; 13:22; 13:23; 13:35; 15:8; 16:17; 16:29; 18:1; 18:2; 18:15; 18:16; 18:17; 18:19; 18:25; 19:26; 19:27; 19:38; 20:2; 20:3; 20:4; 20:8; 20:10; 20:18; 20:19; 20:20; 20:25; 20:26; 20:30; 21:1; 21:2; 21:4; 21:7; 21:8; 21:12; 21:14; 21:20; 21:23; 21:24)

# disobey, disobeyed, disobedience, rebellious

### Definition:

The term "disobey" means to not obey what someone in authority has commanded or instructed. A person who does this is being "disobedient."

- A person who does something he was told not to do is disobeying.
- To disobey also means to refuse to do something that was commanded.
- The term "disobedient" is also used to describe the character of someone who habitually disobeys or rebels. It means that they are sinful or wicked.
- The term "disobedience" means "the act of not obeying" or "behavior that is against what God wants."
- A "disobedient people" could be translated by "people who keep on disobeying" or "people who do not do what God commands."

(See also: authority, evil, sin, obey)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 13:21
- Acts 26:19
- Colossians 03:07
- Luke 01:17
- Luke 06:49
- Psalms 089:30-32

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:11** God said to the man, "You listened to your wife and **disobeyed** me."
- **13:07** If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they **disobeyed** them, God would punish them.
- **16:02** Because the Israelites kept **disobeying** God, he punished them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **35:12** "The older son said to his father, 'All these years I have worked faithfully for you! I never **disobeyed** you, and still you did not give me one small goat so I could celebrate with my friends.'"

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4784, H5674, G506, G543, G544, G545, G3847, G3876

(**Go back to:** John 3:36)

# disperse, dispersion, scatter, distributed

### Definition:

The terms "disperse" and "dispersion" refer to the scattering of people or things into many different directions.

- In the Old Testament, God talks about "dispersing" people, causing them to have to separate and live in different places apart from each other. He did this to punish them for their sin. Perhaps being dispersed would help them repent and start worshiping God again.
- The term "dispersion" is used in the New Testament to refer to Christians who had to leave their homes and move to many different locations to escape persecution.
- The phrase "the dispersion" could be translated as "believers in many different places" or "the people who moved away to live in different nations."
- The term "disperse" could be translated as "send away into many different places" or "scatter abroad" or "cause to move away to live in different countries."

(See also: believe, persecute)

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:01
- Ezekiel 12:15
- Ezekiel 30:23
- Psalms 018:14

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2219, H5310, H6327, H6340, H6504, H8600, G1287, G1290, G4650

(**Go back to:** John 7:35)

# donkey, mule

## Definition:

A donkey is a four-legged work animal, similar to a horse, but smaller and with longer ears.

- A mule is the sterile offspring of a male donkey and a female horse.
- Mules are very strong animals and so they are valuable work animals.
- Both donkeys and mules are used for carrying burdens and people when traveling.
- In Bible times, kings would ride a donkey in times of peace, rather than a horse, which was used for times of war.
- Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a young donkey a week before he was crucified there.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:32-34
- 1 Samuel 09:04
- 2 Kings 04:21-22
- Deuteronomy 05:12-14
- Luke 13:15
- Matthew 21:02

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H860, H2543, H3222, H5895, H6167, H6501, H6505, H6506, G3678, G3688, G5268

(**Go back to:** John 12:14; 12:15)

# dove, pigeon

### Definition:

Doves and pigeons are two kinds of small, gray-brown birds that look similar. A dove is often thought of as being lighter in color, almost white.

- Some languages have two different names for them, while others use the same name for both.
- Doves and pigeons were used in sacrifices to God, especially for people who could not afford to buy a larger animal.
- A dove brought the leaf of an olive tree to Noah when the flood waters were going down.
- Doves sometimes symbolize purity, innocence, or peace.
- If doves or pigeons are not known in the language area where the translation is being done, this term could be translated as "a small grayish brown bird called a dove" or "a small gray or brown bird, similar to a (name of local bird)".
- If both a dove and a pigeon are referred to in the same verse, it is best to use two different words for these birds, if possible.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: olive, innocent, pure)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 08:09
- Luke 02:22-24
- Mark 01:10
- Matthew 03:16
- Matthew 21:12-14

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1469, H1686, H3123, H8449, G4058

(**Go back to:** John 1:32; 2:14; 2:16)

# drunk, drunkard

### Facts:

The term "drunk" means to be intoxicated from drinking too much of an alcoholic beverage.

- A "drunkard" is a person who is often drunk. This kind of person could also be referred to as an "alcoholic."
- The Bible tells believers not to be drunk with alcoholic drinks, but to be controlled by God's Holy Spirit.
- The Bible teaches that drunkenness is unwise and influences a person to sin in other ways.
- Other ways to translate "drunk" could include "inebriated" or "intoxicated" or "having too much alcohol" or "filled with fermented drink."

(See also: wine)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:11-13
- 1 Samuel 25:36
- Jeremiah 13:13
- Luke 07:34
- Luke 21:34
- Proverbs 23:19-21

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5433, H7301, H7910, H7937, H7941, H7943, H8354, H8358, G3178, G3182, G3183, G3184, G3630, G3632

(**Go back to:** John 2:10)

# earth, earthen, earthly

### Definition:

The term "earth" refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

- "Earth" can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
- This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth. (See: metonymy)
- The expressions "let the earth be glad" and "he will judge the earth" are examples of figurative uses of this term.
- The term "earthly" usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, "earth" could also be translated as "world" or "land" or "dirt" or "soil."
- When used figuratively, "earth" could be translated as "people on the earth" or "people living on earth" or "everything on earth."
- Ways to translate "earthly" could include "physical" or "things of this earth" or "visible."

(See also: spirit, world)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 02:11-12
- Daniel 04:35
- Luke 12:51
- Matthew 06:10
- Matthew 11:25
- Zechariah 06:05

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H127, H772, H776, H778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G1093, G1919, G2709, G2886, G3625, G4578, G5517

(**Go back to:** John 3:12; 3:31; 12:24; 12:32; 17:4)

# Elijah

### Facts:

Elijah was one of the most important prophets of Yahweh. Elijah prophesied during the reigns of several kings of Israel and Judah, including King Ahab.

- God did many miracles through Elijah, including raising a dead boy back to life.
- Elijah rebuked King Ahab for worshiping the false god Baal.
- He challenged the prophets of Baal to a test that proved that Yahweh is the only true God.
- At the end of Elijah's life, God miraculously took him up to heaven while he was still alive.
- Hundreds of years later, Elijah, along with Moses, appeared with Jesus on a mountain, and they talked together about Jesus' coming suffering and death in Jerusalem.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: miracle, prophet, Yahweh)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 17:1
- 2 Kings 01:3-4
- James 05:16-18
- John 01:19-21
- John 01:24-25
- Mark 09:05

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:02 Elijah** was a prophet when Ahab was king over the kingdom of Israel.
- **19:02 Elijah** said to Ahab, "There will be no rain or dew in the kingdom of Israel until I say so."
- **19:03** God told **Elijah** to go to a stream in the wilderness to hide from Ahab who wanted to kill him. Every morning and every evening, birds would bring him bread and meat.
- **19:04** But they took care of **Elijah**, and God provided for them so that their flour jar and their bottle of oil never became empty.
- **19:05** After three and a half years, God told **Elijah** to return to the kingdom of Israel and speak with Ahab because he was going to send rain again.
- **19:07** Then **Elijah** said to the prophets of Baal, "Kill a bull and prepare it as a sacrifice, but do not light the fire."
- **19:12** Then **Elijah** said, "Do not let any of the prophets of Baal escape!"
- **36:03** Then Moses and the prophet **Elijah** appeared. These men had lived hundreds of years before this. They talked with Jesus about his death that would soon happen in Jerusalem.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H452, G2243

(**Go back to:** John 1:21; 1:25)

# Ephraim, Ephraimite

### Facts:

Ephraim was the second son of Joseph. His descendants, the Ephraimites, formed one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- The tribe of Ephraim was one of the ten tribes that were located in the northern part of Israel.
- Sometimes the name Ephraim is used in the Bible to refer to the whole northern kingdom of Israel. (See: synecdoche)
- Ephraim was apparently a very mountainous or hilly area, based on references to "the hill country of Ephraim" or "the mountains of Ephraim."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: kingdom of Israel, twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:66-69
- 2 Chronicles 13:4-5
- Ezekiel 37:16
- Genesis 41:52
- Genesis 48:1-2
- John 11:54

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H669, H673, G2187

(**Go back to:** John 11:54)

# eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever

## Definition:

The terms "everlasting" and "eternal" have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term "eternity" refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms "eternal life" and "everlasting life" are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.

The term "forever" refers to never-ending time.

- The phrase "forever and ever" has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like. It emphasizes that something will always happen or exist. It refers to time that never ends.
- God said that David's throne would last "forever." This is referred to the fact that David's descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "eternal" or "everlasting" could include"unending" or "never stopping" or "always continuing."
- The terms "eternal life" and "everlasting life" could also be translated as "life that never ends" or "life that continues without stopping" or "the raising up of our bodies to live forever."
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate "eternity" could include "existing outside of time" or "unending life" or "life in heaven."
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- "Forever" could also be translated by "always" or "never ending."
- The phrase "will last forever" could also be translated as "always exist" or "will never stop" or "will always continue."
- The emphatic phrase "forever and ever" could also be translated as "for always and always" or "not ever ending" or "which never, ever ends."
- David's throne lasting forever could be translated as "David's descendant will reign forever" or "a descendant of David will always be reigning."

(See also: David, reign, life)

## Bible References:

- Genesis 17:08
- Genesis 48:04
- Exodus 15:17
- 2 Samuel 03:28-30
- 1 Kings 02:32-33
- Job 04:20-21
- Psalms 021:04
- Isaiah 09:6-7
- Isaiah 40:27-28
- Daniel 07:18
- Luke 18:18
- Acts 13:46

- Romans 05:21
- Hebrews 06:19-20
- Hebrews 10:11-14
- 1 John 01:02
- 1 John 05:12
- Revelation 01:4-6
- Revelation 22:3-5

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?"
- **28:01** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, "Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?" Jesus said to him, "Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God's laws."
- **28:10** Jesus answered, "Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name's sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H4481, H5331, H5703, H5705, H5769, H5865, H5957, H6924, G126, G165, G166, G1336

(**Go back to:** John 3:15; 3:16; 3:36; 4:14; 4:36; 5:24; 5:39; 6:27; 6:40; 6:47; 6:54; 6:68; 10:28; 12:25; 12:50; 17:2; 17:3)

# evil, wicked, unpleasant

## Definition:

In the Bible, the term "evil" can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

- While "evil" may describe a person's character, "wicked" may refer more to a person's behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term "wickedness" refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms "evil" and "wicked" can be translated as "bad" or "sinful" or "immoral."
- Other ways to translate these could include "not good" or "not righteous" or "not moral."
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, sin, good, righteous, demon)

## Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 06:10
- 3 John 01:10
- Genesis 02:17
- Genesis 06:5-6
- Job 01:01
- Job 08:20
- Judges 09:57
- Luke 06:22-23
- Matthew 07:11-12
- Proverbs 03:07
- Psalms 022:16-17

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:04** "God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does."
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **04:02** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **08:12** "You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!"
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:01** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:08** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- **45:02** They said, "We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!"
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H205, H605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2254, H2617, H3399, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G92, G113, G459, G932, G987, G988, G1426, G2549, G2551, G2554, G2555, G2556, G2557, G2559, G2560, G2635, G2636, G4151, G4189, G4190, G4191, G5337

(**Go back to:** John 3:19; 3:20; 5:29; 7:7; 17:15; 18:23; 18:30)

# ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

### Definition:

A "sheep" is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a "ram." A female sheep is called a "ewe." The plural of "sheep" is also "sheep."

- A baby sheep is called a "lamb."
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: Israel, lamb, sacrifice, shepherd)

### Bible References:

- Acts 08:32
- Genesis 30:32
- John 02:14
- Luke 15:05
- Mark 06:34
- Matthew 09:36
- Matthew 10:06
- Matthew 12:12
- Matthew 25:33

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:12** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **17:02** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father's **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **30:03** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **38:08** Jesus said, "All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, 'I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.'"

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H352, H1494, H1798, H2169, H3104, H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H5739, H5763, H6260, H6629, H6792, H7353, H7462, H7716, G4165, G4262, G4263

(**Go back to:** John 2:14; 2:15; 5:2; 10:1; 10:2; 10:3; 10:4; 10:7; 10:8; 10:11; 10:12; 10:13; 10:15; 10:16; 10:26; 10:27; 21:16; 21:17)

# exult, exultant

## Definition:

The terms "exult" and "exultant" refer to being very happy because of a success or special blessing.

- To "exult" includes a feeling of celebrating something wonderful.
- A person can exult in God's goodness.
- The term "exultant" can also include being arrogant in one's feeling of gladness about success or prosperity.
- The term "exult" could also be translated as "celebrate joyfully" or "praise with great joy."
- Depending on the context, the term "exultant" could be translated as "praising triumphantly" or "celebrating with self praise" or "arrogant."

(See also: arrogant, joy, praise, rejoice)

## Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:1
- Isaiah 13:03
- Job 06:10
- Psalm 068:1-3
- Zephaniah 02:15

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H5539, H5947, H5970

(**Go back to:** John 5:35; 8:56)

# face, facial

## Definition:

The word "face" literally refers to the front part of a person's head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

- The expression "your face" is often a figurative way of saying "you." Similarly, the expression "my face" often means "I" or "me."
- In a physical sense, to "face" someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To "face each other" means to "look directly at each other."
- Being "face to face" means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus "steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem," it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To "set one's face against" people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression "face of the land" refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a "famine covering the face of the earth" refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression "do not hide your face from your people" means "do not reject your people" or "do not desert your people" or "do not stop taking care of your people."

## Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term to "face" could be translated as to "turn toward" or to "look at directly" or to "look at the face of."
- The expression "face to face" could be translated as "up close" or "right in front of" or "in the presence of."
- Depending on the context, the expression "before his face" could be translated as "ahead of him" or "in front of him" or "before him" or "in his presence."
- The expression "set his face toward" could be translated as "began traveling toward" or "firmly made up his mind to go to."
- The expression "hide his face from" could be translated as "turn away from" or "stop helping or protecting" or "reject."
- To "set his face against" a city or people could be translated as "look at with anger and condemn" or "refuse to accept" or "decide to reject" or "condemn and reject" or "pass judgment on."
- The expression "say it to their face" could be translated as "say it to them directly" or "say it to them in their presence" or "say it to them in person."
- The expression "on the face of the land" could also be translated as "throughout the land" or "over the whole earth" or "living throughout the earth."

## Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 05:04
- Genesis 33:10

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H600, H639, H5869, H6440, H8389, G3799, G4383, G4750

(**Go back to:** John 11:44)

# faith

## Definition:

In general, the term "faith" refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To "have faith" in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To "have faith in Jesus" means to believe all of God's teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes "faith" refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression "the truths of the faith."
- In contexts such as "keep the faith" or "abandon the faith," the term "faith" refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

## Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, "faith" can be translated as "belief" or "conviction" or "confidence" or "trust."
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb "believe." (See: abstractnouns)
- The expression "keep the faith" could be translated by "keep believing in Jesus" or "continue to believe in Jesus."
- The sentence "they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith" could be translated by "they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught."
- The expression "my true son in the faith" could be translated by something like "who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus" or "my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus."

(See also: believe, faithful)

## Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:07
- Acts 06:7
- Galatians 02:20-21
- James 02:20

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:06** When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham's **faith** by saying, "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."
- **31:07** Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, "You man of little **faith**, why did you doubt?"
- **32:16** Jesus said to her, "Your **faith** has healed you. Go in peace."
- **38:09** Then Jesus said to Peter, "Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your **faith** will not fail.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H529, H530, G1680, G3640, G4102, G6066

(**Go back to:** John 4 General Notes)

# fear, afraid, dread

### Definition:

The terms "fear" refers to the unpleasant emotion a person feels when experiencing a potential threat to their safety or well-being. In the Bible, however, the term "fear" can also mean an attitude of worship, respect, awe, or obedience toward another person, usually someone powerful such as God or a king. The term "dread" refers to extreme or intense fear.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "fear" can be translated in various ways, depending on the context. Some possibilities include: "be afraid;" "deeply respect," or "deep respect;" "revere," or "reverence;" or perhaps "be in awe of."
- The phrase "fear not" could also be translated as "do not be afraid" or "stop being afraid."
- The sentence "The fear of God fell on all of them" might be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: "Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God;" or, "Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply;" or, "Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power)."

(See also: marvel, awe, Lord, power, Yahweh)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 04:18
- Acts 02:43
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 06:14
- Jonah 01:09
- Luke 12:05
- Matthew 10:28
- Proverbs 10:24-25

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H367, H926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032, H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G870, G1167, G1168, G1169, G1630, G1719, G2124, G2125, G2962, G5398, G5399, G5400, G5401

(**Go back to:** John 6:19; 6:20; 7:13; 9:22; 12:15; 14:27; 19:8; 19:38; 20:19)

# feast, feasting

## Definition:

The term "feast" is a very general term that refers to an event where people gather to celebrate something by eating a large meal together. In biblical times, a feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called "feasts."
- In biblical times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- The term to "feast" could also be translated as to "eat lavishly" or to "celebrate by eating lots of food" or to "eat a special, large meal."
- Depending on the context, "feast" could be translated as "celebrating together with a large meal" or "a meal with a lot of food" or "a celebration meal."

(See also: festival, banquet)

## Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:12-14
- Genesis 26:30
- Genesis 29:22
- Genesis 40:20
- Jude 01:12-13
- Luke 02:43
- Luke 14:7-9
- Matthew 22:01

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H398, H2077, H2282, H3899, H3900, H4150, H4797, H4960, H7646, H8057, H8354, G26, G1062, G1173, G1859, G2165, G4910

(**Go back to:** John 12:2; 13:2; 13:4; 21:20)

# festival

## Definition:

In general, a festival is a celebration held by a community of people.

- The word for "festival" in the Old Testament literally means "appointed time."
- The festivals celebrated by the Israelites were specially appointed times or seasons that God had commanded them to observe.
- In some English translations, the word "feast" is used instead of festival because the celebrations included having a large meal together.
- There were several main festivals that the Israelites celebrated every year:
    - Passover
    - Festival of Unleavened Bread
    - Firstfruits
    - Festival of Weeks (Pentecost)
    - Festival of Trumpets
    - Day of Atonement
    - Festival of Shelters
- The purpose of these festivals was to thank God and to remember the amazing things he had done to rescue, protect, and provide for his people.

(See also: feast)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:31
- 2 Chronicles 08:13
- Exodus 05:01
- John 04:45
- Luke 22:01

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1974, H2166, H2282, H2287, H6213, H4150, G1456, G1858, G1859

(**Go back to:** John 2:23; 4:45; 5:1; 6:4; 7:2; 7:8; 7:10; 7:11; 7:14; 7:37; 10:22; 11:56; 12:12; 12:20; 13:1; 13:29)

# fig

## Definition:

A fig is a small, soft, sweet fruit that grows on trees. When ripe, this fruit can be a variety of colors, including brown, yellow, or purple.

- Fig trees can grow 6 meters in height and their large leaves provide pleasant shade. The fruit is about 3-5 centimeters long.
- Adam and Eve used the leaves from fig trees to make clothing for themselves after they had sinned.
- Figs can be eaten raw, cooked, or dried. People also chop them into small pieces and press them into cakes to eat later.
- In Bible times, figs were important as a source of food and income.
- The presence of fruitful fig trees is frequently mentioned in the Bible as a sign of prosperity.
- Several times Jesus used fig trees as an illustration to teach his disciples spiritual truths.

## Bible References:

- Habakkuk 03:17
- James 03:12
- Luke 13:07
- Mark 11:14
- Matthew 07:17
- Matthew 21:18

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1061, H1690, H6291, H8384, G3653, G4808, G4810

(**Go back to:** John 1:48; 1:50)

# fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

### Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- The term "fire" is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase "baptize with fire" could also be translated as "cause to experience suffering in order to be purified."

(See also: pure)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:18-20
- 2 Kings 01:10
- 2 Thessalonians 01:08
- Acts 07:29-30
- John 15:06
- Luke 03:16
- Matthew 03:12
- Nehemiah 01:3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H215, H217, H398, H784, H800, H801, H1197, H1200, H1513, H2734, H3341, H3857, H4071, H4168, H5135, H6315, H8316, G439, G440, G1067, G2741, G4442, G4443, G4447, G4448, G4451, G5394, G5457

(**Go back to:** John 15:6; 18:18; 21:9)

# flesh

## Definition:

In the Bible, the term "flesh" literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term "flesh" in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term "flesh" is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression "own flesh and blood" refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression "flesh and blood" can also refer to a person's ancestors or descendants.
- The expression "one flesh" refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

## Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal's body, "flesh" could be translated as "body" or "skin" or "meat."
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as "living beings" or "everything that is alive."
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as "people" or "human beings" or "everyone who lives."
- The expression "flesh and blood" could also be translated as "relatives" or "family" or "kinfolk" or "family clan." There may be contexts where it could be translated as "ancestors" or "descendants."
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to "flesh and blood."
- The expression "become one flesh" could be translated as "unite sexually" or "become as one body" or "become like one person in body and spirit." The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: euphemism). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who "become one flesh" literally become one person.

## Bible References:

- 1 John 02:16
- 2 John 01:07
- Ephesians 06:12
- Galatians 01:16
- Genesis 02:24
- John 01:14
- Matthew 16:17
- Romans 08:08

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H3894, H4207, H7607, H7683, G2907, G4559, G4560, G4561

# flock, herd

### Definition:

In the Bible, "flock" refers to a group of sheep or goats and "herd" refers to a group of cattle or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.
- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals, and use the appropriate term for each kind of animal.
- If your language uses the same word to refer to both sheep and cattle, then you may need to say "groups of sheep" where the Bible says only "flocks," and "groups of cattle" where the Bible says only "herds."

(See also: goat, cow, pig, sheep)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:28-29
- 2 Chronicles 17:11
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- Luke 02:8-9
- Matthew 08:30
- Matthew 26:31

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H951, H1241, H2835, H4029, H4735, H4830, H5349, H5739, H6251, H6629, H7399, H7462, G34, G4167, G4168

(**Go back to:** John 10:16)

# forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned

## Definition:

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against that person even though they did something hurtful. "Forgiveness" is the act of forgiving someone.

- Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
- This term can be used figuratively to mean "cancel," as in the expression "forgive a debt."
- When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus' sacrificial death on the cross.
- Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

The term "pardon" means to forgive and not punish someone for his sin.

- This word has the same meaning as "forgive" but may also include the meaning of a formal decision to not punish someone who is guilty.
- In a court of law, a judge can pardon a person found guilty of a crime.
- Even though we are guilty of sin, Jesus Christ pardoned us from being punished in hell, based on his sacrificial death on the cross.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "forgive" could be translated as "pardon" or "cancel" or "release" or "not hold against" (someone).
- The term "forgiveness" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "practice of not resenting" or "declaring (someone) as not guilty" or "the act of pardoning."
- If the language has a word for a formal decision to forgive, that word could be used to translate "pardon."

(See also: guilt)

## Bible References:

- Genesis 50:17
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Deuteronomy 29:20-21
- Joshua 24:19-20
- 2 Kings 05:17-19
- Psalms 025:11
- Psalms 025:17-19
- Isaiah 55:6-7
- Isaiah 40:02
- Luke 05:21
- Acts 08:22
- Ephesians 04:31-32
- Colossians 03:12-14
- 1 John 02:12

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **07:10** But Esau had already **forgiven** Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.
- **13:15** Then Moses climbed the mountain again and prayed that God would **forgive** the people. God listened to Moses and **forgave** them.
- **17:13** David repented of his sin and God **forgave** him.
- **21:05** In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would **forgive** their sins.

- **29:01** One day Peter asked Jesus, "Master, how many times should I **forgive** my brother when he sins against me?"
- **29:08** I **forgave** your debt because you begged me.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the **forgiveness** of sins.

## Word Data:

- H5546, H5547, H3722, H5375, H5545, H5547, H7521, G859, G863, G5483

# found, founder, foundation

### Definition:

The verb "found" means build, create, or lay a base for. The phrase "founded on" means supported by or based on. A "foundation" is the base of support on which something is built or created.

- The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
- The term "foundation" can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Christ are compared to a building that is founded on the teachings of the apostles and prophets, with Christ himself being the cornerstone of the building.
- A "foundation stone" was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase "before the foundation of the world" could be translated as "before the creation of the world" or "before the time when the world first existed" or "before everything was first created."
- The term "founded on" could be translated as "securely built on" or "firmly based on."
- Depending on the context, "foundation" could be translated as "strong base" or "solid support" or "beginning" or "creation."

(See also: cornerstone, create)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:37-38
- 2 Chronicles 03:1-3
- Ezekiel 13:13-14
- Luke 14:29
- Matthew 13:35
- Matthew 25:34

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H134, H787, H2713, H3245, H3247, H3248, H4143, H4144, H4146, H4328, H4349, H4527, H8356, G2310, G2311, G2602

(**Go back to:** John 17:24)

# fountain, source, spring

### Definition:

The terms "fountain" and "spring" usually refer to a large amount of water that flows out naturally from the ground.

- These words are also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to blessings flowing from God or to refer to something that cleanses and purifies.
- In modern times, a fountain is often a manmade object that has water flowing out of it, such as a drinking fountain. Make sure that the translation of this term refers to a natural source of flowing water.
- Compare the translation of this term with how the term "flood" is translated.

(See also: flood)

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:17
- Genesis 07:11
- Genesis 08:02
- Genesis 24:13
- Genesis 24:42
- James 03:11

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H953, H1530, H1543, H3222, H4002, H4161, H4456, H4599, H4726, H5033, H5869, H5927, H6524, H6779, H8444, H8666, G242, G4077

(**Go back to:** John 4:14)

# free, freed, freedom, freeman, freewill, liberty

## Definition:

The terms "free" or "freedom" refer to not being in slavery, or any other kind of bondage. Another word for "freedom" is "liberty."

- The expression to "set someone free" or to "free someone" means to provide a way for someone to no longer be in slavery or captivity.
- In the Bible, these terms are often used figuratively to refer to how a believer in Jesus is no longer under the power of sin.
- Having "liberty" or "freedom" can also refer to no longer being required to obey the Law of Moses, but instead being free to live by the teachings and guidance of the Holy Spirit.

## Translation Suggestions:

- The term "free" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "not bound" or "not enslaved" or "not in slavery" or "not in bondage."
- The term "freedom" or "liberty" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "the state of being free" or "the condition of not being a slave" or "not being bound."
- The expression to "set free" could be translated as to "cause to be free" or to "rescue from slavery" or to "release from bondage."
- A person who has been "set free" has been "released" or "taken out of" bondage or slavery.

(See also: bind, enslave, servant)

## Bible References:

- Galatians 04:26
- Galatians 05:01
- Isaiah 61:1
- Leviticus 25:10
- Romans 06:18

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1865, H2600, H2666, H2668, H2670, H3318, H4800, H5068, H5069, H5071, H5337, H5352, H5355, H5425, H5674, H5800, H6299, H6362, H7342, H7971, G425, G525, G558, G629, G630, G859, G1344, G1432, G1657, G1658, G1659, G1849, G3089, G3955, G4506, G5483

(**Go back to:** John 8:32; 8:33; 8:36)

# fruit, fruitful, unfruitful

## Definition:

The term "fruit" literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is "fruitful" has a lot of fruit. These terms are also used figuratively in the Bible.

- The Bible often uses "fruit" to refer to a person's actions. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person's words and actions reveal what his character is like.
- A person can produce good or bad spiritual fruit, but the term "fruitful" always has the positive meaning of producing much good fruit.
- The term "fruitful" is also used figuratively to mean "prosperous." This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.
- In general, the expression "fruit of" refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the "fruit of wisdom" refers to the good things that come from being wise.
- The expression "fruit of the land" refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.
- The figurative expression "fruit of the Spirit" refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him.
- The expression "fruit of the womb" refers to "what the womb produces--"that is children.

## Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for "fruit" that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural ,"fruits" whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term "fruitful" could be translated as "producing much spiritual fruit" or "having many children" or "prosperous."
- The expression "fruit of the land" could also be translated as "food that the land produces" or "food crops that are growing in that region."
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to "be fruitful and multiply," which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as "have many offspring" or "have many children and descendants" or "have many children so that you will have many descendants."
- The expression "fruit of the womb" could be translated as "what the womb produces" or "children a women gives birth to" or just "children." When Elizabeth says to Mary "blessed is the fruit of your womb," she means "blessed is the child you will give birth to." The project language may also have a different expression for this.
- Another expression "fruit of the vine," could be translated as "vine fruit" or "grapes."
- Depending on the context, the expression "will be more fruitful" could also be translated as "will produce more fruit" or "will have more children" or "will be prosperous."
- The apostle Paul's expression "fruitful labor" could be translated as "work that brings very good results" or "efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus."
- The "fruit of the Spirit" could also be translated as "works that the Holy Spirit produces" or "words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in someone."

(See also: descendant, grain, grape, Holy Spirit, vine, womb)

## Bible References:

- Galatians 05:23
- Genesis 01:11
- Luke 08:15
- Matthew 03:08
- Matthew 07:17

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4, H1061, H1063, H1069, H2233, H2981, H3581, H3759, H3899, H3978, H4022, H5108, H6509, H6529, H7019, H8393, H8570, G1081, G2590, G2592, G2593, G3703, G5052, G5352

(**Go back to:** John 4:36; 12:24; 15:2; 15:4; 15:5; 15:8; 15:16)

# fulfill, fulfilled, carried out

## Definition:

The term "fulfill" means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "fulfill" could be translated as "accomplish" or "complete" or "cause to happen" or "obey" or "perform."
- The phrase "has been fulfilled" could also be translated as "has come true" or "has happened" or "has taken place."
- Ways to translate "fulfill," as in "fulfill your ministry," could include "complete" or "perform" or "practice" or "serve other people as God has called you to do."

(See also: prophet, Christ, minister, call)

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 02:27
- Acts 03:17-18
- Leviticus 22:17-19
- Luke 04:21
- Matthew 01:22-23
- Matthew 05:17
- Psalms 116:12-15

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:04** John **fulfilled** what the prophets said, "See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way."
- **40:03** The soldiers gambled for Jesus' clothing. When they did this, they **fulfilled** a prophecy that said, "They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing."
- **42:07** Jesus said, "I told you that everything written about me in God's word must be **fulfilled**."
- **43:05** "This **fulfills** the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- **43:07** "This **fulfills** the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- **44:05** "Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to **fulfill** the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1214, H5487, G1096, G4138

(**Go back to:** John 3:29; 7:8; 12:38; 13:18; 15:25; 17:12; 17:13; 18:9; 18:32; 19:24; 19:36)

# Galilee, Galilean

### Facts:

Galilee was the most northern region of Israel, just north of Samaria. A "Galilean" was a person who lived in Galilee or who lived in Galilee.

- Galilee, Samaria, and Judea were the three main provinces of Israel during New Testament times.
- Galilee is bordered on the east by a large lake called the "Sea of Galilee."
- Jesus grew up and lived in the town of Nazareth in Galilee.
- Most of the miracles and teachings of Jesus took place in the region of Galilee.

(See also: Nazareth, Samaria, Sea of Galilee)

### Bible References:

- Acts 09:32
- Acts 13:31
- John 02:1-2
- John 04:03
- Luke 13:03
- Mark 03:07
- Matthew 02:22-23
- Matthew 03:13-15

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:10** The prophet Isaiah said the Messiah would live in **Galilee**, comfort broken-hearted people, and proclaim freedom to captives and release to prisoners.
- **26:01** After overcoming Satan's temptations, Jesus returned in the power of the Holy Spirit to the region of **Galilee** where he lived.
- **39:06** Finally, the people said, "We know that you were with Jesus because you both are from **Galilee**."
- **41:06** Then the angel told the women, "Go and tell the disciples, 'Jesus has risen from the dead and he will go to **Galilee** ahead of you.'"

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1551, G1056, G1057

(**Go back to:** John 1:43; 2:1; 2:11; 4:3; 4:43; 4:45; 4:46; 4:47; 4:54; 6:1; 7:1; 7:9; 7:41; 7:52; 12:21; 21:2)

# gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

### Definition:

A "gate" is a hinged barrier at an access point in a fence or wall that surrounds a house or city. The "gate bar" refers to a wooden or metal bar that can be moved into place so that the gate cannot be opened from the outside.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A city gate was often the news and social center of a village. It was also where business transactions occurred and judgments were made.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "gate" could be "door" or "wall opening" or "barrier" or "entranceway."
- The phrase "bars of the gate" could be translated as "gate bolts" or "wooden beams to lock the gate" or "metal locking rods of the gate."

### Bible References:

- Acts 09:24
- Acts 10:18
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Genesis 19:01
- Genesis 24:60
- Matthew 07:13

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, G2374, G4439, G4440

(**Go back to:** John 10:1; 10:2; 10:3; 10:7; 10:9; 18:16; 18:17)

# gift

## Definition:

The term "gift" refers to anything that is given or offered to someone. A gift is given without the expectation of getting anything in return

- Money, food, clothing, or other things given to poor people are called "gifts."
- In the Bible, an offering or sacrifice given to God is also called a gift.
- The gift of salvation is something God gives us through faith in Jesus.
- In the New Testament, the term "gifts" is also used to refer to special spiritual abilities that God gives to all Christians for serving other people.

## Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for "gift" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "something that is given."
- In the context of someone having a gift or special ability that comes from God, the term "gift from the Spirit" could be translated as "spiritual ability" or "special ability from the Holy Spirit" or "special spiritual skill that God gave."

(See also: spirit, Holy Spirit)

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:01
- 2 Samuel 11:08
- Acts 08:20
- Acts 10:04
- Acts 11:17
- Acts 24:17
- James 01:17
- John 04:9-10
- Matthew 05:23
- Matthew 08:4

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H814, H4503, H4864, H4976, H4978, H4979, H4991, H5078, H5083, H5379, H7810, H8641, G334, G1390, G1394, G1431, G1434, G1435, G3311, G5486

(**Go back to:** John 4:10)

# gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around

## Definition:

The term "gird" means to fasten something around something else. It often refers to using a belt or sash around the waist to keep a robe or tunic in place.

- The common biblical phrase, "gird up the loins" refers to tucking the bottom of a garment into a belt to allow a person to move more freely, usually to do work.
- This phrase can also mean "get ready to work" or to be prepared to do something difficult.
- The expression "gird up the loins" could be translated using an expression in the target language that has the same meaning. Or it could be translated figuratively as "prepare yourself for action" or "get yourself ready."
- The term "girded with" could be translated as "encircled by" or wrapped with" or "belted with."

(See also: loins)

## Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:13
- Job 38:03

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H640, H247, H2290, H2296, H8151, G328, G1241, G4024

(**Go back to:** John 13:4; 13:5; 21:7; 21:18)

# glory, glorious, glorify

## Definition:

The term "glory" is a general term for a family of concepts including value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, or majesty. The term "glorify" means to ascribe glory to someone or something, or to show or tell how glorious something or someone is.

- In the Bible, the term "glory" is especially used to describe God, who is more valuable, more worthy, more important, more honorable, more splendid, and more majestic than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything about his character reveals his glory.
- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done. They can also glorify God by living in accordance with God's character, because doing so shows to others his value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, and majesty.
- The expression to "glory in" means to boast about or take pride in something.

### Old Testament

- The specific phrase "the glory of Yahweh" in the Old Testament usually refers to some perceptible manifestation of Yahweh's presence in a particular location.

### New Testament

- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to all people the full extent of how glorious Jesus is.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. This use of the term "glorify" carries a unique meaning. It means that when people who believe in Christ are raised to life, they will be changed physically to be like Jesus as he appeared after his resurrection.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate "glory" could include "splendor" or "majesty" or "awesome greatness" or "extreme value."
- The term "glorious" could be translated as "full of glory" or "extremely valuable" or "brightly shining" or "awesomely majestic."
- The expression "give glory to God" could be translated as "honor God's greatness" or "praise God because of his splendor" or "tell others how great God is."
- The expression "glory in" could also be translated as "praise" or "take pride in" or "boast about" or "take pleasure in."
- "Glorify" could also be translated as "give glory to" or "bring glory to" or "cause to appear great."
- The phrase "glorify God" could also be translated as "praise God" or "talk about God's greatness" or "show how great God is" or "honor God (by obeying him)."
- The term "be glorified" could also be translated as, "be shown to be very great" or "be praised" or "be exalted."

(See also: honor, majesty, exalt, obey, praise)

## Bible References:

- Exodus 24:17
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:02
- Luke 18:43
- Luke 02:09
- John 12:28

- Acts 03:13-14
- Acts 07:1-3
- Romans 08:17
- 1 Corinthians 06:19-20
- Philippians 02:14-16
- Philippians 04:19
- Colossians 03:1-4
- 1 Thessalonians 02:05
- James 02:1-4
- 1 Peter 04:15-16
- Revelation 15:04

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, "**Glory** to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!"
- **25:06** Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."
- **37:01** When Jesus heard this news, he said, "This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glory** of God."
- **37:08** Jesus responded, "Did I not tell you that you would see God's **glory** if you believe in me?"

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H117, H142, H155, H215, H1342, H1921, H1926, H1935, H1984, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8597, G1391, G1392, G1740, G1741, G2744, G4888

# God

## Definition:

In the Bible, the term "God" refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God's personal name is "Yahweh."

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as "Yahweh," which means "he is" or "I am" or "the One who (always) exists."
- The Bible also teaches about false "gods," which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "God" could include "Deity" or "Creator" or "Supreme Being" or "Supreme Creator" or "Infinite Sovereign Lord" or "Eternal Supreme Being."
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for "God" in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for "God" and "god." NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word "god," it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).
- The phrase "I will be their God and they will be my people" could also be translated as "I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: create, false god, God the Father, Holy Spirit, false god, Son of God, Yahweh)

## Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 04:10
- Colossians 01:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 03:1-2
- Genesis 01:02
- Hosea 04:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 02:20
- Jeremiah 05:05
- John 01:03
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Lamentations 03:43
- Micah 04:05
- Philippians 02:06
- Proverbs 24:12
- Psalms 047:09

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **01:01 God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **01:15 God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **05:03** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **09:14 God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:02** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:07** You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:09** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:07** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:01** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:09** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H136, H305, H410, H426, H430, H433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G112, G516, G932, G935, G1096, G1140, G2098, G2124, G2128, G2150, G2152, G2153, G2299, G2304, G2305, G2312, G2313, G2314, G2315, G2316, G2317, G2318, G2319, G2320, G3361, G3785, G4151, G5207, G5377, G5463, G5537, G5538

# God the Father, heavenly Father, Father

## Facts:

The terms "God the Father" and "heavenly Father" refer to Yahweh, the one true God. Another term with the same meaning is "Father," used most often when Jesus was referring to him.

- God exists as God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit. Each one is fully God, and yet they are only one God. This is a mystery that mere humans cannot fully understand.
- God the Father sent God the Son (Jesus) into the world and he sends the Holy Spirit to his people.
- Anyone who believes in God the Son becomes a child of God the Father, and God the Holy Spirit comes to live in that person. This is another mystery that human beings cannot fully understand.

## Translation Suggestions:

- In translating the phrase "God the Father," it is best to translate "Father" with the same word that the language naturally uses to refer to a human father.
- The term "heavenly Father" could be translated by "Father who lives in heaven" or "Father God who lives in heaven" or "God our Father from heaven."
- Usually "Father" is capitalized when it, refers to God.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: ancestor, God, heaven, Holy Spirit, Jesus, Son of God)

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 08:4-6
- 1 John 02:01
- 1 John 02:23
- 1 John 03:01
- Colossians 01:1-3
- Ephesians 05:18-21
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 05:16
- Matthew 23:09

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:09** There is only one God. But John heard **God the Father** speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **29:09** Then Jesus said, "This is what my **heavenly Father** will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart."
- **37:09** Then Jesus looked up to heaven and said, "**Father**, thank you for hearing me."
- **40:07** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! **Father**, I give my spirit into your hands."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of **the Father**, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **43:08** "Jesus is now exalted to the right hand of **God the Father**."
- **50:10** "Then the righteous ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of **God their Father**."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H2, G3962

(**Go back to:** John 1:14; 1:18; 2:16; 3:35; 4:21; 4:23; 5:17; 5:18; 5:19; 5:20; 5:21; 5:22; 5:23; 5:26; 5:36; 5:37; 5:43; 5:45; 6:27; 6:32; 6:37; 6:40; 6:44; 6:45; 6:46; 6:57; 6:65; 8:16; 8:18; 8:19; 8:27; 8:28; 8:38; 8:41; 8:42; 8:49; 8:54; 10:15; 10:17; 10:18; 10:25; 10:29; 10:30; 10:32; 10:36; 10:37; 10:38; 11:41; 12:26; 12:27; 12:28; 12:49; 12:50; 13:1; 13:3; 14:2; 14:6; 14:7; 14:8; 14:9; 14:10; 14:11; 14:12; 14:13; 14:16; 14:20; 14:21; 14:23; 14:24; 14:26; 14:28; 14:31; 15:1; 15:8; 15:9; 15:10; 15:15; 15:16; 15:23; 15:24; 15:26; 16:3; 16:10; 16:15; 16:17; 16:23; 16:25; 16:26; 16:27; 16:28; 16:32; 17:1; 17:5; 17:11; 17:21; 17:24; 17:25; 18:11; 20:17; 20:21)

# godly, godliness, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness

## Definition:

The term "godly" is used to describe a person who acts in a way that honors God and shows what God is like. "Godliness" is the character quality of honoring God by doing his will.

- A person who has godly character will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit, such as love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, and self control.
- The quality of godliness shows that a person has the Holy Spirit and is obeying him.

The terms "ungodly" and "godless" describe people who are in rebellion against God. Living in an evil way, without thought of God, is called "ungodliness" or "godlessness."

- The meanings of these words are very similar. However, "godless" and "godlessness" may describe a more extreme condition in which people or nations do not even acknowledge God or his right to rule them.
- God pronounces judgment and wrath on ungodly people, on everyone who rejects him and his ways.

## Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase "the godly" could be translated as "godly people" or "people who obey God." (See: nominaladj)
- The adjective "godly" could be translated as "obedient to God" or "righteous" or "pleasing to God."
- The phrase "in a godly manner" could be translated as "in a way that obeys God" or "with actions and words that please God."
- Ways to translate "godliness" could include "acting in a way that pleases God" or "obeying God" or "living in a righteous manner."
- Depending on the context, the term "ungodly" could be translated as "displeasing to God" or "immoral" or "disobeying God."
- The terms "godless" and "godlessness" literally mean that the people are "without God" or "having no thought of God" or "acting in a way that does not acknowledge God."
- Other ways to translate "ungodliness" or "godlessness" could be "wickedness" or "evil" or "rebellion against God".

(See also evil, honor, obey, righteous, righteous)

## Bible References:

- Job 27:10
- Proverbs 11:09
- Acts 03:12
- 1 Timothy 01:9-11
- 1 Timothy 04:07
- 2 Timothy 03:12
- Hebrews 12:14-17
- Hebrews 11:7
- 1 Peter 04:18
- Jude 01:16

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H1100, H2623, H5760, H7563, G516, G763, G764, G765, G2124, G2150, G2152, G2153, G2316, G2317

(**Go back to:** John 4 General Notes)

# Golgotha

## Facts:

"Golgotha" was the name of the place where Jesus was crucified. Its name comes from an Aramaic word that means "Skull" or "Place of the Skull."

- Golgotha was located outside the city walls of Jerusalem, somewhere nearby. It was perhaps located on a slope of the Mount of Olives.
- In some older English versions of the Bible, Golgotha is translated as "Calvary," which comes from the Latin word for "skull."
- Many Bible versions use a word that looks or sounds similar to "Golgotha," since its meaning is already explained in the Bible text.

(Translation Suggestion: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Aram, Mount of Olives)

## Bible References:

- John 19:17
- Mark 15:22
- Matthew 27:33

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G1115

(**Go back to:** John 19:17)

# good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best

## Definition:

The word "good" has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God's character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is "good" could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is "good" could be called "fertile" or "productive."
- A "good" crop could be a "plentiful" crop.
- A person can be "good" at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, the expression, "a good farmer."
- In the Bible, the general meaning of "good" is often contrasted with "evil."
- The term "goodness" usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.

## Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for "good" in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "kind" or "excellent" or "pleasing to God" or "righteous" or "morally upright" or "profitable."
- "Good land" could be translated as "fertile land" or "productive land"; a "good crop" could be translated as a "plentiful harvest" or "large amount of crops."
- The phrase "do good to" means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as "be kind to" or "help" or "benefit" someone.
- To "do good on the Sabbath" means to "do things that help others on the Sabbath."
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term "goodness" could include "blessing" or "kindness" or "moral perfection" or "righteousness" or "purity."

(See also: evil, holy, profit, righteous)

## Bible References:

- Galatians 05:22-24
- Genesis 01:12
- Genesis 02:09
- Genesis 02:17
- James 03:13
- Romans 02:04

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:04** God saw that what he had created was **good**.
- **01:11** God planted…the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil."
- **01:12** Then God said, "It is not **good** for man to be alone."
- **02:04** "God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does."
- **08:12** "You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good**!"
- **14:15** Joshua was a **good** leader because he tTable of Contentsrusted and obeyed God.
- **18:13** Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.

- **28:01** "**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?" Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me '**good**?' There is only one who is **good**, and that is God."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H117, H145, H155, H202, H239, H410, H1580, H1926, H1935, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2869, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3474, H3788, H3966, H4261, H4399, H5232, H5750, H6287, H6643, H6743, H7075, H7368, H7399, H7443, H7999, H8231, H8232, H8233, H8389, H8458, G14, G15, G18, G19, G515, G744, G865, G979, G1380, G2095, G2097, G2106, G2107, G2108, G2109, G2114, G2115, G2133, G2140, G2162, G2163, G2174, G2293, G2565, G2567, G2570, G2573, G2887, G2986, G3140, G3617, G3776, G4147, G4632, G4674, G4851, G5223, G5224, G5358, G5542, G5543, G5544

# grace, gracious

### Definition:

The word "grace" refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term "gracious" describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God's grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression to "find grace" is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways that "grace" could be translated include "divine kindness" or "God's favor" or "God's kindness and forgiveness for sinners" or "merciful kindness."
- The term "gracious" could be translated as "full of grace" or "kind" or "merciful" or "mercifully kind."
- The expression "he found grace in the eyes of God" could be translated as "he received mercy from God" or "God mercifully helped him" or "God showed his favor to him" or "God was pleased with him and helped him."

### Bible References:

- Acts 04:33
- Acts 06:08
- Acts 14:04
- Colossians 04:06
- Colossians 04:18
- Genesis 43:28-29
- James 04:07
- John 01:16
- Philippians 04:21-23
- Revelation 22:20-21

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2580, H2587, H2589, H2603, H8467, G2143, G5485, G5543

(**Go back to:** John 1:14; 1:16; 1:17)

# grain, grainfields

### Definition:

The term "grain" usually refers to the seed of a food plant such as wheat, barley, corn, millet, or rice. It can also refer to the whole plant.

- In the Bible, the main grains that are referred to are wheat and barley.
- A head of grain is the part of the plant that holds the grain.
- Note that some older Bible versions use the word "corn" to refer to grain in general. In modern English however, "corn" only refers to one type of grain.

(See also: head, wheat)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 42:03
- Genesis 42:26-28
- Genesis 43:1-2
- Luke 06:02
- Mark 02:24
- Matthew 13:7-9
- Ruth 01:22

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1250, H1430, H1715, H2233, H2591, H3759, H3899, H7054, H7383, H7641, H7668, G248, G2590, G3450, G4621, G4719

(**Go back to:** John 12:24)

# grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place

## Definition:

The terms "tomb" and "grave" refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A "burial place" is a more general term that also refers to this.

- The Jews sometimes used natural caves as tombs, and sometimes they dug caves into rock in the side of a hill.
- In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
- If the target language the word for a tomb can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include "cave" or "hole in the side of a hill."
- The phrase "the grave" is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: bury, death)

## Bible References:

- Acts 02:29-31
- Genesis 23:06
- Genesis 50:05
- John 19:41
- Luke 23:53
- Mark 05:1-2
- Matthew 27:53
- Romans 03:13

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **32:04** The man lived among the **tombs** in the area.
- **37:06** Jesus asked them, "Where have you put Lazarus?" They told him, "In the **tomb**. Come and see."
- **37:07** The **tomb** was a cave with a stone rolled in front of its opening.
- **40:09** Then Joseph and Nicodemus, two Jewish leaders who believed Jesus was the Messiah, asked Pilate for Jesus' body. They wrapped his body in cloth and placed it in a **tomb** cut out of rock. Then they rolled a large stone in front the **tomb** to block the opening.
- **41:04** He (the angel) rolled away the stone that was covering the entrance to the **tomb** and sat on it. The soldiers guarding the **tomb** were terrified and fell to the ground like dead men.
- **41:05** When the women arrived at the **tomb**, the angel told them, "Do not be afraid. Jesus is not here. He has risen from the dead, just like he said he would! Look in the **tomb** and see." The women looked into the **tomb** and saw where Jesus' body had been laid. His body was not there!

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1430, H6900, H6913, H7585, H7845, G3418, G3419, G5028

(**Go back to:** John 5:28; 11:17; 11:31; 11:38; 12:17; 19:41; 19:42; 20:1; 20:2; 20:3; 20:4; 20:6; 20:8; 20:11)

# Greek, Grecian

## Facts:

The term "Greek" refers to the language spoken in the country of Greece, it is also a person from the country of Greece. Greek was also spoken throughout the Roman Empire. The term "Grecian" means "Greek-speaking."

- Since most non-Jewish people in the Roman Empire spoke Greek, Gentiles are often referred to as "Greeks" in the New Testament, especially when contrasted with Jews.
- The phrase "Grecian Jews" referred to Jews who spoke Greek in contrast to the "Hebraic Jews" who spoke only Hebrew, or perhaps Aramaic.
- Other ways to translate "Grecian" could include, "Greek-speaking" or "culturally Greek" or "Greek."
- When referring to non-Jews, "Greek" could be translated as "Gentile."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Aram, Gentile, Greece, Hebrew, Rome)

## Bible References:

- Acts 06:1
- Acts 09:29
- Acts 11:20
- Acts 14:1-2
- Colossians 03:11
- Galatians 02:3-5
- John 07:35

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3125, G1672, G1673, G1674, G1675, G1676

(**Go back to:** John 7:35; 12:20; 19:20)

# guilt, guilty

## Definition:

The term "guilt" refers to the fact of having sinned or committed a crime.

- To "be guilty" means to have done something morally wrong, that is, to have disobeyed God.
- The opposite of "guilty" is "innocent."

## Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages might translate "guilt" as "the weight of sin" or "the counting of sins."
- Ways to translate to "be guilty" could include a word or phrase that means, to "be at fault" or "having done something morally wrong" or "having committed a sin."

(See also: innocent, iniquity, punish, sin)

## Bible References:

- Exodus 28:36-38
- Isaiah 06:07
- James 02:10-11
- John 19:04
- Jonah 01:14

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:02** They brought many witnesses who lied about him (Jesus). However, their statements did not agree with each other, so the Jewish leaders could not prove he was **guilty** of anything.
- **39:11** After speaking with Jesus, Pilate went out to the crowd and said, "I find no **guilt** in this man." But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, "Crucify him!" Pilate replied, "He is not **guilty**." But they shouted even louder. Then Pilate said a third time, "He is not **guilty**!"
- **40:04** Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, "Don't you fear God? We are **guilty**, but this man is innocent.
- **49:10** Because of your sin, you are **guilty** and deserve to die.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H816, H817, H818, H5352, H5355, G338, G1777, G3784, G5267

(**Go back to:** John 18:38; 19:4; 19:6)

# hand

## Definition:

The word "hand" refers to the part of the body at the end of the arm. In the Bible, this term is associated with a person's power, control, or action, whether it be in reference to God or in reference to a human person.

Some of the various uses of the term "hand" include the following:

- To "lay a hand on" means to "harm."
- To "save from the hand of" means to prevent someone from being harmed by another person.
- The position of being "on the right hand" means "on the right side" or "to the right."
- The expression "by the hand of" someone means "by" or "through" the action of that person. For example, the phrase "by the hand of the Lord" means that God caused something to happen.
- Expressions such as "hand over to" or "deliver into the hands of" refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- The term "laying on of hands" can refer to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God's service, to pray for healing, or to ask God to bless that person.
- When Paul says "written by my hand," it means that he himself wrote that part of the letter rather than speaking it to someone else to write down.

## Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression "handed him the scroll" could also be translated as "gave him the scroll" or "put the scroll in his hand." It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- An expression such as "delivered them into the hands of their enemies" or "handed them over to their enemies," could be translated as, "allowed their enemies to conquer them" or "caused them to be captured by their enemies" or "empowered their enemies to gain control over them."
- To "die by the hand of" could be translated as "be killed by."
- The expression "on the right hand of" could be translated as "on the right side of."
- In regard to Jesus being "seated at the right hand of God," if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: "on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority."

(See also: adversary, bless, captive, honor, power)

## Bible References:

- Acts 07:25
- Acts 08:17
- Acts 11:21
- Genesis 09:05
- Genesis 14:20
- John 03:35
- Mark 07:32
- Matthew 06:03

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3225, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8040, H8042, H8168, G710, G1188, G1448, G1451, G2176, G2902, G4084, G4474, G5495, G5496, G5497

(**Go back to:** John 3:35; 7:30; 7:44; 10:28; 10:29; 10:39; 11:44; 13:3; 13:9; 20:20; 20:25; 20:27; 21:18)

# hard, harden, hardness

### Definition:

The term "hard" has several different meanings, depending on the context. It usually describes something that is difficult, persistent, or unyielding.

- The expressions "hard heart" or "hard-headed" refer to people who are stubbornly unrepentant. These expressions describe people who persist in disobeying God.
- The figurative expressions "hardness of heart" and "hardness of their hearts" also refer to stubborn disobedience.
- If someone's heart is "hardened" this means that person refuses to obey and remains stubbornly unrepentant.
- When used as an adverb, as in "work hard" or "try hard," it means to do something very strongly and diligently, making an effort to do something very well.

### Translation Suggestions

- The term "hard" could also be translated as "difficult" or "stubborn" or "challenging," depending on the context.
- The terms "hardness" or "hardness of heart" or "hard heart" could be translated as "stubbornness" or "persistent rebellion" or "rebellious attitude" or "stubborn disobedience" or "stubbornly not repenting."
- The term "hardened" could also be translated as "stubbornly unrepentant" or "refusing to obey."
- "Do not harden your heart" could be translated as "do not refuse to repent" or "do not stubbornly keep disobeying."
- Other ways to translate "hard-headed" or "hard-hearted" could include "stubbornly disobedient" or "continuing to disobey" or "refusing to repent" or "always rebelling."
- In expressions such as "work hard" or "try hard," the term "hard" could be translated as "with perseverance" or "diligently."
- The expression "press hard against" could also be translated as "shove with force" or "push strongly against."
- To "oppress people with hard labor" could be translated as "force people to work so hard that they suffer" or "cause people to suffer by forcing them to do very difficult work."
- A different kind of "hard labor" is experienced by a woman who is about to deliver a baby.

(See also: disobey, evil, heart, labor pains, stiff-necked)

### Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 11:23
- Deuteronomy 15:07
- Exodus 14:04
- Hebrews 04:07
- John 12:40
- Matthew 19:08

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H553, H1692, H2388, H2389, H2420, H2864, H3021, H3332, H3513, H3515, H3966, H4165, H4522, H5450, H5647, H5797, H5810, H5980, H5999, H6089, H6381, H6635, H7185, H7186, H7188, H7280, H8068, H8307, H8631, G917, G1419, G1421, G1422, G1423, G2205, G2532, G2553, G2872, G2873, G3425, G3433, G4053, G4183, G4456, G4457, G4641, G4642, G4643, G4645, G4912

(**Go back to:** John 12:40)

# harvest, reap

## Definition:

The term "harvest" refers to the gather the ripe fruits, vegetables, seeds, or grains from the plants on which they were growing. The term "reap" means to harvest crops.

> • The harvest time normally happens at the end of a growing season.
> • The Israelites held a "Festival of Harvest" or "Festival of Ingathering" to celebrate the reaping of the food crops. God commanded them to offer the first fruits of these crops as a sacrifice to him.
> • In biblical times, reapers usually harvested crops by hand, either pulling up the plants or cutting them with a sharp cutting tool.

## Translation Suggestions:

> • It is best to translate the concept with the word that is commonly used in the language to refer to the harvesting of crops.
> • The event of harvesting could be translated as, "time of gathering in" or "crop gathering time" or "fruit picking time."
> • The verb to "harvest" could be translated as, to "gather in" or to "pick up" or to "collect."

(See also: firstfruits, festival, good news)

## Bible References:

> • 1 Corinthians 09:9-11
> • 2 Samuel 21:7-9
> • Galatians 06:9-10
> • Isaiah 17:11
> • James 05:7-8
> • Leviticus 19:09
> • Matthew 09:38
> • Ruth 01:22
> • Galatians 06:9-10
> • Matthew 06:25-26
> • Matthew 13:30
> • Matthew 13:36-39
> • Matthew 25:24

## Word Data:

> • Strong's: H2758, H4395, H4672 H7105, H7114, H7938, G270, G2325, G2326, G2327

(**Go back to:** John 4:35; 4:36; 4:37; 4:38)

# head

## Definition:

The word "head" refers to the uppermost body part of a human body, above the neck. This term is often used figuratively to mean many different things, including "top," "first," "beginning," "source," and other concepts.

Some examples of various uses of the term "head" include:

- The expression "no razor will ever touch his head" means that he should never cut or shave his hair.
- The expression "let their blood be on his own head" means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.
- The expression "heads of grain" refers to the top part of wheat or barley plants that contains the seeds. Similarly, the expression "head of a mountain" refers to the top part of the mountain.
- The term "head" can also refer to the beginning or source of something, or the first in a series of things (can be objects or people).
- Often the term "head" refers to the most important person in a group or to a person who is in authority over others. For example, the phrase "You have made me the head over nations" means "You have made me the ruler…" or "You have given me authority over…."

## Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term "head" could be translated as "authority" or "ruler" or "the one who is responsible for."
- The expression "will be on his own head" could be translated as "will be on him" or "he will be punished for" or "he will be held responsible for" or "he will be considered guilty for."
- Depending on the context, some other ways to translate this term might include "top" or "beginning" or "source" or "leader."

(See also: grain)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:51-54
- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 1 Samuel 09:22
- Colossians 02:10
- Colossians 02:19
- Numbers 01:04

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H441, H1270, H1538, H3852, H4425, H4761, H4763, H5110, H5324, H6285, H6287, H6797, H6915, H6936, H7139, H7144, H7146, H7217, H7226, H7218, H7541, H7636, H7641, H7872, G346, G755, G2775, G2776, G4719

(**Go back to:** John 13:9; 19:2; 19:30; 20:7; 20:12)

# heart

### Definition:

The term "heart" refers to the internal bodily organ that pumps blood throughout the body in people and animals. However, in the Bible the term "heart" is often used figuratively to refer to a person's thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a "hard heart" is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" mean to do something with complete sincerity, commitment, or willingness, holding nothing back.
- The expression "take it to heart" means to treat something seriously and apply it to one's life.
- The term "brokenhearted" describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

### Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as "stomach" or "liver" to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If "heart" or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as "thoughts" or "emotions" or "desires."
- Depending on the context, "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" could be translated as "with all my energy" or "with complete dedication" or "completely" or "with total commitment."
- The expression "take it to heart" could be translated as "treat it seriously" or "carefully think about it."
- The expression "hard-hearted" could also be translated as "stubbornly rebellious" or "refusing to obey" or "continually disobeying God."
- Ways to translate "brokenhearted" could include "very sad" or "feeling deeply hurt."

(See also: hard)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 03:17
- 1 Thessalonians 02:04
- 2 Thessalonians 03:13-15
- Acts 08:22
- Acts 15:09
- Luke 08:15
- Mark 02:06
- Matthew 05:08
- Matthew 22:37

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1079, H2436, H2504, H2910, H3519, H3629, H3820, H3821, H3823, H3824, H3825, H3826, H4578, H5315, H5640, H7130, H7307, H7356, H7907, G674, G1282, G1271, G2133, G2588, G2589, G4641, G4698, G5590

(**Go back to:** John 12:40; 13:2; 14:1; 14:27; 16:6; 16:22)

# heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

### Definition:

The term that is translated as "heaven" usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean "sky," depending on the context.

- The term "heavens" refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can't directly see from the earth.
- The term "sky" refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be "up in the sky."
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word "heaven" could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.

### Translation Suggestions:

- For "kingdom of heaven" in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word "heaven" since this is distinctive to Matthew's gospel.
- The terms "heavens" or "heavenly bodies" could also be translated as, "sun, moon, and stars" or "all the stars in the universe."
- The phrase, "stars of heaven" could be translated as "stars in the sky" or "stars in the galaxy" or "stars in the universe."

(See also: kingdom of God)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 04:17
- Deuteronomy 09:01
- Ephesians 06:9
- Genesis 01:01
- Genesis 07:11
- John 03:12
- John 03:27
- Matthew 05:18
- Matthew 05:46-48

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:02** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- **14:11** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called "manna."
- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, "Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!"
- **29:09** Then Jesus said, "This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart."
- **37:09** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, "Father, thank you for hearing me."
- **42:11** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G932, G2032, G3321, G3770, G3771, G3772

(**Go back to:** John 1:32; 1:51; 3:12; 3:13; 3:27; 3:31; 6:31; 6:32; 6:33; 6:38; 6:41; 6:42; 6:50; 6:51; 6:58; 12:28; Notes; 17:1)

# high priest, chief priests

## Definition:

The term "high priest" refers to a special priest who was appointed to serve for one year as the leader of all of the other Israelite priests. In New Testament times, some other priests were also considered very important Jewish religious leaders, with authority over other priests and the people. These were the chief priests.

- The high priest had special responsibilities. He was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy part of the tabernacle or the temple to offer a special sacrifice once per year.
- The Israelites had many priests, but only one high priest at a time.
- After high priests retired, they still kept the title, along with some of the responsibilities of the office. For example, Annas was still referred to as high priest during the priesthood of Caiaphas and others.
- The chief priests were responsible for everything needed for the worship services at the temple. They were also in charge of the money that was given to the temple.
- The chief priests were higher in rank and power than the ordinary priests. Only the high priest had more authority.
- The chief priests were some of Jesus' main enemies and they strongly influenced the Roman leaders to arrest and kill him.

## Translation Suggestions:

- "High priest" could be translated as "supreme priest" or "highest ranking priest."
- The term "chief priests" could be translated as "head priests" or "leading priests" or "ruling priests."

(See also: Annas, Caiaphas, priest, temple)

## Bible References:

- Acts 05:27
- Acts 07:01
- Acts 09:01
- Exodus 30:10
- Hebrews 06:19-20
- Leviticus 16:32
- Luke 03:02
- Mark 02:25-26
- Matthew 26:3-5
- Matthew 26:51-54

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:08** No one could enter the room behind the curtain except the **high priest**, because God lived there.
- **21:07** The Messiah who would come would be the perfect **high priest** who would offer himself as a perfect sacrifice to God.
- **38:03** The Jewish leaders, led by the **high priest**, paid Judas thirty silver coins to betray Jesus.
- **39:01** The soldiers led Jesus to the house of the **high priest** in order for the **high priest** to question him.
- **39:03** Finally, the **high priest** looked directly at Jesus and said, "Tell us, are you the Messiah, the Son of the living God?"
- **44:07** The next day, the Jewish leaders brought Peter and John to the **high priest** and the other religious leaders.
- **45:02** So the religious leaders arrested Stephen and brought him to the **high priest** and the other leaders of the Jews, where more false witnesses lied about Stephen.

- **46:01** The **high priest** gave Saul permission to go to the city of Damascus to arrest Christians there and bring them back to Jerusalem.
- **48:06** Jesus is the Great **High Priest**. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only sacrifice that could to take away the sin of all the people in the world. Jesus was the perfect **high priest** because he took the punishment for every sin that anyone has ever committed.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H7218, H1419, H3548, G748, G749

(**Go back to:** John 7:32; 7:45; 11:47; 11:49; 11:51; 11:57; 12:10; 18:3; 18:10; 18:13; 18:15; 18:16; 18:19; 18:22; 18:24; 18:26; 18:35; 19:6; 19:15; 19:21)

# Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit

## Facts:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as "the Spirit" and "Spirit of Yahweh" and "Spirit of truth."
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God's Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God's will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

## Translation Suggestions:

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate "holy" and "spirit."
- Ways to translate this term could also include "Pure Spirit" or "Spirit who is Holy" or "God the Spirit."

(See also: holy, spirit, God, Lord, God the Father, Son of God, gift)

## Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:10
- 1 Thessalonians 04:7-8
- Acts 08:17
- Galatians 05:25
- Genesis 01:1-2
- Isaiah 63:10
- Job 33:04
- Matthew 12:31
- Matthew 28:18-19
- Psalms 051:10-11

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:01** But **God's Spirit** was there over the water.
- **24:08** When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, **the Spirit of God** appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
- **26:01** After overcoming Satan's temptations, Jesus returned in the power of **the Holy Spirit** to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **26:03** Jesus read, "God has given me **his Spirit** so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and **the Holy Spirit** and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **43:03** They were all filled with the **Holy Spirit** and they began to speak in other languages.
- **43:08** "And Jesus has sent the **Holy Spirit** just as he promised he would do. The **Holy Spirit** is causing the things that you are are now seeing and hearing."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the **Holy Spirit**."
- **45:01** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the **Holy Spirit** and of wisdom.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H3068, H6944, H7307, G40, G4151

(**Go back to:** John 1:32; 1:33; 3:5; 3:6; 3:8; 3:34; 4:24; 6:63; 7:39; Notes; 14:17; 14:26; 15:26; Notes; 16:13; Notes; 20:22)

# holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

### Definition:

The terms "holy" and "holiness" refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term "unholy" means "not holy." It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called "unholy" could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term "sacred" describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term "sacred" was oftensed to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as "religious."
- "Sacred songs" and "sacred music" refer to music that was sung or played for God's glory. This could be translated as "music for worshiping Yahweh" or "songs that praise God."
- The phrase "sacred duties" referred to the "religious duties" or "rituals" that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "holy" might include "set apart for God" or "belonging to God" or "completely pure" or "perfectly sinless" or "separated from sin."
- To "make holy" is often translated as "sanctify" in English. It could also be translated as "set apart (someone) for God's glory."
- Ways to translate "unholy" could include "not holy" or "not belonging to God" or "not honoring to God" or "not godly."
- In some contexts, "unholy" could be translated as "unclean."

(See also: Holy Spirit, consecrate, sanctify, set apart)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 28:22
- 2 Kings 03:02
- Lamentations 04:01
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 07:6
- Mark 08:38

- Acts 07:33
- Acts 11:08
- Romans 01:02
- 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
- Colossians 01:22
- 1 Thessalonians 03:13
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- 2 Timothy 03:15

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **09:12** "You are standing on **holy** ground."
- **13:01** "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation."
- **13:05** "Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**."
- **22:05** "So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God."
- **50:02** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G37, G38, G39, G40, G41, G42, G462, G1859, G2150, G2412, G2413, G2839, G3741, G3742

# honor

## Definition:

The terms "honor" and to "honor" refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God instructs Christians to honor others.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents in ways that include respecting them and obeying them.
- The terms "honor" and "glory" are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Ways of honoring God include thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "honor" could include "respect" or "esteem" or "high regard."
- The term to "honor" could be translated as to "show special respect to" or to "cause to be praised" or to "show high regard for" or to "highly value."

(See also: dishonor, glory, glory, praise)

## Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:8
- Acts 19:17
- John 04:44
- John 12:26
- Mark 06:04
- Matthew 15:06

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1420, H1921, H1922, H1923, H1926, H1927, H1935, H2082, H2142, H3366, H3367, H3368, H3372, H3373, H3374, H3444, H3513, H3519, H3655, H3678, H5081, H5375, H5457, H6213, H6286, H6437, H6942, H6944, H6965, H7236, H7613, H7812, H8597, H8416, G820, G1391, G1392, G1784, G2151, G2570, G3170, G4411, G4586, G5091, G5092, G5093, G5399

(**Go back to:** John 4:44; 5:23; 8:49; 12:26)

# hope, hoped

## Definition:

Hope is strongly desiring something to happen. Hope can imply either certainty or uncertainty regarding a future event.

- In the Bible, the term "hope" also has the meaning of "trust," as in "my hope is in the Lord." It refers to a sure expectation of receiving what God has promised his people.
- Sometimes the ULT translates the term in the original language as "confidence." This happens mostly in the New Testament in situations where people who believe in Jesus as their Savior have the assurance (or confidence or hope) of receiving what God has promised.
- To have "no hope" means to have no expectation of something good happening. It means that it is actually very certain that it will not happen.

## Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, the term to "hope" could also be translated as to "wish" or to "desire" or to "expect."
- The expression "nothing to hope for" could be translated as "nothing to trust in" or "no expectation of anything good"
- To "have no hope" could be translated as "have no expectation of anything good" or "have no security" or "be sure that nothing good will happen."
- The expression "have set your hopes on" could also be translated as "have put your confidence in" or "have been trusting in."
- The phrase "I find hope in your Word" could also be translated as "I am confident that your Word is true" or "Your Word helps me trust in you" or "When I obey your Word, I am certain to be blessed."
- Phrases such as "hope in" God could also be translated a, "trust in God" or "know for sure that God will do what he has promised" or "be certain that God is faithful."

(See also: bless, confidence, good, obey, trust, word of God)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:14-15
- 1 Thessalonians 02:19
- Acts 24:14-16
- Acts 26:06
- Acts 27:20
- Colossians 01:05
- Job 11:20

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H982, H983, H986, H2620, H2976, H3175, H3176, H3689, H4009, H4268, H4723, H7663, H7664, H8431, H8615, G91, G560, G1679, G1680, G2070

(**Go back to:** John 5:45)

# hour

## Definition:

In addition to being used to refer to when or how long something took place, the term "hour" is also used in several figurative ways:

- Sometimes "hour" refers to a regular, scheduled time to do something, such as the "hour of prayer."
- When the text says that the "hour had come" for Jesus to suffer and be put to death, this means that it was the appointed time for this to happen--the time that God had selected long ago.
- The term "hour" is also used to mean "at that moment" or "right then."
- When the text talks about the "hour" being late, this means that it was late in the day, when the sun would soon be setting.

## Translation Suggestions:

- When used figuratively, the term "hour" can be translated as "time" or "moment" or "appointed time."
- The phrase "in that very hour" or "the same hour" could be translated as "at that moment" or "at that time" or "immediately" or "right then."
- The expression "the hour was late" could be translated as "it was late in the day" or "it would soon be getting dark" or "it was late afternoon."

(See also: hour)

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:30
- Acts 10:30
- Mark 14:35

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G5610

(**Go back to:** John 2:4; 4:21; 4:23; 5:25; 5:28; 5:35; 7:30; 8:20; 12:23; 12:27; 13:1; 16:2; 16:4; 16:21; 16:25; 16:32; 17:1; 19:27)

# hour, moment, immediately, for a while

## Definition:

The term "hour" is often used in the Bible to tell what time of day a certain event took place. It is also used figuratively to mean "time" or "moment."

- The Jews counted daylight hours starting at sunrise (around 6 a.m.). For example, "the ninth hour" meant "around three in the afternoon."
- Nighttime hours were counted starting at sunset (around 6 p.m.). For example, "the third hour of the night" meant "around nine in the evening" in our present-day system..
- Since references to time in the Bible will not correspond exactly to the present-day time system, phrases such as "around nine" or "about six o'clock" could be used.
- Some translations might add phrases like "in the evening" or "in the morning" or "in the afternoon" to make it clear what time of day is being talked about.
- The phrase, "in that hour" could be translated as, "at that time" or "in that moment."
- Referring to Jesus, the expression "his hour had come" could be translated as, "the time had come for him to" or "the appointed time for him had come."

## Bible References: ##

- Acts 02:15
- John 04:51-52
- Luke 23:44
- Matthew 20:03

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H8160, G5610

(**Go back to:** John 1:39; 4:6; 4:52; 4:53; 11:9; 19:14)

# house

## Definition:

The term "house" refers to a small building, shelter, or tent, usually the place where a family sleeps. The term is often used figuratively in the Bible to mean various concepts such as "household" or "descendants," etc.

- Sometimes the term "house" means "household," referring to the people who live together in one house.
- Sometimes the term "house" means "family" or "descendants," referring to all the people related to or descended from a particular person. For example, the phrase "house of David" refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms "house of God" and "house of Yahweh" refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to a central place where Yahweh was worshipped.
- The phrase "house of Israel" can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

## Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, "house" could be translated as "household" or "people" or "family" or "descendants" or "temple" or "dwelling place."
- The phrase "house of David" could be translated as "clan of David" or "family of David" or "descendants of David." Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate "house of Israel" could include "people of Israel" or "Israel's descendants" or "Israelites."
- The phrase "house of Yahweh" could be translated as "Yahweh's temple" or "place where Yahweh is worshiped" or "place where Yahweh meets with his people" or "where Yahweh dwells." The phrase "house of God" could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: David, descendant, house of God, household, kingdom of Israel, tabernacle, temple, Yahweh)

## Bible References:

- Acts 07:42
- Acts 07:49
- Genesis 39:04
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 08:39
- Matthew 10:06
- Matthew 15:24

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1005, G3609, G3613, G3614, G3624

(**Go back to:** John 2:16; 2:17; 8:35; 11:20; 11:31; 12:3; 14:2)

# household

## Definition:

The term "household" refers to all the people who live together in a house, including family members and all their servants.

- Managing a household would involves directing the servants and also taking care of the property.
- Sometimes "household" can refer figuratively to the whole family line of someone, especially his descendants.

(See also: house)

## Bible References:

- Acts 07:10
- Galatians 06:10
- Genesis 07:01
- Genesis 34:19
- John 04:53
- Matthew 10:25
- Matthew 10:36
- Philippians 04:22

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H5657, G2322, G3609, G3614, G3615, G3616, G3623, G3624

(**Go back to:** John 4:53)

# in Christ, in Jesus, in the Lord, in him

### Definition:

The phrase "in Christ" and related terms refer to the state or condition of being in relationship with Jesus Christ through faith in him.

- Other related terms include "in Christ Jesus, in Jesus Christ, in the Lord Jesus, in the Lord Jesus Christ."
- Possible meanings for the term "in Christ" could include "because you belong to Christ" or "through the relationship you have with Christ" or "based on your faith in Christ."
- These related terms all have the same meaning of being in a state of believing in Jesus and being his disciple.
- Note: Sometimes the word "in" belongs with the verb. For example, "share in Christ" means to "share in" the benefits that come from knowing Christ. To "glory in" Christ means to be glad and give praise to God for who Jesus is and what he has done. To "believe in" Christ means to trust him as Savior and know him.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate "in Christ" and "in the Lord" (and related phrases) could include:
  - "who belong to Christ"
  - "because you believe in Christ"
  - "because Christ has saved us"
  - "in service to the Lord"
  - "relying on the Lord"
  - "because of what the Lord has done."
- People who "believe in" Christ or who "have faith in" Christ believe what Jesus taught and are trusting him to save them because of his sacrifice on the cross that paid the penalty for their sins. Some languages may have one word that translates verbs like "believe in" or "share in" or "trust in."

(See also: Christ, Lord, Jesus, believe, faith)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 02:05
- 2 Corinthians 02:17
- 2 Timothy 01:01
- Galatians 01:22
- Galatians 02:17
- Philemon 01:06
- Revelation 01:10
- Romans 09:01

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G1519, G2962, G5547

# iniquity

## Definition:

The term "iniquity" is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term "sin," but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

- The word "iniquity" literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
- Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
- Other definitions of iniquity include "perversity" and "depravity," which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

## Translation Suggestions:

- The term "iniquity" could be translated as "wickedness" or "perverse actions" or "harmful acts."
- Often, "iniquity" occurs in the same text as the word "sin" and "transgression" so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: sin, transgress, trespass)

## Bible References:

- Daniel 09:13
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Genesis 44:16
- Habakkuk 02:12
- Matthew 13:41
- Matthew 23:27-28
- Micah 03:10

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H1942, H5753, H5758, H5766, H5771, H5932, H5999, H7562, G92, G93, G458, G3892, G4189

(**Go back to:** John 7:18)

# interpret, interpretation, interpreter

### Facts:

The terms "interpret" and "interpretation" refer to understanding and explaining the meaning of something that is not clear.

- Often in the Bible these terms are used in connection with explaining the meaning of dreams or visions.
- When the king of Babylon had some confusing dreams, God helped Daniel to interpret them and to explain their meanings.
- The "interpretation" of the dream is the "explanation" of the meaning of the dream.
- In the Old Testament, God sometimes used dreams to reveal to people what would happen in the future. So the interpretations of those dreams were prophecies.
- The term "interpret" can also refer to figuring out the meaning of other things, such as figuring out what the weather will be like based on how cold or hot it is, how windy it is, and what the sky looks like.
- Ways to translate the term "interpret" could include, "figure out the meaning of" or "explain" or "give the meaning of."
- The term "interpretation" could also be translated as "explanation" or "meaning."

(See also: Babylon, Daniel, dream, prophet, vision)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:10
- Daniel 04:4-6
- Genesis 40:4-5
- Judges 07:15-16
- Luke 12:56

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H995, H3887, H6591, H6622, H6623, H7667, H7760, H7922, G1252, G1328, G1329, G1381, G1955, G2058, G3177, G4793

(**Go back to:** John 1:38; 1:41)

# Isaiah

## Facts:

Isaiah was a prophet of God who prophesied during the reigns of four kings of Judah: Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah.

- He lived in Jerusalem during the time when the Assyrians were attacking the city, during the reign of Hezekiah.
- The Old Testament book of Isaiah is one of the major books of the Bible.
- Isaiah wrote many prophecies that came true while he was still living.
- Isaiah is especially known for the prophecies he wrote about the Messiah that came true 700 years later when Jesus was living on earth.
- Jesus and his disciples quoted Isaiah's prophecies to teach people about the Messiah.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Ahaz, Assyria, Christ, Hezekiah, Jotham, Judah, prophet, Uzziah)

## Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:1-3
- Acts 28:26
- Isaiah 01:1
- Luke 03:4
- Mark 01:01
- Mark 07:06
- Matthew 03:03
- Matthew 04:14

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:09** The prophet **Isaiah** prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **21:10** The prophet **Isaiah** said the Messiah would live in Galilee, comfort broken-hearted people, and proclaim freedom to captives and release to prisoners.
- **21:11** The prophet **Isaiah** also prophesied that the Messiah would be hated without reason and rejected.
- **21:12 Isaiah** prophesied that people would spit on, mock, and beat the Messiah.
- **26:02** They handed him (Jesus) the scroll of the prophet **Isaiah** so that he would read from it. Jesus opened up the scroll and read part of it to the people.
- **45:08** When Philip approached the chariot, he heard the Ethiopian reading from what the prophet **Isaiah** wrote.
- **45:10** Philip explained to the Ethiopian that **Isaiah** was writing about Jesus.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3470, G2268

# Israel, Israelite, Jacob

### Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac and Rebekah.

- Jacob's name means "he grabs the heel" which is an expression meaning "he deceives." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which means "he struggles with God."
- Jacob was clever and deceptive. He found ways to take the firstborn blessing and inheritance rights from his older brother, Esau.
- Esau was angry and planned to kill him so Jacob left his homeland. But years later Jacob returned with his wives and children to the land of Canaan where Esau was living, and their families lived peacefully near each other.
- Jacob had twelve sons. Their descendants became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- A different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, deceive, Esau, Isaac, Israel, Rebekah, twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:11
- Acts 07:46
- Genesis 25:26
- Genesis 29:1-3
- Genesis 32:1-2
- John 04:4-5
- Matthew 08:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **07:01** As the boys grew up, Rebekah loved **Jacob**, but Isaac loved Esau. **Jacob** loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt.
- **07:07 Jacob** lived there for many years, and during that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
- **07:08** After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, **Jacob** returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.
- **07:10** The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to **Jacob**.
- **08:01** Many years later, when **Jacob** was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the herds.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3290, G2384

(**Go back to:** John 4:5; 4:6; 4:12)

# Israel, Israelites

### Facts:

The term "Israel" is the name that God gave to Jacob. The name means "he struggles with God."

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the "people of Israel" or the "nation of Israel" or the "Israelites."
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called "Judah," and the northern kingdom, called "Israel."
- Often the term "Israel" can be translated as "the people of Israel" or "the nation of Israel," depending on the context.

(See also: Jacob, kingdom of Israel, Judah, nation, twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:01
- 1 Kings 08:02
- Acts 02:36
- Acts 07:24
- Acts 13:23
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:29
- Matthew 02:06
- Matthew 27:09
- Philippians 03:4-5

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **09:03** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **09:05** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **10:01** They said, "This is what the God of **Israel** says, 'Let my people go!'"
- **14:12** But despite all this, the people of _Israel_ complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **15:09** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** _ *its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave* _**Israel** peace along all its borders.
- **16:16** So God punished _Israel_ again for worshiping idols.
- **43:06** "Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G935, G2474, G2475

(**Go back to:** John 1:31; 1:47; 1:49; 3:10; 12:13)

# it is written

## Definition:

The phrase "as it is written" or "what is written" occurs frequently in the New Testament and usually refers to commands or prophecies that were written in the Hebrew scriptures.

- Sometimes "as it is written" refers to what was written in the Law of Moses.
- Other times it is a quote from what one of the prophets wrote in the Old Testament.
- This could be translated "as it is written in the Law of Moses" or "as the prophets wrote long ago" or "what it says in God's laws that Moses wrote down long ago".
- Another option is to keep "It is written" and give a footnote that explains what this means.

(See also: command, law, prophet, word of God)

## Bible References:

- 1 John 05:13-15
- Acts 13:29
- Exodus 32:15-16
- John 21:25
- Luke 03:4
- Mark 09:12
- Matthew 04:06
- Revelation 01:03

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3789, G1125

(**Go back to:** John 1:45; 2:17; 5:46; 6:31; 6:45; 8:17; 10:34; 12:14; 12:16; 15:25; 20:30; 20:31)

# Jerusalem

### Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of Israel today.

- The name "Jerusalem" is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include "Salem" "city of Jebus," and "Zion." Both "Jerusalem" and "Salem," have the root meaning of "peace."
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called "Zion" which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- It was in Jerusalem that David's son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going "up" to Jerusalem since it is located in the mountains.

(See also: Babylon, Christ, David, Jebusites, Jesus, Solomon, temple, Zion)

### Bible References:

- Galatians 04:26-27
- John 02:13
- Luke 04:9-11
- Luke 13:05
- Mark 03:7-8
- Mark 03:20-22
- Matthew 03:06
- Matthew 04:23-25
- Matthew 20:17

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:05** David conquered **Jerusalem** and made it his capital city.
- **18:02** In **Jerusalem**, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **20:07** They (Babylonians) captured the city of **Jerusalem**, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of **Jerusalem** in Judah.
- **38:01** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in **Jerusalem**, and that he would be killed there.
- **38:02** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in **Jerusalem**, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in **Jerusalem**, and then go to all people groups everywhere."
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in **Jerusalem** until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3389, H3390, G2414, G2415, G2419

(**Go back to:** John 1:19; 2:13; 2:23; 4:20; 4:21; 4:45; 5:1; 5:2; 7:25; 10:22; 11:18; 11:55; 12:12)

# Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

## Facts:

Jesus is God's Son. The name "Jesus" means "Yahweh saves." The term "Christ" is a title that means "anointed one" and is another word for Messiah.

- The two names are often combined as "Jesus Christ" or "Christ Jesus." These names emphasize that God's Son is the Messiah, who came to save people from being punished eternally for their sins.
- In a miraculous way, the Holy Spirit caused the eternal Son of God to be born as a human being. His mother was told by an angel to call him "Jesus" because he was destined to save people from their sins.
- Jesus did many miracles that revealed that he is God and that he is the Christ, or the Messiah.

## Translation Suggestions:

- In many languages "Jesus" and "Christ" are spelled in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesucristo," "Jezus Christus," "Yesus Kristus", and "Hesukristo" are some of the ways that these names are translated into different languages.
- For the term "Christ," some translators may prefer to use only some form of the term "Messiah" throughout.
- Also consider how these names are spelled in a nearby local or national language.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Christ, God, God the Father, high priest, kingdom of God, Mary, Savior, Son of God)

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:11
- 1 John 02:02
- 1 John 04:15
- 1 Timothy 01:02
- 2 Peter 01:02
- 2 Thessalonians 02:15
- 2 Timothy 01:10
- Acts 02:23
- Acts 05:30
- Acts 10:36
- Hebrews 09:14
- Hebrews 10:22
- Luke 24:20
- Matthew 01:21
- Matthew 04:03
- Philippians 02:05
- Philippians 02:10
- Philippians 04:21-23
- Revelation 01:06

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:04** The angel said, "You will become pregnant and give birth to a son. You are to name him **Jesus** and he will be the Messiah."
- **23:02** "Name him **Jesus** (which means, 'Yahweh saves'), because he will save the people from their sins."
- **24:07** So John baptized him (Jesus), even though **Jesus** had never sinned.
- **24:09** There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw **Jesus** the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized **Jesus**.

- **25:08 Jesus** did not give in to Satan's temptations, so Satan left him.
- **26:08** Then **Jesus** went throughout the region of Galilee, and large crowds came to him. They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and **Jesus** healed them.
- **31:03** Then **Jesus** finished praying and went to the disciples. He walked on top of the water across the lake toward their boat!
- **38:02** He (Judas) knew that the Jewish leaders denied that **Jesus** was the Messiah and that they were plotting to kill him.
- **40:08** Through his death, **Jesus** opened a way for people to come to God.
- **42:11** Then **Jesus** was taken up to heaven, and a cloud hid him from their sight. **Jesus** sat down at the right hand of God to rule over all things.
- **50:17 Jesus** and his people will live on the new earth, and he will reign forever over everything that exists. He will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death. **Jesus** will rule his kingdom with peace and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G2424, G5547

(**Go back to:** John 1:17; 1:29; 1:36; 1:37; 1:38; 1:42; 1:43; 1:45; 1:47; 1:48; 1:50; 2:1; 2:2; 2:3; 2:4; 2:7; 2:11; 2:13; 2:19; 2:22; 2:24; 3:3; 3:5; 3:10; 3:22; 4:1; 4:2; 4:6; 4:7; 4:10; 4:13; 4:17; 4:21; 4:26; 4:34; 4:44; 4:47; 4:48; 4:50; 4:53; 4:54; 5:1; 5:6; 5:8; 5:13; 5:14; 5:15; 5:16; 5:19; 6:1; 6:3; 6:5; 6:10; 6:11; 6:15; 6:17; 6:19; 6:22; 6:24; 6:26; 6:29; 6:32; 6:35; 6:42; 6:43; 6:53; 6:61; 6:64; 6:67; 6:70; 7:1; 7:6; 7:14; 7:16; 7:21; 7:28; 7:33; 7:37; 7:39; 8:12; 8:14; 8:19; 8:25; 8:28; 8:31; 8:34; 8:39; 8:42; 8:49; 8:54; 8:58; 8:59; 9:3; 9:11; 9:14; 9:35; 9:37; 9:39; 9:41; 10:6; 10:7; 10:23; 10:25; 10:32; 10:34; 11:4; 11:5; 11:9; 11:13; 11:14; 11:17; 11:20; 11:21; 11:23; 11:25; 11:30; 11:32; 11:33; 11:35; 11:38; 11:39; 11:40; 11:41; 11:44; 11:46; 11:51; 11:54; 11:56; 12:1; 12:3; 12:7; 12:9; 12:11; 12:12; 12:14; 12:16; 12:21; 12:22; 12:23; 12:30; 12:35; 12:36; 12:44; 13:1; 13:7; 13:8; 13:10; 13:21; 13:23; 13:25; 13:26; 13:27; 13:29; 13:31; 13:36; 13:38; 14:6; 14:9; 14:23; 16:19; 16:31; 17:1; 17:3; 18:1; 18:2; 18:4; 18:5; 18:7; 18:8; 18:11; 18:12; 18:15; 18:19; 18:20; 18:22; 18:23; 18:28; 18:32; 18:33; 18:34; 18:36; 18:37; 19:1; 19:5; 19:9; 19:11; 19:13; 19:16; 19:18; 19:19; 19:20; 19:23; 19:25; 19:26; 19:28; 19:30; 19:33; 19:38; 19:40; 19:42; 20:2; 20:12; 20:14; 20:15; 20:16; 20:17; 20:19; 20:24; 20:26; 20:29; 20:30; 20:31; 21:1; 21:4; 21:5; 21:7; 21:10; 21:12; 21:13; 21:14; 21:15; 21:17; 21:20; 21:21; 21:22; 21:23; 21:25)

# Jew, Jewish

## Facts:

Jews are people who are descendants of Abraham's grandson Jacob. The word "Jew" comes from the word "Judah."

- People began to call the Israelites "Jews" after they returned to Judah from their exile in Babylon.
- Jesus the Messiah was Jewish. However, the Jewish religious leaders rejected Jesus and demanded that he be killed.

(See also: Abraham, Jacob, Israel, Babylon, Jewish leaders)

## Bible References:

- Acts 02:05
- Acts 10:28
- Acts 14:5-7
- Colossians 03:11
- John 02:14
- Matthew 28:15

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:11** The Israelites were now called **Jews** and most of them had lived their whole lives in Babylon.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of **Jews** returned to the city of Jerusalem in Judah.
- **37:10** Many of the **Jews** believed in Jesus because of this miracle.
- **37:11** But the religious leaders of the **Jews** were jealous, so they gathered together to plan how they could kill Jesus and Lazarus.
- **40:02** Pilate commanded that they write, "King of the **Jews**" on a sign and put it on the cross above Jesus' head.
- **46:06** Right away, Saul began preaching to the **Jews** in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3054, H3061, H3062, H3064, H3066, G2450, G2451, G2452, G2453, G2454

(**Go back to:** John 1:19; 2:6; 2:13; 2:18; 2:20; 3:1; 3:25; 4:9; 4:22; 5:1; 5:10; 5:15; 5:16; 5:18; 6:4; 6:41; 6:52; 7:1; 7:2; 7:11; 7:13; 7:15; 7:35; 8:22; 8:31; 8:48; 8:52; 8:57; 9:18; 9:22; 10:19; 10:24; 10:31; 10:33; 11:8; 11:19; 11:31; 11:33; 11:36; 11:45; 11:54; 11:55; 12:9; 12:11; 13:33; 18:12; 18:14; 18:20; 18:31; 18:33; 18:35; 18:36; 18:38; 18:39; 19:3; 19:7; 19:12; 19:14; 19:19; 19:20; 19:21; 19:31; 19:38; 19:40; 19:42; 20:19)

# John (the Baptist)

## Facts:

John was the son of Zechariah and Elizabeth. Since "John" was a common name, he is often called "John the Baptist" to distinguish him from the other people named John, such as the Apostle John.

- John was the prophet whom God sent to prepare people to believe in and follow the Messiah.
- John told people to confess their sins, turn to God, and stop sinning, so that they would be ready to receive the Messiah.
- John baptized many people in water as a sign that they were sorry for their sins and were turning away from them.
- John was called "John the Baptist" because he baptized many people.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: baptize, Zechariah (NT))

## Bible References:

- John 03:22-24
- Luke 01:11-13
- Luke 01:62-63
- Luke 03:7
- Luke 03:15-16
- Luke 07:27-28
- Matthew 03:13
- Matthew 11:14

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:02** The angel said to Zechariah, "Your wife will have a son. You will name him **John**. He will be filled with the Holy Spirit, and will prepare the people for Messiah!"
- **22:07** After Elizabeth gave birth to her baby boy, Zechariah and Elizabeth named the baby **John**, as the angel had commanded.
- **24:01** **John**, the son of Zechariah and Elizabeth, grew up and became a prophet. He lived in the wilderness, ate wild honey and locusts, and wore clothes made from camel hair.
- **24:02** Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to **John**. He preached to them, saying, "Repent, for the kingdom of God is near!"
- **24:06** The next day, Jesus came to be baptized by **John**. When **John** saw him, he said, "Look! There is the Lamb of God who will take away the sin of the world."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G910 G2491

(**Go back to:** John 1:6; 1:15; 1:19; 1:26; 1:28; 1:32; 1:35; 1:40; 3:23; 3:24; 3:25; 3:26; 3:27; 4:1; 5:33; 5:36; 10:40; 10:41)

# Jordan River, Jordan

### Facts:

The Jordan River is a river that flows from north to south, and forms the eastern boundary of the land that was called Canaan.

- Today, the Jordan River separates Israel on its west from Jordan on its east.
- The Jordan River flows through the Sea of Galilee and then empties into the Dead Sea.
- When Joshua led the Israelites into Canaan, they had to cross the Jordan River. It was too deep to cross normally, but God miraculously stopped the river from flowing so they could walk across the river bed.
- Often in the Bible the Jordan River is referred to as "the Jordan."

(See also: Canaan, Salt Sea, Sea of Galilee)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 32:9-10
- John 01:26-28
- John 03:25-26
- Luke 03:3
- Matthew 03:06
- Matthew 03:13-15
- Matthew 04:14-16
- Matthew 19:1-2

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:02** The Israelites had to cross the **Jordan River** to enter into the Promised Land.
- **15:03** After the people crossed the **Jordan River**, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.
- **19:14** Elisha told him (Naaman) to dip himself seven times in the **Jordan River**.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3383, G2446

(**Go back to:** John 1:28; 3:26; 10:40)

# Joseph (NT)

## Facts:

Joseph was Jesus' earthly father and raised him as his son. He was a righteous man who worked as a carpenter.

- Joseph became engaged to a Jewish girl named Mary, while they were engaged God chose her to become the mother of Jesus the Messiah.
- An angel told Joseph that the Holy Spirit had miraculously caused Mary to be pregnant, and that Mary's baby was the Son of God.
- After Jesus was born, an angel warned Joseph to take the baby and Mary to Egypt in order to escape from Herod.
- Joseph and his family later lived in the city of Nazareth of Galilee, where he earned a living doing carpentry work.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Christ, Galilee, Jesus, Nazareth, Son of God, virgin)

## Bible References:

- John 01:43-45
- Luke 01:26-29
- Luke 02:4-5
- Luke 02:15-16
- Matthew 01:18-19
- Matthew 01:24-25
- Matthew 02:19-21
- Matthew 13:54-56

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:04** She (Mary) was a virgin and was engaged to be married to a man named **Joseph**.
- **23:01 Joseph**, the man Mary was engaged to, was a righteous man. When he heard that Mary was pregnant, he knew it was not his baby. He did not want to shame her, so he planned to quietly divorce her.
- **23:02** The angel said, "**Joseph**, do not be afraid to take Mary as your wife. The baby in her body is from the Holy Spirit. She will give birth to a son. Name him Jesus (which means, 'Yahweh saves'), because he will save the people from their sins."
- **23:03** So **Joseph** married Mary and took her home as his wife, but he did not sleep with her until she had given birth.
- **23:04 Joseph** and Mary had to make a long journey from where they lived in Nazareth to Bethlehem because their ancestor was David whose hometown was Bethlehem.
- **26:04** Jesus said, "The words I just read to you are happening right now." All the people were amazed. "Isn't this the son of **Joseph**?" they said.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G2501

(**Go back to:** John 1:45; 6:42)

# Joseph (OT)

## Facts:

Joseph was the eleventh son of Jacob and the first son of his mother Rachel.

- Joseph was his father's favorite son.
- His brothers were jealous of him and sold him into slavery.
- While in Egypt, Joseph was falsely accused and put into prison.
- In spite of his difficulties, Joseph remained faithful to God.
- God brought him to the second highest place of power in Egypt and used him to save people in a time when there was little food. The people of Egypt, as well as his own family, were kept from starving.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Egypt, Jacob)

## Bible References:

- Genesis 30:22-24
- Genesis 33:1-3
- Genesis 37:1-2
- Genesis 37:23-24
- Genesis 41:55-57
- John 04:4-5

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:02 Joseph's** brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had dreamed that he would be their ruler.
- **08:04** The slave traders took **Joseph** to Egypt.
- **08:05** Even in prison, **Joseph** remained faithful to God, and God blessed him.
- **08:07** God had given **Joseph** the ability to interpret dreams, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison.
- **08:09 Joseph** told the people to store up large amounts of food during the seven years of good harvests.
- **09:02** The Egyptians no longer remembered **Joseph** and all he had done to help them.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3084, H3130, G2500, G2501

(**Go back to:** John 4:5)

# joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing

## Definition:

### joy

The term "joy" refers to a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction. The related term "joyful" describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

### rejoice

The term "rejoice" means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as "be very happy" or "be very glad" or "be full of joy."
- When Mary said "my soul rejoices in God my Savior," she meant "God my Savior has made me very happy" or "I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me."

## Translation Suggestions:

- The term "joy" could also be translated as "gladness" or "delight" or "great happiness."
- The phrase, "be joyful" could be translated as "rejoice" or "be very glad" or it could be translated "be very happy in God's goodness."
- A person who is joyful could be described as "very happy" or "delighted" or "deeply glad."
- A phrase such as "make a joyful shout" could be translated as "shout in a way that shows you are very happy."
- A "joyful city" or "joyful house" could be translated as "city where joyful people live" or "house full of joyful people" or "city whose people are very happy." (See: metonymy)

## Bible References:

- Nehemiah 08:10
- Psalm 048:02
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 02:9-10
- Luke 15:07
- Luke 19:37-38
- John 03:29
- Acts 16:32-34
- Romans 05:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 05:23
- Philippians 04:10-13
- 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 05:16
- Philemon 01:4-7

- James 01:02
- 3 John 01:1-4

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:07** "The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with **joy**."
- **34:04** "The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field."
- **41:07** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H1524, H1525, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G20, G21, G2165, G2167, G2744, G4640, G4796, G4913, G5463, G5479

(**Go back to:** John 3:29; 4:36; 8:56; 11:15; 14:28; 15:11; 16:20; 16:21; 16:22; 16:24; 17:13; 20:20)

# Judas Iscariot

## Facts:

Judas Iscariot was one of Jesus' apostles. He was the one who betrayed Jesus to the Jewish leaders.

- The name "Iscariot" may mean "from Kerioth," perhaps indicating that Judas grew up in that city.
- Judas Iscariot managed the apostles' money and regularly stole some of it to use for himself.
- Judas betrayed Jesus by telling the religious leaders where Jesus was so they could arrest him.
- After the religious leaders condemned Jesus to die, Judas regretted that he had betrayed Jesus, so he gave the betrayal money back to the Jewish leaders and then killed himself.
- Another apostle was also named Judas, as was one of Jesus' brothers. Jesus' brother was also known as "Jude."

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: apostle, betray, Jewish leaders, Judas the son of James)

## Bible References:

- Luke 06:14-16
- Luke 22:47-48
- Mark 03:19
- Mark 14:10-11
- Matthew 26:23-25

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **38:02** One of Jesus' disciples was a man named **Judas**. … After Jesus and the disciples arrived in Jerusalem, **Judas** went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **38:03** The Jewish leaders, led by the high priest, paid **Judas** thirty silver coins to betray Jesus.
- **38:14 Judas** came with the Jewish leaders, soldiers, and a large crowd. They were all carrying swords and clubs. **Judas** came to Jesus and said, "Greetings, teacher," and kissed him.
- **39:08** Meanwhile, **Judas**, the betrayer, saw that the Jewish leaders had condemned Jesus to die. He became full of sorrow and went away and killed himself.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G2455, G2469

(**Go back to:** John 6:71; 12:4; 13:2; 13:26; 13:29; 14:22; 18:2; 18:3; 18:5)

# Judas son of James

## Facts:

Judas son of James was one of Jesus' twelve apostles. Note that he was not the same man as Judas Iscariot.

- Often in the Bible, men with the same name were distinguished by mentioning whose son they were. Here, Judas was identified as the "son of James."
- Another man named Judas was Jesus' brother. He was also known as "Jude."
- The New Testament book called "Jude" was probably written by Jesus' brother Judas, since the author identified himself as the "brother of James." James was another brother of Jesus.
- It is also possible that the book of Jude was written by Jesus' disciple, Judas, the son of James.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: James (son of Zebedee), Judas Iscariot, son, the twelve)

## Bible References:

- Acts 01:12-14
- Luke 06:14-16

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G2455

(**Go back to:** John 14:22)

# Judea

## Facts:

The term "Judea" refers to an area of land in ancient Israel. It is sometimes used in a narrow sense and other times in a broad sense.

- Sometimes "Judea" is used in a narrow sense to refer only to the province located in the southern part of ancient Israel just west of the Dead Sea. Some translations call this province "Judah."
- Other times "Judea" has a broad sense and refers to all the provinces of ancient Israel, including Galilee, Samaria, Perea, Idumea and Judea (Judah).
- If translators want to make the distinction clear, the broad sense of Judea could be translated as "Judea Country" and the narrow sense could be translated as "Judea Province," or "Judah Province" since this is the part of ancient Israel where the tribe of Judah had originally lived.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Galilee, Edom, Judah, Judah, Samaria)

## Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14
- Acts 02:09
- Acts 09:32
- Acts 12:19
- John 03:22-24
- Luke 01:05
- Luke 04:44
- Luke 05:17
- Mark 10:1-4
- Matthew 02:01
- Matthew 02:05
- Matthew 02:22-23
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 19:01

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G2453

(**Go back to:** John 3:22; 4:3; 4:47; 4:54; 7:1; 7:3; 11:7)

# judge, judgment

## Definition:

The terms "judge" and "judgment" often refer to making a decision about whether or not something is good, wise, or right.

- The "judgment of God" often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God's judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term "judge" can also mean "condemn." God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is "arbitrate between" or "judge between," as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God's "judgments" are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- "Judgment" can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks "judgment" does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to "judge" could include to "decide" or to "condemn" or to "punish" or to "decree."
- The term "judgment" could be translated as "punishment" or "decision" or "verdict" or "decree" or "condemnation."
- In some contexts, the phrase "in the judgment" could also be translated as "on judgment day" or "during the time when God judges people."

(See also: decree, judge, judgment day, just, law, law)

## Bible References:

- 1 John 04:17
- 1 Kings 03:09
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 03:14
- James 02:04
- Luke 06:37
- Micah 03:9-11
- Psalm 054:01

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, "We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?"
- **50:14** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H148, H430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G144, G350, G968, G1106, G1252, G1341, G1345, G1348, G1349, G2917, G2919, G2920, G2922, G2923, G4232

(**Go back to:** John 3:19; 5:22; 5:27; 5:29; 5:30; 7:24; 7:51; 8:15; 8:16; 8:26; 8:50; 9:39; 12:31; 12:47; 12:48; 16:8; 16:11; 18:31)

# Kidron Valley

## Facts:

The Kidron Valley is a deep valley just outside the city of Jerusalem, between its eastern wall and the Mount of Olives.

- The valley is over 1,000 meters deep and about 32 kilometers long.
- When King David was fleeing from his son Absalom, he went through the Kidron Valley to get to the Mount of Olives.
- King Josiah and King Asa of Judah ordered that the high places and altars of false gods be smashed and burned; the ashes were thrown into the Kidron Valley.
- During the reign of King Hezekiah, the Kidron Valley was where the priests threw everything impure that they removed from the temple.
- The evil queen Athaliah was killed in this valley because of the wicked things she had done.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Absalom, Asa, Athaliah, David, false god, Hezekiah, high places, Josiah, Judah, Mount of Olives)

## Bible References:

- John 18:01

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H5674, H6939, G2748, G5493

(**Go back to:** John 18:1)

# kin, kinfolk, kindred, kinsman

### Definition:

The term "kin" refers to a person's blood relatives, considered as a group. The word "kinsman" refers specifically to a male relative.

- "Kin" can only refer to a person's close relatives, such as parents and siblings, or it can also include more distant relatives, such as an aunts, uncles, or cousins.
- In ancient Israel, if a man died, his nearest male relative was expected to marry his widow, manage his property, and help carry on his family name. This relative was called a "kinsman-redeemer."
- This term "kin" could also be translated as, "relative" or "family member."

### Bible References:

- Romans 16:9-11
- Ruth 02:20
- Ruth 03:09

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H251, H1350, H4129, H4130, H7138, H7607, G4773

(**Go back to:** John 18:26)

# King of the Jews

### Definition:

The term "King of the Jews" is a title that refers to Jesus, the Messiah.

- The first time the Bible records this title is when it was used by the wise men who traveled to Bethlehem looking for the baby who was "King of the Jews."
- The angel revealed to Mary that her son, a descendant of King David, would be a king whose reign would last forever.
- Before Jesus was crucified, Roman soldiers mockingly called Jesus "King of the Jews." This title was also written on a piece of wood and nailed to the top of Jesus' cross.
- Jesus truly is the King of the Jews and the king over all creation.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "King of the Jews" could also be translated as "king over the Jews" or "king who rules over the Jews" or "supreme ruler of the Jews."
- Check to see how the phrase "king of" is translated in other places in the translation.

(See also: descendant, Jew, Jesus, king, kingdom, kingdom of God, wise men)

### Bible References:

- Luke 23:03
- Luke 23:38
- Matthew 02:02
- Matthew 27:11
- Matthew 27:35-37

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:09** Some time later, wise men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky. They realized it meant a new **king of the Jews** was born.
- **39:09** Pilate asked Jesus, "Are you the **King of the Jews**?"
- **39:12** The Roman soldiers whipped Jesus and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they mocked him by saying, "Look, the **King of the Jews**!"
- **40:02** Pilate commanded that they write, "**King of the Jews**" on a sign and put it on the cross above Jesus' head.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G935, G2453

(**Go back to:** John 18:33; 18:39; 19:3; 19:14; 19:19; 19:21)

# king, kingdom, kingship

## Definition:

In the Bible, the term "king" refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a particular group of people or a particular region of land (or both).

- In biblical times, a king was usually chosen to rule on the basis of family relation to the previous king(s). When a king died, usually his oldest son became the next king.
- The Bible often refers to God is as a king who rules over the entire universe (in a general sense) and over his people (in a specific sense).
- The New Testament refers to Jesus as a king in various ways, including: "king of the Jews;" "king of Israel;" and "king of kings."
- Depending on the context, the term "king" might also be translated as "supreme chief" or "sovereign ruler."
- The phrase "king of kings" might be translated as "king who rules over all other kings" or "supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers."

(See also: authority, Herod Antipas, kingdom, kingdom of God)

## Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 06:15-16
- 2 Kings 05:18
- 2 Samuel 05:03
- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 13:22
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 01:05
- Luke 22:24-25
- Matthew 05:35
- Matthew 14:09

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:06** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **16:01** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **16:18** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **17:05** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **21:06** God's prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **48:14** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H4427, H4428, H4430, G935, G936

(**Go back to:** John 1:49; 6:15; 12:13; 12:15; 18:33; 18:37; 18:39; 19:3; 19:12; 19:14; 19:15; 19:19; 19:21)

# kingdom

## Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term "kingdom" can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term "kingdom of God."
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term "kingdom of God" especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a "kingdom" in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as "darkness."

## Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term "kingdom" could be translated as "country (ruled by a king)" or "king's territory" or "region ruled by a king."
- In a spiritual sense, "kingdom" could be translated as "ruling" or "reigning" or "controlling" or "governing."
- One way to translate "kingdom of priests" might be "spiritual priests who are ruled by God."
- The phrase "kingdom of light" could be translated as "God's reign that is good like light" or "when God, who is light, rules people" or "the light and goodness of God's kingdom." It is best to keep the word "light" in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term "kingdom" is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: authority, king, kingdom of God, kingdom of Israel, Judah, Judah, priest)

## Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:12
- 2 Timothy 04:17-18
- Colossians 01:13-14
- John 18:36
- Mark 03:24
- Matthew 04:7-9
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 16:28
- Revelation 01:09

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation."
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon's death.
- **18:07** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **18:08** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G932

(**Go back to:** John 3:3; 3:5)

# kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven

## Definition:

The terms "kingdom of God" and "kingdom of heaven" both refer to God's rule and authority over his people and over all creation.

- The Jews often used the term "heaven" to refer to God, to avoid saying his name directly. (See: metonymy)
- In the New Testament book that Matthew wrote, he referred to God's kingdom as "the kingdom of heaven," probably because he was writing primarily for a Jewish audience.
- The kingdom of God refers to God ruling people spiritually as well as ruling over the physical world.
- The Old Testament prophets said that God would send the Messiah to rule with righteousness. Jesus, the Son of God, is the Messiah who will rule over God's kingdom forever.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "kingdom of God" can be translated as "God's rule (as king)" or "when God reigns as king" or "God's rule over everything."
- The term "kingdom of heaven" could also be translated as "God's rule from heaven as king" or "God in heaven reigning" or "heaven's reign" or "heaven ruling over everything." If it is not possible to translate this simply and clearly, the phrase "kingdom of God" could be translated instead.
- Some translators may prefer to capitalize "Heaven" to show that it refers to God. Others may include a note in the text, such as "kingdom of heaven (that is, 'kingdom of God')."
- A footnote at the bottom of the page of a printed Bible may also be used to explain the meaning of "heaven" in this expression.

(See also: God, heaven, king, kingdom, King of the Jews, reign)

## Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 01:05
- Acts 08:12-13
- Acts 28:23
- Colossians 04:11
- John 03:03
- Luke 07:28
- Luke 10:09
- Luke 12:31-32
- Matthew 03:02
- Matthew 04:17
- Matthew 05:10
- Romans 14:17

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:02** He (John) preached to them, saying, "Repent, for the **kingdom of God** is near!"
- **28:06** Then Jesus said to his disciples, "It is extremely hard for rich people to enter into the **kingdom of God**! Yes, it is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich man to enter the **kingdom of God**."
- **29:02** Jesus said, "The **kingdom of God** is like a king who wanted to settle accounts with his servants."
- **34:01** Jesus told many other stories about the **kingdom of God**. For example, he said, "The **kingdom of God** is like a mustard seed that someone planted in his field."
- **34:03** Jesus told another story, "The **kingdom of God** is like yeast that a woman mixes into some bread dough until it spreads throughout the dough."

- **34:04** "The **kingdom of God** is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again."
- **34:05** "The **kingdom of God** is also like a perfect pearl of great value."
- **42:09** He proved to his disciples in many ways that he was alive, and he taught them about the **kingdom of God**.
- **49:05** Jesus said that the **kingdom of God** is more valuable than anything else in the world.
- **50:02** When Jesus was living on earth he said, "My disciples will preach the good news about the **kingdom of God** to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G932, G2316, G3772

(**Go back to:** John 3:3; 3:5; 18:36)

# kingdom of Israel

## Facts:

What had been the northern part of the nation of Israel became the kingdom of Israel when the twelve tribes of Israel were divided into two kingdoms after Solomon died.

- The kingdom of Israel in the north had ten tribes, and the kingdom of Judah in the south had two tribes.
- The capital city of the kingdom of Israel was Samaria. It was about 50 km from Jerusalem, the capital city of the kingdom of Judah.
- All the kings of the kingdom of Israel were evil. They influenced the people to to serve idols and false gods.
- God sent the Assyrians to attack the kingdom of Israel. Many Israelites were captured and taken away to live in Assyria.
- The Assyrians brought foreigners to live among the remaining people of the kingdom of Israel. These foreigners intermarried with the Israelites, and their descendants became the Samaritan people.

(See also: Assyria, Israel, Judah, Jerusalem, kingdom, Samaria)

## Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 35:18
- Jeremiah 05:11
- Jeremiah 09:26

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **18:08** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their kingdom in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom of Israel**.
- **18:10** The **kingdoms of Judah and Israel** became enemies and often fought against each other.
- **18:11** In the new **kingdom of Israel**, all the kings were evil.
- **20:01** The **kingdoms of Israel** and Judah both sinned against God.
- **20:02** The **kingdom of Israel** was destroyed by the Assyrian Empire, a powerful, cruel nation. The Assyrians killed many people in the **kingdom of Israel**, took away everything of value, and burned much of the country.
- **20:04** Then the Assyrians brought foreigners to live in the land where the **kingdom of Israel** had been. The foreigners rebuilt the destroyed cities and married the Israelites who were left there. The descendants of the Israelites who married foreigners were called Samaritans.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3478, H4410, H4467, H4468

(**Go back to:** John 4 General Notes)

# know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

## Definition:

The term "know" and "knowledge" means generally to understand something or someone. It can also mean to be aware of a fact or to be familiar with a person. The expression "to make known" means to tell information.

- The term "knowledge" refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing physical concepts or abstract concepts.
- To "know about" God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To "know" God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God's will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To "know the Law" means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes "knowledge" is used as a synonym for "wisdom," which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The "knowledge of God" is sometimes used as a synonym for the "fear of Yahweh."

## Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "know" could include "understand" or "be familiar with" or "be aware of" or "be acquainted with" or "be in relationship with."
- In the context of understanding the difference between two things, the term is usually translated as "distinguish." When used in this way, the term is often followed by the preposition "between."
- Some languages have two different words for "know," one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term "make known" could be translated as "cause people to know" or "reveal" or "tell about" or "explain."
- To "know about" something could be translated as "be aware of" or "be familiar with."
- The expression "know how to" means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as "be able to" or "have the skill to."
- The term "knowledge" could also be translated as "what is known" or "wisdom" or "understanding," depending on the context.

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 02:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46
- 2 Corinthians 02:15
- 2 Peter 01:3-4
- Deuteronomy 04:39-40
- Genesis 19:05
- Luke 01:77

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1843, H1844, H1847, H1875, H3045, H3046, H4093, H4486, H5046, H5234, H5475, H5869, G50, G56, G1097, G1107, G1108, G1492, G1921, G1922, G1987, G2467, G2589, G4267, G4894

11:57; 12:9; 12:35; 12:50; 13:1; 13:3; 13:11; 13:17; 13:18; 13:35; 14:4; 14:5; 14:7; 14:9; 14:17; 14:20; 14:31; 15:15; 15:18; 15:21; 16:3; 16:18; 16:19; 16:30; 17:3; 17:7; 17:8; 17:23; 17:25; 17:26; 18:2; 18:4; 18:16; 18:21; 19:4; 19:10; 19:28; 19:35; 20:2; 20:13; 20:14; 21:4; 21:12; 21:15; 21:16; 21:17; 21:24)

# labor, laborer, work, hard work

### Definition:

The term "labor" refers to doing hard work of any kind.

- In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It is often implied that the task is difficult.
- A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
- In English, the word "labor" is also used for part of the process of giving birth. Other languages may have a completely different word for this.
- Ways to translate "labor" could include "work" or "hard work" or "difficult work" or to "work hard."

(See also: hard, labor pains)

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:09
- 1 Thessalonians 03:05
- Galatians 04:10-11
- James 05:04
- John 04:38
- Luke 10:02
- Matthew 10:10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3018, H3021, H3022, H3205, H4522, H4639, H5447, H5450, H5647, H5656, H5998, H5999, H6001, H6089, H6468, H6635, G75, G2038, G2040, G2041, G2872, G2873, G4866, G4904

(**Go back to:** John 3:21; 4:38; 5:17; 6:27; 6:28; 6:30; 9:4)

# lamb, Lamb of God

## Definition:

The term "lamb" refers to a young sheep. Sheep are four-legged animals with thick, woolly hair, used for sacrifices to God. Jesus is called the "Lamb of God" because he was sacrificed to pay for people's sins.

- These animals are easily led astray and need protecting. God compares human beings to sheep.
- God instructed his people to sacrifice physically perfect sheep and lambs to him.
- Jesus is called the "Lamb of God" who was sacrificed to pay for people's sins. He was a perfect, unblemished sacrifice because he was completely without sin.

## Translation Suggestions:

- If sheep are known in the language area, the name for their young should be used to translate the terms "lamb" and "Lamb of God."
- "Lamb of God" could be translated as "God's (sacrificial) Lamb," or "Lamb sacrificed to God" or "(sacrificial) Lamb from God."
- If sheep are not known, this term could be translated as "a young sheep" with a footnote that describes what sheep are like. The note could also compare sheep and lambs to an animal from that area that lives in herds, that is timid and defenseless, and that often wanders away.
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation of a nearby local or national language.

(See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: sheep, shepherd)

## Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 12:03
- Ezra 08:35-36
- Isaiah 66:3
- Jeremiah 11:19
- John 01:29
- John 01:36
- Leviticus 14:21-23
- Leviticus 17:1-4
- Luke 10:03
- Revelation 15:3-4

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:07** As Abraham and Isaac walked to the place of the sacrifice Isaac asked, "Father, we have wood for the sacrifice, but where is the **lamb**?"
- **11:02** God provided a way to save the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him. Each family had to choose a perfect **lamb** or goat and kill it.
- **24:06** The next day, Jesus came to be baptized by John. When John saw him, he said, "Look! There is the **Lamb of God** who will take away the sin of the world."
- **45:08** He read, "They led him like a **lamb** to be killed, and as a **lamb** is silent, he did not say a word.
- **48:08** When God told Abraham to offer his son, Isaac, as a sacrifice, God provided a **lamb** for the sacrifice instead of his son, Isaac. We all deserve to die for our sins! But God provided Jesus, the **Lamb** of God, as a sacrifice to die in our place.
- **48:09** When God sent the last plague on Egypt, he told each Israelite family to kill a perfect **lamb** and spread its blood around the tops and sides of their door frames.

**Word Data:**

  • Strong's: H7716, G721, G2316

(**Go back to:** John 1:29; 1:36; 21:15)

# lament, lamentation

### Definition:

The terms "lament" and "lamentation" refer to a strong expression of mourning, sorrow, or grief.

- Sometimes this includes deep regret for sin, or compassion for people who have experienced disaster.
- A lamentation could include moaning, weeping, or wailing.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term to "lament" could be translated as to "deeply mourn" or to "wail in grief" or to "be sorrowful."
- A "lamentation" (or a "lament") could be translated as "loud wailing and weeping" or "deep sorrow" or "sorrowful sobbing" or "mournful moaning."

### Bible References:

- Amos 08:9-10
- Ezekiel 32:1-2
- Jeremiah 22:18
- Job 27:15-17
- Lamentations 02:05
- Lamentations 02:08
- Micah 02:04
- Psalm 102:1-2
- Zechariah 11:02

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H56, H421, H578, H592, H1058, H4553, H5091, H5092, H5594, H6088, H6969, H7015, H8567, G2354, G2355, G2870, G2875

(**Go back to:** )

# lamp

## Definition:

The term "lamp" generally refers to something that produces light. The lamps used in Bible times were usually oil lamps.

The type of lamp that was used in Bible times is a small container with a fuel source, usually oil, that gives light when it burns.

- An ordinary oil lamp usually consisted of a common piece of pottery filled with olive oil, with a wick placed in the oil to burn.
- For some lamps, the pot or jar was oval, with one end pinched close together to hold the wick.
- An oil lamp could be carried or placed on a stand so that its light could fill a room or house.
- In scripture, lamps are used in several figurative ways as symbols of light and life.

(See also: lampstand, life, light)

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:36
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Luke 08:16-18
- Matthew 05:15
- Matthew 06:22
- Matthew 25:03

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3940, H3974, H4501, H5215, H5216, G2985, G3088

(**Go back to:** John 5:35; 18:3)

# last day, latter days

### Definition:

The term "last days" or "latter days" refers generally to the time period at the end of the current age.

- • This time period will have an unknown duration.
- • The "last days" are a time of judgment upon those who have turned away from God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- • The term "last days" can also be translated as "final days" or "end times."
- • In some contexts, this could be translated as "end of the world" or "when this world ends."

(See also: day of the Lord, judge, turn, world)

### Bible References:

- • 2 Peter 03:3-4
- • Daniel 10:14-15
- • Hebrews 01:02
- • Isaiah 02:02
- • James 05:03
- • Jeremiah 23:19-20
- • John 11:24-26
- • Micah 04:1

### Word Data:

- • Strong's: H319, H3117, G2078, G2250

(**Go back to:** John 6:39; 6:40; 6:44; 6:54; 11:24; 12:48)

# law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law

## Definition:

All these terms refer to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey. The terms "law" and "God's law" are also used more generally to refer to everything God wants his people to obey.

- Depending on the context, the "law" can refer to:
    ◦ the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
    ◦ all the laws given to Moses
    ◦ the first five books of the Old Testament
    ◦ the entire Old Testament (also referred to as "scriptures" in the New Testament).
    ◦ all of God's instructions and will
- The phrase "the law and the prophets" is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or "Old Testament")

## Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, "laws," since they refer to many instructions.
- The "law of Moses" could be translated as "the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites."
- Depending on the context, "the law of Moses" could also be translated as "the law that God told to Moses" or "God's laws that Moses wrote down" or "the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites."
- Ways to translate "the law" or "law of God" or "God's laws" could include "laws from God" or "God's commands" or "laws that God gave" or "everything that God commands" or "all of God's instructions."
- The phrase "law of Yahweh" could also be translated as "Yahweh's laws" or "laws that Yahweh said to obey" or "laws from Yahweh" or "things Yahweh commanded."

(See also: instruct, Moses, Ten Commandments, lawful, Yahweh)

## Bible References:

- Acts 15:06
- Daniel 09:13
- Exodus 28:42-43
- Ezra 07:25-26
- Galatians 02:15
- Luke 24:44
- Matthew 05:18
- Nehemiah 10:29
- Romans 03:20

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:07** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.\
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed **God's law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.\
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.\
- **16:01** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God's laws**.\
- **21:05** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.\
- **27:01** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"\

- **28:01** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws**."\

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2710, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G2316, G3551, G3565

(**Go back to:** John 1:17; 1:45; 7:19; 7:23; 7:49; 7:51; 8:17; Notes; Notes; 10:34; 12:34; 15:25; 18:31; 19:7)

# lawful, unlawful, not lawful, lawless, lawlessness

## Definition:

The term "lawful" refers to something that is permitted to be done according to a law or other requirement. The opposite of this is "unlawful," which simply means "not lawful."

- In the Bible, something was "lawful" if it was permitted by God's moral law, or by the Law of Moses and other Jewish laws. Something that was "unlawful" was "not permitted" by those laws.
- To do something "lawfully" means to do it "properly" or "in the right way."
- Many of the things that the Jewish laws considered lawful or not lawful were not in agreement with God's laws about loving others.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate "lawful" could include "permitted" or "according to God's law" or "following our laws" or "proper" or "fitting."
- The phrase "Is it lawful?" could also be translated as "Do our laws allow?" or "Is that something our laws permit?"

The terms "unlawful" and "not lawful" are used to describe actions that break a law.

- In the New Testament, the term "unlawful" is not only used to refer to breaking God's laws, but also often refers to breaking Jewish man-made laws.
- Over the years, the Jews added to the laws that God gave to them. The Jewish leaders would call something "unlawful" if it did not conform to their man-made laws.
- When Jesus and his disciples were picking grain on a Sabbath day, the Pharisees accused them of doing something "unlawful" because it was breaking the Jewish laws about not working on that day.
- When Peter stated that eating unclean foods was "unlawful" for him, he meant that if he ate those foods he would be breaking the laws God had given the Israelites about not eating certain foods.

The term "lawless" describes a person who does not obey laws or rules. When a country or group of people are in a state of "lawlessness," there is widespread disobedience, rebellion, or immorality.

- A lawless person is rebellious and does not obey God's laws.
- The apostle Paul wrote that in the last days there will be a "man of lawlessness," or a "lawless one," who will be influenced by Satan to do evil things.

## Translation Suggestions:

- This term "unlawful" should be translated using a word or expression that means "not lawful" or "lawbreaking."
- Other ways to translate "unlawful" could be "not permitted" or "not according to God's law" or "not conforming to our laws."
- The expression "against the law" has the same meaning as "unlawful."
- The term "lawless" could also be translated as "rebellious" or "disobedient" or "law-defying".
- The term "lawlessness" could be translated as "not obeying any laws" or "rebellion (against God's laws)."
- The phrase "man of lawlessness" could be translated as "man who does not obey any laws" or "man who rebels against God's laws."
- It is important to keep the concept of "law" in this term, if possible.
- Note that the term "unlawful" has a different meaning from this term.

(See also: law, law, Moses, Sabbath)

## Bible References:

- Matthew 07:21-23
- Matthew 12:02

- Matthew 12:04
- Matthew 12:10
- Mark 03:04
- Luke 06:02
- Acts 02:23
- Acts 10:28
- Acts 22:25
- 2 Thessalonians 02:03
- Titus 02:14
- 1 John 03:4-6

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H6530, G111, G113, G266, G458, G459, G1832, G3545

(**Go back to:** John 5:10; 18:31)

# Lazarus

### Facts:

Lazarus and his sisters, Mary and Martha, were special friends of Jesus. Jesus often stayed with them in their home in Bethany.

> • Lazarus is best known for the fact that Jesus raised him from the dead after he had been buried in a tomb for several days.
> • The Jewish leaders were angry at Jesus and jealous that he had done this miracle, and they tried to find a way to kill both Jesus and Lazarus.
> • Jesus also told a parable about a poor beggar and a rich man in which the beggar was a different man named "Lazarus."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: beg, Jewish leaders, Martha, Mary, raise)

### Bible References:

> • John 11:11
> • John 12:1-3
> • Luke 16:21

### Examples from the Bible stories:

> • **37:01** One day, Jesus received a message that **Lazarus** was very sick. **Lazarus** and his two sisters, Mary and Martha, were close friends of Jesus.
> • **37:02** Jesus said, "Our friend **Lazarus** has fallen asleep, and I must wake him."
> • **37:03** Jesus' disciples replied, "Master, if **Lazarus** is sleeping, then he will get better." Then Jesus told them plainly, "**Lazarus** is dead."
> • **37:04** When Jesus arrived at **Lazarus'** hometown, **Lazarus** had already been dead for four days.
> • **37:06** Jesus asked them, "Where have you put **Lazarus**?"
> • **37:09** Then Jesus shouted, "**Lazarus**, come out!"
> • **37:10** So **Lazarus** came out! He was still wrapped in grave clothes.
> • **37:11** But the religious leaders of the Jews were jealous, so they gathered together to plan how they could kill Jesus and **Lazarus**.

### Word Data:

> • Strong's: G2976

(**Go back to:** John 11:1; 11:2; 11:5; 11:11; 11:14; 11:43; 12:1; 12:2; 12:9; 12:10; 12:17)

# Levi, Levite, Levitical

### Definition:

Levi was one of the twelve sons of Jacob, or Israel. The term "Levite" refers to a person who is a member of the Israelite tribe whose ancestor was Levi.

- The Levites were responsible for taking care of the temple and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers.
- All Jewish priests were Levites, descended from Levi and part of the tribe of Levi. (Not all Levites were priests, however.)
- The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
- Two other men named "Levi" were ancestors of Jesus, and their names are in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
- Jesus' disciple Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: Matthew, priest, sacrifice, temple, twelve tribes of Israel)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 08:3-5
- Acts 04:36-37
- Genesis 29:34
- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:32

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3878, H3879, H3881, G3017, G3018, G3019, G3020

(**Go back to:** John 1:19)

# life, live, living, alive

## Definition:

The term "life" refers to being physically alive as opposed to being physically dead.

### 1. Physical life

- A "life" can also refer to an individual person as in "a life was saved".
- Sometimes the word "life" refers to the experience of living as in, "his life was enjoyable."
- It can also refer to a person's lifespan, as in the expression, "the end of his life."
- The term "living" may refer to being physically alive, as in "my mother is still living." It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, "they were living in the city."
- In the Bible, the concept of "life" is often contrasted with the concept of "death."

### 2. Eternal life

- A person has eternal life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- The opposite of eternal life is eternal death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "life" can be translated as "existence" or "person" or "soul" or "being" or "experience."
- The term "live" could be translated by "dwell" or "reside" or "exist."
- The expression "end of his life" could be translated as "when he stopped living."
- The expression "spared their lives' could be translated as "allowed them to live" or "did not kill them."
- The expression "they risked their lives" could be translated as "they put themselves in danger" or "they did something that could have killed them."
- When the Bible text talks about eternal life, the term "life" could be translated in the following ways: "eternal life" or "God making us alive in our spirits" or "new life by God's Spirit" or "being made alive in our inner self."
- Depending on the context, the expression "give life" could also be translated as "cause to live" or "give eternal life" or "cause to live eternally."

(See also: death, everlasting)

## Bible References:

- 2 Peter 01:03
- Acts 10:42
- Genesis 02:07
- Genesis 07:22
- Hebrews 10:20
- Jeremiah 44:02
- John 01:04
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 12:23
- Matthew 07:14

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were _living_ in the world.
- **08:13** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- **17:09** However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- **35:05** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- **44:05** "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G198, G222, G227, G806, G590

# light, lighting, lightning, daylight, sunlight, twilight, enlighten

### Definition:

There are several figurative uses of the term "light" in the Bible. It is often used as a metaphor for righteousness, holiness, and truth. (See: Metaphor)

- Jesus said, "I am the light of the world" to express that he brings God's true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
- Christians are commanded to "walk in the light," which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
- The apostle John stated that "God is light" and in him there is no darkness at all.
- Light and darkness are complete opposites. Darkness is the absence of all light.
- Jesus said that he was "the light of the world" and that his followers should shine like lights in the world by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
- "Walking in the light" represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms "light" and "darkness" even when they are used figuratively.
- It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, "walk as children of light" could be translated as, "live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight."
- Make sure that the translation of "light" does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: darkness, holy, righteous, true)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 John 02:08
- 2 Corinthians 04:06
- Acts 26:18
- Isaiah 02:05
- John 01:05
- Matthew 05:16
- Matthew 06:23
- Nehemiah 09:12-13
- Revelation 18:23-24

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H216, H217, H3313, H3974, H5051, H5094, H5105, H5216, H7837, G681, G796, G1645, G2985, G3088, G5338, G5457, G5458, G5460, G5462

# like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if

## Definition:

The terms "like" and "likeness" refer to something being the same as, or similar to, something else.

  • The word "like" is also often used in a figurative expressions called a "simile" in which something is compared to something else, usually highlighting a shared characteristic. For example, "his clothes shined like the sun" and "the voice boomed like thunder." (See: Simile)
  • To "be like" or "sound like" or "look like" something or someone means to have qualities that are similar to the thing or person being compared to.
  • People were created in God's "likeness," that is, in his "image." It means that they have qualities or characteristics that are "like" or "similar to" qualities that God has, such as the ability to think, feel, and communicate.
  • To have "the likeness of" something or someone means to have characteristics that look like that thing or person.

## Translation Suggestions

  • In some contexts, the expression "the likeness of" could be translated as "what looked like" or "what appeared to be."
  • The expression "in the likeness of his death" could be translated as "sharing in the experience of his death" or "as if experiencing his death with him."
  • The expression "in the likeness of sinful flesh" could be translated as "being like a sinful human being" or to "be a human being." Make sure the translation of this expression does not sound like Jesus was sinful.
  • "In his own likeness" could also be translated as to "be like him" or "having many of the same qualities that he has."
  • The expression "the likeness of an image of perishable man, of birds, of four-footed beasts and of creeping things" could be translated as "idols made to look like perishable humans, or animals, such as birds, beasts, and small, crawling things."

(See also: beast, flesh, image of God, image, perish)

## Bible References:

  • Ezekiel 01:05
  • Mark 08:24
  • Matthew 17:02
  • Matthew 18:03
  • Psalms 073:05
  • Revelation 01:12-13

## Word Data:

  • Strong's: H1823, H8403, H8544, G1503, G1504, G2509, G2531, G2596, G3664, G3665, G3666, G3667, G3668, G3669, G3697, G4833, G5108, G5613, G5615, G5616, G5618, G5619

# lord, Lord, master, sir

## Definition:

In the Bible, the term "lord" generally refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people. In the Bible, however, the term is used to address many different kinds of people, including God.

- This word is sometimes translated as "master" when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as "sir" in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When "Lord" is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of "sir" or "master.")

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as "Lord God Almighty" or "Lord Yahweh" or "Yahweh our Lord."
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as "Lord Jesus" and "Lord Jesus Christ," which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term "Lord" in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has "Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh" and the New Testament text has "Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord."
- In the ULT and UST, the title "Lord" is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean "Lord." It is never used as a translation of God's name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate "Lord" as "Master" or "Ruler" or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term "Lord God" could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

## Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of "master" when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as "master."
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, "lord" could be translated with a respectful form of address such as "sir." This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as "Lord" (capitalized) in English.

(See also: God, Jesus, ruler, Yahweh)

## Bible References:

- Genesis 39:02
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Psalms 086:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:04
- Lamentations 02:02
- Ezekiel 18:29
- Daniel 09:09

- Daniel 09:17-19
- Malachi 03:01
- Matthew 07:21-23
- Luke 01:30-33
- Luke 16:13
- Romans 06:23
- Ephesians 06:9
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Colossians 03:23
- Hebrews 12:14
- James 02:01
- 1 Peter 01:03
- Jude 01:05
- Revelation 15:04

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:05** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, "In God's word, he commands his people, 'Do not test the **Lord** your God.'"
- **25:07** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.'"
- **26:03** This is the year of the **Lord's** favor.
- **27:02** The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind."
- **31:05** Then Peter said to Jesus, "**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water"
- **43:09** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!"
- **47:03** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H113, H136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G203, G634, G962, G1203, G2962

# lots, casting lots

### Definition:

In the Bible, a "lot" is a marked object(s) used as a way of making a fair and/or random decision, usually for the purpose of selecting a specific person within a group. "Casting lots" refers to the process of using "lots" to make a fair and/or random decision.

- In modern times, some cultures "draw" or "pull out" lots using a bunch of straws. Someone holds the straws so that no one can see how long they are. Each person pulls out a straw and the one who picks the longest (or shortest) straw is the one who is chosen.
- In biblical times, the objects cast (the "lots") were probably small marked stones. It is unknown how the "lots" actually indicated a decision, but it probably involved dropping or throwing marked stones on the ground.
- The phrase "casting lots" can be translated as "tossing lots" or "throwing lots" or "rolling lots." The translation of "cast" should not sound like the lots were being thrown a long distance.
- If a decision is made "by lot," this could be translated as "by casting lots" or "by throwing lots," etc.

(See also: Elizabeth, priest, Zechariah (OT), Zechariah (NT))

### Bible References:

- Jonah 01:07
- Luke 01:8-10
- Luke 23:34
- Mark 15:22
- Matthew 27:35-37
- Psalms 022:18-19

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1486, H5307, G2819, G2975

(**Go back to:** John 19:24)

# love, beloved

## Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for "love" some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it doesn't benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.

    • Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
    • When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
    • In the ULT, the word "love" refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.

2. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.

    • This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
    • The term can also be used in such contexts as, "They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet." This means that they "like very much" or "greatly desire" to do that.

3. The word "love" can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

## Translation Suggestions:

• Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word "love" in the ULT refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
• Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, "devoted, faithful caring" or "care for unselfishly" or "love from God." Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
• Sometimes the English word "love" describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, "like very much" or "care for" or "have strong affection for."
• In contexts where the word "love" is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by "strongly prefer" or "like very much" or "greatly desire."
• Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
• Many languages must express "love" as an action. So for example, they might translate "love is patient, love is kind" as, "when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him."

(See also: covenant, death, sacrifice, save, sin)

## Bible References:

• 1 Corinthians 13:07
• 1 John 03:02
• 1 Thessalonians 04:10
• Galatians 05:23
• Genesis 29:18
• Isaiah 56:06
• Jeremiah 02:02
• John 03:16

- Matthew 10:37
- Nehemiah 09:32-34
- Philippians 01:09
- Song of Solomon 01:02

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:02** The law expert replied that God's law says, "**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself."
- **33:08** "The thorny ground is a person who hears God's word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God."
- **36:05** As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, "This is my Son whom I **love**."
- **39:10** "Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me."
- **47:01** She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- **48:01** When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- **49:03** He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- **49:04** He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- **49:07** Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- **49:09** But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:13** God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H157, H158, H159, H160, H2245, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H5691, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G25, G26, G5360, G5361, G5362, G5363, G5365, G5367, G5368, G5369, G5377, G5381, G5382, G5383, G5388

(**Go back to:** John 3:16; 3:19; 3:35; 5:20; 5:42; 8:42; 10:17; 11:3; 11:5; 11:36; 12:25; 12:43; 13:1; 13:23; 13:34; 13:35; 14:15; 14:21; 14:23; 14:24; 14:28; 14:31; 15:9; 15:10; 15:12; 15:13; 15:17; 15:19; 16:27; 17:23; 17:24; 17:26; 19:26; 20:2; 21:7; 21:15; 21:16; 21:17; 21:20)

# lust, lustful, passions, desires

### Definition:

Lust is a very strong desire, usually in the context of wanting something sinful or immoral. To lust is to have lust.

- In the Bible, "lust" usually referred to sexual desire for someone other than one's own spouse.
- Sometimes this term was used in a figurative sense to refer to worshiping idols.
- Depending on the context, "lust" could be translated as "wrong desire" or "strong desire" or "wrongful sexual desire" or "strong immoral desire" or to "strongly desire to sin."
- The phrase to "lust after" could be translated as to "wrongly desire" or to "think immorally about" or to "immorally desire."

(See also: adultery, false god)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 02:16
- 2 Timothy 02:22
- Galatians 05:16
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Genesis 39:7-9
- Matthew 05:28

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H183, H185, H310, H1730, H2181, H2183, H2530, H5178, H5375, H5689, H5691, H5869, H7843, G766, G1937, G1939, G2237, G3715, G3806

(**Go back to:** John 8:44)

# manna

### Definition:

Manna was a white, grain-like food that God provided for the Israelites to eat during the 40 years of living in the wilderness after they left Egypt.

- Manna looked like white flakes which appeared each morning on the ground under the dew. It tasted sweet, like honey.
- The Israelites gathered the manna flakes every day except on the Sabbath.
- On the day before the Sabbath, God told the Israelites to gather twice the amount of manna so they wouldn't have to gather it on their day of rest.
- The word "manna" means "what is it?"
- In the Bible, manna is also referred to as "bread from heaven" and "grain from heaven."

### Translation Suggestions

- Other ways to translate this term could include "thin white flakes of food" or "food from heaven."
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: bread, desert, grain, heaven, Sabbath)

### Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 08:3
- Exodus 16:27
- Hebrews 09:3-5
- John 06:30-31
- Joshua 05:12

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4478, G3131

(**Go back to:** John 6:31; 6:49)

# Martha

## Facts:

Martha was a woman from Bethany who followed Jesus.

- Martha had a sister named Mary and a brother named Lazarus, who also followed Jesus.
- One time when Jesus was visiting them in their home, Martha was distracted by meal preparation while her sister Mary sat and listened to Jesus teach.
- When Lazarus died, Martha told Jesus that she believed that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Lazarus, Mary (sister of Martha))

## Bible References:

- John 11:02
- John 12:1-3
- Luke 10:39

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G3136

(**Go back to:** John 11:1; 11:5; 11:19; 11:20; 11:21; 11:24; 11:30; 11:39; 12:2)

# Mary (sister of Martha)

### Facts:

Mary was a women from Bethany who followed Jesus.

- Mary had a sister named Martha and a brother named Lazarus who also followed Jesus.
- One time Jesus said that Mary had chosen what was best when she chose to listen to him teach rather than being anxious about preparing him a meal as Martha was.
- Jesus brought Mary's brother Lazarus back to life.
- Sometime after that, while Jesus was eating in someone's home in Bethany, Mary poured expensive perfume on his feet in order to worship him.
- Jesus praised her for doing this and said that she was preparing his body for burial.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Bethany, frankincense, Lazarus, Martha)

### Bible References:

- John 11:1-2
- John 12:1-3
- Luke 10:38-39

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G3137

(**Go back to:** John 11:1; 11:2; 11:19; 11:20; 11:28; 11:31; 11:32; 11:45; 12:3)

# Mary Magdalene

## Facts:

Mary Magdalene was one of several women who believed in Jesus and followed him in his ministry. She was known as the one whom Jesus had healed from seven demons who had controlled her.

- Mary Magdalene and some other women helped support Jesus and his apostles by giving to them.
- She is also mentioned as one of the women who were the first to see Jesus after he rose from the dead.
- As Mary Magdalene stood outside the empty tomb, she saw Jesus standing there and he told her to go tell the other disciples that he was alive again.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: demon, demon-possessed)

## Bible References:

- Luke 08:1-3
- Luke 24:8-10
- Mark 15:39-41
- Matthew 27:54-56

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G3094, G3137

(**Go back to:** John 19:25; 20:1; 20:11; 20:16; 20:18)

# messenger

### Facts:

The term "messenger" refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

- In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
- An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate "angel" as "messenger."
- John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah's coming and to prepare people to receive him.
- Jesus' apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.

(See also: angel, apostle, John (the Baptist))

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 19:1-3
- 1 Samuel 06:21
- 2 Kings 01:1-2
- Luke 07:27
- Matthew 11:10

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1319, H4397, H4398, H5046, H5894, H6735, H6737, H7323, H7971, G32, G652

(**Go back to:** John 13:16)

# Moses

## Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years.

- When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
- God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
- After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
- Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Miriam, Promised Land, Ten Commandments)

## Bible References:

- Acts 07:21
- Acts 07:30
- Exodus 02:10
- Exodus 09:01
- Matthew 17:04
- Romans 05:14

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:12** One day while **Moses** was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **12:05 Moses** told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you."
- **12:07** God told **Moses** to raise his hand over the sea and divide the waters.
- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **13:07** Then God wrote these Ten Commandments on two stone tablets and gave them to **Moses**.

\

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H4872, H4873, G3475

(**Go back to:** John 1:17; 1:45; 3:14; 5:45; 5:46; 6:32; 7:19; 7:22; 7:23; 9:28; 9:29)

# myrrh

## Definition:

Myrrh is an oil or spice that is made from the resin of a myrrh tree that grows in Africa and Asia. It is related to frankincense.

- Myrrh was also used to make incense, perfume, and medicine, and to prepare dead bodies for burial.
- Myrrh was one of the gifts that the learned men gave to Jesus when he was born.
- Jesus was offered wine mixed with myrrh in order to ease the pain when he was crucified.

(See also: frankincense, learned men)

## Bible References:

- Exodus 30:22-25
- Genesis 37:25-26
- John 11:1-2
- Mark 15:23
- Matthew 02:11-12

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3910, H4753, G3464, G4666, G4669

(**Go back to:** John 19:39)

# name

## Definition:

The term "name" refers to the word by which a specific person or thing is called. In the Bible, however, the term "name" is used in several different ways to refer to several different concepts.

- In some contexts, "name" could refer to a person's reputation, as in "let us make a name for ourselves."
- The term "name" could also refer to the memory of something. For example, "cut off the names of the idols" means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking "in the name of God" meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The "name" of someone could refer to the entire person, as in "there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved." (See: metonymy)

## Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like "his good name" could be translated as "his good reputation."
- Doing something "in the name of" could be translated as "with the authority of" or "with the permission of" or "as the representative of" that person.
- The expression "make a name for ourselves" could be translated "cause many people to know about us" or "make people think we are very important."
- The expression "call his name" could be translated as "name him" or "give him the name."
- The expression "those who love your name" could be translated as "those who love you."
- The expression "cut off the names of idols" could be translated as "get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered" or "cause people to stop worshiping false gods" or "completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them."

(See also: call)

## Bible References:

- 1 John 02:12
- 2 Timothy 02:19
- Acts 04:07
- Acts 04:12
- Acts 09:27
- Genesis 12:02
- Genesis 35:10
- Matthew 18:05

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G2564, G3686, G3687, G5122

(**Go back to:** John 1:6; 1:12; 2:23; 3:1; 3:18; 5:43; 10:3; 10:25; 12:13; 12:28; 14:13; 14:14; 14:26; 15:16; 15:21; 16:23; 16:24; 16:26; 17:6; 17:11; 17:12; 17:26; 18:10; 20:31)

# nation

### Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- A "nation" usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a "nation" could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word "nation" was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were "nations" that would fight against each other. This could be translated as "the founders of two nations" or the "ancestors of two people groups."
- The word translated as "nation" was also sometimes used to refer to "Gentiles" or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word "nation" could also be translated as "people group" or "people" or "country."
- If a language has a term for "nation" that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term "nations" can often be translated as "people groups."
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as "Gentiles" or "nonJews."

(See also: Assyria, Babylon, Canaan, Gentile, Greek, people group, Philistines, Rome)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:06
- 2 Kings 17:11-12
- Acts 02:05
- Acts 13:19
- Acts 17:26
- Acts 26:04
- Daniel 03:04
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 27:29
- Genesis 35:11
- Genesis 49:10
- Luke 07:05
- Mark 13:7-8
- Matthew 21:43
- Romans 04:16-17

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H523, H524, H776, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G246, G1074, G1085, G1484

(**Go back to:** John 11:48; 11:50; 11:51; 11:52; 18:35)

# Nazareth, Nazarene

### Facts:

Nazareth is a town in the region of Galilee in northern Israel. It is about 100 kilometers north of Jerusalem, and it takes about three to five days to travel there on foot.

- Joseph and Mary were from Nazareth, and this is where they raised Jesus. That is why Jesus was known as "the Nazarene."
- Many of the Jews living in Nazareth did not respect Jesus' teaching because he had grown up among them, and they thought he was just an ordinary person.
- Once, when Jesus was teaching in Nazareths synagogue, the Jews there tried to kill him because he claimed to be the Messiah and had rebuked them for rejecting him.
- The remark Nathaniel made when he heard that Jesus was from Nazareth indicated that this city was not thought of very highly.

(See also: Christ, Galilee, Joseph (NT), Mary)

### Bible References:

- Acts 26:9-11
- John 01:43-45
- Luke 01:26-29
- Mark 16:5-7
- Matthew 02:23
- Matthew 21:9-11
- Matthew 26:71-72

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:04** Joseph and Mary had to make a long journey from where they lived in **Nazareth** to Bethlehem because their ancestor was David whose hometown was Bethlehem.
- **26:02** Jesus went to the town of **Nazareth** where he had lived during his childhood.
- **26:07** The people of **Nazareth** dragged Jesus out of the place of worship and brought him to the edge of a cliff to throw him off of it in order to kill him.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G3478, G3479, G3480

(**Go back to:** John 1:45; 1:46; 18:5; 18:7; 19:19)

# neighbor, neighborhood, neighboring

## Definition:

The term "neighbor" usually refers to a person who lives nearby. It can also refer more generally to someone who lives in the same community or people group.

- A "neighbor" is someone who would be protected and treated kindly because he is part of the same community.
- In the New Testament parable of the Good Samaritan, Jesus used the term "neighbor" figuratively, expanding its meaning to include all human beings, even someone who is considered an enemy.
- If possible, it is best to translate this term literally with a word or phrase that means "person who lives nearby."

(See also: adversary, parable, people group, Samaria)

## Bible References:

- Acts 07:26-28
- Ephesians 04:25-27
- Galatians 05:14
- James 02:08
- John 09:8-9
- Luke 01:58
- Matthew 05:43
- Matthew 19:19
- Matthew 22:39

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H5997, H7138, H7453, H7468, H7934, G1069, G2087, G4040, G4139

(**Go back to:** John 9:8)

# obey, obedient

### Definition:

The term "obey" means to do what has been commanded by a person or law. The term "obedient" describes someone who obeys. Sometimes a command prohibits doing something, as in "do not steal." In this case, to "obey" means not to steal.

- Usually the term "obey" is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority. For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
- Children obey their parents, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
- When someone in authority commands people not to do something, they obey by not doing that.
- Ways to translate obey could include a word or phrase that means "do what is commanded" or "follow orders" or "do what God says to do."
- The term "obedient" could be translated as "doing what was commanded" or "following orders" or "doing what God commands."

(See also: citizen, command, disobey, kingdom, law)

### Bible References:

- Acts 05:32
- Acts 06:7
- Genesis 28:6-7
- James 01:25
- James 02:10
- Luke 06:47
- Matthew 07:26
- Matthew 19:20-22
- Matthew 28:20

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:04** Noah **obeyed** God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **05:06** Again Abraham **obeyed** God and prepared to sacrifice his son.
- **05:10** "Because you (Abraham) have _obeyed_ me, all the families of the world will be blessed through your family"
- **05:10** But the Egyptians did not believe God or **obey** his commands.
- **13:07** If the people **obeyed** these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1697, H2388, H3349, H4928, H6213, H7181, H8085, H8086, H8104, G191, G3980, G3982, G5083, G5084, G5218, G5219, G5255, G5292, G5293, G5442

(**Go back to:** John 8:51; 8:52; 8:55; 9:16; 12:47; 14:15; 14:21; 14:23; 14:24; 15:10; 15:20; 17:6)

# overtake

### Definition:

The term "overtake" and "overtook" refer to gaining control over someone or something. It usually includes the idea of catching up to something after pursuing it.

- When military troops "overtake" an enemy, it means they defeat that enemy in battle.
- When a predator overtakes its prey, it means that it pursues and catches its prey.
- If a curse "overtakes" someone, it means that whatever was said in that curse happens to the person
- If blessings "overtake" people, it means that those people experience those blessings.
- Depending on the context, "overtake" could be translated as "conquer" or "capture" or "defeat" or "catch up to" or "completely affect."
- The past action "overtook" can be translated as "caught up to" or "came alongside of" or "conquered" or "defeated" or "caused harm to."
- When used in a warning that darkness or punishment or terrors will overtake people because of their sin, it means that those people will experience these negative things if they don't repent.
- The phrase "My words have overtaken your fathers" means that the teachings that Yahweh gave to their ancestors will now cause the ancestors to receive punishment because they failed to obey those teachings.

(See also: bless, curse, prey, punish)

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 25:4-5
- John 12:35

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H579, H935, H1692, H4672, H5066, H5381, G2638, G2983

(**Go back to:** John 12:35)

# palace

## Definition:

The term "palace" refers to the building or house where a king lived, along with his family members and servants.

- The high priest also lived in a palace complex, as mentioned in the New Testament.
- Palaces were very ornate, with beautiful architecture and furnishings.
- The buildings and furnishings of a palace were constructed of stone or wood, and often were overlaid with expensive wood, gold, or ivory.
- Many other people also lived and worked in the palace complex, which usually included several buildings and courtyards.

(See also: courtyard, high priest, king)

## Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 28:7-8
- 2 Samuel 11:2-3
- Daniel 05:5-6
- Matthew 26:3-5
- Psalms 045:08

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H759, H1002, H1004, H1055, H1406, H1964, H1965, G833, G933, G4232

(**Go back to:** John 18:28; 18:33; 19:9)

# palm

## Definition:

The term "palm" refers to a type of tall tree with long, flexible, leafy branches extending from the top in a fan-like pattern.

- The palm tree in the Bible usually refers to a type of palm tree that produces a fruit called a "date." The leaves have a feather-like pattern.
- Palm trees typically grow in places that have a hot, humid climate. Their leaves stay green all year long.
- As Jesus was entering Jerusalem riding on a donkey, the people laid palm branches on the ground in front of him.
- Palm branches signified peace and the celebration of a victory.

(See also: donkey, Jerusalem, peace)

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:29-30
- Ezekiel 40:14-16
- John 12:12-13
- Numbers 33:09

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3712, H8558, H8560, H8561, G5404

(**Go back to:** John 12:13)

# parable

## Definition:

The term "parable" usually refers to a short story or object lesson that is used to explain or teach a moral truth.

- Jesus used parables to teach his disciples. Although he also told parables to the crowds of people, he did not always explain the parable.
- A parable could be used to reveal truth to his disciples while hiding that truth from people like the Pharisees who did not believe in Jesus.
- The prophet Nathan told David a parable to show the king his terrible sin.
- The story of the Good Samaritan is an example of a parable that is a story. Jesus' comparison of old and new wineskins is an example of a parable that was an object lesson to help the disciples understand Jesus' teachings.

(See also: Samaria)

## Bible References:

- Luke 05:36
- Luke 06:39
- Luke 08:04
- Luke 08:9-10
- Mark 04:01
- Matthew 13:03
- Matthew 13:10
- Matthew 13:13

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1819, H4912, G3850, G3942

(**Go back to:** John 10:6)

# Passover

### Facts:

The "Passover" is the name of a religious festival that the Jews celebrate every year, to remember how God rescued their ancestors, the Israelites, from slavery in Egypt.

- The name of this festival comes from the fact that God "passed over" the houses of the Israelites and did not kill their sons when he killed the firstborn sons of the Egyptians.
- The Passover celebration includes a special meal of a perfect lamb that they have killed and roasted, as well as bread made without yeast. These foods remind them of the meal that the Israelites ate the night before they escaped from Egypt.
- God told the Israelites to eat this meal every year in order to remember and celebrate how God "passed over" their houses and how he set them free from slavery in Egypt.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "Passover" could be translated by combining the words "pass" and "over" or another combination of words that has this meaning.
- It is helpful if the name of this festival has a clear connection to the words used to explain what the angel of the Lord did in passing by the houses of the Israelites and sparing their sons.

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:07
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- 2 Kings 23:23
- Deuteronomy 16:02
- Exodus 12:26-28
- Ezra 06:21-22
- John 13:01
- Joshua 05:10-11
- Leviticus 23:4-6
- Numbers 09:03

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:14** God commanded the Israelites to remember his victory over the Egyptians and their deliverance from slavery by celebrating the **Passover** every year.
- **38:01** Every year, the Jews celebrated the **Passover**. This was a celebration of how God had saved their ancestors from slavery in Egypt many centuries earlier.
- **38:04** Jesus celebrated the **Passover** with his disciples.
- **48:09** When God saw the blood, he passed over their houses and did not kill their firstborn sons. This event is called the **Passover**.
- **48:10** Jesus is our **Passover** Lamb. He was perfect and sinless and was killed at the time of the **Passover** celebration.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6453, G3957

# peace, peaceful, peacemakers

### Definition:

The term "peace" refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is "peaceful" feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- "Peace" can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have "peaceful relations."
- To "make peace" with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A "peacemaker" is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be "at peace" with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having "peace with God."
- The greeting "grace and peace" was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term "peace" can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:1-3
- Acts 07:26
- Colossians 01:18-20
- Colossians 03:15
- Galatians 05:23
- Luke 07:50
- Luke 12:51
- Mark 04:39
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 10:13

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:06** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- **15:12** Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- **16:03** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- **21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people's sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- **48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G269, G1514, G1515, G1516, G1517, G1518, G2272

(**Go back to:** John 14:27; 16:33; 20:19; 20:21; 20:26)

# people, people group,

## Definition:

The terms "people" and "people group" refer to some group of people that shares a common language and culture. The term "the people" often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, the term "people" can can refer to a "people group" or "family" or "relatives" or "army."
- In plural form, the term "peoples" often refers to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations, the term "nations" is also used in this way.

## Translation Suggestions:

- The term "people group" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "large family group" or "clan" or "ethnic group."
- A phrase such as "my people" could be translated as "my relatives" or "my fellow Israelites" or "my family" or "my people group," depending on the context.
- The expression "scatter you among the peoples" could also be translated as "cause you to go live with many different people groups" or "cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world."
- The term "the peoples" or "the people" could also be translated as "the people in the world" or "people groups," depending on the context.
- The phrase "the people of" could be translated as "the people living in" or "the people descended from" or "the family of," depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- "All the peoples of the earth" could be translated as "everyone living on earth" or "every person in the world" or "all people."
- The phrase "a people" could also be translated as "a group of people" or "certain people" or "a community of people" or "a family of people."

(See also: descendant, nation, tribe, world)

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:51-53
- 1 Samuel 08:07
- Deuteronomy 28:09
- Genesis 49:16
- Ruth 01:16

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:02** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there. what follows is
- **21:02** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere."

- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **48:11** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.
- **50:03** He (Jesus) said, "Go and make disciples of all **people groups**!" and, "The fields are ripe for harvest!"

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H249, H523, H524, H776, H1121, H1471, H3816, H5712, H5971, H5972, H6153, G1074, G1085, G1218, G1484, G2560, G2992, G3793

(**Go back to:** John 11:50; 18:14)

# perfect, perfected, perfection, complete

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "perfect" means to be mature in our Christian life. To perfect something means to work at it until it is excellent and without flaws.

- Being perfect and mature means that a Christian is obedient, not sinless.
- The term "perfect" also has the meaning of being "complete" or "whole."
- The New Testament Book of James states that persevering through trials will produce completeness and maturity in the believer.
- When Christians study the Bible and obey it, they will become more spiritually perfect and mature because they will be more like Christ in their character.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as "without flaw" or "without error" or "flawless" or "without fault" or "not having any faults."

### Bible References:

- Hebrews 12:02
- James 03:02
- Matthew 05:46-48
- Psalms 019:7-8

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3632, H3634, H4359, H8003, H8503, H8537, H8549, H8552, G199, G2675, G2676, G3647, G5046, G5047, G5048, G5050

# perish

## Definition:

The term "perish" means to die or be destroyed, usually as the result of violence or disaster. In the New Testament, it often has the spiritual meaning of being lost or separated from the people of God.

**Spiritual Meaning of "Perish:"**

- People who are "perishing" are those who have refused to trust in Jesus for their salvation.
- Those who "perish" will not live eternally with God in heaven. Instead, they will live eternally in hell under God's punishment.
- Everyone will die physically, but only those who do not trust in Jesus for their salvation will perish eternally.
- When "perish" is used in a spiritual sense, make sure that your translation expresses this differently than dying physically.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include "be lost from God's people," "die eternally," "be punished in hell," or "be destroyed."
- Try to use a term or expression that does not only mean "die physically" or "cease to exist."

(See also: death, everlasting)

## Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:23
- 2 Corinthians 02:16-17
- 2 Thessalonians 02:10
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Psalms 049:18-20
- Zechariah 09:5-7
- Zechariah 13:08

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H6, H7, H8, H1478, H1820, H1826, H5486, H5595, H6544, H8045, G599, G622, G684, G853, G1311, G2704, G4881, G5356

(**Go back to:** John 3:16; 6:12; 6:27; 10:28; 11:50; 17:12)

# persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue

### Definition:

The terms "persecute" and "persecution" refer to continually treating a person or a certain group of people in a harsh way that causes harm to them.

- Persecution can be against one person or many people and usually involves repeated, persistent attacks.
- The Israelites were persecuted by many different people groups Who attacked them, captured them, and stole things from them.
- People often persecute other people who have different religious beliefs or who are weaker.
- The Jewish religious leaders persecuted Jesus because they did not like what he was teaching.
- After Jesus went back to heaven, the Jewish religious leaders and the Roman government persecuted his followers.
- The term "persecute" could also be translated as "keep oppressing" or "treat harshly" or "continually mistreat."
- Ways to translate "persecution" could include, "harsh mistreatment" or "oppression" or "persistent hurtful treatment"

(See also: Christian, church, oppress, Rome)

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:52
- Acts 13:50
- Galatians 01:13-14
- John 05:16-18
- Mark 10:30
- Matthew 05:10
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 10:22
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Philippians 03:06

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:07** "The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with joy. But when he experiences hardship or **persecution**, he falls away."
- **45:06** That day many people in Jerusalem started **persecuting** the followers of Jesus, so the believers fled to other places.
- **46:02** Saul heard someone say, "Saul! Saul! Why do you **persecute** me?" Saul asked, "Who are you, Master?" Jesus replied to him, "I am Jesus. You are **persecuting** me!"
- **46:04** But Ananias said, "Master, I have heard how this man has **persecuted** the believers."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1814, H7291, H7852, G1375, G1376, G1377, G1559, G2347

(**Go back to:** John 5:16; 15:20)

# Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas

## Facts:

Peter was one of Jesus' twelve apostles. He was an important leader of the early Church.

  • Before Jesus called him to be his disciple, Peter's name was Simon.
  • Later, Jesus also named him "Cephas," which means "stone" or "rock" in the Aramaic language. The name Peter also means "stone" or "rock" in the Greek language.
  • God worked through Peter to heal people and to preach the good news about Jesus.
  • Two books in the New Testament are letters that Peter wrote to encourage and teach fellow believers.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: disciple, apostle)

## Bible References:

  • Acts 08:25
  • Galatians 02:6-8
  • Galatians 02:12
  • Luke 22:58
  • Mark 03:16
  • Matthew 04:18-20
  • Matthew 08:14
  • Matthew 14:30
  • Matthew 26:33-35

## Examples from the Bible stories:

  • **28:09 Peter** said to Jesus, "We have left everything and followed you. What will be our reward?"
  • **29:01** One day **Peter** asked Jesus, "Master, how many times should I forgive my brother when he sins against me? As many as seven times?"
  • **31:05** Then **Peter** said to Jesus, "Master, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water." Jesus told **Peter**, "Come!"
  • **36:01** One day, Jesus took three of his disciples, **Peter**, James, and John with him.
  • **38:09 Peter** replied, "Even if all the others abandon you, I will not!" Then Jesus said to **Peter**, "Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, **Peter**, that your faith will not fail. Even so, tonight, before the rooster crows, you will deny that you even know me three times."
  • **38:15** As the soldiers arrested Jesus, **Peter** pulled out his sword and cut off the ear of the servant of the high priest.
  • **43:11 Peter** answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins."
  • **44:08 Peter** answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah."

## Word Data:

  • Strong's: G2786, G4074, G4613

(**Go back to:** John 1:40; 1:41; 1:42; 1:44; 6:8; 6:68; 13:6; 13:8; 13:9; 13:24; 13:36; 13:37; 18:10; 18:11; 18:15; 18:16; 18:17; 18:18; 18:25; 18:26; 18:27; 20:2; 20:3; 20:4; 20:6; 21:2; 21:3; 21:7; 21:11; 21:15; 21:16; 21:17; 21:20; 21:21)

# Pharisee

### Facts:

The Pharisees were an important, powerful group of Jewish religious leaders in Jesus' time.

- Many of them were middle class businessmen and some of them were also priests.
- Of all the Jewish leaders, the Pharisees were the most strict in obeying the Laws of Moses and other Jewish laws and traditions.
- They were very concerned about keeping the Jewish people separated from the influence of the Gentiles around them. The name "Pharisee" comes from the word to "separate."
- The Pharisees believed in life after death; they also believed in the existence of angels and other spiritual beings.
- The Pharisees and Sadducees actively opposed Jesus and the early Christians.

(See also: council, Jewish leaders, law, Sadducee)

### Bible References:

- Acts 26:04
- John 03:1-2
- Luke 11:44
- Matthew 03:07
- Matthew 05:20
- Matthew 09:11
- Matthew 12:02
- Matthew 12:38
- Philippians 03:05

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G5330

(**Go back to:** John 1:24; 3:1; 4:1; 7:32; 7:45; 7:47; 7:48; 8:13; 9:13; 9:15; 9:16; 9:40; 11:46; 11:47; 11:57; 12:19; 12:42; 18:3)

# Philip, the apostle

## Facts:

Philip the apostle was one of the original twelve disciples of Jesus. He was from the town of Bethsaida.

- Philip brought Nathanael to meet Jesus.
- Jesus questioned Philip about how to provide food for a crowd of over 5,000 people.
- At the last Passover supper that Jesus ate with his disciples, he talked to them about God, his Father. Philip asked Jesus to show them the Father.
- Some languages may prefer to spell this Philip's name in a different way from the other Philip (the evangelist) to avoid confusion.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Philip)

## Bible References:

- Acts 01:14
- John 01:44
- John 06:06
- Luke 06:14
- Mark 03:17-19

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G5376

(**Go back to:** John 1:43; 1:44; 1:45; 1:46; 1:48; 6:5; 6:7; 12:21; 12:22; 14:8; 14:9)

# pierce, pierced

### Definition:

The term "pierce" means to stab something with a sharp, pointed object. It is also used figuratively to refer to causing someone deep emotional pain.

- A soldier pierced Jesus' side when he was hanging on the cross.
- In Bible times, a slave who was set free would have his ear pierced as a sign that he was choosing to continue working for his master.
- Simeon spoke figuratively when he told Mary that a sword would pierce her heart, meaning that she would experience deep grief because of what would happen to her son Jesus.

(See also: cross, Jesus, servant, Simeon)

### Bible References:

- Job 16:13
- Job 20:23-25
- John 19:37
- Psalms 022:16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H935, H1856, H2342, H2490, H2491, H2944, H3738, H4272, H5181, H5344, H5365, H6398, G1330, G1338, G1574, G2660, G3572, G4044

(**Go back to:** John 19:34; 19:37)

# Pilate

### Facts:

Pilate was the governor of the Roman province of Judea who sentenced Jesus to death.

- Because Pilate was the governor, he had the authority to put criminals to death.
- The Jewish religious leaders wanted Pilate to crucify Jesus, so they lied and said that Jesus was a criminal.
- Pilate realized that Jesus was not guilty, but he was afraid of the crowd and wanted to please them, so he ordered his soldiers to crucify Jesus.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: crucify, governor, guilt, Judea, Rome)

### Bible References:

- Acts 04:27-28
- Acts 13:28
- Luke 23:02
- Mark 15:02
- Matthew 27:13
- Matthew 27:58

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:09** Early the next morning, the Jewish leaders brought Jesus to **Pilate**, the Roman governor. They hoped that **Pilate** would condemn Jesus as guilty and sentenced him to be killed. **Pilate** asked Jesus, "Are you the King of the Jews?"
- **39:10 Pilate** said, "What is truth?"
- **39:11** After speaking with Jesus, **Pilate** went out to the crowd and said, "I find no guilt in this man." But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, "Crucify him!" **Pilate** replied, "He is not guilty." But they shouted even louder. Then **Pilate** said a third time, "He is not guilty!"
- **39:12 Pilate** became afraid that the crowd would begin to riot, so he ordered his soldiers to crucify Jesus.
- **40:02 Pilate** commanded that a sign be put above Jesus' head that read, "King of the Jews."
- **41:02 Pilate** said, "Take some soldiers and make the tomb as secure as you can."

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G4091, G4194

(**Go back to:** John 18:29; 18:31; 18:33; 18:35; 18:37; 18:38; 19:1; 19:4; 19:6; 19:8; 19:10; 19:12; 19:13; 19:15; 19:19; 19:21; 19:22; 19:31; 19:38)

# plant, planted, implanted, replanted, transplanted, sow

## Definition:

A "plant" is generally something that grows and is attached to the ground. To "sow" means to put seeds in the ground in order to grow plants. A "sower" is a person who sows or plants seeds.

- The method of sowing or planting varies, but one method is to take handfuls of seeds and scatter them on the ground.
- Another method for planting seeds is to make holes in the soil and place seeds in each hole.
- The term "sow" can be used figuratively, as in "a person will reap what he sows." This means that if a person does something evil, he will receive a negative result, a if a person does good, he will receive a positive result.

## Translations Suggestions

- The term to "sow" could also be translated as to "plant." Make sure the word used to translate this can include planting seeds.
- Other ways to translate "sower" could include "planter" or "farmer" or "person who plants seeds."
- In English, "sow" is only used for planting seeds, but the English word "plant" can be used for planting seeds as well as larger things, such as trees. Other languages may also use different words, depending on what is being planted.
- The expression "a person reaps what he sows" could also be translated as "just like a certain kind of seed produces a certain kind of plant, in the same way a person's good actions will bring a good result and a person's evil actions will bring an evil result."

(See also: evil, good, harvest)

## Bible References:

- Galatians 06:08
- Luke 08:05
- Matthew 06:25-26
- Matthew 13:04
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 25:24

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2221, H2232, H2233, H2236, H4218, H4302, H5193, H7971, H8362, G4687, G4703, G5452

(**Go back to:** John 4:36; 4:37)

# power, powerful, powerfully

### Definition:

The term "power" refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. "Powers" refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The "power of God" refers to God's ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "power" could also be translated as "ability" or "strength" or "energy" or "ability to do miracles" or "control."
- Possible ways to translate the term "powers" could include "powerful beings" or "controlling spirits" or "those who control others."

(See also: Holy Spirit, Jesus, miracle)

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:05
- Colossians 01:11-12
- Genesis 31:29
- Jeremiah 18:21
- Jude 01:25
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 01:17
- Luke 04:14
- Matthew 26:64
- Philippians 03:21
- Psalm 080:02

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:05** The angel explained, "The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the **power** of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God."
- **26:01** After overcoming Satan's temptations, Jesus returned in the **power** of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **32:15** Immediately Jesus realized that **power** had gone out from him.
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you **power** when the Holy Spirit comes on you."
- **43:06** "Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the **power** of God, as you have seen and already know."
- **44:08** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the **power** of Jesus the Messiah."

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H410, H1369, H1370, H2220, H2393, H2428, H2429, H2632, H3027, H3028, H3581, H4475, H4910, H5794, H5797, H5808, H6184, H7786, H7980, H7981, H7983, H7989, H8280, H8592, H8633, G1411, G1415, G1754, G1756, G1849, G1850, G2159, G2478, G2479, G2904, G3168

# pray, prayer

## Definition:

The terms "pray" and "prayer" refer to talking with God. These terms are used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called "communing" with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as "talking to God" or "communicating with God." The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: false god, forgive, praise)

## Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 03:09
- Acts 08:24
- Acts 14:26
- Colossians 04:04
- John 17:09
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **06:05** Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **13:12** But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- **19:08** Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, "Hear us, O Baal!"
- **21:07** Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- **43:13** The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- **49:18** God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H577, H1156, H2470, H3863, H3908, H4994, H6279, H6293, H6419, H6739, H7592, H7878, H7879, H7881, H8034, H8605, G154, G1162, G1189, G1783, G2065, G2171, G2172, G3870, G4335, G4336

(**Go back to:** John 14:16; 16:26; 17:9; 17:20)

# precious, valuable, expensive, fine

### Facts:

The term "precious" describes people or things that are considered to be very valuable.

- The term "precious stones" or "precious jewels" refers to rocks and minerals that are colorful or have other qualities that make them beautiful or useful.
- Examples of precious stones include diamonds, rubies, and emeralds.
- Gold and silver are called "precious metals."
- Yahweh says that his people are "precious" in his sight (Isaiah 43:4).
- Peter wrote that a gentle and quiet spirit is precious in God's sight (1 Peter 3:4).
- This term could also be translated as "valuable" or "very dear" or "cherished" or "highly valued."

(See also: gold, silver)

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 01:01
- Acts 20:22-24
- Daniel 11:38-39
- Lamentations 01:7
- Luke 07:2-5
- Psalms 036:08

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H68, H1431, H2532, H2667, H2896, H3357, H3365, H3366, H3368, H4022, H4030, H4261, H4262, H5238, H8443, G927, G1784, G2472, G4185, G4186, G5092, G5093

(**Go back to:** John 12:3)

# priest, priesthood

## Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: Aaron, chief priests, high priest, mediator, sacrifice)

## Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Genesis 47:22
- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:31
- Mark 01:44
- Mark 02:25-26
- Matthew 08:4
- Matthew 12:04
- Micah 03:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Revelation 01:06

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:07** "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High"
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was

sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**.
  * **19:07** So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
  * **21:07** An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

## Word Data:

  * Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G748, G749, G2405, G2406, G2407, G2409, G2420

# prison, prisoner, imprison

### Definition:

The term "prison" refers to a place where criminals are kept as a punishment for their crimes. A "prisoner" is someone who has been put in the prison.

- A person may be kept in a prison while waiting to be judged in a trial.
- The term "imprisoned" means "kept in a prison" or "kept in captivity."
- Many prophets and other servants of God were put in prison even though they had not done anything wrong.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Another word for "prison" is "jail."
- This term could also be translated as "dungeon" in contexts where the prison is probably underground or beneath the main part of a palace or other building.
- The term "prisoners" can also refer in general to people who have been captured by an enemy and kept somewhere against their will. Another way to translate this meaning would be "captives."
- Other ways to translate "imprisoned" could be, "kept as a prisoner" or "kept in captivity" or "held captive."

(See also: captive)

### Bible References:

- Acts 25:04
- Ephesians 04:01
- Luke 12:58
- Luke 22:33-34
- Mark 06:17
- Matthew 05:26
- Matthew 14:03
- Matthew 25:34-36

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H612, H613, H615, H616, H631, H1004, H1540, H3608, H3628, H3947, H4115, H4307, H4455, H4525, H4929, H5470, H6495, H7617, H7622, H7628, G1198, G1199, G1200, G1201, G1202, G1210, G2252, G3612, G4788, G4869, G5084, G5438, G5439

(**Go back to:** John 3:24)

# profit, profitable, unprofitable

## Definition:

In general, the terms "profit" and "profitable" refer to gaining something good through doing certain actions or behaviors.

Something is "profitable" to someone if it brings them good things or if it helps them bring about good things for other people.

- More specifically, the term "profit" often refers to money that is gained from doing business. A business is "profitable" if it gains more money than it spends.
- Actions are profitable if they bring about good things for people.
- 2 Timothy 3:16 says that all Scripture is "profitable" for correcting and training people in righteousness. This means that the Bible's teachings are helpful and useful for teaching people to live according to God's will.

The term "unprofitable" means to not be useful.

- It literally means to not profit anything or to not help someone gain anything.
- Something that is unprofitable is not worth doing because it does not give any benefit.
- This could be translated as "useless" or "worthless" or "not useful" or "unworthy" or "not beneficial" or "giving no benefit."

(See also: worthy)

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "profit" could also be translated as "benefit" or "help" or "gain."
- The term "profitable" could be translated as "useful" or "beneficial" or "helpful."
- To "profit from" something could be translated as "benefit from" or "gain money from" or "receive help from."
- In the context of a business, "profit" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "money gained" or "surplus of money" or "extra money."

## Bible References:

- Job 15:03
- Proverbs 10:16
- Jeremiah 02:08
- Ezekiel 18:12-13
- John 06:63
- Mark 08:36
- Matthew 16:26
- 2 Peter 02:1-3

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1215, H3148, H3276, H3504, H4195, H4768, H5532, H7737, H7939, G147, G255, G512, G888, G889, G890, G1281, G2585, G2770, G2771, G3408, G4297, G4298, G4851, G5539, G5622, G5623, G5624

# prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

### Definition:

A "prophet" is a man who speaks God's messages to people. A woman who does this is called a "prophetess."

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A "prophecy" is the message that the prophet speaks. To "prophesy" means to speak God's messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as "the prophets."
- For example the phrase, "the law and the prophets" is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the "Old Testament."
- An older term for a prophet was "seer" or "someone who sees."
- Sometimes the term "seer" refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "prophet" could be translated as "God's spokesman" or "man who speaks for God" or "man who speaks God's messages."
- A "seer" could be translated as, "person who sees visions" or "man who sees the future from God."
- The term "prophetess" could be translated as, "spokeswoman for God" or "woman who speaks for God" or "woman who speaks God's messages."
- Ways to translate "prophecy" could include, "message from God" or "prophet message."
- The term "prophesy" could be translated as "speak words from God" or "tell God's message."
- The figurative expression, "law and the prophets" could also be translated as, "the books of the law and of the prophets" or "everything written about God and his people, including God's laws and what his prophets preached." (See: synecdoche)
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as "false prophet (seer)" or "prophet (seer) of a false god" or "prophet of Baal," for example.

(See also: Baal, divination, false god, false prophet, fulfill, law, vision)

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- Acts 03:25
- John 01:43-45
- Malachi 04:4-6
- Matthew 01:23
- Matthew 02:18
- Matthew 05:17
- Psalm 051:01

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:01** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God's messages.
- **19:06** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.

- **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- **21:09** The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **43:05** "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- **43:07** "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- **48:12** Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G2495, G4394, G4395, G4396, G4397, G4398, G5578

# prostrate, worship

## Definition:

To "prostrate" oneself means to lie flat on the ground, usually in submission to a person of authority such as a king or some other powerful person. This same term can also mean to "worship," referring to the actions of honoring, praising, and obeying God.

- This term often means literally "bow down" or "prostrate oneself" to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- This term can be used both of people who worship Yahweh as the One True God and others who worship false gods.

## Translation Suggestions:

- The term "worship" could be translated as "bow down to" or "honor and serve" or "honor and obey."
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as "humbly praise" or "give honor and praise."

(See also: sacrifice, praise, honor)

## Bible References:

- Colossians 02:18-19
- Deuteronomy 29:18
- Exodus 03:11-12
- Luke 04:07
- Matthew 02:02
- Matthew 02:08

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods."
- **14:02** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things.
- **17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:12** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols.
- **25:07** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, '**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.'"
- **26:02** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**.
- **47:01** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H5457, H5647, H6087, H7812, G1391, G1479, G2151, G2318, G2323, G2356, G3000, G3511, G4352, G4353, G4573, G4574, G4576

(**Go back to:** John 4:20; 4:21; 4:22; 4:23; 4:24; 9:38; 12:20)

# pure, purify, purification

### Definition:

To be "pure" means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, "purify" and "purification" refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God's forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term "purify" could be translated as "make pure" or "cleanse" or "cleanse from all contamination" or "get rid of all sin."
- A phrase such as "when the time for their purification was over" could be translated as "when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days."
- The phrase "provided purification for sins" could be translated as "provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin."
- Other ways to translate "purification" could include "cleansing" or "spiritual washing" or "becoming ritually clean."

(See also: atonement, clean, spirit)

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 01:05
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Hebrews 09:13-15
- James 04:08
- Luke 02:22
- Revelation 14:04

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1253, H1305, H1865, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2212, H2398, H2403, H2561, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2892, H2893, H3795, H3800, H4795, H5343, H5462, H6337, H6884, H6942, H8562, G48, G49, G53, G54, G1506, G2511, G2512, G2513, G2514

(**Go back to:** John 11:55)

# purple

## Facts:

The term "purple" is the name of a color that is a mixture of blue and red.

- In ancient times, purple was a rare and highly valuable color of dye that was used to dye the clothing of kings and other high officials.
- Because it was costly and time-consuming to produce this dye, purple clothing was considered a sign of wealth, distinction, and royalty.
- Purple was also one of the colors used for the curtains in the tabernacle and temple, and for the ephod worn by the priests.
- Purple dye was extracted from a kind of sea snail by either crushing or boiling the snails or by causing them to release the dye while still alive. This was an expensive process.
- Roman soldiers put a purple royal robe on Jesus before his crucifixion, to mock him for his claim to be King of the Jews.
- Lydia from the town of Philippi was a woman who made her living by selling purple cloth.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: ephod, Philippi, royal, tabernacle, temple)

## Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 02:13-14
- Daniel 05:7
- Daniel 05:29-31
- Proverbs 31:22-23

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H710, H711, H713, G4209, G4210, G4211

(**Go back to:** John 19:2; 19:5)

# Rabbi

## Definition:

The term "Rabbi" literally means "my master" or "my teacher."

- It was a title of respect that was used to address a man who was a Jewish religious teacher, especially a teacher of God's laws.
- Both John the Baptist and Jesus were sometimes called "Rabbi" by their disciples.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate this term could include "My Master" or "My Teacher" or "Honorable Teacher" or "Religious Teacher." Some languages may capitalize a greeting like this, while others may not.
- The project language may also have a special way that teachers are normally addressed.
- Make sure the translation of this term does not indicate that Jesus was a schoolteacher.
- Also consider how "Rabbi" is translated in a Bible translation in a related language or a national language.

(See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: teacher)

## Bible References:

- John 01:49-51
- John 06:24-25
- Mark 14:43-46
- Matthew 23:8-10

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G4461

(**Go back to:** John 1:38; 1:49; 3:2; 3:26; 4:31; 6:25; 9:2; 11:8; 20:16)

# raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up

## Definition:

### raise, raise up

In general, the word "raise" means to "lift up" or "make higher."

- The phrase "raise up" sometimes means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes "raise up" means to "restore" or "rebuild."
- "Raise" has a specialized meaning in the phrase "raise from the dead." It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes "raise up" means to "exalt" someone or something.

### rise, arise

To "rise" or "arise" means to "go up" or "get up." The terms "risen," "rose," and "arose" express past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as "he arose and went" or "he rose up and went."
- If something "arises" it means it "happens" or "begins to happen."
- Jesus predicted that he would "rise from the dead." Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, "He has risen!"

## Translation Suggestions:

- The term "raise" or "raise up" could be translated as "lift up" or "make higher."
- To "raise up" could also be translated as to "cause to appear" or to "appoint" or to "bring into existence."
- To "raise up the strength of your enemies" could be translated as, "cause your enemies to be very strong."
- The phrase "raise someone from the dead" could be translated as "cause someone to return from death to life" or "cause someone to come back to life."
- Depending on the context, "raise up" could also be translated as "provide" or to "appoint" or to "cause to have" or "build up" or "rebuild" or "repair."
- The phrase "arose and went" could be translated as "got up and went" or "went."
- Depending on the context, the term "arose" could also be translated as "began" or "started up" or "got up" or "stood up."

(See also: resurrection, appoint, exalt)

## Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- 2 Samuel 07:12
- Acts 10:40
- Colossians 03:01
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 06:01
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 07:22
- Matthew 20:19

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also **raise** him from the dead.

- **41:05** "Jesus is not here. He has **risen** from the dead, just like he said he would!"
- **43:07** "Although Jesus died, God **raised** him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God **raised** Jesus to life again."
- **44:05** " You killed the author of life, but God **raised** him from the dead. "
- **44:08** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God **raised** him to life again!"
- **48:04** This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would **raise** him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- **49:02** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, **raised** the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God **raised** him to life again.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2210, H2224, H5549, H5782, H5927, H5975, H6965, H6966, H6974, H7613, G305, G386, G393, G450, G1096, G1326, G1453, G1525, G1817, G1825, G1892, G1999, G4891

# receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance

## Definition:

The term "receive" generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To "receive" can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in "he received punishment for what he did."
- There is also a special sense in which we can "receive" a person. For example, to "receive" guests or visitors means to welcome them and treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To "receive the gift of the Holy Spirit" means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To "receive Jesus" means to accept God's offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person "receives his sight" means that God has healed him and enabled him to see.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "receive" could be translated as "accept" or "welcome" or "experience" or "be given."
- The expression "you will receive power" could be translated as "you will be given power" or "God will give you power" or "power will be given to you (by God)" or "God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you."
- The phrase "received his sight" could be translated as "was able to see" or "became able to see again" or "was healed by God so that he was able to see."

(See also: Holy Spirit, Jesus, lord, save)

## Bible References:

- 1 John 05:09
- 1 Thessalonians 01:06
- 1 Thessalonians 04:01
- Acts 08:15
- Jeremiah 32:33
- Luke 09:05
- Malachi 03:10-12
- Psalms 049:14-15

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no sin. He would die to **receive** the punishment for other people's sin. His punishment would bring peace between God and people.
- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, **receive** my spirit."
- **49:06** He (Jesus) taught that some people will receive him and be saved, but others will not.
- **49:10** When Jesus died on the cross, he **received** your punishment.
- **49:13** God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and **receives** him as their Master.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3557, H3947, H6901, H6902, H8254, G308, G324, G353, G354, G568, G588, G618, G1183, G1209, G1523, G1653, G1926, G2865, G2983, G3028, G3335, G3336, G3549, G3858, G3880, G4327, G4355, G4356, G4687, G5264, G5562

(**Go back to:** John 1:11; 1:12; 1:16; 3:11; 3:27; 3:32; 3:33; 4:36; 4:45; 5:34; 5:41; 5:43; 5:44; 6:7; 6:21; 7:23; 7:39; 10:18; 12:48; 13:20; 13:30; 14:3; 14:17; 16:24; 17:8; 20:22)

# reject, rejected, rejection

### Definition:

To "reject" someone or something means to refuse to accept that person or thing.

- The term "reject" can also mean to "refuse to believe in" something.
- To reject God also means to refuse to obey him.
- When the Israelites rejected Moses' leadership, it means that they were rebelling against his authority. They did not want to obey him.
- The Israelites showed that they were rejecting God when they worshiped false gods.
- The term "push away" is the literal meaning of this word. Other languages may have a similar expression that means to reject or refuse to believe someone or something.

### Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term "reject" could also be translated by "not accept" or "stop helping" or "refuse to obey" or "stop obeying."
- In the expression "stone that the builders rejected," the term "rejected" could be translated as "refused to use" or "did not accept" or "threw away" or "got rid of as worthless."
- In the context of people who rejected God's commandments, rejected could be translated as "refused to obey" his commands or "stubbornly chose to not accept" God's laws.

(See also: command, disobey, obey, stiff-necked)

### Bible References:

- Galatians 04:12-14
- Hosea 04:6-7
- Isaiah 41:09
- John 12:48-50
- Mark 07:09

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H947, H959, H2186, H2310, H3988, H5006, H5034, H5186, H5203, H5307, H5541, H5800, G114, G483, G550, G579, G580, G593, G683, G720, G1609, G3868

(**Go back to:** John 12:48)

# report, reported, reputation

## Definition:

The term to "report" means to tell people about something that happened, often giving details about that event. A "report" is what is told, and can be spoken or written.

- "Report" could also be translated as "tell" or "explain" or "tell the details of."
- The expression "Report this to no one" could be translated as, "Don't talk about this with anyone" or "Don't tell anyone about this."
- Ways to translate "a report" could include "an explanation" or "a story" or "a detailed account," depending on the context.

## Bible References:

- Acts 05:22-23
- John 12:38
- Luke 05:15
- Luke 08:34-35
- Matthew 28:15

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1681, H1696, H1697, H5046, H7725, H8034, H8052, H8085, H8088, G189, G191, G312, G518, G987, G1225, G1310, G1834, G2036, G2163, G3004, G3056, G3140, G3377

(**Go back to:** )

# resurrection

## Definition:

The term "resurrection" refers to the act of becoming alive again after having died.

- To resurrect someone means to bring that person back to life again. Only God has the power to do this.
- The word "resurrection" often refers to Jesus' coming back to life after he died.
- When Jesus said, "I am the Resurrection and the Life" he meant that he is the source of resurrection, and the one who causes people to come back to life.

## Translation Suggestions:

- A person's "resurrection" could be translated as his "coming back to life" or his "becoming alive again after being dead."
- The literal meaning of this word is "a rising up" or "the act of being raised (from the dead)." These would be other possible ways to translate this term.

(See also: life, death, raise)

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:13
- 1 Peter 03:21
- Hebrews 11:35
- John 05:28-29
- Luke 20:27
- Luke 20:36
- Matthew 22:23
- Matthew 22:30
- Philippians 03:11

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** Through the Messiah's death and **resurrection**, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the New Covenant.
- **37:05** Jesus replied, "I am the **Resurrection** and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he dies.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G386, G1454, G1815

(**Go back to:** John 5:29; 11:24; 11:25)

# reveal, revealed, revelation

## Definition:

The term "reveal" means to cause something to be known. A "revelation" is something that has been made known.

- God has revealed himself through everything he has created and through his communication with people by spoken and written messages.
- God also reveals himself through dreams or visions.
- When Paul said that he received the gospel by "revelation from Jesus Christ," he means that Jesus himself explained the gospel to him.
- In the New Testament book "Revelation" is about God revealed events that will happen in the end times. He revealed them to the apostle John through visions.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "reveal" could include "make known" or "disclose" or "show clearly."
- Depending on the context, possible ways to translate "revelation" could be "communication from God" or "things that God has revealed" or "teachings about God." It is best to keep the meaning of "reveal" in the translation.
- The phrase "where there is no revelation" could be translated as "when God is not revealing himself to people" or "when God is not speaking to people" or "among people whom God has not communicating."

(See also: good news, good news, dream, vision)

## Bible References:

- Daniel 11:1-2
- Ephesians 03:05
- Galatians 01:12
- Lamentations 02:13-14
- Matthew 10:26
- Philippians 03:15
- Revelation 01:01

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H241, H1540, H1541, G601, G602, G5537

# reward, prize, deserve,

## Definition:

The term "reward" refers to what a person receives because of something he has done, either good or bad. To "reward" someone is to give someone something he deserves. However, this is different than the concept of "wages," which refers to payment (often money) given in exchange for work performed.

- A reward can be a good or positive thing that a person receives because he has done something well or because he has obeyed God.
- Sometimes a reward can refer to negative things that may result from bad behavior, such as the statement "the reward of the wicked." In this context "reward" refers to the punishment or negative consequences they receive because of their sinful actions.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "reward" could be translated as "payment" or "something that is deserved" or "punishment."
- To "reward" someone could be translated by to "repay" or to "punish" or to "give what is deserved."
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to wages. A reward is not specifically about earning money as part of a job.

(See also: punish)

## Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 32:06
- Isaiah 40:10
- Luke 06:35
- Mark 09:40-41
- Matthew 05:11-12
- Matthew 06:3-4
- Psalms 127:3-5
- Revelation 11:18

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H319, H866, H868, H1576, H1578, H1580, H4909, H4991, H5023, H6118, H6468, H6529, H7938, H7939, H7999, G469, G514, G591, G2603, G3405, G3406, G3408

(**Go back to:** John 4:36)

# righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

## Definition:

The term "righteousness" refers to God's absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God "righteous." Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called "righteous" include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus' righteousness.

The term "unrighteous" means to be sinful and morally corrupt. "Unrighteousness" refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God's teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes "the unrighteous" refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms "upright" and "uprightness" refer to acting in a way that follows God's laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is "upright" is someone who obeys God's rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as "integrity" and "righteous" have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as "integrity and uprightness." (See: parallelism)

## Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term "righteous" could be translated as "perfectly good and just" or "always acting rightly."
- God's "righteousness" could also be translated as "perfect faithfulness and goodness."
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term "righteous" could also be translated as "morally good" or "just" or "living a God-pleasing life."
- The phrase "the righteous" could also be translated as "righteous people" or "God-fearing people."
- Depending on the context, "righteousness" could also be translated with a word or phrase that means "goodness" or "being perfect before God" or "acting in a right way by obeying God" or "doing perfectly good
- The term "unrighteous" could simply be translated as "not righteous."
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include "wicked" or "immoral" or "people who rebel against God" or "sinful."
- The phrase "the unrighteous" could be translated as "unrighteous people."
- The term "unrighteousness" could be translated as "sin" or "evil thoughts and actions" or "wickedness."
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to "righteous, righteousness."
- Ways to translate "upright" could include "acting rightly" or "one who acts rightly" or "following God's laws" or "obedient to God" or "behaving in a way that is right."
- The term "uprightness" could be translated as "moral purity" or "good moral conduct" or "rightness."
- The phrase "the upright" could be translated as "people who are upright" or "upright people."

(See also: evil, faithful, good, holy, integrity, just, law, law, obey, pure, righteous, sin, unlawful)

## Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:16
- Job 01:08
- Psalms 037:30
- Psalms 049:14
- Psalms 107:42
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:13
- Malachi 02:06
- Matthew 06:01
- Acts 03:13-14
- Romans 01:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 06:09
- Galatians 03:07
- Colossians 03:25
- 2 Thessalonians 02:10
- 2 Timothy 03:16
- 1 Peter 03:18-20
- 1 John 01:09
- 1 John 05:16-17

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **04:08** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God's promise.
- **17:02** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **23:01** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **50:10** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H1368, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H4749, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H6968, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G93, G94, G458, G1341, G1342, G1343, G1344, G1345, G1346, G2118, G3716, G3717

# robe, robed

## Definition:

A robe is an outer garment with long sleeves that can be worn by a man or a woman. It is similar to a coat.

- Robes are open in the front and are tied shut with a sash or belt.
- They can be long or short.
- Purple robes were worn by kings as a sign of royalty, wealth, and prestige.

(See also: royal, tunic)

## Bible References:

- Exodus 28:4-5
- Genesis 49:11-12
- Luke 15:22
- Luke 20:46
- Matthew 27:27-29

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H145, H155, H899, H1545, H2436, H2684, H3671, H3801, H3830, H3847, H4060, H4254, H4598, H5497, H5622, H6614, H7640, H7757, H7897, H8071, G1746, G2067, G2440, G4749, G4016, G5511

(**Go back to:** John 19:2; 19:5)

# Rome, Roman

## Facts:

In New Testament times, the city of Rome was the center of the Roman Empire. It is now the capital city of the modern-day country of Italy.

- The Roman Empire ruled over all the regions around the Mediterranean Sea, including Israel.
- The term "Roman" referred to anything relating to the regions that the government in Rome controlled, including Roman citizens and Roman officials.
- The apostle Paul was taken to the city of Rome as a prisoner because he preached the good news about Jesus.
- The New Testament book of "Romans" is a letter that Paul wrote to the Christians in Rome.

(See also: good news, the sea, Pilate, Paul)

## Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 01:15-18
- Acts 22:25
- Acts 28:14
- John 11:48

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:04** When the time was near for Mary to give birth, the **Roman** government told everyone to go for a census to the town where their ancestors had lived.
- **32:06** Then Jesus asked the demon, "What is your name?" He replied, "My name is Legion, because we are many." (A "legion" was a group of several thousand soldiers in the **Roman** army.)
- **39:09** Early the next morning, the Jewish leaders brought Jesus to the **Roman** governor, Pilate, hoping to have Jesus killed.
- **39:12** The **Roman** soldiers whipped Jesus and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they mocked him by saying, "Look, the King of the Jews!"

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G4514, G4516

(**Go back to:** John 11:48)

# royal, royalty, king's, queen's

### Definition:

The term "royal" describes people and things associated with a king or queen.

- Examples of things that could be called "royal" include a king's (or queen's) position, clothing, palace, throne, and crown.
- A king or queen usually lived in a royal palace.
- A king wore special clothing, sometimes called "royal robes." Often a king's robes were purple, this color could only be produced by a rare and expensive type of dye.
- In the New Testament, believers in Jesus were called a "royal priesthood." Other ways to translate this could include "priests who serve God the King" or "called to be priests for God the King."
- The term "royal" could also be translated as "kingly" or "belonging to a king."

(See also: king. palace, priest, purple, queen, robe)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:13
- 2 Chronicles 18:28-30
- Amos 07:13
- Genesis 49:19-21

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H643, H1921, H1935, H4410, H4428, H4430, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H7985, G933, G934, G937

(**Go back to:** John 4:46; 4:49)

# rule, ruler, ruling, overrules

### Definition:

The term "ruler" is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group. A ruler is one who "rules," and his authority is his "rule."

- In the Old Testament, a king was sometimes referred to generally as a "ruler," as in the phrase "appointed him ruler over Israel."
- God was referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a "ruler."
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a "governor."
- Depending on the context, "ruler" could be translated as "leader" or "person who has authority over."
- The action to "rule" means to "lead" to "have authority over." It is means the same thing as "reign" when it refers to the ruling of a king.

(See also: authority, governor, king, synagogue)

### Bible References:

- Acts 03:17-18
- Acts 07:35-37
- Luke 12:11
- Luke 23:35
- Mark 10:42
- Matthew 09:32-34
- Matthew 20:25
- Titus 03:01

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H995, H1166, H1167, H1404, H2708, H2710, H3027, H3548, H3920, H4043, H4410, H4427, H4428, H4438, H4467, H4474, H4475, H4623, H4910, H4941, H5057, H5065, H5387, H5401, H5461, H5715, H6113, H6213, H6485, H6957, H7101, H7218, H7287, H7300, H7336, H7786, H7860, H7980, H7981, H7985, H7989, H7990, H8199, H8269, H8323, H8451, G746, G752, G755, G757, G758, G932, G936, G1018, G1203, G1299, G1778, G1785, G1849, G2232, G2233, G2525, G2583, G2888, G2961, G3545, G3841, G4165, G4173, G4291

# run, runner, rushed, quickly went, scattered, flows

### Definition:

Literally the term "run" means "move very quickly on foot," usually at a greater speed than can be accomplished by walking.

This main meaning of "run" is also used in figurative expressions such as the following: * To "run in such a way as to win the prize"– refers to persevering in doing God's will with the same perseverance as running a race in order to win. * To "run in the path of your commands" – means to gladly and quickly obey God's commands. * To "run after other gods" means to persist in worshiping other gods. * "I run to you to hide me" means to quickly turn to God for refuge and safety when faced with difficult things. * Water and other liquids such as tears, blood, sweat, and rivers are said to "run." This could also be translated as, "flow." The border of a country or region is said to "run along" a river or the border of a different country. This could be translated by saying that the country's border "is next to" the river or other country or by saying that the country "borders" the river or other country." * Rivers and streams can "run dry," which means that they no longer have water in them. This could be translated as "have dried up" or "have become dry." * The days of a feast can "run their course," which means they "have passed by" or "are finished" or "are over."*

(See also: false god, persevere, refuge, turn)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:18
- Galatians 02:02
- Galatians 05:07
- Philippians 02:16
- Proverbs 01:16

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H213, H386, H1065, H1272, H1556, H1980, H2100, H2416, H3001, H3212, H3332, H3381, H3920, H3988, H4422, H4754, H4794, H4944, H5074, H5127, H5140, H5472, H5756, H6437, H6440, H6544, H6805, H7272, H7291, H7310, H7323, H7325, H7519, H7751, H8264, H8308, H8444, G413, G1377, G1601, G1530, G1532, G1998, G2701, G3729, G4063, G4370, G4390, G4890, G4936, G5143, G5240, G5295, G5343

(**Go back to:** John 20:2; 20:4)

# Sabbath

### Definition:

The term "Sabbath" refers to the seventh day of the week, which God commanded the Israelites to set apart as a day of rest and doing no work.

- After God finished creating the world in six days, he rested on the seventh day. In the same way, God commanded the Israelites to set aside the seventh day as a special day to rest and worship him.
- The command to "keep the Sabbath holy" is one of the ten commandments that God wrote on the stone tablets that he gave Moses for the Israelites.
- Following the Jewish system of counting days, the Sabbath begins on Friday at sundown and lasts until Saturday at sundown.
- Sometimes in the Bible the Sabbath is called "Sabbath day" rather than only the Sabbath.

### Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as "resting day" or "day for resting" or "day of not working" or "God's day of rest."
- Some translations capitalize this term to show that it is a special day, as in "Sabbath Day" or "Resting Day."
- Consider how this term is translated in a local or national language.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: rest)

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:2-3
- Acts 13:26-27
- Exodus 31:14
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Lamentations 02:06
- Leviticus 19:03
- Luke 13:14
- Mark 02:27
- Matthew 12:02
- Nehemiah 10:32-33

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:05** "Always be sure to keep the **Sabbath day** holy. That is, do all your work in six days, for the seventh day is a day for you to rest and to honor me."
- **26:02** Jesus went to the town of Nazareth where he had lived during his childhood. On the **Sabbath**, he went to the place of worship.
- **41:03** The day after Jesus was buried was a **Sabbath** day, and the Jews were not permitted to go to the tomb on that day.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4868, H7676, H7677, G4315, G4521

(**Go back to:** John 5:9; 5:10; 5:16; 5:18; 7:22; 7:23; Notes; 9:14; 9:16; 19:31)

# Samaria, Samaritan

## Facts:

Samaria was the name of a city and its surrounding region in the northern part of Israel. The region was located between the Plain of Sharon on its west and the Jordan River on its east.

- In the Old Testament, Samaria was the capital city of the northern kingdom of Israel. Later the region surrounding it was also called Samaria.
- When the Assyrians conquered the northern kingdom of Israel, they captured the city of Samaria and forced most of the northern Israelites to leave the region, moving them far away to different cities in Assyria.
- The Assyrians also brought many foreigners into the region of Samaria to replace the Israelites who had been moved.
- Some of the Israelites who remained in that region married the foreigners who had moved there, and their descendants were called Samaritans.
- The Jews despised the Samaritans because they were only partly Jewish and because their ancestors had worshiped pagan gods.
- In New Testament times, the region of Samaria was bordered by the region of Galilee on its north and the region of Judea on its south.

(See also: Assyria, Galilee, Judea, Sharon, kingdom of Israel)

## Bible References:

- Acts 08:1-3
- Acts 08:05
- John 04:4-5
- Luke 09:51-53
- Luke 10:33

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:04** Then the Assyrians brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been. The foreigners rebuilt the destroyed cities and married the Israelites who were left there. The descendants of the Israelites who married foreigners were called **Samaritans**.
- **27:08** "The next person to walk down that road was a **Samaritan**. (**Samaritans** were the descendants of Jews who had married people from other nations. **Samaritans** and Jews hated each other.)"
- **27:09** "The **Samaritan** then lifted the man onto his own donkey and took him to a roadside inn where he took care of him."
- **45:07** He (Philip) went to **Samaria** where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H8111, H8115, H8118, G4540, G4541, G4542

(**Go back to:** John 4:4; 4:5; 4:7; 4:9; 4:39; 4:40; 8:48)

# sanctify, sanctification

## Definition:

To sanctify is to set apart or to make holy. Sanctification is the process of being made holy.

- In the Old Testament, certain people and things were sanctified, or set apart, for service to God.
- The New Testament teaches that God sanctifies people who believe in Jesus. That is, he makes them holy and sets them apart to serve him.
- Believers in Jesus are also commanded to sanctify themselves to God, to be holy in everything they do.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "sanctify" can be translated as "set apart" or "make holy" or "purify."
- When people sanctify themselves, they purify themselves and dedicate themselves to God's service. Often the word "consecrate" is used in the Bible with this meaning.
- When its meaning is "consecrate," this term could be translated as "dedicate someone (or something) to God's service."
- Depending on the context, the phrase "your sanctification" could be translated as "making you holy" or "setting you apart (for God)" or "what makes you holy."

(See also: consecrate, holy, set apart)

## Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 04:3-6
- 2 Thessalonians 02:13
- Genesis 02:1-3
- Luke 11:2
- Matthew 06:8-10

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H6942, G37, G38

(**Go back to:** John 10:36; 17:17; 17:19)

# sandal

## Definition:

A sandal is a simple shoe with a flat sole that is held onto the foot by straps that go around the foot or ankle. Sandals are worn by both men and women.

- In ancient Israel, a sandal was sometimes used to confirm a legal transaction, such as the selling of property. One person would take off a sandal and give it to the other person to show that the transaction was legal and binding.
- John said that he was not worthy to even untie Jesus' sandals, which was a normal task for the servant or slave with the lowest status in a Jewish household.

## Bible References:

- Acts 07:33
- Deuteronomy 25:10
- John 01:27
- Joshua 05:15
- Mark 06:7-9

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H5274, H5275, H8288, G4547, G5266

(**Go back to:** John 1:27)

# Satan, devil, evil one

## Facts:

Although the devil is a spirit being that God created, he rebelled against God and became God's enemy. The devil is also called "Satan" and "the evil one."

- The devil hates God and all that God created because he wants to take the place of God and be worshiped as God.
- Satan tempts people to rebel against God.
- God sent his Son, Jesus, to rescue people from Satan's control.
- The name "Satan" means "adversary" or "enemy."
- The word "devil" means "accuser."

## Translation Suggestions:

- The word "devil" could also be translated as "the accuser" or "the evil one" or "the king of evil spirits" or "the chief evil spirit."
- "Satan" could be translated as "Opponent" or "Adversary" or some other name that shows that he is the devil.
- These terms should be translated differently from demon and evil spirit.
- Consider how these terms are translated in a local or national language.

(See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: demon, evil, kingdom of God, tempt)

## Bible References:

- 1 John 03:08
- 1 Thessalonians 02:17-20
- 1 Timothy 05:15
- Acts 13:10
- Job 01:08
- Mark 08:33
- Zechariah 03:01

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:01** The snake who deceived Eve was **Satan**. The promise meant that the Messiah who would come would defeat **Satan** completely.
- **25:06** Then **Satan** showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their glory and said, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."
- **25:08** Jesus did not give in to **Satan's** temptations, so **Satan** left him.
- **33:06** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the word of God. The path is a person who hears God's word, but does not understand it, and the **devil** takes the word from him."
- **38:07** After Judas took the bread, **Satan** entered into him.
- **48:04** God promised that one of Eve's descendants would crush **Satan's** head, and **Satan** would wound his heel. This meant that **Satan** would kill the Messiah, but God would raise him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of **Satan** forever.
- **49:15** God has taken you out of **Satan's** kingdom of darkness and put you into God's kingdom of light.
- **50:09** "The weeds represent the people who belong to the **evil one**. The enemy who planted the weeds represents the **devil**."

- **50:10** "When the world ends, the angels will gather together all the people who belong to the **devil** and throw them into a raging fire, where they will cry and grind their teeth in terrible suffering."
- **50:15** When Jesus returns, he will completely destroy **Satan** and his kingdom. He will throw **Satan** into hell where he will burn forever, along with everyone who chose to follow him rather than to obey God.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H7700, H7854, H8163, G1139, G1140, G1141, G1142, G1228, G4190, G4566, G4567

(**Go back to:** John 6:70; 8:44; 13:2; 13:27; 17:15)

# save, saved, safe, salvation

### Definition:

The term "save" refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To "be safe" means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been "saved," then God, through Jesus' death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term "salvation" refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, "salvation" usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "save" could include "deliver" or "keep from harm" or "take out of harm's way" or "keep from dying."
- In the expression "whoever would save his life," the term "save" could also be translated as "preserve" or "protect."
- The term "safe" could be translated as "protected from danger" or "in a place where nothing can harm."
- The term "salvation" could also be translated using words related to "save" or "rescue," as in "God's saving people (from being punished for their sins)" or "God's rescuing his people (from their enemies)."
- "God is my salvation" could be translated as "God is the one who saves me."
- "You will draw water from the wells of salvation" could be translated as "You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you."

(See also: cross, deliver, punish, sin, Savior)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 49:18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Psalms 080:03
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Micah 06:3-5
- Luke 02:30
- Luke 08:36-37
- Acts 04:12
- Acts 28:28
- Acts 02:21
- Romans 01:16
- Romans 10:10
- Ephesians 06:17
- Philippians 01:28
- 1 Timothy 01:15-17
- Revelation 19:1-2

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **09:08** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **11:02** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **12:05** Moses told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you."
- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **44:08** "You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!"
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, "What must I do to be **saved**?" Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**."
- **49:12** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **49:13** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H983, H2421, H2502, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4931, H5338, H6308, H6403, H7682, H7951, H7965, H8104, H8199, H8668, G803, G804, G806, G1295, G1508, G4982, G4991, G4992, G5198

# Savior, savior

### Facts:

The term "savior" refers to a person who saves or rescues others from danger. It can also refer to someone who gives strength to others or provides for them.

- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as Israel's Savior because he often rescued them from their enemies, gave them strength, and provided them with what they needed to live.
- In the New Testament, "Savior" is used as a description or title for Jesus Christ because he saves people from being eternally punished for their sin. He also saves them from being controlled by their sin.

### Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, "Savior" should be translated with a word that is related to the words "save" and "salvation."
- Ways to translate this term could include "the One who saves" or "God, who saves" or "who delivers from danger" or "who rescues from enemies" or "Jesus, the one who rescues (people) from sin."

(See also: deliver, Jesus, save, save)

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 04:10
- 2 Peter 02:20
- Acts 05:29-32
- Isaiah 60:15-16
- Luke 01:47
- Psalms 106:19-21

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H3467, G4990

(**Go back to:** John 4:42)

# Sea of Galilee, Sea of Kinnereth, lake of Gennesaret, Sea of Tiberias

## Facts:

The "Sea of Galilee" is a lake in eastern Israel. In the Old Testament it was called the "Sea of Kinnereth."

- The water of this lake flows south through the Jordan River down to the Salt Sea.
- Capernaum, Bethsaida, Gennesaret, and Tiberias were some of the towns located on the Sea of Galilee during New Testament times.
- Many events of Jesus' life took place on or near the Sea of Galilee.
- The Sea of Galilee was also referred to as the "Sea of Tiberias" and the "lake of Gennesaret."
- This term could also be translated as "lake in the region of Galilee" or "Lake Galilee" or "lake near Tiberias (Gennesaret)."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Capernaum, Galilee, Jordan River, Salt Sea)

## Bible References:

- John 06:1-3
- Luke 05:01
- Mark 01:16-18
- Matthew 04:12-13
- Matthew 04:18-20
- Matthew 08:18-20
- Matthew 13:1-2
- Matthew 15:29-31

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3220, H3672, G1056, G1082, G2281, G3041, G5085

(**Go back to:** John 6:1; 6:16; 6:17; 6:18; 6:19; 6:22; 6:25; 21:1; 21:7)

# seal, sealed, unsealed

### Definition:

To term "seal" means to close an object with something (usually called a "seal") that makes the object impossible to open without breaking the seal.

- Often a seal is marked with a design to show who it belongs to.
- Melted wax was used to seal letters or other documents that needed to be protected. When the wax cooled and hardened, the letter could not be opened without breaking the wax seal. The person who received the letter would see the unbroken seal and know that no one had opened it.
- A seal was put on the stone in front of Jesus' grave in order to keep anyone from moving the stone.
- Paul figuratively refers to the Holy Spirit as a "seal" showing that our salvation is secure.

(See also: Holy Spirit, tomb)

### Bible References:

- Exodus 02:03
- Isaiah 29:11
- John 06:27
- Matthew 27:66
- Revelation 05:02

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2368, H2560, H2856, H2857, H2858, H5640, G2696, G4972, G4973

(**Go back to:** John 3:33; 6:27)

# seek, search, look for

### Definition:

The term "seek" means to look for something or someone. In the past tense, the verb is "sought." This term is sometimes used figuratively, meaning to "attempt" or "make an effort" to do something or to ask for something.

- To "seek" or "look for" an opportunity to do something can mean to "try to find a time" to do it.
- To "seek Yahweh" means to "spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him."
- To "seek protection" means to "try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger."
- To "seek justice" means to "make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly."
- To "seek the truth" means to "make an effort to find out what the truth is."
- To "seek favor" means to "urgently ask for favor" or to "do things to cause someone to help you."

(See also: just, true)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:14
- Acts 17:26-27
- Hebrews 11:06
- Luke 11:09
- Psalms 027:08

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H579, H1156, H1239, H1243, H1245, H1556, H1875, H2470, H2603, H2658, H2664, H3289, H7125, H7592, H7836, H8446, G327, G1567, G1934, G2052, G2212

(**Go back to:** John 1:38; 4:23; 4:27; 5:18; 5:30; 5:44; 6:24; 6:26; 7:1; 7:4; 7:11; 7:18; 7:19; 7:20; 7:25; 7:30; 7:34; 7:36; 8:21; 8:37; 8:40; 8:50; 10:39; 11:8; 11:56; 13:33; 18:4; 18:7; 18:8; 19:12; 20:15)

# seize, seizure

## Definition:

The term "seize" means to take or capture someone or something by force. It can also mean to overpower and control someone.

- When a city was taken by means of military force, the soldiers would seize the valuable property of the people they had conquered.
- When used figuratively, a person can be described as being "seized with fear." This means that the person was suddenly "overcome by fear." If a person was "seized with fear" it could also be stated that the person "suddenly became very afraid."
- In the context of labor pains that "seize" a woman, the meaning is that the pains are sudden and overpowering. This could be translated by saying that the pains "overcome" or "suddenly come upon" the woman.
- This term could also be translated as "take control of" or "suddenly take" or "grab."
- The expression "seized and slept with her" could be translated as "forced himself on her" or "violated her" or "raped her." Make sure the translation of this concept is acceptable.

(See: euphemism)

## Bible References:

- Acts 16:19-21
- Exodus 15:14
- John 10:37-39
- Luke 08:29
- Matthew 26:48

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H270, H1497, H2388, H3027, H3920, H3947, H4672, H5377, H5860, H6031, H7760, H8610, G724, G1949, G2638, G2902, G2983, G4815, G4884

# send, sent, send out

### Definition:

To "send" is to cause someone or something to go somewhere. To "send out" someone is to tell that person to go on an errand or a mission.

- Often a person who is "sent out" has been appointed to do a specific task.
- Phrases like "send rain" or "send disaster" mean to "cause…to come." This type of expression is usually used in reference to God causing these things to happen.
- The term "send" is also used in expressions such as to "send word" or to "send a message," which means to give someone a message to tell someone else.
- To "send" someone "with" something can mean to "give" that thing "to" someone else, usually moving it some distance in order for the person to receive it.
- Jesus frequently used the phrase "the one who sent me" to refer to God the Father, who "sent" him to earth to redeem and save people. This could also be translated as "the one who commis

(See also: appoint, redeem)

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:33-34
- Acts 08:14-17
- John 20:21-23
- Matthew 09:37-38
- Matthew 10:05
- Matthew 10:40
- Matthew 21:1-3

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H935, H1540, H1980, H2199, H2904, H3318, H3474, H3947, H4916, H4917, H5042, H5130, H5375, H5414, H5674, H6963, H7368, H7725, H7964, H7971, H7972, H7993, H8421, H8446, G782, G375, G630, G649, G652, G657, G1026, G1032, G1544, G1599, G1821, G3333, G3343, G3936, G3992, G4311, G4341, G4369, G4842, G4882

(**Go back to:** John 1:6; 1:19; 1:22; 1:24; 1:33; 3:17; 3:28; 3:34; 4:34; 4:38; 5:23; 5:24; 5:30; 5:33; 5:36; 5:37; 5:38; 6:29; 6:38; 6:39; 6:44; 6:57; 7:16; 7:18; 7:28; 7:29; 7:32; 7:33; 8:16; 8:18; 8:26; 8:29; 8:42; 9:4; 9:7; 10:36; 11:3; 11:42; 12:44; 12:45; 12:49; 13:16; 13:20; 14:24; 14:26; 15:21; 15:26; 16:5; 16:7; 17:3; 17:8; 17:18; 17:21; 17:23; 17:25; 18:24; 20:21)

# serpent, snake, viper

## Facts:

These terms all refer to a kind of reptile that has a long, thin body and large, fanged jaws, and that moves by slithering back and forth across the ground. The term "serpent" usually refers to a large snake and "viper" refers to a type of snake that has venom which it uses to poison its prey.

- This animal is also used figuratively to refer to a person who is evil, especially someone who is deceitful.
- Jesus called the religious leaders "offspring of vipers" because they pretended to be righteous but deceived people and treated them unfairly.
- In the garden of Eden, Satan took the form of a serpent when he talked to Eve and tempted her to disobey God.
- After the serpent tempted Eve to sin, and both Eve and her husband Adam did sin, God cursed the snake, saying that from then on, all snakes would slither along the ground, implying that before then they had had legs.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: curse, deceive, disobey, Eden, evil, offspring, prey, Satan, sin, tempt)

## Bible References:

- Genesis 03:03
- Genesis 03:4-6
- Genesis 03:12-13
- Mark 16:17-18
- Matthew 03:07
- Matthew 23:33

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H660, H2119, H5175, H6620, H6848, H8314, H8577, G2191, G2062, G3789

(**Go back to:** John 3:14)

# servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

### Definition:

The term "serve" generally means to do work, and the concept can be applied in a wide variety of contexts. The term refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. In the Bible, any of the following people might be called a "servant:" a slave, a young female worker, a young male worker, someone who obeys God, and others. In biblical times, there was less of a difference between a "servant" and a "slave" than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of a household, and many servants were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.

- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his "owner" or "master." Some masters treated their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treated their slaves very well, as a servant who was a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means "care for" or "serve food to" or "provide food for." When Jesus told the disciples to "serve" the fish to the people, this could be translated as, "distribute" or "hand out" or "give."
- In the Bible, the phrase "I am your servant" was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- The term "serve" can also be translated as "minister to" or "work for" or "take care of" or "obey," depending on the context.
- In the Old Testament, God's prophets and other people who worshiped God were often referred to as his "servants."
- To "serve God" can be translated as to "worship and obey God" or to "do the work that God has commanded."
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his "servants."
- To "serve tables" means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to "distribute food."
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to "serve" the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they "serve" the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus' sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their "service" to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as "serving" or "obeying" or "devotion to."

(See also: commit, enslave, household, lord, obey, righteous, covenant, law,)

### Bible References:

- Acts 04:29-31
- Acts 10:7-8
- Colossians 01:7-8
- Colossians 03:22-25
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Luke 12:47-48
- Mark 09:33-35
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28
- 2 Timothy 02:3-5
- Acts 06:2-4
- Genesis 25:23
- Luke 04:8

- Luke 12:37-38
- Luke 22:26-27
- Mark 08:7-10
- Matthew 04:10-11
- Matthew 06:24

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **06:01** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **08:04** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **09:13** "I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt."
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- **29:03** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- **35:06** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- **47:04** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God.
- **50:04** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

## Word Data:

- (Servant) Strong's: H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G1249, G1401, G1402, G2324, G3407, G3411, G3610, G3816, G4983, G5257
- (Serve) H327, H3547, H4929, H4931, H5647, H5656, H5673, H5975, H6213, H6399, H6402, H6440, H6633, H6635, H7272, H8104, H8120, H8199, H8278, H8334, G1247, G1248, G1398, G1402, G1438, G1983, G2064, G2212, G2323, G2999, G3000, G3009, G4337, G4342, G4754, G5087, G5256

(**Go back to:** John 4:51; 8:33; 8:34; 8:35; 10:12; 10:13; 13:16; 15:15; 15:20; 16:2; 18:10; 18:17; 18:18; 18:26; 18:36)

# sexual immorality, immorality, immoral, fornication

## Definition:

The term "sexual immorality" refers to sexual activity that takes place outside the marriage relationship of a man and a woman. This is against God's plan. Older English Bible versions call this "fornication."

- This term can refer to any kind of sexual activity that is against God's will, including homosexual acts and pornography.
- One type of sexual immorality is adultery, which is sexual activity specifically between a married person and someone who is not that person's spouse.
- Another type of sexual immorality is "prostitution," which involves being paid to have sex with someone.
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to Israel's unfaithfulness to God when they worshiped false gods.

## Translation Suggestions:

- The term "sexual immorality" could be translated as "immorality" as long as the correct meaning of the term is understood.
- Other ways to translate this term could include "wrong sexual acts" or "sex outside of marriage."
- This term should be translated in a different way from the term "adultery."
- The translation of this term's figurative uses should retain the literal term if possible since there is a common comparison in the Bible between unfaithfulness to God and unfaithfulness in the sexual relationship.

(See also: adultery, false god, prostitute, faithful)

## Bible References:

- Acts 15:20
- Acts 21:25-26
- Colossians 03:5-8
- Ephesians 05:03
- Genesis 38:24-26
- Hosea 04:13-14
- Matthew 05:31-32
- Matthew 19:7-9

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2181, H8457, G1608, G4202, G4203

(**Go back to:** John 8:41)

# shepherd, chief shepherd

## Definition:

A shepherd is a person who takes care of sheep. The verb to "shepherd" means to protect the sheep and provide them with food and water. Shepherds watch over the sheep, leading them to places with good food and water. Shepherds also keep the sheep from getting lost and protect them from wild animals.

- This term is often used metaphorically in the Bible to refer to taking care of people's spiritual needs. This includes teaching them what God has told them in the Bible and guiding them in the way they should live.
- In the Old Testament, God was called the "shepherd" of his people because he took care of all their needs and protected them. He also led and guided them. (See: Metaphor)
- Moses was a shepherd for the Israelites as he guided them spiritually in their worship of Yahweh and led them physically on their journey to the land of Canaan.
- In the New Testament, Jesus called himself the "good shepherd." The apostle Paul also referred to him as the "great shepherd" over the Church.
- Also, in the New Testament, the term "shepherd" was used to refer to a person who was a spiritual leader over other believers. The word translated as "pastor" is the same word that is translated as "shepherd." The elders and overseers were also called shepherds.

## Translation Suggestions

- When used literally, the action "shepherd" could be translated as "take care of sheep" or "watch over sheep."
- The person "shepherd" could be translated as "person who takes care of sheep" or "sheep tender" or "sheep caregiver."
- When used as a metaphor, different ways to translate this term could include "spiritual shepherd" or "spiritual leader" or "one who is like a shepherd" or "one who cares for his people like a shepherd cares for his sheep" or "one who leads his people like a shepherd guides his sheep" or "one who takes care of God's sheep."
- In some contexts, "shepherd" could be translated as "leader" or "guide" or "caregiver."
- The spiritual expression to "shepherd" could be translated as to "take care of" or to "spiritually nourish" or to "guide and teach" or to "lead and take care of (like a shepherd cares for sheep)."
- In figurative uses, it is best to use or include the literal word for "shepherd" in the translation of this term.

(See also: believe, Canaan, church, Moses, pastor, sheep, spirit)

## Bible References:

- Genesis 49:24
- Luke 02:09
- Mark 06:34
- Mark 14:26-27
- Matthew 02:06
- Matthew 09:36
- Matthew 25:32
- Matthew 26:31

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:11** Moses became a **shepherd** in the wilderness far away from Egypt.to
- **17:02** David was a **shepherd** from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father's sheep, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the sheep.
- **23:06** That night, there were some **shepherds** in a nearby field guarding their flocks.

- **23:08** The **shepherds** soon arrived at the place where Jesus was and they found him lying in a feeding trough, just as the angel had told them.
- **30:03** To Jesus, these people were like sheep without a **shepherd**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H6629, H7462, H7469, H7473, G750, G4165, G4166

(**Go back to:** John 10:2; 10:11; 10:12; 10:14; 10:16; 21:16)

# sign, proof, reminder

## Definition:

A sign is an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

- Signs can help people to remember a promise that God has made:
    ◦ The rainbows God creates in the sky are signs to remind people that he has promised he will never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.
    ◦ God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign of his covenant with them.
    ◦ In the Old Testament, God tells his people that he will "confirm" his covenant with them. This means he is stating that he will keep the promises he made in that covenant.

- Signs can reveal or point to something:
    ◦ An angel gave shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.
    ◦ Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.

- Signs can prove that something is true:
    ◦ The miracles performed by the prophets and apostles were signs that proved they were speaking God's message.
    ◦ The miracles that Jesus performed were signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on its context, "sign" could also be translated as "signal" or "symbol" or "mark" or "evidence" or "proof" or "gesture."
- To "make signs with the hands" could also be translated as "motion with the hands" or "gesture with the hands" or "make gestures."
- In some languages, there may be one word for a "sign" that proves something and a different word for a "sign" that is a miracle.

(See also: miracle, apostle, Christ, covenant, circumcise)

## Bible References:

- Acts 02:18-19
- Exodus 04:8-9
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Genesis 01:14
- Genesis 09:12
- John 02:18
- Luke 02:12
- Mark 08:12
- Psalms 089:5-6

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H226, H852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H6161, H6725, H6734, H7560, G364, G880, G1213, G1229, G1718, G1730, G1732, G1770, G3902, G4102, G4591, G4592, G4953, G4973, G5280

(**Go back to:** Introduction to the Gospel of John; John 2:11; 2:18; 2:23; 3:2; 4:48; 4:54; 6:2; 6:14; 6:26; 6:30; 7:31; 9:16; 10:41; 11:47; 12:18; 12:37; 20:30)

# sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

## Definition:

The term "sin" refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God's will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don't know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God's will are called "sinful."
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a "sinful nature," a nature that that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A "sinner" is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word "sinners" was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn't keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term "sinner" was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

## Translation Suggestions:

- The term "sin" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "disobedience to God" or "going against God's will" or "evil behavior and thoughts" or "wrongdoing."
- To "sin" could also be translated as to "disobey God" or to "do wrong."
- Depending on the context "sinful" could be translated as "full of wrongdoing" or "wicked" or "immoral" or "evil" or "rebelling against God."
- Depending on the context the term "sinner" could be translated with a word or phrase that means, "person who sins" or "person who does wrong things" or "person who disobeys God" or "person who disobeys the law."
- The term "sinners" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "very sinful people" or "people considered to be very sinful" or "immoral people."
- Ways to translate "tax collectors and sinners" could include "people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people" or "very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors."
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don't see or know about.
- The term "sin" should be general, and different from the terms for "wickedness" and "evil."

(See also: disobey, evil, flesh, tax collector)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:1-3
- 1 John 01:10
- 1 John 02:02
- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 03:19
- Daniel 09:24
- Genesis 04:07
- Hebrews 12:02
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 04:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31
- Romans 06:23

• Romans 08:04

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:01** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- **35:01** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinners** who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**.
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:08** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H817, H819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G264, G265, G266, G268, G361, G3781, G3900, G4258

# sister

## Definition:

A sister is a female person who shares at least one biological parent with another person. She is said to be that other person's sister or the sister of that other person.

- In the New Testament, "sister" is also used figuratively to refer to a woman who is a fellow believer in Jesus Christ.
- Sometimes the phrase "brothers and sisters" is used to refer to all believers in Christ, both men and women.
- In the Old Testament book Song of Songs, "sister" refers to a female lover or spouse.

## Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological sister, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- Other ways to translate this could include "sister in Christ" or "spiritual sister" or "woman who believes in Jesus" or "fellow woman believer."
- If possible, it is best to use a family term.
- If the language has a feminine form for "believer," this may be a possible way to translate this term.
- When referring to a lover or wife, this could be translated using a feminine form of "loved one" or "dear one."

(See also: brother in Christ, spirit)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:16-17
- Deuteronomy 27:22
- Philemon 01:02
- Romans 16:01

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H269, H1323, G27, G79

(**Go back to:** John 11:1; 11:3; 11:5; 11:28; 11:39; 19:25)

# skull

## Definition:

The term "skull" refers to the bony, skeletal structure of the head of a person or animal.

- Sometimes the term "skull" means "head," as in the phrase "shave your skull."
- The term "Place of the Skull" was another name for Golgotha, where Jesus was crucified.
- This term could also be translated as "head" or "head bone."

(See also: crucify, Golgotha)

## Bible References:

- 2 Kings 09:35-37
- Jeremiah 02:16
- John 19:17
- Matthew 27:32-34

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1538, H6936, H7218, G2898

(**Go back to:** John 19:17)

# soldier, warrior

## Facts:

The terms "warrior" and "soldier" both can refer to someone who fights in an army. But there are also some differences.

- Usually the term "warrior" is a general, broad term to refer to a man who is gifted and courageous in battle.
- Yahweh is figuratively described as a "warrior."
- The term "soldier" more specifically refers to someone who belongs to a certain army or who is fighting in a certain battle.
- Roman soldiers in Jerusalem were there to keep order and to carry out duties such as executing prisoners. They guarded Jesus before crucifying him and some were ordered to stand guard at his tomb.
- The translator should consider whether there are two words in the project language for "warrior" and "soldier" that also differ in meaning and use.

(See also: courage, crucify, Rome, tomb)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:05
- Acts 21:33
- Luke 03:14
- Luke 23:11
- Matthew 08:8-10

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H352, H510, H1368, H1416, H1995, H2389, H2428, H2502, H3715, H4421, H5971, H6518, H6635, H7273, H7916, G4686, G4753, G4754, G4757, G4758, G4961

(**Go back to:** John 19:2; 19:23; 19:24; 19:32; 19:34)

# Solomon

### Facts:

Solomon was one of King David's sons. His mother was Bathsheba.

- When Solomon became king, God told him to ask for anything he wanted. So Solomon asked for wisdom to rule the people justly and well. God was pleased with Solomon's request and gave him both wisdom and much wealth.
- Solomon is also well known for having a magnificent temple built in Jerusalem.
- Although Solomon ruled wisely in the first years of his reign, later on he foolishly married many foreign women and started worshiping their gods.
- Because of Solomon's unfaithfulness, after his death God divided the Israelites into two kingdoms, Israel and Judah. These kingdoms often fought against each other.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Bathsheba, David, Israel, Judah, kingdom of Israel, temple)

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:47-50
- Luke 12:27
- Matthew 01:7-8
- Matthew 06:29
- Matthew 12:42

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:14** Later, David and Bathsheba had another son, and they named him **Solomon**.
- **18:01** After many years, David died, and his son **Solomon** began to rule. God spoke to **Solomon** and asked him what he wanted most. When **Solomon** asked for wisdom, God was pleased and made him the wisest man in the world. **Solomon** learned many things and was a very wise judge. God also made him very wealthy.
- **18:02** In Jerusalem, **Solomon** built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **18:03** But **Solomon** loved women from other countries....When **Solomon** was old, he also worshiped their gods.
- **18:04** God was angry with **Solomon** and, as a punishment for **Solomon's** unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after **Solomon's** death.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H8010, G4672

(**Go back to:** John 10:23)

# son

## Definition:

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their "son" for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An "adopted son" is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- In the Bible, the phrase "son of" can be used to identify a person's father, mother, or an ancestor from some previous generation. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- Using "son of" to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, "Azariah son of Zadok" and "Azariah son of Nathan" in 1 Kings 4, and "Azariah son of Amaziah" in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

## Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate "son" by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term "Son of God," the project language's common term for "son" should be used.
- Sometimes "sons" can be translated as "children," when both males and females are being referred to. For example, "sons of God" could be translated as "children of God" since this expression also includes girls and women.

(See also: Azariah, descendant, ancestor, firstborn, Son of God, sons of God)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:15
- 1 Kings 13:02
- 1 Thessalonians 05:05
- Galatians 04:07
- Hosea 11:01
- Isaiah 09:06
- Matthew 03:17
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 08:12
- Nehemiah 10:28

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:08** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **04:09** God said, "I will give you a **son** from your own body."
- **05:05** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's **son**.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, "Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me."
- **09:07** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **11:06** God killed every one of the Egyptians' firstborn **sons**.
- **18:01** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **26:04** "Is this the **son** of Joseph?â€š" they said.

**Word Data:**

   • Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H4497, H5209, H5220, G3816, G5043, G5207

(**Go back to:** John 1:42; 1:45; 4:5; 4:12; 4:46; 4:47; 4:50; 4:51; 4:53; 6:42; 9:19; 9:20; 12:36; 17:12; 19:26)

# Son of God, the Son

## Facts:

The term "Son of God" refers to Jesus, the Word of God, who came into the world as a human being. He is also often referred to as "the Son."

- The Son of God has the same nature as God the Father, and is fully God.
- God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit are all of one essence.
- Unlike human sons, the Son of God has always existed.
- In the beginning, the Son of God was active in creating the world, along with the Father and the Holy Spirit.

Because Jesus is God's Son, he loves and obeys his Father, and his Father loves him.

## Translation Suggestions:

- For the term "Son of God," it is best to translate "Son" with the same word the language would naturally use to refer to a human son.
- Make sure the word used to translate "son" fits with the word used to translate "father" and that these words are the most natural ones used to express a true father-son relationship in the project language.
- Using a capital letter to begin "Son" may help show that this is talking about God.
- The phrase "the Son" is a shortened form of "the Son of God," especially when it occurs in the same context as "the Father."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Christ, ancestor, God, God the Father, Holy Spirit, Jesus, son, sons of God)

## Bible References:

- 1 John 04:10
- Acts 09:20
- Colossians 01:17
- Galatians 02:20
- Hebrews 04:14
- John 03:18
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 11:27
- Revelation 02:18
- Romans 08:29

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:05** The angel explained, "The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the power of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the **Son of God**."
- **24:09** God had told John, "The Holy Spirit will come down and rest on someone you baptize. That person is **the Son of God**."
- **31:08** The disciples were amazed. They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "Truly, you are **the Son of God**."
- **37:05** Martha answered, "Yes, Master! I believe you are the Messiah, the **Son of God**."
- **42:10** So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, **the Son**, and the Holy Spirit, and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **46:06** Right away, Saul began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the **Son of God**!"
- **49:09** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only **Son** so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H426, H430, H1121, H1247, G2316, G5207

# Son of Man, son of man

### Definition:

The title "Son of Man" was used by Jesus to refer to himself. He often used this term instead of saying "I" or "me."

- In the Bible, "son of man" could be a way of referring to or addressing a man. It could also mean "human being."
- Throughout the Old Testament book of Ezekiel, God frequently addressed Ezekiel as "son of man." For example he said, "You, son of man, must prophesy."
- The prophet Daniel saw a vision of a "son of man" coming with the clouds, which is a reference to the coming Messiah.
- Jesus also said that the Son of Man will be coming back someday on the clouds.
- These references to the Son of Man coming on the clouds reveal that Jesus the Messiah is God.

### Translation Suggestions:

- When Jesus uses the term "Son of Man" it could be translated as "the One who became a human being" or "the Man from heaven."
- Some translators occasionally include "I" or "me" with this title (as in "I, the Son of Man") to make it clear that Jesus was talking about himself.
- Check to make sure that the translation of this term does not give a wrong meaning (such as referring to an illegitimate son or giving the wrong impression that Jesus was only a human being).
- When used to refer to a person, "son of man" could also be translated as "you, a human being" or "you, man" or "human being" or "man."

(See also: heaven, son, Son of God, Yahweh)

### Bible References:

- Acts 07:56
- Daniel 07:14
- Ezekiel 43:6-8
- John 03:12-13
- Luke 06:05
- Mark 02:10
- Matthew 13:37
- Psalms 080:17-18
- Revelation 14:14

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H120, H606, H1121, H1247, G444, G5207

(**Go back to:** John 1 General Notes; 1:51; Notes; 3:13; 3:14; Notes; 5:27; Notes; 6:27; 6:53; 6:62; Notes; 8:28; Notes; 9:35; 12:23; 12:34; Notes; 13:31)

# soul, self

## Definition:

The term "soul" can either refer generally to the non-physical part of a person or refer specifically to a person's awareness of themselves as a person distinct from others.

- In the Bible, the terms "soul" and "spirit" may be two different concepts, or they may be two terms that refer to the same concept.
- When a person dies, his soul leaves his body.
- In contrast to the body, the "soul" can be spoken of as the part of a person that "relates to God."
- The word "soul" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to the whole person. For example, "the soul who sins" means "the person who sins" and "my soul is tired" means,"I am tired."

## Translation Suggestions:

- The term "soul" could also be translated as "inner self" or "inner person."
- In some contexts, "my soul" could be translated as "I" or "me."
- Usually the phrase "the soul" can be translated as "the person" or "he" or "him," depending on the context.
- Some languages might only have one word for the concepts "soul" and "spirit."
- In Hebrews 4:12, the figurative phrase "dividing soul and spirit" could mean "deeply discerning or exposing the inner person."

(See also: spirit)

## Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:08
- Acts 02:27-28
- Acts 02:41
- Genesis 49:06
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- James 01:21
- Jeremiah 06:16-19
- Jonah 02:7-8
- Luke 01:47
- Matthew 22:37
- Psalms 019:07
- Revelation 20:4

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H5082, H5315, H5397, G5590

(**Go back to:** John 10:24; 12:27)

# spear, spearmen

### Definition:

A spear is a weapon with a long wooden handle and sharp metal blade on one end that is thrown a long distance.

- Spears were commonly used for war in biblical times. They are sometimes still used in present-day conflicts between certain people groups.
- A spear was used by a Roman soldier to pierce the side of Jesus while he hung on the cross.
- Sometimes people throw spears to catch fish or other prey to eat.
- Similar weapons are the "javelin" or "lance."
- Make sure that the translation of "spear" is different from the translation of "sword," which is a weapon that is used for thrusting or stabbing, not throwing. Also, a sword has a long blade with a handle, while a spear has a small blade on the end of a long shaft.

(See also: prey, Rome, sword, warrior)

### Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 13:19-21
- 2 Samuel 21:19
- Nehemiah 04:12-14
- Psalm 035:03

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1265, H2595, H3591, H6767, H7013, H7420, G3057

(**Go back to:** John 19:34)

# spirit, spiritual

## Definition:

The term "spirit" refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. "Spirit" can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term "spirit" can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person's spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term "spiritual" describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, "spiritual food" refers to God's teachings, which give nourishment to a person's spirit, and "spiritual wisdom" refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings, who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term "spirit of" can also mean "having the characteristics of," such as in "spirit of wisdom" or "in the spirit of Elijah."
- Examples of "spirit" as an attitude or emotion would include "spirit of fear" and "spirit of jealousy."

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate "spirit" might include "non-physical being" or "inside part" or "inner being."
- In some contexts, the term "spirit" could be translated as "evil spirit" or "evil spirit being."
- Sometimes the term "spirit" is used to express the feelings of a person, as in "my spirit was grieved in my inmost being." This could also be translated as "I felt grieved in my spirit" or "I felt deeply grieved."
- The phrase "spirit of" could be translated as "character of" or "influence of" or "attitude of" or "thinking (that is) characterized by."
- Depending on the context, "spiritual" could be translated as "non-physical" or "from the Holy Spirit" or "God's" or "part of the non-physical world."
- The phrase "spiritual maturity" could be translated as "godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit."
- The term "spiritual gift" could be translated as "special ability that the Holy Spirit gives

(See also: angel, demon, Holy Spirit, soul)

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:05
- 1 John 04:03
- 1 Thessalonians 05:23
- Acts 05:09
- Colossians 01:09
- Ephesians 04:23
- Genesis 07:21-22
- Isaiah 04:04
- Mark 01:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 01:27

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:03** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:07** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **48:07** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G4151, G4152, G4153, G5326, G5427

# stone, stoning

## Definition:

A stone is a small rock. To "stone" someone is to throw stones and larger rocks at that person with the intention of killing him. A "stoning" is an event in which someone was stoned.

- In ancient times, stoning was a common method of executing people as punishment for crimes they had committed.
- God commanded the Israelite leaders to stone people for certain sins, such as adultery.
- In the New Testament, Jesus forgave a woman caught in adultery and stopped people from stoning her.
- Stephen, who was the first person in the Bible to be killed for testifying about Jesus, was stoned to death.
- In the city of Lystra, the apostle Paul was stoned, but he did not die from his wounds.

(See also: adultery, commit, crime, death, Lystra, testimony)

## Bible References:

- Acts 07:57-58
- Acts 07:59-60
- Acts 14:05
- Acts 14:19-20
- John 08:4-6
- Luke 13:34
- Luke 20:06
- Matthew 23:37-39

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H68, H69, H810, H1382, H1496, H1530, H2106, H2672, H2687, H2789, H4676, H4678, H5553, H5601, H5619, H6344, H6443, H6697, H6864, H6872, H7275, H7671, H8068, G2642, G2991, G3034, G3035, G3036, G3037, G4074, G4348, G5586

(**Go back to:** John 8:59; 10:31; 10:32; 10:33; 11:8)

# strength, strengthen, strong

### Facts:

The term "strength" refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To "strengthen" someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

- "Strength" can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
- A person has "strength of will" if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
- One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his "strength" because God helped him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is being "strengthened," people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

### Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term "strengthen" can be translated as "cause to be strong" or "make more powerful."
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase "strengthen your brothers" could also be translated as "encourage your brothers" or "help your brothers to persevere."
- The following examples show the meaning of these terms, and therefore how they can be translated, when they are included in longer expressions.
    - "puts strength on me like a belt" means "causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist."
    - "in quietness and trust will be your strength" means "acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong."
    - "will renew their strength" means "will become stronger again."
    - "by my strength and by my wisdom I acted" means "I have done all this because I am so strong and wise."
    - "strengthen the wall" means "reinforce the wall" or "rebuild the wall."
    - "I will strengthen you" means "I will cause you to be strong"
    - "in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength" means "Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us."
    - "the rock of your strength" means "the faithful one who makes you strong"
    - "with the saving strength of his right hand" means "he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand."
    - "of little strength" means "not very strong" or "weak."
    - "with all my strength" means "using my best efforts" or "strongly and completely."

(See also: faithful, persevere, right hand, save)

### Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 2 Peter 02:11
- Luke 10:27
- Psalm 021:01

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H193, H202, H353, H360, H386, H410, H553, H556, H1369, H1396, H2220, H2388, H2391, H2392, H2393, H2428, H3027, H3028, H3559, H3581, H3811, H3955, H4581, H5326, H5331, H5582, H5797, H5807, H5810, H5934, H5975, H6106, H6109, H6697, H6965, H7292, H7307, H8003, H8443, H8632, H8633, G461, G950, G1411, G1412, G1743, G1765, G1840, G1991, G2479, G2480, G2901, G2904, G3619, G3756, G4599, G4732, G4733, G4741

(**Go back to:** John 21:6)

# stumble, reeling

### Definition:

The term "stumble" means "almost fall" when walking or running. Usually it involves tripping over something.

- Figuratively, to "stumble" can mean to "sin" or to "falter" in believing.
- This term can also refer to faltering or showing weakness when fighting a battle or when being persecuted or punished.

### Translation Suggestions

- In contexts where the term "stumble" means to physically trip over something, it should be translated with a term that means "almost fall" or "trip over."
- This literal meaning could also be used in a figurative context, if it communicates the correct meaning in that context.
- For figurative uses where the literal meaning would not make sense in the project language, "stumble" could be translated as, "sin" or "falter" or "stop believing" or "become weak," depending on the context.
- Another way to translate this term could be, "stumble by sinning" or "stumble by not believing."
- The phrase "made to stumble" could be translated as "caused to become weak" or "caused to falter."

(See also: believe, persecute, sin, stumbling block)

### Bible References:

- 1 Peter 02:08
- Hosea 04:05
- Isaiah 31:3
- Matthew 11:4-6
- Matthew 18:08

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1762, H3782, H4383, H5062, H5063, H5307, H6328, H6761, H8058, G679, G4348, G4350, G4417, G4624, G4625

(**Go back to:** John 11:9; 11:10)

# sword, swordsmen

## Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

## Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: Metaphor)
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: James (brother of Jesus), John (the Baptist), tongue, word of God)

## Bible References:

- Acts 12:02
- Genesis 27:40
- Genesis 34:25
- Luke 02:33-35
- Luke 21:24
- Matthew 10:34
- Matthew 26:55
- Revelation 01:16

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H19, H1300, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G3162, G4501

(**Go back to:** John 18:10; 18:11)

# synagogue

### Definition:

A synagogue is a building where Jewish people meet together to worship God.

- Since ancient times, a synagogue's services have included times of prayer, scripture reading, and teaching about the scriptures.
- The Jews originally started building synagogues as places to pray and worship God in their own cities, because many of them lived far away from the temple in Jerusalem.
- Jesus often taught in synagogues and healed people there.
- The word "synagogue" can be used figuratively to refer to the group of people meeting there.

(See also: heal, Jerusalem, Jew, pray, temple, word of God, worship)

### Bible References:

- Acts 06:09
- Acts 14:1-2
- Acts 15:21
- Acts 24:10-13
- John 06:59
- Luke 04:14
- Matthew 06:1-2
- Matthew 09:35-36
- Matthew 13:54

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H4150, G656, G752, G4864

(**Go back to:** John 6:59; 18:20)

# teach, teaching, untaught

### Definition:

To "teach" someone is to tell him something he doesn't already know. It can also mean to "provide information" in general, with no reference to the person who is learning. Usually the information is given in a formal or systematic way. A person's "teaching" is or his "teachings" are what he has taught.

- A "teacher" is someone who teaches. The past action of "teach" is "taught."
- When Jesus was teaching, he was explaining things about God and his kingdom.
- Jesus' disciples called him "Teacher" as a respectful form of address for someone who taught people about God.
- The information that is being taught can be shown or spoken.
- The term "doctrine" refers to a set of teachings from God about himself as well as God's instructions about how to live. This could also be translated as "teachings from God" or "what God teaches us."
- The phrase "what you have been taught" could also be translated as, "what these people have taught you" or "what God has taught you," depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate "teach" could include "tell" or "explain" or "instruct."
- Often this term can be translated as "teaching people about God."

(See also: instruct, teacher, word of God)

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 01:03
- Acts 02:40-42
- John 07:14
- Luke 04:31
- Matthew 04:23
- Psalms 032:08

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H502, H2094, H2449, H3045, H3046, H3256, H3384, H3925, H3948, H7919, H8150, G1317, G1321, G1322, G2085, G2605, G2727, G3100, G2312, G2567, G3811, G4994

(**Go back to:** John 6:59; 7:14; 7:16; 7:17; 7:28; 7:35; 8:20; 8:28; 9:34; 14:26; 18:19; 18:20)

# teacher, Teacher

## Definition:

A teacher is a person who gives other people new information. Teachers help others to obtain and use both knowledge and skills.

- In the Bible, the word "teacher" is used in a special sense to refer to someone who teaches about God.
- People who learn from a teacher are called "students" or "disciples."
- In some Bible translations, this term is capitalized ("Teacher") when it is used as a title for Jesus.

## Translation Suggestions:

- The usual word for a teacher can be used to translate this term, unless that word is only used for a school teacher.
- Some cultures may have a special title that is used for religious teachers, such as "Sir" or "Rabbi" or "Preacher."

(See also: disciple, preach)

## Bible References:

- Ecclesiastes 01:12-15
- Ephesians 04:11-13
- Galatians 06:6-8
- Habakkuk 02:18
- James 03:02
- John 01:37-39
- Luke 06:40
- Matthew 12:38-40

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "**Teacher**, what must I do to inherit eternal life?"
- **28:01** One day a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, "Good **Teacher**, what must I do to have eternal life?"
- **37:02** After the two days had passed, Jesus said to his disciples, "Let's go back to Judea." "But **Teacher**," the disciples answered, "Just a short time ago the people there wanted to kill you!"
- **38:14** Judas came to Jesus and said, "Greetings, **Teacher**," and kissed him.
- **49:03** Jesus was also a great **teacher**, and he spoke with authority because he is the Son of God.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3384, H3925, G1320, G2567, G3547, G5572

(**Go back to:** John 1:38; 3:2; 3:10; 11:28; 13:13; 13:14; 20:16)

# temple

### Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term "temple" referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- King Solomon built the Temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term "temple of the Holy Spirit" is used to refer to believers in Jesus as a group, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were "in the temple," it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as "in the temple courtyards" or "in the temple complex."
- Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate "temple" as "temple building," to make it the reference clear.
- Ways to translate "temple" could include, "God's holy house" or "sacred worship place."
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as "the house of Yahweh" or "the house of God."

(See also: sacrifice, Solomon, Babylon, Holy Spirit, tabernacle, courtyard, Zion, house)

### Bible References:

- Acts 03:02
- Acts 03:08
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Luke 19:46
- Nehemiah 10:28
- Psalm 079:1-3

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:06** David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:02** In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.
- **20:07** They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.
- **20:13** When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city of the city and the **Temple**.
- **25:04** Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, "If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, 'God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.'"
- **40:07** When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1964, H1965, G1493, G2411, G3485

(**Go back to:** John 2:14; 2:15; 2:19; 2:20; 2:21; 5:14; 7:14; 7:28; 8:20; 8:59; 10:23; 11:56; 18:20)

# test, tested, testing, testing in the fire

### Definition:

The term "test" refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person's strengths and weaknesses.

- God tests people, but he does not tempt them to sin. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
- God sometimes uses tests to expose people's sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
- Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
- To "put to the test" can mean, "challenge something or someone to prove its value."
- In the context of putting God to the test, it means to try to make him do a miracle for us, taking advantage of his mercy.
- Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

### Translation Suggestions:

- The term to "test" could also be translated as, to "challenge" or to "cause to experience difficulties" or to "prove."
- Ways to translate "a test" could be, "a challenge" or "a difficult experience."
- To "put to the test" could be translated as to "test" or to "set up a challenge" or to "force to prove oneself."
- In the context of testing God, this could be translated as, "trying to force God to prove his love."
- In some contexts, when God is not the subject, the term "test" can mean "tempt."

(See also: tempt)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 04:01
- 1 Thessalonians 05:21
- Acts 15:10
- Genesis 22:01
- Isaiah 07:13
- James 01:12
- Lamentations 03:40-43
- Malachi 03:10
- Philippians 01:10
- Psalm 026:02

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G1242, G1263, G1303, G1382, G1957, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3984, G4303, G4451, G4828, G6020

(**Go back to:** John 6:6)

# testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness

## Definition:

When a person gives "testimony" he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To "testify" is to give "testimony."

- Often a person "testifies" about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives "false testimony" does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term "testimony" refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus' followers testified about the events of Jesus' life, death, and resurrection.

The term "witness" refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term "eyewitness" emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To "witness" something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness "gives witness" or "bears witness." This has the same meaning as "testify."
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a "false witness." He is said to "give false witness" or to "bear false witness."
- The expression "be a witness between" means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

## Translation Suggestions:

- The term "testify" or "give testimony" could also be translated as, "tell the facts" or "tell what was seen or heard" or "tell from personal experience" or "give evidence" or "tell what happened."
- Ways to translate "testimony" could include, "report of what happened" or "statement of what is true" or "evidence" or "what has been said" or "prophecy."
- The phrase, "as a testimony to them" could be translated as, to "show them what is true" or to "prove to them what is true."
- The phrase, "as a testimony against them" could be translated as, "which will show them their sin" or "exposing their hypocrisy" or "which will prove that they are wrong."
- To "give false testimony" could be translated as "say false things about" or "state things that are not true."
- The term "witness" or "eyewitness" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "person seeing it" or "the one who saw it happen" or "those who saw and heard (those things)."
- Something that is "a witness" could be translated as "guarantee" or "sign of our promise" or "something that testifies that this is true."
- The phrase "you will be my witnesses" could also be translated as "you will tell other people about me" or "you will teach people the truth that I taught you" or "you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach."
- To "witness to" could be translated as to "tell what was seen" or to "testify" or to "state what happened."
- To "witness" something could be translated as to "see something" or to "experience something happen."

(See also: ark of the covenant, guilt, judge, prophet, testimony, true)

## Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 31:28
- Micah 06:03
- Matthew 26:60
- Mark 01:44
- John 01:07

- John 03:33
- Acts 04:32-33
- Acts 07:44
- Acts 13:31
- Romans 01:09
- 1 Thessalonians 02:10-12
- 1 Timothy 05:19-20
- 2 Timothy 01:08
- 2 Peter 01:16-18
- 1 John 05:6-8
- 3 John 01:12
- Revelation 12:11

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:02** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, "We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?"
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things."
- **43:07** "We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G267, G1263, G1957, G2649, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3144, G4303, G4828, G4901, G5575, G5576, G5577, G6020

# the twelve, the eleven

## Definition:

The term "the twelve" refers to the twelve men that Jesus chose to be his closest disciples, or apostles. After Judas killed himself, they were called "the eleven."

- Jesus had many other disciples, but the title "the twelve" distinguished those who were apparently closest to Jesus.
- The names of these twelve disciples are listed in Matthew 10, Mark 3, and Luke 6.
- Some time after Jesus had returned to heaven, "the eleven" chose a disciple named Matthias to take Judas' place. Then they were called "the twelve" again.

## Translation Suggestions:

- For many languages it may be clearer or more natural to add the noun and say, "the twelve apostles" or "Jesus' twelve closest disciples."
- "The eleven" could also be translated as "Jesus' eleven remaining disciples."
- Some translations may prefer to use a capital letter to show that it was used as a title, as in "the Twelve" and "the Eleven."

(See also: apostle, disciple)

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:5-7
- Acts 06:02
- Luke 09:01
- Luke 18:31
- Mark 10:32-34
- Matthew 10:07

## Word Data:

- Strong's: G1427, G1733

(**Go back to:** John 6:67; 6:70; 6:71; 20:24)

# thief, rob, robber, robbery, bandits

### Facts:

The term "thief" refers to a person who steals money or property from other people. The plural of "thief" is "thieves." The term "robber" often refers to a thief who also physically harms or threatens the people he is stealing from.

- Jesus told a parable about a Samaritan man who took care of a Jewish man who had been attacked by robbers. The robbers had beaten the Jewish man and wounded him before stealing his money and clothing.
- Both thieves and robbers come suddenly to steal, when people are not expecting it. Often they use the cover of darkness to hide what they are doing.
- In a figurative sense, the New Testament describes Satan as a thief who comes to steal, kill, and destroy. This means that Satan's plan is to try to get God's people to stop obeying him. If he succeeded in doing this Satan would be stealing from them the good things that God has planned for them.
- Jesus compared the suddenness of his return to the suddenness of a thief coming to steal from people. Just as a thief comes at a time when people are not expecting it, so Jesus will return at a time when people do not expect it.

(See also: bless, crime, crucify, darkness, destroyer, power, Samaria, Satan)

### Bible References:

- 2 Peter 03:10
- Luke 12:33
- Mark 14:48
- Proverbs 06:30
- Revelation 03:03

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1214, H1215, H1416, H1589, H1590, H1980, H6530, H7703, G727, G2417, G2812, G3027

(**Go back to:** John 10:1; 10:8; 10:10; 12:6; 18:40)

# Thomas

### Facts:

Thomas was one of twelve men whom Jesus chose to be his disciples and later, apostles. He was also known as "Didymus," which means "twin."

- Near the end of Jesus' life, he told his disciples that he was going away to be with the Father and would prepare a place for them to be with him. Thomas asked Jesus how they could know the way to get there when they didn't even know where he was going.
- After Jesus died and came back to life, Thomas said he would not believe that Jesus was really alive again unless he could see and feel the scars where Jesus had been wounded.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: apostle, disciple, God the Father, the twelve)

### Bible References:

- Acts 01:12-14
- John 11:15-16
- Luke 06:14-16
- Mark 03:17-19
- Matthew 10:2-4

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G2381

(**Go back to:** John 11:16; 14:5; 20:24; 20:26; 20:27; 20:28; 21:2)

# thorn, thorn bush, thistle

### Facts:

Thorn bushes and thistles are plants that have prickly branches or flowers. These plants do not produce fruit or anything else that is useful.

- A "thorn" is a hard, sharp growth on the branch or stem of a plant. A "thornbush" is a type of small tree or shrub that has many thorns on its branches.
- A "thistle" is a plant with prickly stems and leaves. Often the flowers are purple.
- Thorn and thistle plants multiply quickly and can cause nearby plants or crops to not be able to grow. This is a picture of how sin keeps a person from producing good spiritual fruit.
- A crown made of twisted thorn branches was placed on Jesus' head before he was crucified.
- If possible, these terms should be translated by the names of two different plants or bushes that are known in the language area.

(See also: crown, fruit, spirit)

### Bible References:

- Hebrews 06:7-8
- Matthew 13:07
- Matthew 13:22
- Numbers 33:55

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H329, H1863, H2312, H2336, H4534, H5285, H5518, H5544, H6791, H6796, H6975, H7063, H7898, G173, G174, G4647, G5146

(**Go back to:** John 19:2; 19:5)

# time, untimely, date

### Facts:

In the Bible the term "time" was often used figuratively to refer to a specific season or period of time when certain events took place. It has a meaning similar to "age" or "epoch" or "season."

- In both Daniel and Revelation speak of a "time" of great trouble or tribulation that will come upon the earth.
- In the phrase "time, times, and half a time" the term "time" means "year." This phrase refers to a three-and-a-half-year period of time during the great tribulation at the end of this present age.
- "Time" can mean "occasion" in a phrase like "third time." The phrase "many times" can mean "on many occasions."
- To be "on time" means to arrive when expected, not late.
- Depending on the context, the term "time" could be translated as, "season" or "time period" or "moment" or "event" or "occurrence."
- The phrase "times and seasons" is a figurative expression which states the same idea twice. This could also be translated as "certain events happening in certain time periods." (See: doublet)

(See also: age, tribulation)

### Bible References:

- Acts 01:07
- Daniel 12:1-2
- Mark 11:11
- Matthew 08:29
- Psalms 068:28-29
- Revelation 14:15

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H116, H227, H310, H1697, H1755, H2165, H2166, H2233, H2465, H3027, H3117, H3118, H3119, H3259, H3427, H3967, H4150, H4279, H4489, H4557, H5331, H5703, H5732, H5750, H5769, H6235, H6256, H6440, H6471, H6635, H6924, H7105, H7138, H7223, H7272, H7281, H7637, H7651, H7655, H7659, H7674, H7992, H8027, H8032, H8138, H8145, H8462, H8543, G744, G530, G1074, G1208, G1441, G1597, G1626, G1909, G2034, G2119, G2121, G2235, G2250, G2540, G3461, G3568, G3764, G3819, G3956, G3999, G4178, G4181, G4183, G4218, G4287, G4340, G4455, G5119, G5151, G5305, G5550, G5551, G5610

# to minister, ministry

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "ministry" refers to serving others by teaching them about God and caring for their spiritual needs.

- In the Old Testament, the priests would "minister" to God in the temple by offering sacrifices to him.
- Their "ministry" also included taking care of the temple and offering prayers to God on behalf of the people.
- The job of "ministering" to people can include serving them spiritually by teaching them about God.
- It can also refer to serving people in physical ways, such as caring for the sick and providing food for the poor.

### Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of ministering to people, to "minister" could also be translated as to "serve" or to "care for" or to "meet the needs of."
- When referring to ministering in the temple, the term "minister" could be translated as "serve God in the temple" or "offer sacrifices to God for the people."
- In the context of ministering to God, this could be translated as to "serve" or to "work for God."
- The phrase "ministered to" could also be translated as "took care of" or "provided for" or "helped."

(See also: serve, sacrifice)

### Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 20:23-26
- Acts 06:04
- Acts 21:17-19

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6399, H8120, H8334, H8335, G1247, G1248, G1249, G2023, G2038, G2418, G3008, G3009, G3010, G3011, G3930, G5256, G5257, G5524

(**Go back to:** John 2:5; 2:9; 12:2; 12:26)

# tribulation, distresses, trouble

### Definition:

The term "tribulation" refers to a time of hardship, suffering, and distress.

- It is explained in the New Testament that Christians will endure times of persecution and other kinds of tribulation because many people in this world are opposed to Jesus' teachings.
- "The Great Tribulation" is a term used in the Bible to describe a period of time just before Jesus' second coming when God's wrath will be poured out on the earth for several years.
- The term "tribulation" could also be translated as "time of great suffering" or "deep distress" or "severe difficulties."

(See also: earth, teach, wrath)

### Bible References:

- Mark 04:17
- Mark 13:19
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Matthew 24:09
- Matthew 24:29
- Romans 02:09

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6869, G2347, G4423

(**Go back to:** John 16:21; 16:33)

# trouble, troublemaker, troublesome, disturbing, stir up, upset, hardship

### Definition:

A "trouble" is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To "trouble" someone means to "bother" that person or to cause him distress.To be "troubled" means to feel upset or distressed about something.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of "trouble" also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

### Translation Suggestions

- The term "trouble" or "troubles" could also be translated as "danger" or "painful things that happen" or "persecution" or "difficult experiences" or "distress."
- The term "troubled" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "undergoing distress" or "feeling terrible distress" or "worried" or "anxious" or "distressed" or "terrified" or "disturbed."
- "Don't trouble her" could also be translated as "don't bother her" or "don't criticize her."
- The phrase "day of trouble" or "times of trouble" could also be translated as "when you experience distress" or " when difficult things happen to you" or "when God causes distressing things to happen."
- Ways to translate "make trouble" or "bring trouble" could include "cause distressing things to happen" or "cause difficulties" or "make them experience very difficult things."

(See also: afflict, persecute)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:19
- Luke 24:38
- Matthew 24:06
- Matthew 26:36-38

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H926, H927, H1204, H1607, H1644, H1804, H2000, H4103, H5916, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6470, H6696, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7264, H7267, H7451, H7489, H8513, G387, G1613, G1776, G2346, G2347, G2350, G2360, G2873, G3636, G3926, G3930, G3986, G4423, G4660, G5015, G5182

(**Go back to:** John 11:33; 12:27; 13:21; 14:1; 14:27)

# true, truth

### Definition:

The term "truth" refers to facts, events, and statements that correspond with reality. True facts describe the universe as it really exists. True events are events that actually happened. True statements are statements that are not false according the real world.

- "True" things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- "Truth" means understandings, beliefs, facts, or statements that are true.
- To say that a prophecy "came true" or "will come true" mean that it actually happened as predicted or that it will happen that way.
- In the Bible the concept of "truth" includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God's truth in the words that he spoke.
- The Bible is truth. It teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term "true" could also be translated by "real" or "factual" or "correct" or "right" or "certain" or "genuine."
- Ways to translate the term "truth" could include "what is true" or "fact" or "certainty" or "principle."
- The expression "come true" could also be translated as "actually happen" or "be fulfilled" or "happen as predicted."
- The expression "tell the truth" or "speak the truth" could also be translated as "say what is true" or "tell what really happened" or "say things that are reliable."
- To "accept the truth" could be translated as "believe what is true about God."
- In an expression such as "worship God in spirit and in truth," the expression "in truth" could also be translated by "faithfully obeying what God has taught us."

(See also: believe, faithful, fulfill, obey, prophet, understand)

### Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
- 1 John 01:5-7
- 1 John 02:08
- 3 John 01:08
- Acts 26:24-26
- Colossians 01:06
- Genesis 47:29-31
- James 01:18
- James 03:14
- James 05:19
- Jeremiah 04:02
- John 01:9
- John 01:16-18
- John 01:51
- John 03:31-33
- Joshua 07:19-21
- Lamentations 05:19-22
- Matthew 08:10
- Matthew 12:17
- Psalm 026:1-3
- Revelation 01:19-20

  • Revelation 15:3-4

## Examples from the Bible stories:

  • **02:04** The snake responded to the woman, "That is not **true**! You will not die."
  • **14:06** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, "It is _true_ that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!"
  • **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the _true_ God.
  • **31:08** They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God."
  • **39:10** "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth**?"

## Word Data:

  • Strong's: H199, H389, H403, H529, H530, H543, H544, H551, H571, H935, H3321, H3330, H6237, H6656, H6965, H7187, H7189, G225, G226, G227, G228, G230, G1103, G3303, G3483, G3689, G4103, G4137

(**Go back to:** John 1:9; 1:14; 1:17; 1:47; 3:21; 3:33; 4:18; 4:23; 4:24; 4:37; 4:42; 5:31; 5:32; 5:33; 6:14; 6:32; 6:55; 7:18; 7:26; 7:28; 7:40; 8:13; 8:14; 8:16; 8:17; 8:26; 8:31; 8:32; 8:40; 8:44; 8:45; 8:46; 10:41; 14:6; 14:17; 15:1; 15:26; 16:7; 16:13; 17:3; 17:8; 17:17; 17:19; 18:37; 18:38; 19:35; 21:24)

# trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness

### Definition:

To "trust" something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called "trust." A "trustworthy" person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of "trustworthiness."

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To "trust in" Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A "trustworthy saying" refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "trust" could include "believe" or "have faith" or "have confidence" or "depend on."
- The phrase "put your trust in" is very similar in meaning to "trust in."
- The term "trustworthy" could be translated as "dependable" or "reliable" or "can always be trusted."

(See also: believe, confidence, faith, faithful, true)

### Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:22-24
- 1 Timothy 04:09
- Hosea 10:12-13
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Nehemiah 13:13
- Psalm 031:05
- Titus 03:8

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **14:15** Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **17:02** David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **34:06** Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H539, H982, H1556, H2620, H2622, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G1679, G3872, G3982, G4006, G4100, G4276

(**Go back to:** John 2:24)

# tunic

## Definition:

In the Bible, the term "tunic" referred to a garment that was worn next to the skin, under other clothing.

- A tunic reached from the shoulders down to the waist or knees and was usually worn with a belt. Tunics worn by wealthy people sometimes had sleeves and reached down to the ankles.
- Tunics were made of leather, haircloth, wool, or linen, and were worn by both men and women.
- A tunic was normally worn under a longer over-garment, such as a toga or outer robe. In warmer weather a tunic was sometimes worn with no outer garment.
- This term could be translated as "long shirt" or "long undergarment" or "shirt-like garment." It could also be written in a similar way to "tunic," with a note to explain what kind of clothing it was.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See Also: robe)

## Bible References:

- Daniel 03:21-23
- Isaiah 22:21
- Leviticus 08:12-13
- Luke 03:11
- Mark 06:7-9
- Matthew 10:10

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2243, H3801, H6361, G5509

(**Go back to:** John 19:23)

# turn, turn away, turn back, return

### Definition:

To "turn" means to physically change direction or to cause something else to change direction.

- The term "turn" can also mean "turn around" to look behind or to face a different direction.
- To "turn back" or "turn away" means to "go back" or "go away" or "cause to go away."
- To "turn away from" can mean to "stop" doing something or to reject someone.
- To "turn toward" someone means to look directly at that person.
- To "turn and leave" or "turn his back to leave" means to "go away."
- To "turn back to" means to "start doing something again."
- To "turn away from" means to "stop doing something."

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "turn" can be translated as "change direction" or "go" or "move."
- In some contexts, "turn" could be translated as "cause" (someone) to do something. To "turn (someone) away from" could be translated as "cause (someone) to go away" or "cause (someone) to stop."
- The phrase "turn away from God" could be translated as "stop worshiping God."
- The phrase "turn back to God" could be translated as "start worshiping God again."
- When enemies "turn back," it means they "retreat." To "turn back the enemy" means to "cause the enemy to retreat."
- Used figuratively, when Israel "turned to" false gods, they "started to worship" them. When they "turned away" from idols, they "stopped worshiping" them.
- When God "turned away from" his rebellious people, he "stopped protecting" or "stopped helping" them.
- The phrase "turn the hearts of the fathers to their children" could be translated as "cause fathers to care for their children again."
- The expression "turn my honor into shame" could be translated as "cause my honor to become shame" or "dishonor me so that I am shamed" or "shame me (by doing what is evil) so that people no longer honor me."
- "I will turn your cities into ruin" could be translated as "I will cause your cities to be destroyed" or "I will cause enemies to destroy your cities."
- The phrase "turn into" could be translated as "become." When Moses' rod "turned into" a snake, it "became" a snake." It could also be translated as "changed into."

(See also: false god, leprosy, worship)

### Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:02
- Acts 07:42
- Acts 11:21
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 01:17
- Malachi 04:06
- Revelation 11:06

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H541, H2015, H2017, H2186, H2559, H3943, H4672, H4740, H4878, H5186, H5253, H5414, H5437, H5472, H5493, H5528, H5627, H5753, H6437, H7227, H7725, H7734, H7750, H7760, H7847, H8159, H8447, G344, G387, G402, G654, G665, G868, G1294, G1578, G1612, G1624, G1994, G3179, G3313, G3329, G3344, G3346, G4762, G5157, G5290

(**Go back to:** John 1:38; 12:40; 20:14; 20:16; 21:20)

# understand, understanding, thinking

### Definition:

The term "understand" means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

- The term "understanding" can refer to "knowledge" or "wisdom" or realizing how to do something.
- To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
- While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
- Depending on the context, the term "understand" could be translated by "know" or "believe" or "comprehend" or "know what (something) means."
- Often the term "understanding" can be translated by "knowledge" or "wisdom" or "insight."

(See also: believe, know, wise)

### Bible References:

- Job 34:16-17
- Luke 02:47
- Luke 08:10
- Matthew 13:12
- Matthew 13:14
- Proverbs 03:05

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H995, H998, H999, H1847, H2940, H3045, H3820, H3824, H4486, H7200, H7919, H7922, H7924, H8085, H8394, G50, G145, G191, G801, G1097, G1108, G1271, G1921, G1922, G1987, G1990, G2657, G3539, G3563, G4907, G4908, G4920, G5424, G5428, G5429

(**Go back to:** John 3:10; 8:27; 8:43; 10:6; 10:38; 12:16; 12:40; 13:7; 13:12; 13:28; 20:9)

# vine

### Definition:

The term "vine" refers to a plant that grows by trailing along the ground or by climbing trees and other structures. The word "vine" in the Bible is used only of fruit-bearing vines and usually refers to grape vines.

- In the Bible, the word "vine" almost always means "grapevine."
- The branches of the grapevine are attached to the main stem which gives them water and other nutrients so that they can grow.
- Jesus called himself the "vine" and called his people the "branches." In this context, the word "vine" could also be translated as "grapevine stem" or "grape plant stem." (See: Metaphor)

(See also: grape, vineyard)

### Bible References:

- Genesis 40:09
- Genesis 49:11
- John 15:01
- Luke 22:18
- Mark 12:03
- Matthew 21:35-37

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H5139, H1612, H8321, G288, G290, G1009, G1092

(**Go back to:** John 15:1; 15:4; 15:5)

# voice

## Definition:

The term "voice" refers to audible sound that a person makes when speaking or communicating. In the Bible, the term can ber used figuratively to refer to the concepts of sound, communication, and/or obedience.

## Translation Suggestions

- The expression "to hear someone's voice" can mean either "to hear someone speaking" or "to heed what someone says."
- The Bible describes God as "speaking" and having a "voice," even though God doesn't have a physical body in the same way a human being does.
- The term "voice" sometimes implies the presence of a person, as in this statement: "A voice is heard in the desert saying, 'Prepare the way of the Lord.'" This could be translated as "A person is heard calling out in the desert...." (See: synecdoche)
- However, sometimes the word "voice" is used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the heavens have a "voice" that reaches the whole earth. This means that the objects in the sky communicate something to human beings about God the Creator. (See: metaphor)

(See also: call, proclaim, splendor.)

## Bible References:

- John 05:36-38
- Luke 01:42
- Luke 09:35
- Matthew 03:17
- Matthew 12:19

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H6963, H7032, H7445, H8193, G2906, G5456

# walk, walked

### Definition:

The term "walk" is often used in a figurative sense to mean "live."

- "Enoch walked with God" means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To "walk by the Spirit" means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To "walk in" God's commands or God's ways means to "live in obedience to" his commands, that is, to "obey his commands" or "do his will."
- When God says he will "walk among" his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To "walk contrary to" means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To "walk after" means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

### Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate "walk" literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of"walk" could also be translated by "live" or "act" or "behave."
- The phrase "walk by the Spirit" could be translated by, "live in obedience to the Holy Spirit" or "behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit" or "do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you."
- To "walk in God's commands" could be translated by "live by God's commands" or "obey God's commands."
- The phrase "walked with God" could be translated as, "lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him."

(See also: Holy Spirit, honor)

### Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Kings 02:04
- Colossians 02:07
- Galatians 05:25
- Genesis 17:01
- Isaiah 02:05
- Jeremiah 13:10
- Micah 04:02

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H1869, H1980, H1981, H3212, H4108, G1704, G4043, G4198, G4748

(**Go back to:** John 1:36; 5:8; 5:9; 5:11; 5:12; 6:19; 6:66; 7:1; 8:12; 10:23; 11:9; 11:10; 11:54; 12:35; 21:18)

# watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

### Definition:

The term "watch" means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A "watchman" was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to "watch your life and doctrine closely" means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To "watch out" is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To "watch" or "keep watch" means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to "be ready."
- To "keep watch over" or "keep close watch" can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating "watch" could include "pay close attention to" or "be diligent" or "be very careful" or "be on guard."
- Other words for "watchman" are "sentry" or "guard."

### Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:06
- Hebrews 13:17
- Jeremiah 31:4-6
- Mark 08:15
- Mark 13:33-34
- Matthew 25:10-13

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H821, H2370, H4929, H4931, H5027, H5341, H6486, H6822, H6836, H6974, H7462, H7789, H7919, H8104, H8108, H8245, G69, G991, G1127, G1492, G2334, G2892, G3525, G3708, G3906, G4337, G4648, G5083, G5438

(**Go back to:** John 17:12; 17:15)

# water

## Definition:

In addition to its primary meaning, "water" also often refers to a body of water, such as an ocean, sea, lake, or river.

- The term "waters" refers to bodies of water or many sources of water. It can also be a general reference for a large amount of water.
- A figurative use of "waters" refers to great distress, difficulties, and suffering. For example, God promises that when we "go through the waters" he will be with us.
- The phrase "many waters" emphasizes how great the difficulties are.
- To "water" livestock and other animals means to "provide water for" them. In Bible times, this usually involved drawing water from a well with a bucket and pouring the water into a trough or other container for the animals to drink from.
- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as the spring or fountain of "living waters" for his people. This means he is the source of spiritual power and refreshment.
- In the New Testament, Jesus used the phrase "living water" to refer to the Holy Spirit working in a person to transform and bring new life.

## Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase, "draw water" could be translated as "pull water up from a well with a bucket."
- "Streams of living water will flow from them" could be translated as "the power and blessings from the Holy Spirit will flow out of them them like streams of water." Instead of "blessings" the term "gifts" or "fruits" or "godly character" could be used.
- When Jesus is talking to the Samaritan woman at the well, the phrase "living water" could be translated as "water that gives life" or "lifegiving water." In this context, the imagery of water must be kept in the translation.
- Depending on the context, the term "waters" or "many waters" could be translated as "great suffering (that surrounds you like water)" or "overwhelming difficulties (like a flood of water)" or "large amounts of water."

(See also: life, spirit, Holy Spirit, power)

## Bible References:

- Acts 08:36-38
- Exodus 14:21
- John 04:10
- John 04:14
- John 04:15
- Matthew 14:28-30

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2222, H4325, H4529, H4857, H7301, H7783, H8248, G504, G4215, G4222, G5202, G5204

(**Go back to:** John 1:26; 1:31; 1:33; 2:7; 2:9; 3:5; 3:23; 4:7; 4:10; 4:11; 4:13; 4:14; 4:15; 4:46; 5:3; 5:7; 7:38; 13:5; 19:34)

# wheat

## Definition:

Wheat is a type of grain that people grow for food. When the Bible mentions "grain" or "seeds," it is often talking about wheat grain or seeds.

- The wheat seeds or grains grow at the top of the wheat plant.
- After harvesting the wheat, the grain is separated from the stalk of the plant by threshing it. The stalk of the wheat plant is also called "straw" and is often placed on the ground for animals to sleep on.
- After threshing, the chaff surrounding the grain seed is separated from the grain by winnowing and is thrown away.
- People grind the wheat grain into flour, and use this for making bread.

(See also: barley, chaff, grain, seed, thresh, winnow)

## Bible References:

- Acts 27:36-38
- Exodus 34:21-22
- John 12:24
- Luke 03:17
- Matthew 03:12
- Matthew 13:26

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1250, H2406, G4621

(**Go back to:** John 12:24)

# will of God

### Definition:

The "will of God" refers to God's desires and plans.

- God's will especially relates to his interactions with people and how he wants people to respond to him.
- It also refers to his plans or desires for the rest of his creation.
- The term to "will" means to "determine" or to "desire."

### Translation Suggestions:

- The "will of God" could also be translated as "what God desires" or "what God has planned" or "God's purpose" or "what is pleasing to God."

### Bible References:

- 1 John 02:15-17
- 1 Thessalonians 04:3-6
- Colossians 04:12-14
- Ephesians 01:1-2
- John 05:30-32
- Mark 03:33-35
- Matthew 06:8-10
- Psalms 103:21

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H6310, H6634, H7522, G1012, G1013, G2307, G2308, G2309, G2596

(**Go back to:** John 4:34; 5:30; 6:38; 6:39; 6:40; 7:17; 9:31)

# wine, wineskin, new wine

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "wine" refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in "wineskins," which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term "new wine" referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term "wine" also referred to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as "fermented grape juice" or "fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes" or "fermented fruit juice." (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- Ways to translate "wineskin" could include "bag for wine" or "animal skin wine bag" or "animal skin container for wine."

(See also: grape, vine, vineyard, winepress)

### Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:23
- Genesis 09:21
- Genesis 49:12
- John 02:3-5
- John 02:10
- Matthew 09:17
- Matthew 11:18

smashed

### Word Data:

- Strong's: H2561, H2562, H3196, H4469, H4997, H5435, H6025, H6071, H8492, G1098, G3631, G3820, G3943

(**Go back to:** John 2:3; 2:9; 2:10; 4:46)

# wolf, wild dogs

## Definition:

A wolf is a fierce, meat-eating animal that is similar to a wild dog.

- Wolves usually hunt in groups and stalk their prey in a clever and stealthy manner.
- In the Bible, the term "wolves" is used figuratively to refer to false teachers or false prophets who destroy believers, who are compared to sheep. False teaching causes people to believe wrong things that bring harm to them.
- This comparison is based on the fact that sheep are especially vulnerable to being attacked and eaten by wolves, because they are weak and cannot defend themselves.

## Translation Suggestion

- This term could be translated as "wild dog" or "wild animal."
- Other names for wild dogs could be "jackal" or "coyote."
- When used figuratively to refer to people, this could be translated as "evil people who harm people like animals that attack sheep."

(See also: evil, false prophet, sheep, teach)

## Bible References:

- Acts 20:29
- Isaiah 11:07
- John 10:11-13
- Luke 10:03
- Matthew 07:15
- Zephaniah 03:03

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H2061, H3611, G3074

(**Go back to:** John 10:12)

# womb

## Definition:

The term "womb" refers to where a baby grows inside its mother.

- This is an older term that is sometimes used in order to be polite and less direct. (See: euphemism)
- A more modern term for womb is "uterus."
- Some languages use a word like "belly" to refer to a woman's womb or uterus.
- Use a word for this in the project language that is well-known, natural, and acceptable.

## Bible References:

- Genesis 25:23
- Genesis 25:24-26
- Genesis 38:27-28
- Genesis 49:25
- Luke 02:21
- Luke 11:27
- Luke 23:29
- Matthew 19:12

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H990, H4578, H7356, H7358, G1064, G2836, G3388

(**Go back to:** John 3:4)

# word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture

## Definition:

In the Bible, the term "word of God" refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called "the Word of God."

- The term "scriptures" means "writings." It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures, which is the Old Testament. These writings were God's message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people could still read it.
- The related terms "word of Yahweh" and "word of the Lord" often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply "the word" or "my word" or "your word" (when talking about God's word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called "the Word" and "the Word of God." These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

The term "word of truth" is another way of referring to "God's word," which is his message or teaching. It does not refer to just one word.

- God's word of truth includes everything that God has taught people about himself, his creation, and his plan of salvation through Jesus.
- This term emphasizes the fact that what God has told us is true, faithful, and real.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "the message of Yahweh" or "God's message" or "the teachings from God."
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say "God's words" or "the words of Yahweh."
- The expression "the word of Yahweh came" is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words."
- The term "scripture" or "scriptures" could be translated as "the writings" or "the written message from God." This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term "word."
- When "word" occurs alone and it refers to God's word, it could be translated as "the message" or "God's word" or "the teachings." Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.
- When the Bible refers to Jesus as "the Word," this term could be translated as "the Message" or "the Truth."
- "Word of truth" could be translated as "God's true message" or "God's word, which is true."
- It is important for the translation of this term to include the meaning of being true.

(See also: prophet, true, Yahweh)

## Bible References:

- Genesis 15:01
- 1 Kings 13:01
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 08:11
- John 05:39
- Acts 06:02
- Acts 12:24
- Romans 01:02
- 2 Corinthians 06:07
- Ephesians 01:13
- 2 Timothy 03:16

• James 01:18
• James 02:8-9

## Examples from the Bible stories:

• **25:07** In **God's word** he commands his people, 'Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.'"
• **33:06** So Jesus explained, "The seed is the **word of God**.
• **42:03** Then Jesus explained to them what **God's word** says about the Messiah.
• **42:07** Jesus said, "I told you that everything written about me in **God's word** must be fulfilled." Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God's word**.
• **45:10** Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
• **48:12** But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God**.
• **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

## Word Data:

• Strong's: H561, H565, H1697, H3068, G3056, G4487

# work, works, deeds

## Definition:

The term "work" refers generally either to the action of expending effort in order to accomplish something, or to the result of that action. The term "works" refers generally to actions as a whole (that is, things that have been done or that need to be done).

- In the Bible, these terms are commonly used both in reference to God and humans.
- When used in reference to God, the term "work" in the Bible often refers to God's action of creating the universe or saving his people (either from enemies, from sin, or both).
- God's works refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place.
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "works" could be "deeds" or "actions" or "things that are done."
- God's "works" or "deeds" or the "work of his hands" could also be translated as "miracles" or "mighty acts" or "things that God does."
- The expression "the work of God" could be translated as "the things that God is doing" or "the miracles God does" or "everything that God has accomplished."
- The term "work" can just be the singular of "works" as in "every good work" or "every good deed."
- When work is done for God or others, it can be translated as "service" or "ministry."

(See also: fruit, Holy Spirit, miracle)

## Bible References:

- 1 John 03:12
- Acts 02:8-11
- Daniel 04:37
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Galatians 02:15-16
- James 02:17
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Micah 02:07
- Romans 03:28
- Titus 03:4-5

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H4566, H4567, H4611, H4659, H5949, G2041

(**Go back to:** John 3:19; 3:20; 3:21; 4:34; 5:20; 5:36; 6:28; 6:29; 7:3; 7:7; 7:21; 8:39; 8:41; 9:3; 9:4; 10:25; 10:32; 10:33; 10:37; 10:38; 14:10; 14:11; 14:12; 15:24; 17:4)

# world, worldly

## Definition:

The term "world" usually refers to the part of the universe where people live: the earth. The term "worldly" describes the evil values and behaviors of people living in this world.

- In its most general sense, the term "world" refers to the heavens and the earth, as well as everything in them.
- In many contexts, "world" actually means "people in the world."
- Sometimes it is implied that this refers to the evil people on earth or the people who do not obey God.
- The apostles also used "world" to refer to the selfish behaviors and corrupt values of the people living in this world. This can include self-righteous religious practices which are based on human efforts.
- People and things characterized by these values are said to be "worldly."

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "world" could also be translated as "universe" or "people of this world" or "corrupt things in the world" or "evil attitudes of people in the world."
- The phrase "all the world" often means "many people" and refers to the people living in a certain region. For example, "all the world came to Egypt" could be translated as "many people from the surrounding countries came to Egypt" or "people from all the countries surrounding Egypt came there."
- Another way to translate "all the world went to their hometown to be registered in the Roman census" would be "many of the people living in regions ruled by the Roman empire went…"
- Depending on the context, the term "worldly" could be translated as, "evil" or "sinful" or "selfish" or "ungodly" or "corrupt" or "influenced by the corrupt values of people in this world."
- The phrase "saying these things in the world" can be translated as "saying these things to the people of the world."
- In other contexts, "in the world" could also be translated as "living among the people of the world" or "living among ungodly people."

(See also: corrupt, heaven, Rome, godly)

## Bible References:

- 1 John 02:15
- 1 John 04:05
- 1 John 05:05
- John 01:29
- Matthew 13:36-39

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H776, H2309, H2465, H5769, H8398, G1093, G2886, G2889, G3625

(**Go back to:** John 1:9; 1:10; 1:29; 3:16; 3:17; 3:19; 4:42; 6:14; 6:33; 6:51; 7:4; 7:7; 8:12; 8:23; 8:26; 9:5; 9:39; 10:36; 11:9; 11:27; 12:19; 12:25; 12:31; 12:46; 12:47; 13:1; 14:17; 14:19; 14:22; 14:27; 14:30; 14:31; 15:18; 15:19; 16:8; 16:11; 16:20; 16:21; 16:28; 16:33; 17:5; 17:6; 17:9; 17:11; 17:13; 17:14; 17:15; 17:16; 17:18; 17:21; 17:23; 17:24; 17:25; 18:20; 18:36; 18:37; 21:25)

# worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless

## Definition:

The term "worthy" describes someone or something that deserves respect or honor. To "have worth" means to be valuable or important. The term "worthless" means to not have any value.

- Being worthy is related to being valuable or having importance
- To be "unworthy" means to not be deserving of any special notice.
- To not feel worthy means to feel less important than someone else or to not feel deserving of being treated with honor or kindness.
- The term "unworthy" and the term "worthless" have related, but different meanings. To be "unworthy" means to not be deserving of any honor or recognition. To be "worthless" means to not have any purpose or value.

## Translation Suggestions:

- "Worthy" could be translated as "deserving" or "important" or "valuable."
- The word "worth" could be translated as "value" or "importance."
- The phrase to "have worth" could also be translated as to "be valuable" or to "be important."
- The phrase "is worth more than" could be translated as "is more valuable than."
- Depending on the context, the term, "unworthy" could also be translated as "unimportant" or "dishonorable" or "undeserving."
- The term "worthless" could be translated as "with no value" or "with no purpose" or "worth nothing."

(See also: honor)

## Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 22:04
- 2 Thessalonians 01:11-12
- Acts 13:25
- Acts 25:25-27
- Acts 26:31
- Colossians 01:9-10
- Jeremiah 08:19
- Mark 01:07
- Matthew 03:10-12
- Philippians 01:25-27

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H117, H639, H1929, H3644, H4242, H4373, H4392, H4592, H4941, H6994, H7386, H7939, G96, G514, G515, G516, G2425, G2661, G2735

(**Go back to:** John 1:27)

# wrath, fury

## Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. The Bible describes both people and God as experiencing intense anger. When speaking about God's "wrath," make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage (which might be true of a human person).

- In the Bible, "wrath" often refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

## Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- God's wrath is just and holy. When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful human rage.

(See also: judge, sin)

## Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- 1 Timothy 02:8-10
- Luke 03:7
- Luke 21:23
- Matthew 03:07
- Revelation 14:10
- Romans 01:18
- Romans 05:09

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H639, H2197, H2528, H2534, H2740, H3707, H3708, H5678, H7107, H7109, H7110, H7265, H7267, G2372, G3709, G3949, G3950

(**Go back to:** John 3:36)

# Yahweh

## Facts:

The term "Yahweh" is God's personal name in the Old Testament. The specific origin of this name is unknown, but it is probably derived from the Hebrew verb meaning, "to be."

- Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term "LORD" or "the LORD" to represent "Yahweh." This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh's name and started saying "Lord" every time the term "Yahweh" appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write "LORD" with all capital letters to show respect for God's personal name and to distinguish it from "Lord" which is a different Hebrew word.
- The ULT and UST texts always translate this term as, "Yahweh," in agreement with the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
- The term "Yahweh" never occurs in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for "Lord" is used, even when quoting the Old Testament.
- In the Old Testament, when God spoke about himself, he would often use his name instead of a pronoun.

## Translation Suggestions:

- "Yahweh" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "I am" or "living one" or "the one who is" or "he who is alive."
- This term could also be written in a way that is similar to how "Yahweh" is spelled.
- Some church denominations prefer not to use the term "Yahweh" and instead use the traditional rendering, "LORD." An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title "Lord." Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish "LORD" as a name (Yahweh) from "Lord" as a title.
- It is best if possible to keep the name Yahweh where it literally occurs in the text, but some translations may decide to use only a pronoun in some places, to make the text more natural and clear.
- Introduce the quote with something like, "This is what Yahweh says."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: God, lord, Lord, Moses, reveal)

## Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:20
- 1 Samuel 16:07
- Daniel 09:03
- Ezekiel 17:24
- Genesis 02:04
- Genesis 04:3-5
- Genesis 28:13
- Hosea 11:12
- Isaiah 10:04
- Isaiah 38:08
- Job 12:10
- Joshua 01:09
- Lamentations 01:05
- Leviticus 25:35
- Malachi 03:04
- Micah 02:05
- Micah 06:05
- Numbers 08:11

- Psalm 124:03
- Ruth 01:21
- Zechariah 14:5

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:14** God said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am **Yahweh**, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am **Yahweh**, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **13:05** "Do not make idols or worship them, for I, **Yahweh**, am a jealous God."
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of **Yahweh**, the true God.
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O **Yahweh**, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3050, H3068, H3069

(**Go back to:** John 8 General Notes; Notes)

# year

## Definition:

When used literally, the term "year" in the Bible refers to a period of time lasting 354 days. This is according to the lunar calendar system which is based on the time it takes for the moon to go around the earth.

- A year in the modern-day solar calendar lasts 365 days divided into twelve months, based on the amount of time it takes for the earth to travel around the sun.
- In both calendar systems a year has twelve months. But an extra thirteenth month is sometimes added to the year in the lunar calendar to make up for the fact that a lunar year is eleven days less than a solar year. This helps keep the two calendars more in line with each other.
- In the Bible, the term "year" is also used in a figurative sense to refer to a general time when a special event takes place. Examples of this include, "the year of Yahweh" or "in the year of drought" or "the favorable year of the Lord." In these contexts, "year" could be translated as "time" or "season" or "time period."

(See also: month)

## Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:31
- Acts 19:8-10
- Daniel 08:01
- Exodus 12:02

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H7620, H7657, H8140, H8141, G1763, G2094

(**Go back to:** John 2:20; 5:5; 8:57; 11:49; 11:51)

# zeal, zealous

## Definition:

The terms "zeal" and "zealous" refer to being strongly devoted to supporting a person or idea.

- Zeal includes having strong desire and actions that promote a good cause. It is often used to describe someone who faithfully obeys God and teaches others to do that too.
- Being zealous includes putting intense effort into doing something and continuing to persevere in that effort.
- The "zeal of the Lord" or the "zeal of Yahweh" refers to God's strong, persistent actions to bless his people or to see justice done.

## Translation Suggestions:

- To "be zealous" could also be translated by, "be strongly diligent" or "make an intense effort."
- The term "zeal" could also be translated as "energetic devotion" or "eager determination" or "righteous enthusiasm."
- The phrase, "zeal for your house" could be translated, "strongly honoring your temple" or "fervent desire to take care of your house."

## Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:31
- 1 Kings 19:9-10
- Acts 22:03
- Galatians 04:17
- Isaiah 63:15
- John 02:17-19
- Philippians 03:06
- Romans 10:1-3

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H7065, H7068, G2205, G2206, G2207, G6041

(**Go back to:** John 2:17)

# Zebedee

### Facts:

Zebedee was a fisherman from Galilee who is known because of his sons, James and John, who were Jesus' disciples. They are often identified in the New Testament as the "sons of Zebedee."

- Zebedee's sons were also fishermen and worked with him to catch fish.
- James and John quit their fishing work with their father Zebedee and left to go follow Jesus.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: disciple, fishermen, James (son of Zebedee), John (the apostle))

### Bible References:

- John 21:1-3
- Luke 05:8-11
- Mark 01:19-20
- Matthew 04:21-22
- Matthew 20:20
- Matthew 26:36-38

### Word Data:

- Strong's: G2199

(**Go back to:** John 21:2)

# Zion, Mount Zion

## Definition:

Originally, the term "Zion" or "Mount Zion" referred to a stronghold or fortress that King David captured from the Jebusites. Both these terms became other ways of referring to Jerusalem.

- Mount Zion and Mount Moriah were two of the hills that the city of Jerusalem was located on. Later, "Zion" and "Mount Zion" became used as general terms to refer to both of these mountains and to the city of Jerusalem. Sometimes they also referred to the temple that was located in Jerusalem. (See: metonymy)
- David named Zion, or Jerusalem, the "City of David." This is different from David's hometown, Bethlehem, which was also called the City of David.
- The term "Zion" is used in other figurative ways, to refer to Israel or to God's spiritual kingdom or to the new, heavenly Jerusalem that God will create.

(See also: Abraham, David, Jerusalem, Bethlehem, Jebusites)

## Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:05
- Amos 01:02
- Jeremiah 51:35
- Psalm 076:1-3
- Romans 11:26

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H6726

(**Go back to:** John 12:15)

# Contributors

## unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community
Aaron Fenlason
Abner Bauman
Adam Van Goor
Alan Bird
Alan Borkenhagen
Alfred Van Dellen
Alice Wright
Allen Bair
Allyson Presswood Nance
Amanda Adams
Andrew Belcher
Andrew Johnson
Andrew Rice
Angelo Palo
Anita Moreau
April Linton
Aurora Lee
Barbara Summers
Barbara White
Becky Hancock
Beryl Carpenter
Bethany Fenlason
Betty Forbes
Bianca Elliott
Bill Cleveland
Bill Pruett
Bob Britting
Bram van den Heuvel
Brian Metzger
Bruce Bridges
Bruce Collier
Bruce Smith
Caleb Worgess
Carlyle Kilmore
Carol Pace
Carol Heim
Caroline Crawford
Caroline Fleming
Caroline S Wong
Carol Lee
Carol Moyer
Carolyn Lafferty
Catherine C Newton
Charese Jackson
Charlotte Gibson
Charlotte Hobbs

Cheryl A Chojnacki
Cheryl Stieben
Cheryl Warren
Christian Berry
Christine Harrison
Clairmene Pascal
Connie Bryan
Connie Goss
Craig Balden
Craig Lins
Craig Scott
Cynthia J Puckett
Dale Hahs
Dale Masser
Daniel Lauk
Daniel Summers
Darlene M Hopkins
Darlene Silas
David Boerschlein
David F Withee
David Glover
David J Forbes
David Mullen
David N Hanley
David Sandlin
David Shortess
David Smith
David Whisler
Debbie Nispel
Debbie Piper
Deborah Bartow
Deborah Bush
Deborah Miniard
Dennis Jackson
Dianne Forrest
Donna Borkenhagen
Donna Mullis
Douglas Hayes
Drew Curley
Ed Davis
Edgar Navera
Edward Kosky
Edward Quigley
Elaine VanRegenmorter
Elizabeth Nataly Silvestre Herbas
Ellen Lee
Emeline Thermidor
Emily Lee
Esther Roman
Esther Trew
Esther Zirk
Ethel Lynn Baker
Evangeline Puen
Evelyn Wildgust
Fletcher Coleman

Freda Dibble
Gail Spell
Gary Greer
Gary Shogren
Gay Ellen Stulp
Gene Gossman
George Arlyn Briggs
Gerald L. Naughton
Glen Tallent
Grace Balwit
Grace Bird
Greg Stoffregen
Gretchen Stencil
Hallie Miller
Harry Harriss
Heather Hicks
Helen Morse
Hendrik deVries
Henry Bult
Henry Whitney
Hilary O'Sullivan
Ibrahim Audu
Ines Gipson
Irene J Dodson
Jackie Jones
Jacqueline Bartley
James Giddens
James Pedersen
James Pohlig
James Roe
Janet O'Herron
Janice Connor
Jaqueline Rotruck
Jeanette Friesen
Jeff Graf
Jeff Kennedy
Jeff Martin
Jennifer Cunneen
Jenny Thomas
Jerry Lund
Jessica Lauk
Jim Frederick
Jim Lee
Jimmy Warren
Jim Rotruck
Jim Swartzentruber
Jody Garcia
Joe Chater
Joel Bryan
Joey Howell
John Anderson
John Geddis
John D Rogers
John Hutchins
John Luton

John Pace
John P Tornifolio
Jolene Valeu
Jon Haahr
Joseph Fithian
Joseph Greene
Joseph Wharton
Joshua Berkowitz
Joshua Calhoun
Joshua Rister
Josh Wondra
Joy Anderson
Joyce Jacobs
Joyce Pedersen
JT Crowder
Judi Brodeen
Judith Cline
Judith C Yon
Julia N Bult
Patty Li
Julie Susanto
Kahar Barat
Kannahi Sellers
Kara Anderson
Karen Davie
Karen Dreesen
Karen Fabean
Karen Riecks
Karen Smith
Karen Turner
Kathleen Glover
Kathryn Hendrix
Kathy Mentink
Katrina Geurink
Kay Myers
Kelly Strong
Ken Haugh
Kim Puterbaugh
Kristin Butts Page
Kristin Rinne
Kwesi Opoku-debrah
Langston Spell
Larry Sallee
Lawrence Lipe
Lee Sipe
Leonard Smith
Lester Harper
Lia Hadley
Linda Buckman
Linda Dale Barton
Linda Havemeier
Linda Homer
Linda Lee Sebastien
Linn Peterson
Liz Dakota

Lloyd Box
Luis Keelin
Madeline Kilmore
Maggie D Paul
Marc Nelson
Mardi Welo
Margo Hoffman
Marilyn Cook
Marjean Swann
Marjorie Francis
Mark Albertini
Mark Chapman
Mark Thomas
Marselene Norton
Mary Jane Davis
Mary Jean Stout
Mary Landon
Mary Scarborough
Megan Kidwell
Melissa Roe
Merton Dibble
Meseret Abraham-Zemede
Michael Bush
Michael Connor
Michael Francis
Michael Geurink
Mike Tisdell
Mickey White
Miel Horrilleno
Monique Greer
Morgan Mellette
Morris Anderson
Nancy C. Naughton
Nancy Neu
Nancy VanCott
Neal Snook
Nicholas Scovil
Nick Dettman
Nils Friberg
Noah Crabtree
Pamela B Johnston
Pamela Nungesser
Pamela Roberts
Pam Gullifer
Pat Ankney
Pat Giddens
Patricia Brougher
Patricia Carson
Patricia Cleveland
Patricia Foster
Patricia Middlebrooks
Paul Mellema
Paula Carlson
Paula Oestreich
Paul Holloway

Paul Nungesser
Peggy Anderson
Peggyrose Swartzentruber
Peter Polloni
Phillip Harms
Phyllis Mortensen
Priscilla Enggren
Rachel Agheyisi
Rachel Ropp
Raif Turner
Ray Puen
Reina Y Mora
Rene Bahrenfuss
Renee Triplett
Rhonda Bartels
Richard Beatty
Richard Moreau
Richard Rutter
Richard Stevens
Rick Keaton
Robby Little
Robert W Johnson
Rochelle Hook
Rodney White
Rolaine Franz
Ronald D Hook
Rosario Baria
Roxann Carey
Roxanne Pittard
Ruben Michael Garay
Russell Isham
Russ Perry
Ruth Calo
Ruth E Withee
Ruth Montgomery
Ryan Blizek
Sam Todd
Samuel Njuguna
Sandy Anderson
Sandy Blanes
Sara Giesmann
Sara Van Cott (Barnes)
Sharon Johnson
Sharon Peterson
Sharon Shortess
Shelly Harms
Sherie Nelson
Sherman Sebastien
Sherry Mosher
Stacey Swanson
Steve Gibbs
Steve Mercier
Susan Langohr
Susan Quigley
Susan Snook

Suzanne Richards
Sylvia Thomas
Sze Suze Lau
Tabitha Price
Tammy L Enns
Tammy White
Teresa Everett-Leone
Teresa Linn
Terri Collins
Theresa Baker
Thomas Jopling
Thomas Nickell
Thomas Warren
Tim Coleman
Tim Ingram
Tim Linn
Tim Lovestrand
Tim Mentink
Tom Penry
Tom William Warren
Toni Shuma
Tracie Pogue
Tricia Coffman
Vicki Ivester
Victoria G DeKraker
Victor M Prieto
Vivian Kamph
Vivian Richardson
Ward Pyles
Warren Blaisdell
Wayne Homer
Wendy Coleman
Wendy Colon
Wilbur Zirk
Wil Gipson
William Carson
William Cline
William Dickerson
William Smitherman
William Wilder
Yvonne Tallent

## unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors

Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
David Trombold, M. Div.
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages

James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary
David Trombold
Dean Ropp
Gene Mullen
James Vigen
Leonard Smith
Nicholas Alsop
Michael Francis
Door43 World Missions Community

## unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors

Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
David Trombold, M. Div.
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary
David Trombold
Dean Ropp
Gene Mullen
James Vigen
Leonard Smith
Nicholas Alsop
Michael Francis
Door43 World Missions Community

## unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors

Jesse Griffin, BA in Biblical Studies, MA in Biblical Languages

Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Henry Whitney, BA in Linguistics
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Ben Jore, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.
Joel D. Ruark, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Theology
Todd L. Price, PhD in New Testament/Linguistics
Bev Staley
Carol Brinneman
Jody Garcia
Kara Anderson
Kim Puterbaugh
Lizz Carlton
Door43 World Missions Community

## unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors

Andrew Belcher
David Book
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
Henry Whitney, Bible translator, Papua New Guinea, 1982–2000
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Lizz Carlton
Jan Zanutto
Matthew Latham
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Richard Joki
Door43 World Missions Community